

# 20

---

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ

# ÔN THI TNTHPT

## 2020

---

*Ngữ pháp và bài tập kèm theo*  
*Sưu tầm*

# PHẦN I: CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1

### CÁC THÌ (TENSES)

#### **1. THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN SIMPLE PRESENT**

##### **VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG**

Khẳng định: S + Vs/es + O

Phủ định: S + DO/DOES + NOT + V + O

Nghi vấn: DO/DOES + S + V + O ?

##### **VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ TOBE**

Khẳng định: S + AM/IS/ARE + O

Phủ định: S + AM/IS/ARE + NOT + O

Nghi vấn: AM/IS/ARE + S + O

**Từ nhận biết:** always, every, usually, often, generally, frequently.

##### **Cách dựng:**

*Thờ hiện tại đơn diễn tả một chân lý, một sự thật hiển nhiên.*

Vớ dụ: The sun rises in the East.

Tom comes from England.

*Thờ hiện tại đơn diễn tả 1 thói quen, một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên ở hiện tại.*

Vớ dụ: Mary often goes to school by bicycle.

I get up early every morning.

**Lưu ý:** ta thêm "es" sau các động từ tận cùng là: O, S, X, CH, SH.

*Thờ hiện tại đơn diễn tả năng lực của con người*

Vớ dụ: He plays badminton very well

*Thờ hiện tại đơn cũn diễn tả một kế hoạch sắp xếp trước trong tương lai hoặc thời khoá biểu, đặc biệt dùng với các động từ di chuyển.*

#### **2. THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN - PRESENT CONTINUOUS**

##### **Cụng thức**

Khẳng định: S + be (am/ is/ are) + V\_ing + O

Phủ định: S + BE + NOT + V\_ing + O

Nghi vấn: BE + S + V\_ing + O

**Từ nhận biết:** Now, right now, at present, at the moment

##### **Cách dựng thờ hiện tại tiếp diễn**

*Thờ hiện tại tiếp diễn tả một hành động đang diễn ra và kéo dài dài một thời gian ở hiện tại.*

Ex: The children are playing football now.

Thờ này cũng thường tiếp theo sau câu đề nghị, mệnh lệnh.

Ex: Look! the child is crying.

Be quiet! The baby is sleeping in the next room.

Thờ này cũn diễn tả 1 hành động xảy ra lặp đi lặp lại dùng với phó từ ALWAYS:

Ex: He is always borrowing our books and then he doesn't remember -

Thờ này cũn được dùng để diễn tả một hành động sắp xảy ra (ở tương lai gần)

Ex: He is coming tomrow

**Lưu ý:** Khụng dựng thờ này với cóc động từ chỉ nhận thức chi giác như: to be, see, hear, understand, know, like, want, glance, feel, think, smell, love, hate, realize, seem, remmber, forget,.....

Ex: I am tired now.

She wants to go for a walk at the moment.

Do you understand your lesson?

### 3. THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH - PRESENT PERFECT

Khẳng định: S + have/ has + Past participle (V3) + O

Phủ định: S + have/ has + NOT + Past participle + O

Nghi vấn: have/ has + S + Past participle + O

Từ nhận biết: already, not... yet, just, ever, never, since, for, recently, before...

**Cách dùng th hiện tại hoàn thành:**

Thờ hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả hành động đó xảy ra hoặc chưa bao giờ xảy ra ở 1 thời gian không xác định trong quá khứ.

Thờ hiện tại hoàn thành cũng diễn tả sự lập đi lập lại của 1 hành động trong quá khứ.

Thờ hiện tại hoàn thành cũng được dùng với since và for.

**Since + thời gian bắt đầu** (1995, I was young, this morning etc.) Khi người nói dùng since, người nghe phải tính thời gian là bao lâu.

**For + khoảng thời gian** (từ lúc đầu tới bây giờ) Khi người nói dùng for, người nói phải tính thời gian là bao lâu.

### 4. THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN - PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Khẳng định: S has/have + been + V-ing + O

Phủ định: S + Hasn't/ Haven't + been+ V-ing + O

Nghi vấn: Has/HAVE+ S+ been + V-ing + O?

**Từ nhận biết:** all day, all week, since, for, for a long time, almost every day this week, recently, lately, in the past week, in recent years, up until now, and so far.

**Cách dùng th hiện tại hoàn thành:**

Thờ hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của 1 hành động đó xảy ra trong quá khứ và tiếp tục tới hiện tại (có thể tới tương lai).

### 5. THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN - SIMPLE PAST

**VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG**

Khẳng định: S + V-ed + O

Phủ định: S + DID+ NOT + V + O

Nghi vấn: DID + S+ V+ O ?

**VỚI TOBE**

Khẳng định: S + WAS/WERE + O

Phủ định: S+ WAS/ WERE + NOT + O

Nghi vấn: WAS/WERE + S+ O ?

**Từ nhận biết:** yesterday, yesterday morning, last week, las month, last year, last night.

### Cách dùng thì quá khứ đơn:

Thờ quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động đó xảy ra và kết thúc trong quá khứ với thời gian xác định.

### CHỦ TỪ + ĐỘNG TỪ QUÁ KHỨ

When + thờ quá khứ đơn (simple past)

When + hành động thứ nhất

### 6. THÌ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN - PAST CONTINUOUS

Khẳng định: S + was/were + V\_ing + O

Phủ định: S + wasn't/weren't + V-ing + O

Nghi vấn: Was/Were + S + V-ing + O?

**Từ nhận biết:** While, at that very moment, at 10:00 last night, and this morning (afternoon).

### Cách dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn:

Dùng để diễn tả hành động đó xảy ra cùng lúc. Nhưng hành động thứ nhất đó xảy ra sớm hơn và đó đang tiếp tục xảy ra thờ hành động thứ hai xảy ra.

### CHỦ TỪ + WERE/WAS + ĐỘNG TỪ THÂM - ING

#### While + thờ quá khứ tiếp diễn (past progressive)

### 7. THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH - PAST PERFECT

Khẳng định: S + had + Past Participle (V3) + O

Phủ định: S + hadn't + Past Participle + O

Nghi vấn: Had + S + Past Participle + O?

**Từ nhận biết:** after, before, as soon as, by the time, when, already, just, since, for....

### Cách dùng thì quá khứ hoàn thành:

Thờ quá khứ hoàn thành diễn tả 1 hành động đó xảy ra và kết thúc trong quá khứ trước 1 hành động khác cũng xảy ra và kết thúc trong quá khứ.

### 8. THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN - PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Khẳng định: S + had + been + V\_ing + O

Phủ định: S + hadn't + been + V-ing + O

Nghi vấn: Had + S + been + V-ing + O?

**Từ nhận biết:** until then, by the time, prior to that time, before, after.

### Cách dùng thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn:

Thờ quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của 1 hành động đó đang xảy ra trong quá khứ và kết thúc trước 1 hành động khác xảy ra và cũng kết thúc trong quá khứ

### 9. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI - SIMPLE FUTURE

Khẳng định: S + shall/will + V(infinitive) + O

Phủ định: S + shall/will + NOT + V(infinitive) + O

Nghi vấn: shall/will + S + V(infinitive) + O?

### Cách dùng thì tương lai:

*Khi đoán (predict, guess), dùng will hoặc be going to.*

*Khi chỉ dự định trước, dùng be going to không được dùng will.*

### CHỦ TỪ + AM (IS/ARE) GOING TO + ĐỘNG TỪ (ở hiện tại: simple form)

*Khi diễn tả sự đồng ý hoặc sự sẵn sàng, dùng will không được dùng be going to.*

### CHỦ TỪ + WILL + ĐỘNG TỪ (ở hiện tại: simple form)

### 10. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN - FUTURE CONTINUOUS

Khẳng định: S + shall/will + be + V\_ing + O

Phủ định: S + shall/will + NOT + be + V\_ing + O

Nghi vấn: shall/will + S + be + V\_ing + O

**Từ nhận biết:** in the future, next year, next week, next time, and soon.

### Cách dùng thì tương lai tiếp diễn:

Thờ tương lai tiếp diễn diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra ở 1 thời điểm nào đó trong tương lai.

**CHỦ TỪ + WILL + BE + ĐỘNG TỪ THÂM -ING hoặc**

**CHỦ TỪ + BE GOING TO + BE + ĐỘNG TỪ THÂM -ING**

### **11. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH - FUTURE PERFECT**

Khẳng định: S + shall/will + have + Past Participle

Phủ định: S + shall/will + NOT+ be + V\_ing+ O

Nghi vấn: shall/will + NOT+ be + V\_ing+ O?

**Từ nhận biết:** by the time and prior to the time (cú nghĩa là before)

**Cách dùng thì tương lai hoàn thành:**

Thờ tương lai hoàn thành diễn tả 1 hành động trong tương lai sẽ kết thúc trước 1 hành động khác trong tương lai.

**CHỦ TỪ + WILL + HAVE + QUÁ KHỨ PHÂN TỪ (PAST PARTICIPLE)**

### **12. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN - FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS**

Khẳng định: S + shall/will + have been + V\_ing + O

Phủ định: S + shall/will + NOT+ have been + V\_ing + O

Nghi vấn: shall/will + S+ have been + V\_ing + O?

**Cách dùng thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn:**

*Thờ tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của 1 hành động sẽ đang xảy ra trong tương lai và sẽ kết thúc trước 1 hành động khác trong tương lai.*

*Khi chỉ dự định trước, dùng be going to không được dùng will.*

**CHỦ TỪ + AM (IS/ARE) GOING TO + ĐỘNG TỪ (ở hiện tại: simple form)**

*Khi diễn tả sự đồng ý hoặc sự sẵn sàng, dùng will không được dùng be going to.*

**CHỦ TỪ + WILL + ĐỘNG TỪ (ở hiện tại: simple form)**

## **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**I. Choose the best answer among A, B, C, or D.**

1. When I last saw him, he \_\_\_\_\_ in London.

- A. has lived                      B. is living                      C. was living                      D. has been living

2. We \_\_\_\_\_ Dorothy since last Saturday.

- A. don't see                      B. haven't seen                      C. didn't see                      D. hadn't seen

3. The train \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour ago.

- A. has been leaving                      B. left                      C. has left                      D. had left

4. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ the door.

- A. has just painted                      B. paint                      C. will have painted                      D. painting

5. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ for you since yesterday.

- A. is looking                      B. was looking                      C. has been looking                      D. looked
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ Texas State University now.
- A. am attending                      B. attend                      C. was attending                      D. attended
7. He has been selling motorbikes \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. ten years ago                      B. since ten years                      C. for ten years ago                      D. for ten years
8. Christopher Columbus \_\_\_\_\_ American more than 500 years ago.
- A. discovered                      B. has discovered                      C. had discovered                      D. had been discovering
9. He fell down when he \_\_\_\_\_ towards the church.
- A. run                      B. runs                      C. was running                      D. had run
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ there when our father died.
- A. still lived                      B. lived still                      C. was still lived                      D. were still living
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ table tennis when their father comes back home.
- A. will play                      B. will be playing                      C. play                      D. would play
12. By Christmas, I \_\_\_\_\_ for Mr. Smith for six years.
- A. shall have been working                      B. shall work                      C. have been working                      D. shall be working
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ in the room right now.
- A. am being                      B. was being                      C. have been being                      D. am
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ to New York three times this year.
- A. have been                      B. was                      C. were                      D. had been
15. I'll come and see you before I \_\_\_\_\_ for the States.
- A. leave                      B. will leave                      C. have left                      D. shall leave
16. The little girl asked what \_\_\_\_\_ to her friend.
- A. has happened                      B. happened                      C. had happened                      D. would have been happened
17. John \_\_\_\_\_ a book when I saw him.
- A. is reading                      B. read                      C. was reading                      D. reading

18. He said he \_\_\_\_\_ return later.  
 A. will                      B. would                      C. can                      D. would be
19. I have been waiting for you \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. since early morning    B. since 9a. m              C. for two hours            D. All are correct
20. Almost everyone \_\_\_\_\_ for home by the time we arrived.  
 A. leave                      B. left                      C. leaves                      D. had left
21. By the age of 25, he \_\_\_\_\_ two famous novels.  
 A. wrote                      B. writes                      C. has written              D. had written
22. While her husband was in the army, Mary \_\_\_\_\_ to him twice a week.  
 A. was reading              B. wrote                      C. was written              D. had written
23. I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower \_\_\_\_\_ a few days previously.  
 A. broke down              B. has been broken        C. had broken down        D. breaks down
24. I have never played badminton before. This is the first time I \_\_\_\_\_ to play.  
 A. try                      B. tried                      C. have tried              D. am trying
25. Since \_\_\_\_\_, I have heard nothing from him.  
 A. he had left              B. he left                      C. he has left              D. he was left
26. After I \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, I looked for my bag.  
 A. had                      B. had had                      C. have has                      D. have had
27. By the end of next year, George \_\_\_\_\_ English for two years.  
 A. will have learned        B. will learn                      C. has learned              D. would learn
28. The man got out of the car, \_\_\_\_\_ round to the back and opened the book.  
 A. walking                      B. walked                      C. walks                      D. walk
30. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
 A. finish                      B. finishes                      C. will finish              D. finishing
31. Ask her to come and see me when she \_\_\_\_\_ her work.  
 A. finish                      B. has finished              C. finished                      D. finishing
32. Tom and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ for Vietnam tomorrow.

- A. leave                      B. are leaving              C. leaving              D. are left
33. He always \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk in the evening.
- A. go                      B. is going              C. goes              D. going
34. Her brother \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada at present.
- A. working              B. works              C. is working              D. work
35. Last week, my professor promised that he \_\_\_\_\_ today.
- A. would come              B. will come              C. comes              D. coming

**II. Choose the underlined part in each sentence (A, B,C, or D) that needs correcting.**

1. After Mrs. Wang had returned to her house from work, she was cooking dinner.
- A              B              C              D
2. Jimmy threw the ball high in the air, and Betty catching it when it came down
- A              B                              C              D
3. Linda has worn her new yellow dress only once since she buys it.
- A              B                              C                              D
4. Last week Mark told me that he got very bored with his present job and is looking for a new one.
- A                              B    C
- D
5. Having fed the dog, he was sat down to his own meal.
- A                              B              C              D
6. When I turned on my computer, I was shocked to find some junk mail, and I just delete it all.
- A              B    C              D
7. They are going to have to leave soon and so do we.
- A              B                              C              D
8. The boss laughed when the secretary has told him that she really needed a pay rise.
- A                              B              C              D



9. The telephone rang several times and then stop before I could answer it.

A B C D

10. Debbie, whose father is an excellent tennis player, has been playing tennis since ten years.

A B C D

11. I have seen lots of interesting places when I went on holiday last summer

A B C D

12. When my cat heard a noise in the bushes, she stopped moving and listen intently

A B C D

13. I think it's time you must change your way of living.

A B C D

14. Roger felt the outside of his pocket to make sure his wallet is still there.

A B C D

15. When I'm shopping in the supermarket, I ran into an old friend who I hadn't met for five years.

A B C D

16. The police arrested the man while he is having dinner in a restaurant.

A B C D

17. Peter and Wendy first met in 2006, and they are married for three years now.

A B C D

18. Some people are believing there is life on other planets.

A B C D

19. Recently, the island of Hawaii had been the subject o fintensive research on the occurrence of earthquakes.

A B C D

20. Every morning, the sun shines in my bedroom window and waking me up.

A B C D

21. We'll be cycled to Hoa's village at this time next Sunday.

A    B            C                          D

22. What will you do when your friends won't come?

A            B    C    D

23. My friend didn't drink any beer since we came to live here.

A                    B    C                          D

24. We have written to each other when we were in primary school.

A                    B            C                          D

25. Will we go to the pop concert this weekend for a change?

A            B    C    D

**III.. Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.**

1. As soon as he waved his hand, she turned away.

- A. He saw her turn away and he waved his hand.
- B. No sooner had he waved his hand than she turned away.
- C. She turned away because he waved his hand too early.
- D. Although she turned away, he waved his hand.

2. My father hasn't smoked cigarettes for a month.

- A. It's a month since my father last smoked cigarettes.
- B. It's a month ago that my father smoked cigarettes.
- C. It's a month that my father hasn't smoked cigarettes.
- D. It's a cigarette that my father smoked a month ago.

3. Having finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.

- A. The workers expected to be paid because they had finished their work.
- B. Having their work finished, the workers expected to be paid.
- C. Having expected to be paid, the workers finished their work.
- D. Having been finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.

3. Mr. Brown bought this car five years ago.
- A. Mr. Brown started to buy this car five years ago.
  - B. It has been five years when Mr. Brown bought this car
  - C. Mr. Brown has had this car for five years.
  - D. It is five years ago since Mr. Brown bought this car.
4. I haven't enjoyed myself so much for years.
- A. It's years since I enjoyed myself so much.
  - B. It's years since I have enjoyed myself so much.
  - C. It was years since I had enjoyed myself so much.
  - D. It has been years since I have enjoyed myself so much.
5. This is my tenth year working in this bank.
- A. By the end of this year, I will work in this bank for ten years.
  - B. I have worked in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.
  - C. By the end of this year, I will have worked in this bank for ten years.
  - D. I had been working in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.
6. The famous actor was last seen in 2000.
- A. The famous actor has not been able to see since 2000.
  - B. No one has seen the famous actor since 2000.
  - C. The famous actor didn't see anyone in 2000.
  - D. No one saw the famous actor until 2000.
7. I came to live here three months ago.
- A. It was three months since I lived here.
  - B. I've been living here for three months.
  - C. I lived here for three months.
  - D. I didn't live here for three months.
8. She goes to the shops every Friday.
- A. She goes every day to the shop but not on Friday.

- B. It's not Friday, but she's going to the shops.  
C. She always goes to the shops on Friday.  
D. She never goes to the shops on Friday.
9. Michael took a deep breath and dived into the water.  
A. After Michael had taken a deep breath, he dived into the water.  
B. Having taken a deep breath, he dived into the water.  
C. After Michael took a deep breath, he had dived into the water.  
D. A & B are correct.
10. We started working here three years ago.  
A. We worked here for three years.                      B. We have no longer worked here for three years.  
C. We have worked here for three years.                D. We will work here in three years.
11. It's a long time since we last went to the cinema.  
A. We have been to the cinema for a long time.      B. We haven't been to the cinema for a long time.  
C. We don't go to the cinema as we used to.        D. We wish we went to the cinema now.
12. I haven't finished this book yet.  
A. I'm still reading this book.                          B. I have read this book before.  
C. The book I'm reading hasn't finished.            D. I will read this book some day.
13. He used to jog every morning.  
A. He enjoys jogging every morning.                B. He never fails to jog every morning.  
C. He doesn't now jog every morning.              D. He intended to jog every morning.
14. I have never felt happier than I do now.  
A. I felt happier before.                                  B. I feel happy now.  
C. I have never felt happy.                              D. I have always felt happy.
15. He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.  
A. He hasn't had his eyes tested for ten months.    B. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.

C. He had tested his eyes ten months before.      D. He didn't have any test on his eyes in ten months.

16. Someone knocked on the door during my lunchtime.

- A. I had lunch when someone knocked on the door.
- B. When I had had lunch, someone knocked on the door.
- C. I was having lunch when someone was knocking on the door.
- D. I was having lunch when someone knocked on the door.

17. Steve left before my arrival.

- A. When I arrived, Steve had already left.      B. Steve left as soon as I arrived.
- C. While Steve was leaving I arrived.      D. Steve hadn't left until I arrived.

18. I haven't been here before.

- A. Being here is a pleasant experience.      B. This is the first time I have been here.
- C. I have wished to be here for long.      D. Before long I will be here.

19. The last time I saw Rose was three years ago.

- A. I hasn't seen Rose for three years.      B. I haven't seen Rose three years ago.
- C. I haven't seen Rose since three years.      D. I haven't seen Rose for three years.

20. When we arrived, the children were playing "Hide and Seek"

- A. The children played "Hide and Seek" and then we arrived.
- B. While the children were playing "Hide and Seek", we arrived.
- C. We arrived at the same time the children played "Hide and Seek".
- D. We didn't arrive until the children played "Hide and Seek".

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2

### SỰ HOÀ HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ (SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

**Trong Tiếng Anh động từ phải phù hợp với chủ ngữ của nó. Cụ thể:**

- Chủ ngữ số ít (He, She, It, The boy, The camel,...) động từ chia số ít.

Ex: The car **was** new.

- Chủ ngữ số nhiều chia động từ số nhiều

Ex: The books **were** on the top shelf.

Ex: These women **wash** their clothes everyday.

Nhưng chủ ngữ trong Tiếng Anh không phải lúc nào cũng dễ xác định theo số ít hoặc số nhiều  
vỡ vậy khi xác định chủ ngữ ta cần Lưu ý các trường hợp sau:

**1. Chủ ngữ là một danh động từ, động từ nguyên thể hay một mệnh đề: động từ chia theo ngôi thứ 3 số ít.**

Ex: Walking in the rain **is** not a good idea.

Ex: To learn a foreign language **is** necessary.

Ex: That you get high grades in the school **is** very important.

**2. Chủ ngữ là một nhóm từ thử phải tìm từ chính và chia động từ phù hợp với từ đó**

Ex: A **list** of new books **has** been posted in the library.

Ex: The **shops** along the mall **are** rather small.

**3. S1 + of/ as well as/ with/ together with/ in addition to/ along with/ accompanied by/ no less than +S2 => Động từ hòa hợp với S1.**

Ex: **The professor** *together with* his three students **has been** called to court.

Ex: **The mayor** *as well as* his councilmen **refuses** to endorse the bill.

Ex: **The students** *along with* their form teacher **were** at the beach yesterday.

**4. Chủ ngữ là đại từ bất định: one, everyone, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody, someone, somebody, everybody, anything, something, nothing, everything => Động từ**

## chia số ột

Ex: Nobody **is** at home now.

Ex: **Is** there anybody here?

Ex: Everything **has been** all right so far.

## 5. Chủ ngữ kép:

**a• S1+AND +S2 +...=> Động từ chia theo chủ ngữ ở số nhiều.**

Ex: England, Scotland and Wales **form** Great Britain.

Ex: EJohn and I **are** cousins.

Ex: The headmaster and the teacher **are** talking.

**\*But:** The secretary and accountant **hasn't come** yet. (Một người làm hai nhiệm vụ)

The great doctor and 'discoverer **is** no more.

Whisky and soda **has always been** his favourite drink.

(trong trường hợp 2 danh từ nối với nhau bằng AND nhưng chúng cùng chỉ 1 người, 1 bộ hoặc 1 món ăn. Đối với trường hợp cùng chỉ 1 người thờ dấu hiệu nhận biết là danh từ thứ 2 khụng cú THE, cũn với bộ hoặc mún ăn thờ tựy vào ý của người nói).

Ex: - Fish and chips **is** a popular meal in Britain.

Ex - Fish and chips **make** a good meal (If we think of the items as "separate", we use plural verb)

**NOTE:** "Each" or "every" preceding singular subjects joined by "and" takes a singular verb,

Ex: Each boy and each girl **is** to work independently.

**b• S1+ OR +S2 =>Động từ hũa hợp với S2:**

Ex: **Has** your mother or father **given** you permission to use the car?

**c •Either+S1+ or + S2 → V hũa hợp với S2:**

**Neither+ S1+Nor +S2→**

Ex: Neither the students nor **their** teacher regrets the approach of summer

• **EACH/EVERY/EITHER/NEITHER** + singular noun + singular verb  
of + plural noun / pronoun

• **ALL / BOTH / FEW / A FEW / MANY / SEVERAL / SOME** + plural noun →  
PLURAL VERB  
of + plural noun / pronoun

• **ALL/ SOME /LITTLE/A LITTLE** +Non count noun → singular verb  
of+ Non count noun

**6. Chủ ngữ là danh từ tập hợp dùng như 1 đơn vị =>V chia theo S số ít (GROUP / JURY/ ARMY / FAMILY / CLASS /COMMITTEE / TEAM /ENEMY/ COUNCIL...)**

Ex: The football team practises every day.

Ex: The herd of elk is in the meadow

Ex: The family arrives together at 8. 00.

**\*Danh từ tập hợp chỉ từng thành viên =>V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The football team buy their own uniforms.

Ex: John has just arrived and now the family are all here.

**\*Cổc danh từ như: the police, the military, the people, cattle, poultry, clergy,... => V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The police are questioning him.



**\*\*\*. Danh từ tập hợp được hình thành bởi "the + adjective" => V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The sick need medical care and tenderness.

Ex: The American people don't trust the news

**\*\*\*\*. Danh từ tập hợp như FURNITURE / LUGGAGE / INFORMATION / KNOWLEDGE / TRAFFIC / EQUIPMENT / SCENERY / MACHINERY... (khung bao giờ cú \_S với những danh từ này) => V chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: The furniture was more expensive than I thought.

Ex: Traffic is heavy.

Ex: The traffic has increased rapidly in the downtown areas.

**7. Chủ ngữ là nhóm danh từ chỉ số lượng (khoảng thời gian đo lường, trọng lượng, thể tích, số lượng) => V chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: Twenty-two inches is a tiny waist measurement.

Ex: Fifty dollars seems a reasonable price

**\*Phần số/phần trăm + N (số ít) => V chia theo S số ít.** Ex: A quarter of the cake is gone.

+ N(số nhiều) => V chia theo S số nhiều. Ex: Half of the tables are occupied.

**\*The majority of + N (số ít) => V chia theo S số ít.**

+ N (số nhiều) => V chia theo S số nhiều.

Ex: The majority of the customers are happy.

**8. Tờ đề sách báo, tên cơ quan, tổ chức đoàn thể, quốc gia, dù viết ở số nhiều -> động từ chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: Chaucer's Canterbury Tales includes many humorous characterizations.

Ex: The Malay States is now part of the Federation of Malaysia.

**9. Các danh từ chỉ bệnh tật, môn học, môn thể thao, tên nước, thủ đô:** news, means, series, billiards, mathematics, species, measles, mumps, rickets, mathematics, economics,, linguistics, physics, phonetics, athletics, politics, statistics, Algiers, Athens, Brussels, Marseilles, Naples, the Philippines, the United Nations, the United States, Wales.....) => **động từ chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: The morning news is on at 6 o'clock.

Ex: Measles is sometimes serious.

**10. Những danh từ sau đây luôn đi số nhiều** (glasses, scissors (keo), pants, shorts, jeans, tongs (cai kẹp), pliers (kim), tweezers (nhíp), eye-glasses, ear-rings.....) → **Động từ chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: My trousers are torn .

Ex: These scissors are dull.

**But:- A pair of glasses costs quite a lot these days.**

- **This pair of scissors is sharp.**

**11. THE NUMBER OF +N(số nhiều)=> Động từ chia theo số ít.**

Ex: The number of road accidents is increasing.

**12. A NUMBER OF +N (số nhiều) => Động từ chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: A number of spectators were injured

**13. No + singular noun + singular verb:**

Ex: No example is right in this case.

plural noun + plural verb:  
this case.

Ex: No examples are right in

**14. None of the + non-count noun + -singular verb**

plural noun + plural verb Ex: - None of the counterfeit money **has** been found.

Ex: - None of the students **have** finished the exam yet.

15. It + be + noun / pronoun (in the subject form)

Ex - It **is** they who provide the modern medical aids. \_\_\_\_\_

Ex- Go and tell them it **is** I who did it.

16. There + be + noun: (động từ phụ thuộc vào danh từ).

Ex: There **have not been** many large-scale epidemics lately.

## **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

### **A. Choose the best answers to the following questions.**

1. The Vietnamese people ----- a heroic people.

- A. is                                      B. are                                      C. was                                      D. were

2. Miss White----- her parents is going to pay a visit to the Great Wall.

- A. and                                      B both                                      C. as well as                                      D. or

3. The Vietnamese -----hard-working and brave.

- A. is                                      B. are                                      C. be                                      D. being

4. A good deal of money ----- spent on the books.

- A. have                                      B. has                                      C. have been                                      D. has been

5. The manager or his secretary ----- to give you an interview.

- A. is                                      B. are                                      C. were                                      D. have

6. Mary is one of the girls who-----often late for school.

- A. is                                      B. are                                      C. comes                                      D. get

7. Two hours ----- not long enough for this rest.

- A. have                                      B. has                                      C. is                                      D. are

8. Ninety percent of the work ----- been done.  
 A. is                                      B. are                                      C. has                                      D. have
9. Those who ----- to go with me, please raise your hand.  
 A. want                                      B. wants                                      C. wanting                                      D. are wanting
10. Salt and water ----- to wash the wound  
 A. is used                                      B. are used                                      C. was used                                      D. were used
11. The news ----- bad last night.  
 A. were                                      B. was                                      C. has                                      D. has been
12. Three-fifths of the police-----in the school near the town.  
 A. has trained                                      B. have trained                                      C. has been trained                                      D. have been trained
13. ----- not only you but also he going to Japan?  
 A. Are                                      B. Is                                      C. Were                                      D. Was
14. All the books on the shelf -----to me.  
 A. belong                                      B. belongs                                      C. belonging                                      D. is belonging
15. The trousers you bought for me ----- me.  
 A. don't fit                                      B. doesn't fit                                      C. fits                                      D. fit not
16. Mumps \_\_\_\_\_ usually caught by children.  
 A. are                                      B. was                                      C. is                                      D. were
17. The United States \_\_\_\_\_ between Canada and Mexico.  
 A. lying                                      B. lies                                      C. lain                                      D. lie
18. Physics\_\_\_\_\_ us understand the natural laws.  
 A. helps                                      B. help                                      C. have helped                                      D. helped
19. The police \_\_\_\_\_ the robber.  
 A. were arrested                                      B. has arrested                                      C. have arrested                                      D. was arresting
20. The cattle \_\_\_\_\_ in the field.  
 A. is grazing                                      B. grazes                                      C. has grazed                                      D. are grazing

21. Either you or he \_\_\_\_\_ wrong.  
 A. are                      B. were                      C. have been                      D. is
22. John as well as Mary \_\_\_\_\_ very kind.  
 A. were                      B. are                      C. is                      D. have been
23. The doctor with the nurses \_\_\_\_\_ exhausted after the operation.  
 A. were                      B. was                      C. have been                      D. are being
24. Five miles \_\_\_\_\_ not very far.  
 A. is                      B. are                      C. were                      D. have been
25. \_\_\_\_\_ ten years too long?  
 A. Are                      B. Is                      C. Are being                      D. Were
26. Neither his parents nor his teacher \_\_\_\_\_ satisfied with his result.  
 A. are being                      B. were                      C. is                      D. are
27. Each boy and each girl \_\_\_\_\_ a book.  
 A. are having                      B. have had                      C. have                      D. has
28. Writing a lot of letters \_\_\_\_\_ her tired.  
 A. makes                      B. make                      C. have made                      D. are making
29. \_\_\_\_\_ everybody ready to start now?  
 A. Are being                      B. Is being                      C. Is                      D. Are
30. None of the butter in the fridge \_\_\_\_\_ good.  
 A. is being                      B. is                      C. have been                      D. are
31. None of the students \_\_\_\_\_ the test yet.  
 A. have finished                      B. has finished                      C. finished                      D. is finishing
32. A pair of shoes \_\_\_\_\_ under the bed.  
 A. have been                      B. are                      C. are being                      D. is
33. 200 tons of water \_\_\_\_\_ last month.  
 A. was used                      B. had been used                      C. were used                      D. is used

34. In the hotel, the bread and butter \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast.  
 A. is served                      B. are served                      C. serves                      D. serve
35. \_\_\_\_\_ were nice to me when I was in England.  
 A. The Brown's                      B. Brown's                      C. The Browns                      D. Browns

**B. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order to make the sentence correct.**

36. Neither his parents nor his teacher are satisfied with his result when he was at high school.
37. Daisy was the only one of those girls that get the scholarship.
38. Working provide people with personal satisfaction as well as money.
39. Either the doctor or the nurses takes care of changing the patients' bandages.
40. Every student who majors in English are ready to participate in the oratorical contest.
41. One hundreds eight thousand miles is the speed of light.
42. The guest of honour, along with his wife and children, were sitting at the first table when we had a party yesterday.
43. The audience was enjoying every minute of the performance.
44. All the books on the top shelf belongs to me.
45. Five thousand pounds were stolen from the bank.
46. Happiness and success depends on yourself.
47. The loss of her husband and two of her sons were too much for her.
48. David and his brother was indicted yesterday on charges of grand theft.
49. Current research on AIDS, in spite of the best efforts of hundreds of scientists, leave serious questions unanswered.
50. Everyone have to plan a program that fits into the day's schedule and that allows for good exercise and appropriate rest.



### CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3

## DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ (GERUND AND INFINITIVE)

### \* PHẦN I: LÍ THUYẾT

#### I. GERUND:

##### 1. Chức năng:

Là chủ ngữ của câu: **Dancing** bored him

Bổ ngữ của động từ: Her hobby is **painting**

Là bổ ngữ: Seeing is **believing**

Sau giới từ: He is interested in **watching** films on Tv.

Sau một vài động từ: avoid, mind, enjoy.....

##### 2. Một số cách dùng đặc biệt:

###### a. Verb + V-ing: Danh động từ theo sau một số động từ:

Admit: thý nhận	Dread: sợ	Involve: dính lóu, liờn quan
Anticipate: trông mong, mong đợi	Enjoy: thóch thý	Keep: giữ, tiếp
Avoid: tránh	Escape: trốn thoỏt	Mind: phiền
Appreciate: tón thành	Excuse: thứ lỗi	Miss: lỡ, nhớ
Consider: xem xỏt	Fancy: đỏm mê	Mention: đề cập
Delay: hoỏn lại	Finish	Pardon: tha thứ, tha lỗi
Defer: trở hoỏn	Forgive: tha thứ	Prefer
Deny: từ chối	Like: thóch	Prevent: ngỏn ngừa
Detest: ghỏt	Love: yờu thóch	Postpone: hoỏn lại
Dislike: khụng thóch	Imagine: tưởng tượng	Practice: thực hành



Prevent

Propose (= suggest)

Quit: từ bỏ

Recollect: nhớ lại

Resent: căm thù

Recall: gợi nhớ/ recollect

Resume: cho rằng

Resist: kháng cự, ngăn  
cản

Risk: mạo hiểm

Remember/ forget

Suggest: gợi ý

Stop/ begin/ start

Understand: hiểu

Discuss: thảo luận

Hate: ghét

Ex: He admitted **taking** the money.

Avoid over-**eating**

He detests **writing** letters.

He didn't want to risk **getting** wet.

I can't understand his/ him **leaving** his wife.

**Chỳ ý: excuse, forgive, pardon, prevent** khụng trực tiếp theo sau bởi danh động từ mà theo sau bởi:

Possessive adjective/ pronoun + danh động từ hoặc pronoun + preposition + danh động từ

Appreciate thường theo sau bởi tính từ sở hữu hoặc danh động từ ở dạng bị động

Ex: *Forgive my/ me ringing you up so early.*

*Forgive me for ringing you up so early.*

*You can't prevent his/ him spending his own money.*

*You can't prevent him from spending his own money.*

*I appreciate your giving me o much of your time. / I appreciate being given this opportunity.*

### **b. common phrasal verbs + V-ing: (sau một số cụm động từ)**

carry on, end up, give up, go round, keep on, put off, set about...

### **c. Expression + V-ing: Một số thành ngữ theo sau bởi V-ing**

- have fun/ a good time + V-ing: vui vẻ ...

- have trouble/ difficulty + V-ing:

- have a hard time/ difficult time + V-ing

- spend + time/ money + V-ing (present participle)

*He spends 3 hours studying English every day.*

- waste + time/money + V-ing:

- sit + Danh từ nơi chốn + V-ing: she sat at her desk writing a letter

- stand + danh từ nơi chốn + V-ing

- lie + danh từ nơi chốn + Ving

- can't help = can't bear = can't stand = can't resist (khụng thể chịu được)

*I can't bear hearing his lies*

*I can't stand seeing him here*

- it is no good / it is no use (vụ ớch / khụng cú ớch):

**It's no use phoning him at this time**

- there's no point in ...

- What's the point of...

- to be busy      bận rộn

My mother **is busy** cooking in the kitchen.

- to be worth      đáng

This book is **worth** reading

- be use to = get used to = be accustomed to : quen với

- S + prefer + **V-ing** + **to** + **V-ing**: thích làm gì hơn làm gì

= S + would rather Vinf than Vinf

**d. go + gerund** để chỉ một hoạt động đặc biệt nào đó: (Present participle)

- |                        |                |                 |                |              |
|------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|
| - go fishing           | đi câu cá      | go hunting      | go bowling     | go jogging   |
| - go shopping          | đi mua sắm     | go camping      | go sightseeing | go sailing   |
| - go swimming          | đi bơi         | go dancing      | go running     | ....         |
| - go hiking            | đi bộ đó ngoài | go birdwatching | go boating     | go canoening |
| - go mountain climbing |                |                 |                |              |

\* Cụm giới từ theo sau bởi V-ing:

be excited/ worried **about** V-ing

complain  
dream  
talk

} **about/ of** + V-ing

keep (someone)  
prevent (someone)  
stop (someone)

} **from** V-ing

think

apologize  
blame (someone)  
forgive (someone)  
be responsible  
thank (someone)

**for** V-ing

believe  
be interested  
succeed

**in** V-ing

be tired  
be waste

**of** V-ing

in addition  
look forward

**to** V-ing

**\* Preposition +gerund (giới từ +gerund):**

Be interested in (thích thý)

think about (nghĩ về)

apologize for (xin lỗi về)

Insist on (khăng khăng về)

talk about (nói về)

instead of (thay vờ)

Be accustomed to

look forward to (mong đợi)

be / get used to

quen /thích nghi với

be familiar with

**3. The perfect gerund:**

**Form: having Vpp**

The perfect gerund được sử dụng thay the present form of gerund (V-ing) khi chúng ta đề cập tới một hành động đó hoàn tất trong quá khứ:

Ex: He was accused of having stolen her money.

He denied having been there.

**4. The passive gerund:**

**Form: being + past participle (present)**

**Having + been + Vpp (past)**

Ex: She hates **being called** a dull.

*The mountain climbers are in danger of **being killed** by an avalanche.*

*I am interested in **being given** money by my mother.*

*He was punished by **being sent** to bed without any supper.*

*The safe showed no signs of **having been touched**.*

## II. INFINITIVES: Động từ nguyên thể

### 1. Chức năng:

- Làm chủ ngữ của câu: (cùng với các động từ: appear, seem, be)

Ex: **To save money** now seems impossible.

= *It seems impossible to save money (more usual)*

- Làm bổ ngữ của động từ (be):

Ex: His plan is **to keep** the affair secret.

- Làm tân ngữ của động từ:

Ex: He wants **to play**

- Chỉ mục đích: *He learns English **to sing** English songs.*

- Sau một số tính từ:

### 2. Bare infinitive (infinitive without to)

- Được dùng sau động từ **make, have** với nghĩa nguyên cớ (causative)

The Brown made their children clean their room.

The guest had the porters carry their luggage upstairs.

- Được dùng sau động từ giác quan như *see, hear, feel, notice, taste, smell, ...*

We incidentally saw the plane crash into the mountain.

The man noticed his assistant leave work earlier than usual.

\* **chú ý:**

**Feel, hear, see, watch, smell, find + O + Ving (present participle): bắt gặp ai đó đang làm gì**

**Feel, hear, see, watch, smell, find + O + bare inf.: thấy ai đó làm gì**

- Được dùng sau động từ *let* và *help*.

My brother let me use computer.

The parents helped their children set up the tent.

- Được dùng sau các động từ khuyết thiếu và trợ động từ: can, could, will, shall, would, should, used to, had better, need, ought to, do, did ...
- Trong cấu trúc: would rather + bare infinitive/ had better

### 3. To – infinitive:

#### A. To infinitive sau động từ:

**Dạng 1: V + TO INFINITIVE** : Một số động từ theo sau là **to infinitive**

1. agree: đồng ý

2. aim: nhằm mục đích

3. appear: có vẻ

4. arrange: sắp xếp	21. neglect: lơ đãng	38. want
5. ask: yêu cầu	22. offer: đề nghị	39. need
6. attempt: cố gắng	23. plan: cú kế hoạch	40. wait
7. bother: phiền	24. prepare: chuẩn bị	41. expect
8. care: để ý	25. pretend: giả vờ	42. intend
9. choose: chọn	26. proceed: tiếp nối	43. would like/ would love
10. claim: tụng bố	27. promise:	44. beg
11. decide: quyết định	28. prove: chứng tỏ	45. begin/ start
12. demand: yêu cầu	29. refuse: từ chối	46. afford: đủ khả năng
13. determine: định đoạt	30. resolve: nhất quyết	47. be willing
14. fail: thất bại	31. seem:	48. be able
15. guarantee: bảo đảm	32. swear: thề	49. expect
16. happen: xảy ra	33. tend: có xu hướng	50. intend
17. hesitate: do dự	34. threaten: dọa	51. beg: cầu khẩn
18. hope: hy vọng	35. volunteer: tình nguyện	52. prefer
19. learn: học	36. vow: dự dõ	
20. manage: xoay xử	37. wish	

### **Dạng2: V + O + TO INFINITIVE**

- Danh từ/ đại từ làm tân ngữ (objects) đi sau, rồi mới đến “to infinitive”

Vớ dụ:

- She **advised** me to go to the English Club.

\* Một số động từ thường gặp:

+ <b>advise:</b> khuyên	+ <b>allow:</b> cho phẫp
+ <b>ask:</b> yêu cầu.	+ <b>cause:</b> gõy ra.
+ <b>command:</b> yêu cầu, ra lệnh	+ <b>encourage:</b> khuyến khích
+ <b>expect:</b> mong chờ.	+ <b>forbid:</b> cấm
+ <b>force:</b> buộc	+ <b>instruct:</b> chỉ dẫn
+ <b>invite:</b> mời	+ <b>oblige:</b> bắt buộc
+ <b>need:</b> cần	- We need you <u>to help</u> us
+ <b>teach:</b> dạy	- My brother taught me <u>to swim</u>

- + **tell:** bảo.
- + **warn:** cảnh báo
- + **order:** yêu cầu, ra lệnh
- + **request:** yêu cầu
- + **train:** đào tạo, huấn luyện
- + **permit:** cho phép
- + **want:** muốn
- + **remind:** nhắc nhở
- + **persuade:** thuyết phục
- + **show:**
- + **instruct:** chỉ dẫn
- + **remind:** nhắc nhở

**\* NOTES:**

+ **allow / permit / advise/ recommend/ encourage + object + to infinitive**

Ex: She **doesn't allow me to smoke** in her room

+ **allow/ permit/ recommend/ encourage/ advise + gerund**

Ex: She **doesn't allow smoking** in her room

**Dạng3: V + TO INFINITIVE/ GERUND** (một số động từ theo sau bởi to infinitive and gerund)

**Nhóm 1: V + to Infinitive / Gerund (khụng khớc nghĩa)**

- |            |          |          |             |               |
|------------|----------|----------|-------------|---------------|
| - begin    | bắt đầu  | - prefer | thích.. hơn | - can't stand |
| - start    | bắt đầu  | - hate   | ghất        | - can't bear  |
| - continue | tiếp tục | - love   | yêu thích   | - intend      |
| - like     | thóch    | - bother | làm phiền   |               |

Các động từ trên có thể được theo sau bởi to Infinitive hoặc Gerund mà ý nghĩa hÇu nh không đổi.

**Vớ dụ:**

- He **began to laugh**

= He **began laughing**

**Chỳ ý:**

**a) Khụng nờn dưng:** It's beginning raining

Nờn núi: It is begining to rain

**b) Động từ nguyên mẫu thường mang ý nghĩa của một mục đích, một dự tính trong tương lai, trong khi danh động từ mang ý nghĩa một kinh nghiệm sẵn cú. Cách sử dụng chúng đôi khi rất tinh tế như sau:**

**Vớ dụ**

- I like to meet the public

(Tôi thích gặp công chúng – Tôi thấy nên gặp, cần gặp → dự định)

- I like meeting the public

(Tụi thóch gặp cụng chýng. Tụi thấy vui khi gặp và tụi lụn làm thế).

## Nhóm 2: V + infinitive / Gerund (khỏc nghĩa)

remember, forget, regret, try, stop, need, go on

### a. NEED

**Need to do** = *it is necessary to do*: cần phải làm (động từ nguyên mẫu mang nghĩa chủ động)

**Need doing** = *need to be done*: cần phải được làm (động từ nguyên mẫu mang nghĩa bị động)

- ❖ Tom **needs to work** harder. (It is necessary for Tom to work harder.)
- ❖ The grass in front of the house **needs cutting**. (The grass in front of the house needs to be cut.)

### b. STOP

**Stop to do** = *stop in order to do*: dừng lại để làm việc gì khỏc

**Stop doing** = *not to do something any longer*: dừng làm việc gì đó (đang làm)

- ❖ They **stopped to look** at the pictures.
- ❖ They **stopped smoking** because it is bad for their health.

### c. REGRET/ REMEMBER/ FORGET:

**Remember/forget/regret + to V: nhớ/quỏn/tiếc sẽ phải làm gỡ (ở hiện tại và tương lai)**

\* Remember **to send** this letter (hỏy nhớ gửi bức thư này). Don't forget **to buy** flowers (đừng quên mua hoa đấy)

\* I regret **to inform** you that the train was canceled (tỏi rất tiếc phải báo tin cho anh rằng chuyến tàu đó bị hủy bỏ)

**Remember/forget/regret + V-ing: nhớ/quên/tiếc đó làm gỡ (ở quá khứ).**

I paid her \$2. I still remember that. I still remember **paying** her \$2 (tỏi nhớ đó trả cụ ấy 2 đô la).

She will never forget **meeting** the Queen (cụ ấy khụng bao giờ quỏn lần gặp nữ hoàng)

He regrets **leaving** school early. It is the biggest mistake in his life.

### d. TRY



**Try to do:** cố gắng làm

**Try doing:** thử làm

- ❖ She **tries to pass** the entrance exam to the college of pharmacy.
- ❖ I've got a terrible headache. I **try taking** some aspirins but they didn't help.

e. **GO ON:**

**Go on doing s. th.:** tiếp tục làm cùng một việc gỡ đó.

**Go on to do s. th.:** làm hay nối việc gỡ khác

- ❖ The Minister went on talking for two hours.
- ❖ We must change our ways. We can't go on living like this.
- ❖ After discussing the economy, the Minister went on to talk about foreign policy.

f. **MEAN**

Mean + to V = intend to V: dự định làm gỡ đó

Mean + V-ing = involve: bao gồm, bao hàm, cú nghĩa là

**B. To infinitive sau một số tính từ:**

❖ Trong cấu trúc sau: **IT + BE + ADJECTIVE + TO INFINITIVE**

Vớ dụ:

- It's **difficult to find** their house      Thật khú tìm ra nhà của họ
- It's **dangerous to drive** fast      Lỗi xe nhanh thờ nguy hiểm.
- It's **important to learn** English      Học tiếng Anh thờ rất quan trọng

Có hai dạng tương đương như sau:

= **To infinitive + be + Adjective**

**Gerund**

Vớ dụ:

- It's exciting **to play** football      Chơi bóng đá thật thú vị.
- = **to play** football is exciting
- = **playing** football is exciting

❖ **To infinitive sau 1 số tính từ:**

Able, unable, happy, delighted (vui vẻ), easy, lovely, glad, sorry, eager (hỏ hức), amazed (ngạc nhiên), pleased (hài lũng), disappointed, surprised, willing (sẵn lũng), certain (chắc chắn)

❖ Trong câu trệc:

\* S + be/ get/ look/ seem/ become... + too + Adj +(for O) + to infi.

S + V (thường) + too + Adv +(for O) + to infi.

Ex: The water in this glass is too hot to drink.

*This coffee is too hot for me to drink.*

*He runs too slowly to catch the bus.*

\*S + be + Adj + enough (for O) + to infi.

S + V (thường) + Adv + enough (for O) + to infi.

Ex: *He is old enough to get married.*

*He's intelligent enough to get good marks.*

*They speak slowly enough to understand.*

\* so + adjective + as + infinitive

Ex: He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked.

\*It + cost/ take + O + to infinitive...

Ex: *It would cost millions/ take years to rebuild the castle.*

C. Sau một số từ để hỏi:

Verb + how/what/when/where/ which/why + infinitive

Những động từ sử dụng công thức này là **ask, decide, discover, find out, forget, know, learn, remember, see, show + object, think, understand, want to know, wonder.**

Ex : *He discovered how to open the safe.*

*I found out where to buy fruit cheaply.*

*She couldn't think what to say*

*I showed her which button to press.*

*She wondered whether to write or phone.*

D. Chỉ mục đích:

Ex: He tried to study hard in order to / so as to / to pass every exam

E. Noun + to infinitive (replace a relative clause)

Ex: 1. I have many things **which I must do/ to do**

2. She is always the last **to go/ who goes**

F. S + V + Đại từ bất định + To V

(anywhere, anybody, anything, somebody, something, somewhere, nobody, nothing, nowhere, everything, everybody, everywhere)

Ex: Is there anywhere to go?

He has got nothing to eat

### G. Sau một số cụm từ sau:

be about:định, sẽ

be able: có thể

do one's best: cố gắng

make an/ every effort: nỗ lực

make up one's mind: quyết định

can't afford

*Ex: He is just about to leave*

*We can't afford to live in the centre*

### H. Thay cho một mệnh đề quan hệ:

- Động từ nguyên thể có thể được sử dụng sau **the first, the second..., the last, the only** và thành thạo sau so sánh hơn nhất

*Ex: He loves parties; he is always the first who comes and the last who leaves.*

= *He loves parties; he is always the first to come and the last to leave*

*He is the second one to be killed in this way.*

### 4. The perfect infinitive:

+ **Form: to have + Vpp**

+ **Use:**

- Dùng với was/ were để diễn tả một kế hoạch chưa thực hiện được

Ex: The house was to have been ready today (but it isn't)

- Dùng sau would/ would like để diễn tả một điều ước vẫn chưa hoàn thiện

Ex: He would like to have seen it (but it was impossible)

- Dùng với một số động từ: appear, happen, pretend, seem, believe, consider, find, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand...

### III. PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND GERUND:

+ **Passive gerund: being + past participle**

*Ex: She hates being called a dull.*

*The mountain climbers are in danger of being killed by an avalanche.*

*I am interested in being given money by my mother.*

**+ Passive infinitive: to be + past participle**

*Ex: I hoped to be invited to the party.*

*He refused to be taken to hospital.*

*She doesn't want to be asked personal questions*

→ Được dùng để nhấn mạnh hành động/ sự kiện hơn là tác nhân gây ra hành động

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**Exercise 1: Multiple choice**

1. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ alone.  
a. be                      b. to be                      c. being                      d. to have been
2. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to the party?  
a. to come                      b. come                      c. coming                      d. to have come
3. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ such a long way to work everyday?  
a. to travel                      b. travel                      c. to have travelled                      d. travelling
4. I don't like that house. I would hate \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
a. live                      b. living                      c. to live                      d. to have lived
5. Sometimes I would like \_\_\_\_\_ to play the piano.  
a. to learn                      b. learning                      c. learn                      d. to have learned
6. Please remember \_\_\_\_\_ this letter.  
a. to post                      b. post                      c. posting                      d. to have posted
7. We tried \_\_\_\_\_ the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire- brigade.  
a. putting                      b. put                      c. to put                      d. to have put
8. Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember \_\_\_\_\_ it by the window and now it has gone.  
a. leave                      b. to leave                      c. to have left                      d. leaving
9. Jane needed some money. She tried \_\_\_\_\_ Harry but he couldn't help her.  
a. to have asked                      b. to ask                      c. asking                      d. ask
10. Please tell me how \_\_\_\_\_ this  
a. do                      b. to do                      c. doing                      d. to have done
11. One is never too old \_\_\_\_\_  
a. to learn                      b. learning                      c. learn                      d. to have learned
12. You are old enough \_\_\_\_\_ out alone.  
a. going                      b. to go                      c. to have gone                      d. go

13. I'm glad \_\_\_\_\_ you  
 a. to meet            b. meet                    c. meeting                d. to have met
14. It's nice \_\_\_\_\_ you  
 a. to know            b. know                    c. knowing                d. to have known
15. We stopped \_\_\_\_\_ hello to her.  
 a. say                    b. to say                    c. saying                    d. to have said
16. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ those things.  
 a. buy                    b. buying                    c. to buy                    d. to be bought
17. After \_\_\_\_\_, she invited the audience to ask questions.  
 a. finish                b. finished                c. finishing                d. to finish
18. Robbins started \_\_\_\_\_ a few years ago.  
 a. to jog                b. jogging                c. jog                        d. A and B are correct
19. I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ some more mathematics puzzles.  
 a. do                    b. to do                    c. doing                    d. done
20. My computer needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. repair                b. to repair                c. repairing                d. repaired
21. I want ----- at home tonight  
 a. staying                b. to stay                    c. stay                        d. stayed
22. Alice isn't interested in ----- for a new job  
 a. look                    b. to look                    c. looks                    d. looking
23. We're going out for dinner. Would you like ----- us?  
 a. joining                b. to join                    c. join                        d. joins
24. When Beth got tired, she stopped -----  
 a. working                b. to work                    c. work                        d. works
25. Don't forget ----- the letter I gave you yesterday  
 a. post                    b. posting                    c. posts                    d. to post
26. Her boss refuses ----- her a raise  
 a. giving                b. to give                    c. give                        d. a & b correct
27. She enjoys ----- with many people  
 a. work                    b. working                    c. to work                    d. works
28. Mary was in a difficult situation, so he agreed ----- her some money  
 a. to lend                b. lend                        c. lending                    d. a & c correct
29. They sometimes avoid ----- him  
 a. meeting                b. meet                        c. to meet                    d. meets
30. It was a nice day, so we decided ----- for a walk  
 a. going                    b. go                        c. to go                        d. goes

31. Would you mind ----- the door? Thanks  
 a. opening            b. open                    c. opens                    d. to open
32. The man wanted to avoid..... on security cameras.  
 a. to see                b. seeing                    c. to be seen                d. being seen
33. I tried..... the bus, but I missed it.  
 a. to catch            b. catching                c. to be caught            d. being caught
34. The plants want..... daily.  
 a. to water            b. watering                c. to be watered            d. both b and c
35. Will you remind me..... this letter at the post office?  
 a. to post              b. posting                c. to be posted            d. being posted
36. The goods ought..... two weeks ago.  
 a. to deliver            b. delivering              c. to be delivered            d. being delivered
37. I have expected..... the secret of happiness.  
 a. to tell                b. telling                    c. to be told                d. being told
38. John had agreed..... me in his office.  
 a. to meet              b. meeting                c. to be met                d. being met
39. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ when I am not there.  
 a. criticizing            b. being criticized            c. to criticize              d. to be criticized
40. She expected \_\_\_\_\_ to the principal.  
 a. to introduce            b. being introduced            c. to be introduced            d. being introduced
41. Tom was sad about \_\_\_\_\_ in class yesterday.  
 a. punishing            b. being punished            c. to be punished            d. punished
42. You shouldn't make your son \_\_\_\_\_ too much.  
 a. study                b. studied                c. to study                d. studying
- 43 John had agreed..... me in his office.  
 a. to meet              b. meeting                c. to be met                d. being met
44. It's important for the figures..... regularly.  
 a. to update            b. updating                c. to be updated            d. being updated
45. It is no good..... sorry for yourself.  
 a. to feel                b. feeling                    c. feel                      d. felt
46. Peter regrets .....Marry's birthday party

a. not to attend    b. not attending    c. not to be attending    d. not to be attended

47. Will you remind me..... this letter at the post office?

a. to post    b. posting    c. to be posted    d. being posted

48. I shall never forget-----with you to Paris last year.

a. staying    b. to staying    c. to stay    d. stayed

49. I am looking forward to -----you.

a. having seen    b. seeing    c. to see    d. all are wrong

50. I am always remember----- off the lights before I leave my house.

a. turning    b. to turn    c. turned    d. being turned

51. She was able.....English when she was very young.

a. to sing    b. sing    c. singing    d. sang

52. Could you please stop ..... so much noise?

a. make    b. to make    c. made    d. making

53. She said that she had talked to me but I didn't remember .....her before.

a. seeing    b. to see    c. not seeing    d. see

54. Let your name..... in the sheet of paper.

a. write    b. be written    c. written    d. to write

55. We hoped..... by our teacher.

a. to help    b. helping    c. to be helped    d. being helped

## Exercise 2: Sentence transformation

56. My teacher wouldn't let me leave early.

A. My teacher refused to let me leave early.

B. My teacher refused letting me leave early.

C. My teacher allowed me to leave early.

D. My teacher permitted me to leave early.

57. It is your duty to tell him what to do.

A. You are supposed to tell him what to do.

B. You are given the duty to tell him what he has to do.

C. It is said that you tell him what to do.

D. Please tell him what he has to do.

58. It is pointless to try to make him change his mind.

- A. It is a waste of time trying and making him change his mind.
- B. It is a waste of time to try and make him change his mind.
- C. There is no time to try to make him change his mind.
- D. There is no time trying to make him change his mind.

59. I want to know the depth of the river at this point.

- A. I want to know how the river is deep at this point.
- B. I want to know how deep is the river at this point.
- C. I want to know how deep the river is at this point.
- D. I want to know how the deep river is at this point.

60. The tea wasn't sweet enough for Betty to drink.

- A. Betty didn't like to drink the sweet tea.
- B. Betty couldn't drink the tea. She liked more sugar.
- C. There wasn't enough tea, and Betty had nothing to drink.
- D. Betty drank some of the tea but not enough.

61. You had better take some medicine.

- A. You ought to drink medicine.
- B. You must take a number of tablets.
- C. You have to have some medicine.
- D. You should have some medicine.

62. The doctor advised him to go the local hospital for a check-up.

- A. He was advised to go to the international hospital for a check-up.
- B. He was advised to go to the hospital where he is now living for a check-up.
- C. He was advised to go to the best hospital for a check-up.
- D. For a check-up, he was told to stay at home.

63. It's a waste of time trying to explain anything to Tony.

- A. Tony should be given explanation.
- B. It's not worth trying to explain anything to Tony.
- C. To save time, explain it to Tony.
- D. It's well worth trying to explain things to Tony.



64. I couldn't help laughing when he told me that story.

- A. I couldn't resist laughing when he told me that story.
- B. I couldn't help him tell that story.
- C. I did not laugh when hearing that story.
- D. The story he told me not help at all.

65. We think he was in London last year.

- A. He was thought to be in London last year.
- B. He was thought to have been in London last year.
- C. He is thought to be in London last year.
- D. He is thought to have been in London last year.

66. There's no point in persuading him to do this.

- A. he is able to do this although he does not want to.
- B. It would be useful to persuade him to do this.
- C. I enjoy persuading him to do this.
- D. It is useless to persuade him to do this.

67. The court found the man innocent of murdering his wife.

- A. The man was judged not guilty of killing his wife.
- B. The man was found murdered by his wife.
- C. The court found a murdered man and his wife.
- D. The court decided that the man had killed his wife.

**Exercise 3: Find a mistake in the four underlined parts A,B,C or D of each sentence.**

68. I decided to change jobs because my boss makes me work over time.

- A                  B    C                  D

69. Get more exercise appears to be the best way to lose weight.

- A                          B                  C    D

70. Let's stop to watch so much TV so that we can read or go out instead.

- A                  B    C                  D

71. I advise you starting looking for a flat at once.

- A                  B                  C    D

72. He postponed to make a decision till it was too late to do anything.

A B C D

73. It is extremely important for an engineer to know to use a computer.

A B C D

74. There's no point having a car if you never use it.

A B C D

75. I'd like him going to a university, but I can't make him go.

A B C D

76. Simon finds it hard for making friends with other children.

A B C D

77. During a curfew it is not possible walking on the streets after a specified hour.

A B C D

78. His teacher encouraged him talking part in the international piano competition.

A B C D

79. Don't let the children to stay up too late.

A B C D

80. We were made doing a lot of homework at our school.

A B C D

**KEYS:**

- |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C  | 2. A  | 3. D  | 4. C  | 5. A  | 6. A  | 7. C  |
| 8. D  | 9. C  | 10. B | 11A   | 12. B | 13. A | 14. A |
| 15. B | 16. B | 17. C | 18. D | 19. C | 20. C | 21. B |
| 22. D | 23. B | 24. A | 25. D | 26. B | 27. B | 28. A |
| 29. A | 30. C | 31. A | 32. D | 33. A | 34. D | 35. A |
| 36. C | 37. C | 38. A | 39. D | 40. C | 41. B | 42. A |
| 43. A | 44. C | 45. B | 46. B | 47. A | 48. A | 49. B |
| 50. B | 51. A | 52. D | 53. A | 54. B | 55. C | 56. A |

57. A	58. A	59. C	60. B	61. D	62. B	63. B
64. A	65. D	66. D	67. A	68. D	69. A	70. B
71. A	72. A	73. D	74. B	75. A	76. C	77. B
78. B	79. C	80. B				

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4

### CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH (SUBJUNCTIVE)

#### **\* PHẦN I: LÍ THUYẾT**

#### **PART A- CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**

#### **I/ GRAMMAR:**

##### **1, Conditional sentences: TYPE 1:**

a) use: câu điều kiện loại 1 cũn được gọi là câu điều kiện có thực ở hiện tại. Điều kiện có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

b) Form:

**If + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + Will(can,may) + V (nguyên mẫu).**

**(S + Will(can,may) + V(nguyên mẫu) + If + S + V(hiện tại đơn).**

Ex: If it is sunny,I will go fishing.

If she gets up late,she will miss the bus.

#### **\* Câu điều kiện mệnh lệnh**

**If S + V<sub>1</sub>, V<sub>2</sub>**

– Dạng câu điều kiện này dùng để nêu một yêu cầu, một mệnh lệnh mà người nói muốn người nghe thực hiện nếu điều kiện được nêu xảy ra.

– Dạng câu mệnh lệnh chỉ có thể dùng với câu điều kiện loại I.

– Cuối câu ta đặt một dấu chấm than, biểu thị cho thức mệnh lệnh.

– Khi dùng dạng câu này, mệnh đề điều kiện vẫn giữ nguyên, riêng mệnh đề chính sẽ được chuyển thành mệnh đề mệnh lệnh bằng cách sử dụng nguyên động từ và khuyết đi chủ ngữ.

Ex: If you meet him, tell him to write to me!

Ex: Don't go outside the harbor if the wind is strong.

##### **2/ Conditional sentences:TYPE 2:**

a) use: câu điều kiện loại 2 dùng để diễn tả một hành động không có thật ở hiện tại.

b) Form:

**If + S + V(quá khứ đơn) , S +Would (could, might..) + V(nguyên mẫu).**

**(S +Would(could, might) + V(nguyên mẫu) + If +S +V (quá khứ đơn)).**

c) Note: Động từ trong mệnh đề điều kiện nếu là động từ tobe thì ta dùng were cho tất cả các chủ ngữ.  
Ex. If I were you , I would go abroad.

If I knew his address, I would give it to you.

3/ **Conditional sentences:** Type 3.

a/ use: Diễn tả hành động không có thật ở quá khứ.

b/ Form:

**If +S +had +V(PII), S + Would (could,might) + have + V(PII).**

**(S + Would (could, might) +have +V(PII) +IF + S +had +V (PII).**

Ex:If he had studied harder for that test,he would have passed it

4/ **Một số trường hợp câu điều kiện đặc biệt**

a/ **CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN KẾT HỢP**

**Form: If + S + had + P2, S + would have + P2**

Ex: 1. If I **hadn't stayed** up late **last night**, I **wouldn't be** so tired **now**.

2. You **wouldn't be** so hungry if you **had had** breakfast this morning

→ Trong trường hợp này, mệnh đề **If** chia động từ ở loại 3, **mệnh đề chính** chia động từ ở loại 2

b/**CẤU TRÚC ĐẢO NGỮ CỦA CÂU ĐK**

\* **Đảo ngữ đk loại 1**

**Should + S + Vinfinitive, S + Will + Vinfinitive**

\* **Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 2:**

**Were + S + (to + Vinfinitive), S + Would + Vinfinitive**

If I learnt Russian, I would read a Russian book.

=> Were I to learn Russian, I would read a Russian book

\* **Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 3:**

**Had + S + P2, S + would have + P2**

Ex: If Ann **had** found the right buyer, she would have sold the house.

→ **Had** Ann found the right buyer, she would have sold the house

\* **Đảo ngữ của câu điều kiện kết hợp:**

**Had + S + P2, S + would Vinfinitive**

c/**CÁC CÁCH KHÁC ĐỂ DIỄN TẢ ĐIỀU KIỆN**

\* **Imperative (mệnh lệnh) + or/and + S + V(simple future).**

Ex: Prepare the lesson carefully or you will get a bad mark.

= If you don't prepare the lesson carefully, you will get a bad mark.

\* **Unless = If.... not (Trừ khi)**

If he doesn't come, I will bring this package to him

Unless he comes, I will bring this package to him

\* **In case (Phũng khi điều gỡ đó xảy ra)**

Trong mệnh đề theo sau In case thường dùng thờ hiện tại đơn hoặc quá khứ đơn, không dùng will hoặc would

I always take an umbrella in case it rains

\* **Dụng With/Without/ But for**

With/ Without/ But for + a noun/ a noun phrase

Eg: If you help me, I can finish this assignment

= With your help, I can finish this assignment

**Without** water, life wouldn't exist

= If **there were no** water, life wouldn't exist.

\* **As long as/ So long as/ Provided (that)/ Providing (that)/ On condition that + Clause (Miễn là/ với điều kiện)**

Ex: As long as you drive carefully, you can use my car.

= If you drive carefully, you can use my car.

\* **Otherwise (Nếu khụng thờ): Dùng để thay thế cho vế If và liên quan đến một ý tưởng của câu trước.**

(Trước Otherwise thường có dấu; hoặc dấu, sau otherwise có dấu,)

Eg: You must read the instruction; otherwise, you don't know how to do it

## **PART B - WISH / IF ONLY**

### **I- PHẦN LÍ THUYẾT**

Wish và if only thường được để diễn đạt ước muốn (if only mạnh mẽ và rừ ràng hơn wish). Sau wish và only là một mệnh đề chỉ sự ao ước một ĐK không có thật. Mệnh đề sau wish và if only được xem như một mệnh đề danh từ.

Sau wish /only có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở hiện tại, quá khứ và tương lai.

#### **1. Ao ước ở hiện tại (present wish).**

a. Cấu trúc:

**S + WISH (es) /IF ONLY + S+ V (past subjunctive)**

**(be ☐ were)**

b. CÁCH DÙNG: diễn đạt mong ước về một điều không có thật hoặc không thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại.

Eg1: I wish I lived nearer. Then we could meet more often. (I'm sorry that I don't live nearer)

Eg2: Cathy wishes she had blond hair. (Cathy is sorry that she doesn't have blond hair)

- Would không được dùng để diễn đạt mong muốn ở hiện tại, nhưng chúng ta có thể dùng could.

Eg3: You're brilliant. I wish I could play the guitar like you. (I'm sorry that I can't play the guitar like you)

## 2. Ao ước ở quá khứ (past wish)

a. cấu trúc:

**S + WISH(es) /IF ONLY + S+ V (past perfect subjunctive)**

b. CÁCH DÙNG: diễn đạt mong ước về một điều đã xảy ra trong quá khứ hoặc diễn đạt sự hối tiếc về một điều gì đó đã xảy ra.

Eg: I wish I had never told him my secret. (I'm sorry that I told him my secret)

Eg: Santiago wishes he hadn't spent so much money last night. (Santiago regrets spending so much money last night)

-Chúng ta có thể dùng could have +past participle để vào ước về quá khứ khi chủ ngữ trước và sau wish là một người hay một vật.

Eg: I wish I could have been at the wedding, but I was in New York.

## 3. Ao ước ở tương lai (future wish)

a. Cấu trúc:

**S + WISH(es) /IF ONLY + S+ would/ could /might + V (bare-infinitive)**

b. CÁCH DÙNG: mong muốn điều gì đó xảy ra hoặc muốn người nào đó làm điều gì đó.

Eg: I wish it would stop snowing.

Eg: I wish Mark would call me back.

Eg: I wish more people would read my blog.

Chỳ ý: I wish.... woud... đợc dùng khi nói về hành động và sự thay đổi, would không đợc nói về một tỡnh trạng

Eg: I wish something exciting would happen.

### **PART C: Một số cấu trúc giả định khác**

1. Clause after AS IF, AS THOUGH:

\* AS IF, AS THOUGH có nghĩa là “như thế, dường như”

\* Hai từ nỡi trên đứng trước một mệnh đề chỉ một điều không thật hoặc trái với thực tế.

#### **a/Điều không có thật ở hiện tại**

S + V + as if /as though + V past subjunctive (V-ed/ were).

Eg: The old lady dresses as if it were winter even in the summer (It is not winter).

+ She walks as though she studied modeling. (She didn't study modeling).

+ He acts as though he were rich. (He is not rich).

#### **b/Điều không có thật ở quá khứ**

S + V + as if /as though + V past perfect subjunctive /(had + V-ed/ (pp)).

Eg: + Tom looked very tired as if he worked very hard.

+ The child ate as though he had been hungry for a long time.

+ He looked as if he hadn't taken a bath for month.

**Note:** Past Subjunctive (quá khứ giả định) có hỡnh thức giống thờ Simple past nhưng với động từ TO BE thờ phải đổi thành WERE cho tất cả các ngôi.

- Past Perfect Subjunctive (quá khứ hoàn thành giả định) cú hỡnh thức giống thờ Past perfect.

- Động từ đứng trước as if/as though có thể ở thờ hiện tại hoặc quá khứ mà không có sự thay đổi thờ trong mệnh đề giả định

Eg: He talks/talked as if he knew everything.

Eg: He looks /looked as though he hadn't a decent meal for a month.

- Trong mệnh đề so sánh (mệnh đề chỉ cách thức và mệnh đề chính có cùng chủ ngữ), chúng ta có thể dùng as if /as though theo sau bởi một phân từ (present /past participle) hoặc động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to – infinitive).

### **2. It's time, It's high time**

*It's time/it's high time* có thể được theo sau bởi:

a. Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive)

**It's time/ It's high time + (for + Object) + to-infinitive**

E. x: It's time **to buy** a new car. (*Đó đến lúc phải mua xe mới rồi.*)

It's high time **for the children to go** to bed. (*Đó đến giờ bọn trẻ đi ngủ rồi*)

b. Mệnh đề (động từ chia ở quá khứ nhưng mang nghĩa hiện tại)

**It's time/ It's high time + S + V - past simple**

E. x: Ten o'clock - It's time you **went** home.

(*10 giờ rồi - Đó đến lúc các bạn phải về nhà*)

It's high time the children were in bed.

(*Đó đến giờ bọn trẻ đi ngủ*)

Lưu ý: *Were* có thể được thay cho *Was*.

E. x: It's time I **was/were** in bed

### **3. Would rather**

a. *Would rather* (*thích ... hơn*) được dùng để diễn đạt những gì mà một người nào đó muốn thực hiện trong một tình huống cụ thể (khung được dùng trong trường hợp tổng quát). *Would rather* (do) = *Would prefer* (to do).

\* ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

**S + would rather (+not) + V\_bare infinitive ..... (+ than+ V\_bare infinitive)**

E. x: I **would rather stay** at home tonight. (*Tối nay tôi thích ở nhà.*)

**Would** you **rather have** tea or coffee? (*Bạn thích dùng trà hay cà phê hơn?*)

I'm tired. **I'd rather not go out** this evening.

(*Tụi mệt. Chiều nay tôi không thích đi chơi.*)

John **would rather go** for a swim than play tennis.

(*John thích đi bơi hơn chơi quần vợt.*)

**We'd rather walk** than take a bus. (*Chúng tôi thích đi bộ hơn là đi xe buýt.*)



\*Ở quá khứ

**S + would rather (+not) + have + V\_past participle (+ than)**

E. x: We went by sea but I'd **rather have gone** by air.

(Chúng tôi đó đi bằng tàu thủy nhưng tôi thích đi bằng xe máy hơn.)

→ I wanted to go by air but I didn't get my wish.

Tommy **would rather have gone** skiing than fishing last week.

(Tuần trước, Tommy đó thích đi trượt tuyết hơn là đi câu)

→ But he didn't get his wish

b. Would rather (*mong muốn*) cũn được dùng để diễn đạt nghĩa một người muốn người khác làm điều gì đó.

\*Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

**S + would rather (that) + S + V \_past simple**

E. x: I'd rather you **went** home now. (*Tụi muốn anh về nhà ngay bây giờ*)

I'd rather you **didn't tell** anyone what I said.

(*Tụi khụng muốn bạn kể với bất kỳ ai những gì tụi đó nói.*)

We'd rather she **was/were** here tomorrow.

(*Chúng tôi muốn cô ta có mặt ở đây ngày mai.*)

\*Ở quá khứ

**S + would rather (that) + S + V \_past perfect**

E. x: Roberto would rather we **hadn't left** yesterday.

(*Roberto muốn hôm qua chúng tôi không ra đi.*)

→ but we left yesterday.

I would rather you **had met** my future wife.

(*Tôi muốn là bạn đó gặp vợ sắp cưới của tôi*)

→ but you didn't meet

c. Diễn tả sự việc ở hiện tại (present subjunctive):

Là loại câu người thứ nhất muốn người thứ hai làm việc gì (nhưng làm hay không cũn phụ thuộc vào người thứ hai). Xem thêm về cấu cầu khiến ở phần sau. Trong trường hợp này động từ ở mệnh đề hai để ở dạng nguyên thể bỏ to. Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định đặt not trước nguyên thể bỏ to.

**S1 + would rather that + S2 + [verb in simple form] ...**

E. x: I would rather that you call me tomorrow.

He would rather that I not take this train.

Ngữ pháp nói ngày nay đặc biệt là ngữ pháp Mỹ cho phép bỏ that trong cấu trúc này mà vẫn giữ nguyên hình thức giả định

#### **4. Present subjunctive (Hiện tại bàng thái)**

- Được dùng trong mệnh đề “that” đứng sau một số động từ chỉ các cảm giác mạnh như: to demand (đòi hỏi), to request (yêu cầu), to insist (nài nỉ), to recommend (khuyến nghị, đề nghị), và các từ ngữ it is essential (điều cốt yếu là), it is necessary (điều cần thiết là), it is important (việc quan trọng là)... để nhấn mạnh.
- Động từ trong mệnh đề “that” ở dạng nguyên thể  
Eg: I demand(ed) that he be here on time.  
It is necessary that he take the exam.
- Hiện tại bàng thái cách cũng thường được thay thế bởi should + infinitive  
I request(ed) that I should be given more time to consider the matter further.

#### **5. Past subjunctive (quá khứ bàng thái)**

- được dùng trong mệnh đề “that” đứng sau động từ wish diễn tả ước muốn ước ao ở hiện tại, trái với thực tế

I wish (that) I had a car now.

### **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

#### **Exercise 1: Choose the word or phrase that best complete the sentence (A,B,C or D)**

1) If that hat costs much, I .....a small one.

- A. would have bought      B. will buy      C. bought      D. would buy.

2) If you .....more carefully,you wouldn't have had so many accidents.

- A. drive      B. drove      C. had driven      D. driven

3) If I spoke English, my job .....a lot easier.

- A. was      B. were      C. will be      D. would be

4. If he ..... to London yesterday, he ..... his old friend

- A. went / would meet      B. go / would meet  
C. had gone / would have met      D. went / would have met

5. I will lend them some money If they ..... me.

- A. ask                                      B. will ask                                      C. asked                                      D. had asked

6. If we had known who he was, we ..... him to speak at our meeting.

- A. would have invited                      B. have invited                      C. will invite                      D. would invite

7. My dog will bark if it ..... any strange sound.

- A. hear                                      B. hears                                      C. heard                                      D. had heard.

8. If I ..... enough money,I will buy a house.

- A. had                                      B. had had                                      C. will have                                      D. have

9. If you ..... away, I will send for a policeman.

- A. not go                                      B. don't go                                      C. hadn't gone                                      D. didn't go

10. If I .....in your place, I would accept Mr Anderson's invitation.

- A. were                                      B. am                                      C. be                                      D. was

11. What ..... we do if they don't come tomorrow?

- A. would                                      B. will                                      C. did                                      D. had

12. If I ..... you, I would tell the truth.

- A. is                                      B. am                                      C. were                                      D. was

13. If I had enough time now, I ..... to my parents.

- A. would write                                      B. write                                      C. will write                                      D. wrote

14. It's too bad Helen isn't here. If she ..... here, she ..... what to do.

- A. is / will know                                      B. was / knows  
C. were / would know                                      D. are / would have known

15. If she ..... late again, she will lose her job.

- A. come                                      B. came                                      C. comes                                      D. had come

16. I will let you know if I ..... out what's happening.

- A. find                                      B. finds                                      C. found                                      D. had found

17. If we ..... in a town, life would be better.

- A. live                                      B. lived                                      C. would live                                      D. had lived

18. I'm sure he wouldn't mind if we .....early.

- A. arrive                                      B. arriving                                      C. arrived                                      D. had arrived

19. If I won the lottery, I ..... you half the money.

- A. gave                      B. had given                      C. will give                      D. would give
20. It ..... be a pity if she married Fred.
- A. will                      B. would                      C. can                      D. may
21. If I'm free on Saturday, I ..... to the mountains.
- A. to go                      B. could go                      C. went                      D. can go
22. we ..... you if we have time.
- A. will phone                      B. would phone                      C. phoned                      D. had phoned
23. If I ..... you, I would help them.
- A. am                      B. will be                      C. were                      D. had been
24. I could have understood him if he ..... more slowly.
- A. speaks                      B. spoke                      C. had spoken                      D. would speak
25. If I had known that you were in hospital, I ..... you.
- A. will visit                      B. would have visited                      C. visit                      D. don't visit
26. I wouldn't have believed it if I ..... it with my own eyes.
- A. had seen                      B. saw                      C. hadn't seen                      D. didn't see
27. What would you have done if the lift ..... struck between two floors at that time.
- A. had got                      B. got                      C. gets                      D. getting
28. If I ..... that the traffic lights were red, I .....
- A. had realized / would have stopped                      B. had realized / wouldn't have stopped
- C. realized / would stop                      C. realize / will not stop
29. If we have some eggs, I ..... you a cake.
- A. made                      B. makes                      C. will make                      D. would make
30. If you ..... so busy, I would have shown you how to play.
- A. hadn't been                      B. weren't                      C. aren't                      D. wouldn't be.

**Exercise 2: Choose the best answer.**

1. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- A. would never have believed                      B. don't believe
- C. hadn't believed                      D. can't believe
2. Put all the toys away..... someone slips and falls on them.
- A. provided that                      B. unless                      C. in case                      D. so long as

3. Many argue that the world will never make the switch to cleaner forms of energy..... easily obtainable soil sources remain.

- A. suppose that            B. providing that            C. unless            D. as long as

4. .... you to be offered that job, would you have to move to another city?

- A. should            B. Were            C. had            D. Provided that

5. You will find their house \_\_\_\_\_ you take a good street map with you.

- A. as long as            B. even if            C. if only            D. otherwise:

6. You'd better stop spending money, \_\_\_\_\_ you will end up in debt

- A. unless            B. otherwise            C. if            D. in case

7. Henry \_\_\_\_\_ a rich man today if he had been more careful in the past.

- A. will have been            B. will be            C. would have been            D. would be

8. \_\_\_\_\_ you visit him, give him my best wishes.

- A. Could            B. Would            C. Should            D. Might

9. Were she ten years younger, she \_\_\_\_\_ the beauty contest.

- A. will enter            B. had entered            C. would enter            D. would have entered

10. If it..... their encouragement, he could have given it up.

- A. had been for            B. hadn't been            C. hadn't been for            D. wouldn't have been for

11. \_\_\_\_\_ any employee be ill, they must call the office to inform their head of departure.

- A. Were            B. Should            C. Had            D. If

12. If Lucy's car \_\_\_\_\_ down, she would be here right now.

- A. didn't break            B. hadn't broken            C. wouldn't have been            D. doesn't break

13. Harry would certainly have attended the proceedings \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. if he didn't get a flat tyre            B. had he not had a flat tyre  
C. had the tyre not flattened itself            D. if the flat tyre didn't happen

14. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet at home this morning, I \_\_\_\_\_ money for lunch now.

- A. leave / will have            B. didn't leave / would have  
C. hadn't left / would have            D. hadn't left / would have had

15. I.....you sooner had someone told me you were in the hospital.

- A. would have visited            B. visited            C. had visited            D. visit

16. ....then what I know today,I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.

- A-had I known            B-did I know            C-If I know            D- If I would know

17. If someone .....in to the store,smile and say, “May I help you?”  
A-comes                      B-came                      C-would come                      D-could come
18. Trees won’t grow ..... there is enough water.  
A. if                      B. when                      C. unless                      D. as

**Exercise 3 choose the best answer**

**1. But for two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.**

- A. If I didn’t make two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.  
B. I would have got full marks for the test if there hadn’t been these two minor mistakes  
C. Had I made two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.  
D. If the mistakes hadn’t been minor, I could have got full marks for the test.

**2. Get in touch with me as soon as possible if you change your mind about the trip.**

- A. Should you change your mind about the trip, contact me as soon as possible  
B. If you changed your mind about the trip, get in touch with me as soon as possible.  
C. You should call me whenever you changed your mind about the trip.  
D. Having changed your mind about the trip, you should get in touch with me soon

**3. If it hadn’t been for the goalkeeper, United would have lost.**

- A. United didn’t lose the game thanks to their goalkeeper.  
B. United lost the match because of their goalkeeper.  
C. Without their goalkeeper, United could have won  
D. If their goalkeeper didn’t play so well, United would have lost.

**4. Without his help, we would all die.**

- A. We died because he didn’t help us.  
B. He didn’t help us, so we died.  
C. If it hadn’t been for his help, we would all have died  
D. If he had helped us, we wouldn’t have died.

**5. Had the announcement been made earlier, more people would have attended the lecture.**

- A. Not many people came to hear the lecture because it was held too late,  
B. The lecture was held earlier so that more people would attend  
C. Fewer people attended the lecture because of the early announcement.  
D. Since the announcement was not made earlier, fewer people came to hear the lecture.

**6. But for Helen acting so wonderfully, the play would be a flop**

- A. Helen acted so wonderfully, but the play was a flop.
- B. If it wasn't for Helen's wonderful acting, the play would be a flop
- C. The play was a flop although Helen acted so wonderfully.
- D. The play was a flop although Helen was such a wonderful actor.

**7. Provided your handwriting is legible, the examiner will accept your answer.**

- A. Although the examiner cannot read your handwriting, he will accept your answer,
- B. Whatever your handwriting, the examiner will accept your answer.
- C. The examiner will accept your answer if your handwriting is beautiful
- D. So long as the examiner can read your handwriting, he will accept your answer.

**8. But for his father's early retirement, Richard would not have taken over the family business.**

- A. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.
- B. Richard didn't take over the family business because his father didn't retire early
- C. His father retired early but he still ran the family business
- D. Richard's father didn't want him to take over the family business despite his retirement

**9. Were it not for the money, the job wouldn't be worthwhile**

- A. This job is not rewarding at all
- B. This job offers a poor salary
- C. Although the salary is poor, the job is worthwhile
- D. The only thing that makes this job worthwhile is the money.

**10. You can stay in the flat for free if you pay the bills.**

- A. Provided you pay the bills, you can stay in the flat for free.
- B. Without the bills paid, you can stay in the free flat.
- C. Unless the flat is free of bills, you cannot stay in it.
- D. Whether you pay the bills or stay in the flat, it is free.

**11: She is now leading a normal life as a result of all the support she received from social workers.**

- A. Had it not been for the social workers, she wouldn't be leading such a normal life now.
- B. Because she receives all the support from social workers, she is leading a normal life now
- C. If she didn't receive all the support from social workers, she wouldn't be leading a normal life now.
- D. Had she not received so much support from social workers, she wouldn't be leading such a normal life now.

**12. In my experiments, the liquid is cooled to 32°F. It always freezes.**

- A. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it froze.
- B. If you cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would freeze.
- C. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it will freeze.
- D. If you had cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would have frozen.

**Exercise 4: Choose the best answer:**

1. I'm not very fit. I wish \_\_\_\_\_

- A. I would be fitter
- B. I were fitter
- C. I was fitter
- D. I am fitter

2. It's very hot.

- A. I wish it were cooler.
- B. I wish it was rain tomorrow.
- C. A. I wish it were hotter.
- D. If only it had rained.

3. He likes to swim.

->He wishes he ..... near the sea.

- A. liked
- B. living
- C. lives
- D. to live

4. She wishes she ..... blue eyes.

- A. has
- B. had
- C. had had
- D. would have

5. If only I \_\_\_ him now.

- A. see
- B. saw
- C. have seen
- D. seen

6. I wish it \_\_\_ a holiday today.

- A. were
- B. will be
- C. is
- D. had been

7.. What a pity I didn't meet you yesterday.

- A. If only I met you yesterday.
- B. If only I meet you yesterday.
- C. If only I had met you yesterday.
- D. If only I hadn't met you yesterday.

8.. Susan regretted not buying that villa.

- A. Susan wished she had bought that villa.
- B. Susan wished she bought that villa.
- C. Susan wished she could buy that villa.
- D. Susan wished she hadn't bought that villa.

9. It's a pity that you didn't tell us about this.

- A. I wish you told us about this.
- B. I wish you would tell us about this.
- C. I wish you had told us about this.
- D. I wish you have told us about this.

10. He wishes he ..... buy a new car.

- A. can
- B. will
- C. could
- D. would

11. Those children are really noisy.

- A. I wish they were quieter
- B. I wish they would be quiet
- C. If only they were quieter
- D. Both A and C are correct

12. She misses him. She wishes he ..... her a letter.

- A. would send
- B. will send
- C. has sent
- D. would have sent



13. I wish I ..... help you.

- A. would                      B. can                      C. could                      D. will

14. She wishes she ..... him yesterday.

- A. would meet                      B. meets                      C. met                      D. had met

15. Yesterday, John told me that he wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ harder in high school because then university might not be so difficult for him.

- A. studied                      B. would study                      C. had studied                      D. studies

16. If only my motorbike.....broken down again, I would have arrived on time

- A. would                      B. hadn't                      C. didn't                      D. wasn't

17. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in prison, but I am

- A. wasn't                      B. am not                      C. weren't                      D. were

18. I wish you..... make that noise, it's annoying!

- A. don't                      B. wouldn't                      C. would                      D. couldn't

19. I wish I..... to the movies with you last night.

- A. went                      B. did go                      C. could go                      D. could have gone

20.. I hate Canadian winters. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in Hawai right now.

- A. was                      B. am                      C. will be                      D. were

**Exercise 5: Choose the best option to complete these following sentences.**

1. Tom looked tired as though he \_\_\_\_\_very hard.

- A. has worked                      B. worked                      C. work                      D. had worked

2. Henry talks with his dog as if it \_\_\_\_\_him.

- A. understand                      B. understood                      C. understanding                      D. had understood.

3. She sings as if she \_\_\_\_\_ a singer.

- A. were                      B. is                      C. had been                      D. has been

4. I feel as if my head \_\_\_\_\_fire now.

- A. were                      B. is                      C. had been                      D. has been

5. Mary dresses as if she \_\_\_\_\_ a queen.

- A. is                      B. be                      C. were                      D. had been

6. She acted as if she\_\_\_\_\_ big amount of money.

- A. had                      B. has                      C. have                      D. had had

7. He spends his money as though he \_\_\_\_\_ a millionaire.

- A. were                      B. is                      C. be                      D. has been
8. He talked about Paris as if he \_\_\_\_\_ there before
- A. be                      B. been                      C. has been                      D. had been
9. Tom acts as if he \_\_\_\_\_ my boss.
- A. had been                      B. have been                      C. be                      D. were
10. He talked as if he \_\_\_\_\_ all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.
- A. has done                      B. have done                      C. did                      D. had done
11. Barbara looked at me as though she \_\_\_\_\_ me before.
- A. has never met                      B. have never met                      C. had never met                      D. never met
12. She behaved as though she \_\_\_\_\_ crazy
- A. has been                      B. had been                      C. be                      D. B and C are right
13. He treats us as if we \_\_\_\_\_ all idiots
- A. has been                      B. have been                      C. be                      D. were
14. The spacemen felt as if he \_\_\_\_\_ in a paradise.
- A. had been                      B. falls                      C. fall                      D. has fallen
15. He behaved as though he \_\_\_\_\_ to the USA.
- A. has been                      B. had been                      C. were                      D. was
16. I wish the more effective teaching method \_\_\_\_\_ used.
- A. is                      B. was                      C. were                      D. has been
17. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ a fairy now.
- A. was                      B. were                      C. is                      D. had been
18. She spent money as if she always \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of it.
- A. have                      B. had                      C. had had                      D. has
19. Mr Nam ate as if he \_\_\_\_\_ anything for days
- A. didn't eat                      B. haven't eaten                      C. hadn't eaten                      D. not ate
20. She walks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ a wooden leg.
- A. has                      B. have                      C. had                      D. have had

**Exercise 6:** Choose the correct answer

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ watch the football game than basketball game

- A. like                      B. would rather                      C. prefer                      D. would like
2. Jane would rather that it \_\_\_\_\_ winter now.
- A. were                      B. be                      C. is                      D. had been
3. Would you rather \_\_\_\_\_ in ink or in pencil?
- A. write                      B. writing                      C. to write                      D. wrote
4. I would rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ me tomorrow.
- A. call                      B. to call                      C. calling                      D. will call
5. Henry would rather that his girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_ in the same department as he does.
- A. work                      B. to work                      C. working                      D. worked
6. It's time you \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
- A. paint                      B. painted                      C. painting                      D. paints
7. Bob would rather that Jill \_\_\_\_\_ to class yesterday.
- A. go                      B. went                      C. had gone                      D. have gone
8. It's time we all..... now.
- A. had gone                      B. go                      C. should go                      D. went
9. John would rather \_\_\_\_\_ than worked last night.
- A. slept                      B. was sleeping                      C. have slept                      D. had slept
10. It's time \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
- A. go                      B. buy                      C. to buy                      D. buying

**Exercise 7: Choose the best answer**

1. I requested that he ..... the work on time.
- A. finishes                      B. will finish                      C. finish                      D. finished
2. It is necessary that she ..... the club.
- A. join                      B. joins                      C. would join                      D. has joined
3. The doctor suggested that the patient ..... smoking.
- A. stop                      B. should stop                      C. would stop                      D. both A and B are correct
4. It is important that you ..... on time.
- A. comes                      B. coming                      C. having come                      D. come
5. It is necessary that she ..... the housework.
- A. do                      B. would do                      C. doing                      D. done
6. They requested that I ..... early.
- A. leave                      B. should leave                      C. left                      D. A or B
7. It is our wish that he..... what he please.

- A. is doing                      B. does                      C. do                      D. should have done
8. I propose that the minutes of the previous meeting..... read.  
A. to be                      B. be                      C. being                      D. should have been
9. The court ordered that the man ..... released.  
A. be                      B. was                      C. is                      D. has been
10. It is essential that he ..... the bike.  
A. to repair                      B. should repair                      C. would repair                      D. had better repair

**KEY**

**EX1: 1B, 2C, 3B, 4C, 5A, 6A, 7B, 8D, 9B, 10A, 11B, 12C, 13D, 14C, 15C, 16A, 17B, 18C, 19D, 20B, 21D, 22A, 23C, 24C, 25B, 26C, 27A, 28A, 29C, 30A**

**EX2: 1A, 2C, 3C, 4B, 5A, 6B, 7D, 8C, 9C, 10C, 11B, 12B, 13B, 14C, 15A, 16A, 17A, 18C**

**EX3: 1B, 2A, 3C, 4C, 5D, 6B, 7D, 8A, 9D, 10A, 11D, 12C**

**EX4: 1B, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B, 6A, 7C, 8A, 9C, 10C, 11D, 12A, 13C, 14D, 15C, 16B, 17C, 18B, 19C, 20D**

**EX5: 1D, 2B, 3A, 4A, 5C, 6D, 7A, 8D, 9D, 10D, 11C, 12C, 13D, 14A, 15B, 16C, 17B, 18C, 19C, 20C**

**EX6: 1B, 2A, 3A, 4A, 5D, 6B, 7C, 8D, 9D, 10C**

**EX7: 1C, 2A, 3D, 4D, 5A, 6D, 7C, 8B, 9A, 10B**

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5**

**CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE VOICE)**

**\* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT**

**I. Cách dùng câu bị động**

- Khi không cần thiết phải nhắc đến tác nhân gây hành động (do tình huống đó quá rõ ràng hoặc do khung quan trọng)

*Eg: The road has been repaired.*

- Khi chýng ta khụng biết hoặc quên người thực hiện hành động

*Eg: The money was stolen.*

- Khi chúng ta quan tâm đến bản thân hành động hơn là người thực hiện hành động

*Eg: This book was published in Vietnam.*

- Khi Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động là Chủ ngữ không xác định như: people, they, someone...

Eg: People say that he will win.

→ It's said that he will win.

- Khi người nói không muốn nhắc đến chủ thể gây ra hành động

Eg: Smoking is not allowed here.

## II. Cấu trúc

### Loại 1: Bị động với các thời khứ tiếp diễn

Cụm thức tổng quát

**BE + PAST**

### Loại 2: Bị động với các thời tiếp diễn

Cụm thức tổng quát sau:

**BE + BEING + PAST PARTICIPLE**

Loại 1 áp dụng cho sáu thời bị động không tiếp diễn và loại 2 áp dụng cho sáu thời bị động tiếp diễn. Nhưng trong phần này tôi chỉ giới thiệu những thời học sinh đó học trong chương trình, phục vụ cho thi học kỳ và thi tốt nghiệp THPT bao gồm bốn thời bị động không tiếp diễn là : thời hiện tại đơn, thời quá khứ đơn, thời hiện tại hoàn thành, thời tương lai đơn, bị động với động từ khuyết thiết và hai thời bị động tiếp diễn là : hiện tại tiếp diễn và quá khứ tiếp diễn.

### Loại 1: Bị động không tiếp diễn

1) Thời hiện tại đơn

**S + am / is / are + Past**

Eg:

Active: They raise cows in Ba Vi.

Passive: Cows are raised in Ba Vi.

2) Thời quá khứ đơn

***S + was / were + Past Participle***

Eg:

Active: Jame Watt invented the steam engine in 1784.

Passive: The steam engine was invented by Jame Watt in 1784.

3) Thời hiện tại hoàn thành

***S + have/ has been + Past***

Eg:

Active: They have just finished the project.

Passive: The project has just been finished.

4) Thời tương lai đơn

***S + will be + Past Participle***

Eg:

Active: They will build a new school for disabled children next month.

Passive: A new school for disabled children will be built next month.

5) Động từ khuyết thiếu.

***S + Modal Verb + be + Past Participle.***

EX1:

*Active:* You can see him now.

*Passive:* He can be seen (by you) now.

EX2:

*Active:* He should type his term paper.

*Passive:* His term paper should be typed.

### **Loại 2: Bị động tiếp diễn**

1) Thời hiện tại tiếp diễn

***S + am / is / are + being + Past Participle***

Eg:

*Active:* Ann is writing a letter.

*Passive:* A letter is being written by Ann

2) Thời quá khứ tiếp diễn

***S + was / were + being + Past Participle***

Eg:

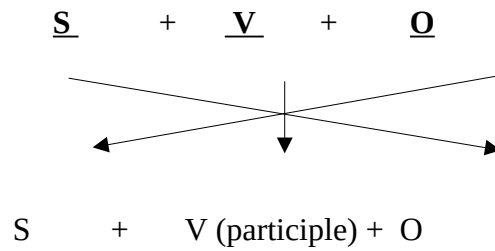
*Active:* She was cleaning the room at 7 a. m yesterday.

*Passive:* The room was being cleaned at 7 a. m yesterday.

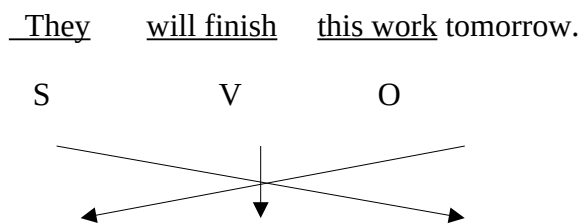
### **III. Cách chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động**

Muốn chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động, học sinh cần nắm chắc các bước chuyển sau đây:

- Xác định tân ngữ trong câu chủ động, chuyển nó thành Chủ ngữ trong câu bị động.
- Xác định thời của động từ trong câu chủ động, chia “to be” tương ứng với thời tiếng Anh đó và với chủ ngữ mới của câu bị động.
- Chia động từ chính trong câu chủ động ở dạng past participle trong câu bị động
- By + tác nhân gây hành động (khi muốn nhấn mạnh tác nhân gây hành động)



Eg:



→ This work will be finished (by them) tomorrow.

Trong phần này cần lưu ý học sinh một số vấn đề sau:

- Các trạng từ chỉ cách thức thường được đặt trước động từ phân từ hai trong câu bị động.

Eg: *He wrote the book wonderfully.*

→ The book was wonderfully written.

- By + tác nhân gây hành động đứng sau trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn và đứng trước trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

Eg1: *A passer-by took him home.*

→ He was taken home by a passer-by.

Eg2: *We will receive the gifts on Monday.*

→ The gifts will be received by us on Monday.

- Câu bị động phủ định và nghi vấn được tạo giống như cách của câu chủ động.

Tuy nhiên khụng phải bất cứ câu nào cũng có thể chuyển từ chủ động sang bị động hoặc ngược lại. Điều kiện để chuyển câu chủ động sang bị động là câu đó phải mất transitive verb (động từ ngoại hướng). Câu có intransitive verb (động từ nội hướng) thì khụng thể chuyển sang câu bị động. Động từ ngoại hướng là động từ cần mất tân ngữ trực tiếp trong khi động từ nội hướng thì khụng cần mất tân ngữ trực tiếp.



Eg: 1) She is making a cake. → A cake is being made by her.

Transitive verb

2) They run along the beach every morning.

Intransitive verb

## II. Các dạng đặc biệt của câu bị động

Việc chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động hoàn toàn tùy thuộc vào cấu trúc câu do đó cách tốt nhất để nắm vững cách chuyển đổi là xem xét nó dưới cấp độ các mẫu câu đó biết.

### 1. Mẫu câu: S + V + O (C, A)

Trong mẫu câu này tân ngữ có thể là một danh từ, cụm từ hoặc đại từ.

**S + V + O**

Eg: *Active*: Her mother is cleaning the kitchen.

*Passive*: The kitchen is being cleaned by her mother.

**S + V + O**

Eg: They called him Mr. Angry.

→ He was called Mr. Angry.

**S + V + O + A**

Eg: He put the table in the corner.

→ The table was put in the corner.

**S + V + O + O**

### 2. Mẫu câu:

Đối với câu có hai tân ngữ, chúng ta có thể dùng một trong hai tân ngữ chuyển thành chủ ngữ trong câu bị động. Tuy nhiên, tân ngữ chỉ người thường hay được sử dụng nhiều hơn.

Eg: We gave him a nice present on his birthday.

Oi Od

- CÁCH CHUYỂN THỨ NHẤT: He was given a nice present on his birthday.

- CÁCH CHUYỂN THỨ HAI: Cần thêm một giới từ

A nice present was given to him on his birthday.

Có hai giới từ có thể được dùng trong trường hợp này là: to, for

Một số động từ dùng với 'to': give, bring, send, show, write, post, pass...

Một số động từ dùng với 'for': buy, make, cook, keep, find, get, save, order .....

Eg1: She didn't show me this special camera.

→ This camera wasn't shown to me.

Eg 2: She is making him a cup of tea.

→ A cup of tea is being made for him.

### 3. Câu bị động với các động từ tường thuật

Các động từ tường thuật thường được dùng để tường thuật lại các câu nói, ý nghĩ, câu hỏi, yêu cầu, lời xin lỗi... Một số động từ tường thuật thường gặp là: say, think, know, believe, ask, tell, promise...

Có hai cấu trúc liên quan đến động từ tường thuật:

a. **Mẫu câu: Active:**

S + V + Oi + that clause.
---------------------------

**Passive:**

S (Oi) + be past participle + that clause.
--

Eg: He told me that you had a new bike.

→ I was told that you had a new bike.

b. **Mẫu câu**

S + V + that + clause.
------------------------

Mẫu câu này có hai cách chuyển

**Cách 1:** dựng Chủ ngữ giả “it”

Eg: People think that I am the best student in my class.

→ It is thought that I am the best student in my class.

**Cách 2:** dựng chủ ngữ của mệnh đề that và sử dụng dạng nguyên mẫu của động từ. Ở ví dụ trên, có cách chuyển thứ hai là:

Eg: I am thought to be the best student in my class.

Ở cách chuyển thứ hai, có thể dùng 3 dạng nguyên mẫu của động từ:

1) To – inf: khi hành động xảy ra ở mệnh đề that diễn ra cùng thời hoặc diễn ra sau hành động ở mệnh đề tường thuật.

2) Nguyên mẫu tiếp diễn: to be ving, khi hành động ở mệnh đề that ở thời tiếp diễn, cũn hành động ở mệnh đề tường thuật ở thời đơn giản, cùng bậc.

3) Nguyên mẫu hoàn thành: to have done, khi hành động ở mệnh đề that xảy ra trước hành động ở mệnh đề tường thuật.

Eg1: People say that he is a rich man.

→ He is said to be a rich man.

Eg2: They think that she is living there.

→ She is thought to be living there.

Eg3: They said that Tom had left home before the weekend.

→ Tom was said to have left home before the weekend.

**4. Cấu mệnh lệnh:**

Khi chuyển câu mệnh lệnh sang câu bị động, ta sẽ sử dụng cấu trúc sau:

<b>Active: V</b>	<b>+ O</b>	<b>+ Adjunct</b>
<b>Passive:</b>	<b>Let</b>	<b>+O + be past participle + Adjunct.</b>

Eg: Take off your hat!

→ Let your hat be taken off!

Ngoài cộc tròn, cũn một cộc khác để chuyển câu mệnh lệnh sang câu bị động nhưng ít dùng hơn đó là:

<b>S + am/ is/ are + to be + past participle</b>
<b>Hoặc S should be + past participle</b>

Eg: *Active*: Look after the children please!

*Passive*: The children should be looked after!

Hoặc: The children are to be looked after!

### 5. WH- question.

Đối với những câu hỏi có từ để hỏi, chúng ta có thể chia làm hai loại:

**Loại 1:** Từ để hỏi có chức năng là tân ngữ trong câu chủ động. Với dạng câu hỏi này việc chuyển sang câu bị động rất đơn giản với từ để hỏi đó sẽ có chức năng là chủ ngữ trong câu bị động.

Eg: *Active*: How many languages do they speak in Canada?

*Passive*: How many languages are spoken in Canada?

**Loại 2:** Từ để hỏi có chức năng là chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động khi chuyển sang câu bị động, nó sẽ có vai trò là tồn ngữ trong câu. Khi đó, ta sẽ có hai cách chuyển. Hoặc chuyển By đầu câu (từ để hỏi sẽ ở dạng tân ngữ) hoặc để By ở cuối câu.

Eg: Who wrote this novel ?

→ Who was this novel written by?

Hoặc: → By whom was this novel written?

S + V + O + Ving
------------------

### 6. Cấu trúc:

Có hai trường hợp xảy ra:

a) Tồn ngữ của Ving cùng chỉ một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu:

Eg: He kept me waiting.

-> I was kept waiting (by him).

b) Tân ngữ của Ving không chỉ một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu:

Eg: He hates people looking at him.

=> He hates being looked at (by people).

S + V + O (to) + V
--------------------

### 7. Cấu trúc:

S + V + O + to + V
--------------------

a.

- Khi tân ngữ không cùng đối tượng với chủ ngữ.

Eg: We asked him to do it.

-> He was asked to do it.

Khi tân ngữ cùng đối tượng với chủ ngữ.

Eg: She would love someone to take her out to dinner.

-> She would love to be taken out to dinner.

b.

S	+ V	+ O	+ V(without to)
---	-----	-----	-----------------

- Khi chuyển sang câu bị động chúng ta dùng To-infinitive trừ động từ “**let**”.

**Eg:** We heard him sing this song.

-> He was heard to sing this song.

Nhưng: They let us go home.

-> We were let go home.

Hoặc: We were allowed to go home.

## 8. Cấu trúc

<i>Have / get something done. (dạng nhờ bảo).</i>
---

### a. Với have.

<b>Active:</b> S + have + Object(person) + bare infinitive + Object.
--

<b>Passive:</b> S + have + Object (thing) + Past Participle (+ by + Object(person))
---

Eg:

I has him repair my bicycle yesterday.

-> I had my bicycle repaired yesterday.

**a. Với get.**

Active: S + get + O (person) + to infinitive + O (thing)

Passive: S + get + O (thing) + Past participle (+by + O(person))

Eg:

I get her to make some coffee.

-> I get some coffee made.

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**Exercise1:**

1. My wedding ring ..... of yellow and white gold.

- a. is made                      b. is making                      c. made                      d. maked

2. If your brother ....., he would come.

- a. invited                      b. were invited                      c. were inviting                      d. invite

3. Mr. Wilson is ..... as Wilie to his friend.

- a. knowed                      b. knew                      c. known                      d. is known

4. References ..... in the examination room.

- a. not are used                      b. is not used                      c. didn't used                      d. are not used

5. Laura ..... in Boston.

- a. are born                      b. were born                      c. was born                      d. born

6. My nother is going ..... this house.

- a. sold                      b. to be sold                      c. to sold                      d. to sell

7. There's somebody behind us. I think we are .....

- a. being followed                      b. are followed                      c. follow                      d. following

8. Have you ..... by a dog?

a. bite                      b. ever been bit                      c. ever been bitten                      d. bit

9. The room is being ..... at the moment.

a. was cleaned                      b. cleaned                      c. cleaning                      d. clean

10. The road to our village ..... widened next year.

a. is                      b. will                      c. can                      d. will be

**Exercise 2:**

**1. *Somebody cleans that room everyday.***

- a. The room every day is cleaned.
- b. The room is everyday cleaned.
- c. The room is cleaned every day.
- d. The room is cleaned by somebody everyday.

**2. *They cancelled all flights because of fog.***

- a. All flights because of fog were cancelled.
- b. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
- c. All flights were cancelled by them because of fog.
- d. All flights were because of fog cancelled.

**3. *They are building a new highway around the city.***

- a. A new highway is being built around the city.
- b. A new highway is being built around the city by them.
- c. A new highway around the city is being built.
- d. Around the city a new highway is being built.

**4. *They have built a new hospital near the airport.***

- a. A new hospital has been built near the airport by them.
- b. A new hospital near the airport has been built.
- c. A new hospital has been built near the airport.
- d. Near the airport a new hospital has been built by them.

**5. *They will ask you a lot of questions at the interview.***

- a. You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview.

- b. You will be asked a lot of questions at the interview by them.
- c. A lot of questions will be asked you at the interview.
- d. A lot of questions will be asked at the interview.

**6. People don't use this road very often.**

- a. This road is not used very often.
- b. Not very often this road is not used.
- c. This road very often is not used.
- d. This road not very often is used.

**7. Somebody accused me of stealing money.**

- a. I was accused by somebody of stealing money.
- b. I was accused of stealing money.
- c. I was accused of stealing money by somebody.
- d. I was accused stealing money.

**8. Somebody is using the computer at the moment.**

- a. The computer is being used at the moment.
- b. The computer at the moment is being used.
- c. The computer is being used by somebody at the moment.
- d. The computer is used at the moment.

**9. The bill includes service.**

- a. Service is included by the bill.
- b. Service included in the bill.
- c. Service is included in the bill.
- d. Service is in the bill.

**10. They have changed the date of the meeting.**

- a. The date of the meeting has been changed.
- b. The date of the meeting has been changed by them.
- c. The meeting has been changed the date.
- d. The date of the meeting has changed.

**Exercise 3. Chọn đáp án đúng nhất để hoàn thành câu sau**



1. The old lady was ..... exhausted after the long walk.
  - a. very
  - b. aboslutely
  - c. pretty
  - d. fairly.
2. The old man is said..... all his money to an old people's home when he died.
  - a. to leave
  - b. to leaving
  - c. have left
  - d. to have left.
3. Nobody was injured in the accident, .....?
  - a. was there
  - b. was he
  - c. were they
  - d. weren't they.
4. Renoir's paintings ..... masterpieces all over the world.
  - a. had considered
  - b. are considered
  - c. are considering
  - d. consider.
5. He was advised.....singing lessons.
  - a. take
  - b. taken
  - c. taking
  - d. to take.
6. You'd better get someone.....your living room.
  - a. redecorate
  - b. redecorated
  - c. to redecorate
  - d. redecorating.
7. When..... ? In 1928.
  - a. penicillin was discovered
  - b. did pencillin discoved.
  - c. was penicillin disscoverd
  - d. did pencillin discover.
8. I don't remember..... of the decision to change the company policy on vacations.
  - a. telling
  - b. being told
  - c. to tell
  - d. to be told.
9. The children .....to the zoo.
  - a. were enjoyed taken
  - b. enjoyed being taken
  - c. were enjoyed taking
  - d. enjoyed taking.
10. A new bike was bought ..... him on his birthday.
  - a. to
  - b. for
  - c. with
  - d. on.
11. His car needs .....
  - a. be fixed
  - b. fixing
  - c. to be fixing
  - d. fixed.
12. Her watch needs.....
  - a. repairing
  - b. to be repaired
  - c. repaired
  - d. a&b.
13. He was said..... this building.
  - a. designing
  - b. to have designed
  - c. to designs
  - d. designed
14. Ted..... by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
  - a. got sting
  - b. got stung
  - c. get stung
  - d. gets stung

15. Let the children..... taken to the cinema.

- a. to                      b. be                      c. to be                      d. being.

**Exercise 4:**

**1. It has been said that UFO sightings are increasing.**

- a. People say that UFO sightings are increasing.  
b. people have said that UFO sightings are increasing.  
c. That UFO sightings are increasing is true.  
d. UFO has been said to be inreasing.

**2. He is getting them mend the windows.**

- a. He's having the windows to mend.                      b. He's having to mend the windows.  
c. He's having to be mended the windows.                      d. He is having the windows mended.

**3. They made her hand over her passport.**

- a. She was made to hand over her passport.                      b. She was made hand over her passport.  
c. She was handed over to make her passport.                      d. She was handed over for her passport to make.

**4. Don't let the others see you.**

- a. Don't let you to be seen.                      b. Don't let yourself be seen.  
c. You aren't to be seen by the others.                      d. Both a &c allowed.

**5. They say that many people are homeless after the tsunami.**

- a. They say many people to have been homeless after the tsunami.  
b. They say many piople to bbe homeless after the tsunami.  
c. Many people are said to have been homeless after the tsunami.  
d. Many people are said to be homeless after the tsunami.

**6. They know that the Prime Minister is in favour of the new law.**

- a. The Prime minister is known to have been in favour of the new law.  
b. They know the Prime Minister to be in favour of the new law.  
c. The Prime Minister is known to be in favour of the new law.  
d. They know the Prime Minister to have been in favour of the new law.

**7. They expect that the government will lose the election.**

- a. The government is expected to have lost the election.
- b. The government is expected to lose the election.
- c. They expect the government to lose the election.
- d. They expect the government have lost election.

**8. I didn't realize that somebody was recording our conversation.**

- a. I didn't realize that our conversation was recorded.
- b. I didn't realize that our conversation was being recorded.
- c. I didn't realize that our conversation was being recorded by someone.
- d. Our conversation wasn't realized to be recorded.

**9. They never made us do anything we didn't want to do.**

- a. We are never made to do anything we didn't want to do.
- b. We were never made to do anything we didn't want to do.
- c. We have never made to do anything we didn't want to do.
- d. We had never made to do anything we didn't want to do.

**10. Brian told me that somebody had attacked him in the street.**

- a. I was told by Brian that somebody had attacked him in the street.
- b. I was told by Brian that he had been attacked in the street.
- c. Brian told me to have been attacked in the street.
- d. Brian told me that he had been attacked in the street.

**MORE EXERCISES**

- 1. All bottles \_\_\_\_\_ before transportation.  
A. frozen                      B. is frozen                      C. was frozen                      **D. were frozen**
- 2. Everything that \_\_\_\_\_ remained a secret.  
A. had be overheard                      **B. had been overheard**  
C. had been overheard                      D. would had been overheard
- 3. Everything \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. were forbidden                      **B. is forbidden**                      C. is forbiddd                      D. are forbidden
- 4. Everything \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. are going to be forgotten                      **B. is going to be forgotten**  
C. is going to be forgot                      D. were going to be forgotten
- 5. I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have not given the money                      **B. have not been given the money**  
C. have not been give the money                      D. have not be given the money
- 6. It \_\_\_\_\_ for years.  
A. has not be known                      **B. had not been known**



- C. had finished-were arriving  
D. have been finished- were arrived
33. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ by the teacher yesterday.  
A. punish B. punished C. punishing **D. was punished**
34. "Ms Jones, please type those letters before noon" \_ "They've already \_\_\_\_\_, sir. They're on your desk."  
A. typed B. been being typed C. being typed **D. been typed**
35. Sarah is wearing a blouse. It \_\_\_\_\_ of cotton.  
A. be made B. are made **C. is made** D. made
36. They had a boy \_\_\_\_\_ that yesterday.  
A. done B. to do C. did **D. do**
37. We got our mail \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. been delivered **B. delivered** C. delivering D. to deliver
38. James..... the news as soon as possible.  
A. should tell **B. should be told** C. should told D. should be telle
- d
39. My wedding ring \_\_\_\_\_ yellow and white gold.  
**A. is made** B. is making C. made D. make
40. Mr. Wilson is \_\_\_\_\_ as Willie to his friend.  
**A. known** B. knew C. is known D. know
41. References \_\_\_\_\_ in the examination room.  
A. not are used B. is not used C. didn't used **D. are not used**
42. Laura \_\_\_\_\_ in Boston.  
A. are born B. were born **C. was born** D. born
43. His car needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. be fixed **B. fixing** C. to be fixing D. fixed
44. Her watch needs \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. repairing B. to be repaired C. repaired **D. A and B**
45. My mother is going \_\_\_\_\_ this house.  
A. sold B. sell C. to be sold **D. to sell**
46. There's somebody behind us. I think we are \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A. being followed** B. are followed C. follow D. following
47. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ by a dog?  
A. bite B. bit **C. ever been bitten** D. ever been bit
48. The room is being \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.  
A. was cleaned **B. cleaned** C. cleaning D. clean
49. It \_\_\_\_\_ that the strike will end soon.  
**A. is expected** B. expected C. are expected D. was expected
50. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that many people are homeless after the floods.  
A. was reported B. reports **C. reported** D. reporting
51. He was said \_\_\_\_\_ this building.  
A. designing **B. to have designed** C. to design D. designed
52. Ted \_\_\_\_\_ by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.  
A. got sting **B. got stung** C. get stung D. gets stung
53. These tennis courts don't \_\_\_\_\_ very often. Not many people want to play.  
A. got used B. used **C. get used** D. get use
54. I'll get Minh \_\_\_\_\_ this for you.  
**A. do** B. done C. did D. to do
55. Those letters \_\_\_\_\_ now. You can do the typing later.  
A. need typing **B. needn't be typed** C. need to type D. needn't typing
56. "What a beautiful dress you are wearing"- "thanks, it \_\_\_\_\_ especially for me by a French tailor. "  
A. is made B. has made C. made **D. was made**
57. Somebody cleans the room every day.  
A. The room everyday is cleaned. B. The room is every day cleaned.  
**C. The room is cleaned every day.** D. The room is cleaned by somebody every day.
58. People don't use this road very often.  
**A. This road is not used very often.** B. Not very often this road is not used.  
C. This road very often is not used. D. This road not very often is used.

59. How do people learn languages?  
 A. **How are languages learned?** B. How are languages learned by people?  
 C. How languages are learned? D. Languages are learned how?
60. Over 1500 new houses \_\_\_\_\_ each year. Last year, 1720 new houses \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. were built/ were built B. **are built/ were built** C. are building / were built D. were built/ were being built
61. Tom bought that book yesterday.  
 A. **That book was bought by Tom yesterday.** B. That book was bought yesterday by Tom.  
 C. That book yesterday was bought by Tom D. That book was bought yesterday.
62. The new computer system \_\_\_\_\_ next month.  
 A. is be installed B. **is being installed** C. is been installed D. is being installed by people

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6

### CÂU GIÁN TIẾP (REPORTED SPEECH)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

#### **A. Câu trực tiếp và câu gián tiếp (Direct and Reported speech):**

**Giống:** Luận cú 2 phần: mệnh đề tường thuật và lời nói trực tiếp hay lời nói gián tiếp

Eg: Tom says, "I go to college next summer"

MĐTT                      Lời nói trực tiếp

Tom says (that) he goes to college next summer

MĐTT                      Lời nói gián tiếp

#### **Khác:**

**a. Direct speech:** Là lời nói được thuật lại đúng nguyên văn của người nói. Được viết giữa dấu trích hay ngoặc kép và ngăn cách với mệnh đề tường thuật bởi dấu phẩy

eg: John said, "***I like reading science books***"

The teacher said, "***I'll give you a test tomorrow***"

**b. Reported speech / Indirect speech:** Là lời nói được thuật lại với ý và từ của người thuật, nhưng vẫn giữ nguyên ý. Khung bị ngăn cách bởi dấu phẩy hay dấu ngoặc kép, và luận tận cùng bằng dấu chấm câu.

Eg: John said (that) he liked reading science books

The teacher said (that) he would give us a test the next day

#### **B/ Các thay đổi trong câu gián tiếp**

**1. Thay đổi động từ tường thuật:** Động từ tường thuật của lời nói trực tiếp phải được đổi phù hợp với nghĩa hoặc cấu trúc câu của lời nói gián tiếp

Eg: He said, "Do you like coffee?" → He asked me if I liked coffee

"If I were you, I'd not buy that coat," said Mary → Mary advised me not to buy the coat

Chú ý: SAY TO: không bao giờ được dùng ở lời nói gián tiếp. (phải đổi bằng TELL + (O))

TELL: không bao giờ được dùng ở lời nói trực tiếp.

## 2. Thay đổi các ngôi (đại từ, tính từ, đại từ sở hữu):

VD: Mr Nam said to Hoa, "**You** take your book out and show it to **me**"

- Tõnh huỡng 1: Một người bạn của Hoa tường thuật với người bạn khác: Mr Nam told Hoa that **she** took **her** book out and showed it to **him**.

- Tõnh huỡng 2: Hoa tường thuật với một người bạn khác: Mr Nam told me that **I** took **my** book out and showed it to **him**

- Tõnh huỡng 3: Thầy Nam tường thuật với người khác: I told Hoa that **she** took **her** book out and showed it to **me**

## 3. Thay đổi thời gian, địa điểm, các từ chỉ định

### a. Từ chỉ thời gian

Cõu trực tiếp	Cõu gián tiếp
- now	→ then, at that time, at once, immediately
- an hour ago	→ an hour before/an hour earlier
- today	→ that day
- tonight	→ that night
- yesterday	→ the day before/the previous day
- tomorrow	→ the next day/the following day
- Yesterday morning/ afternoon	→ the previous morning/ afternoon
- Tomorrow morning	→ the next/following morning
- the day before yesterday	→ two days before
- the day after tomorrow	→ (in) two days' time
- last year	→ the year before/the previous year

- next month	→ the month after/the following month
--------------	---------------------------------------

**b. Từ chỉ nơi chốn, địa điểm:**

HERE → THERE: Khi chỉ một địa điểm xác định

Eg: “Do you put the pen here?” he said → He asked me if I put the pen there

HERE → cụm từ thích hợp tùy theo nghĩa:

Eg: She said to me, “You sit *here*” → She told me to sit *next to* her.

“Come *here*, John,” he said → He told John to *come over* him.

**c. Các đại từ chỉ định:**

THIS/ THESE + từ chỉ thời gian → THAT/THOSE

Eg: “They’re coming this evening,” he said. → He said (that) they were coming that evening

THIS/THESE + danh từ → THE

Eg: “Is this book yours?” said Mary → Mary asked me if the book was mine

THIS/THESE: chỉ thị đại từ → IT/ THEM

Eg: He said, “I like this” → He said (that) he liked it

Ann said to Tom, “Please take these into my room” → Ann asked Tom to take them into her room

**4. Thay đổi thời của động từ**

➤ **Các trường hợp thay đổi thời:**

Khi các động từ tường thuật (say, tell, ask...) ở thời quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp phải lùi về quá khứ một thời so với câu trực tiếp.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
<b>Simple Present:</b> “I don’t know this man”	<b>Simple Past:</b> He said he didn’t know that man
<b>Present Continuous:</b> “I’m working for a foreign company”	<b>Past Continuous:</b> He said he was working for a foreign company
<b>Present Perfect:</b> “I’ve read a good book”	<b>Past Perfect:</b> He said he had read a good book
<b>Present Perfect Continuous:</b> “I have been writing my report”.	<b>Past Perfect Continuous:</b> He said he had been writing his report



<b>Simple Past:</b> “I finished my assignment”	<b>Past Perfect:</b> He said he had finished his assignment
<b>Simple Future:</b> “I will do it later”	<b>Future in the past:</b> He said he would do it later.
<b>Modal Verbs:</b>	<b>Past forms of modals:</b>
“I can work late today”	He said he could work late that day
“I may see her tonight”	He said he might see her that night
“I must/have to go now”	He said he had to go then

➤ **Các trường hợp không thay đổi thì:**

**a. Khi động từ tường thuật (say, tell, ask...) ở thì hiện tại đơn, tương lai đơn hay hiện tại hoàn thành:**

Eg: He says, “I don’t know the answer to your question”

→ He says to me that he doesn’t know the answer to my question

They’ll say, “We’ll buy a new house” → They’ll say (that) they will buy a new house

**b. Khi động từ tường thuật (say, tell, ask...) ở thì quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi thì trong các trường hợp sau:**

- *Tường thuật một sự thật hiển nhiên, một chân lý, định luật khoa học hay vật lý:*

Eg: My teacher said, “Russia is the biggest country in the world”

→ My teacher said that Russia is the biggest country in the world

He said, “health is more precious than gold” → He said (that) health is more precious than gold

- *Được tường thuật ngay sau khi nói hay khi thuật lại sự kiện vẫn không đổi:*

Eg: (In class): A: What did the teacher say?

B: He said (that) he wants us to do our homework

- *Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp là các động từ như: USED TO, hay các động từ khiếm khuyết: COULD, WOULD, SHOULD, MIGHT, OUGHT TO, HAD TO, HAD BETTER*

Eg: He said, “They *might* win the game” → He said to me that they *might* win the game.

- Với MUST diễn tả lời khuyên:

Eg: "This book is very useful. You *must* read it", Tom said to me.

→ Tom told me (that) the book was very useful and I *must* read it.

- Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp ở các thì: *Past Continuous, Past perfect, Past Perfect Continuous*, (nếu thì *Simple Past* đi kèm một thời gian cụ thể có thể không thay đổi thì).

Eg: He said, "I was eating when he called me" → He told me he was eating when she called him.

- Khi tường thuật mệnh đề ước muốn (*wish*): theo sau động từ *WISH, WOULD RATHER, IF ONLY*

Eg: He said, "I wish I were richer" → He told me he wished he were richer

She said, "I wish I had a good memory" → She said she wished she had a good memory

- Các câu điều kiện loại 2, 3 (câu điều kiện không thật)

Eg: He said, "If I had time, I would help you" → He said to me if he had time, he would help me

- Cấu trúc "It's (*high*) time..."

Eg: He said, "It's time we went" → He said it was time they went.

He said, "It's time we changed our way of working" → He said (that) it was time they changed their way of working.

## C/ Các loại câu gián tiếp

### 1. Tường thuật câu trần thuật (statements)

- Động *say* hoặc *tell* để tường thuật

- Thường bắt đầu bằng: He **said that**.... / she **said to me that**.../ they **told me that**....,

eg: She said, "I'm happy to see you again"

→ She said that she was happy to see me again

She said to me that she was happy to see me again

She told me that she was happy to see me again

- Chú ý đổi thì, mốc đại từ, các từ chỉ thời gian, địa điểm...

### 2. Tường thuật câu hỏi (questions)

#### a. Đối với câu hỏi trực tiếp (*Wh-question*)

- Thường bắt đầu bằng: He **asked** (me) .../ He **wanted to know**.../ She **wondered**....

Eg: She asked, "What is his job?" → She asked what his job was.

They asked me, "Where did you have lunch?" → They asked me where I had lunch.

- Không đặt trợ động từ trước chủ ngữ như trong câu hỏi trực tiếp.

- Không đặt dấu chấm hỏi cuối câu.

- Thay đổi thời, đại từ, các từ chỉ thời gian, địa điểm...

### **b. Đối với câu hỏi "Yes – No" hoặc câu hỏi lựa chọn "Or"**

- Phải thêm từ "**if/whether**" để mở đầu câu tường thuật

eg: She asked, "are you a teacher?" → She asked him if/whether he was a teacher

They asked me, "Do you want to go or stay at home?" → They asked me if/ whether I wanted to go or stay at home.

- Câu hỏi đuôi được tường thuật **giống câu hỏi Yes/No** nhưng **bỏ phần đuôi phía sau**

eg: She asked, "You will stay here, won't you?" → She asked me if/whether I would stay there.

### **3. Câu tường thuật với "infinitive":**

**a. Tường thuật câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu (Imperatives / Commands or Requests) dựng cấu trúc: tell/ ask/ request/ order somebody (not) to do something**

Eg: "Read carefully before signing the contract," he said. → He told me to read carefully before signing the contract)

"The commander said to his soldier, "Shoot!" → The commander ordered his soldier to shoot.

"Please talk slightly," they said. → They requested us to talk slightly.

"Listen to me, please" → He asked me to listen to him.

"Will you help me, please?" → He asked me to help him.

"Will you lend me your dictionary?" → He asked me to lend him my dictionary.

**b. Tường thuật lời khuyên (Advice) dựng cấu trúc: advise somebody (not) to do something**

Lời khuyên: - Had better, ought to, should, must

- Why don't you + V?

- If I were you, I'd (not) + V...

Eg: "Why don't you take a course in computer?" my teacher said to me.

→ My teacher *advised me to take* a course in computer.

**c. Trường thuật lời mời (Invitation) dựng cấu trúc: invite somebody to do something**

Eg: "Would you like to have breakfast with me?" Tom said to me. → Tom *invited me to have* breakfast with him.

**d. Trường thuật lời cảnh báo (warn) dựng cấu trúc: warn somebody (not) to do something**

"Don't touch the red buttons," said the mom to the child. → The mom *warns the child not to touch* the red buttons

**e. Trường thuật lời nhắc nhở (reminders) dựng cấu trúc: remind somebody to do something**

"Don't forget to turn off the lights before leaving," Sue told me → Sue *reminded me to turn off* the lights before leaving

**f. Trường thuật lời động viên (encouragement) dựng cấu trúc: encourage / urge somebody to do something**

"Go on, take part in the competition," said my father → My father *encouraged me to take part in* the competition

**g. Trường thuật lời cầu khẩn dựng cấu trúc: beg/implore somebody to do something**

"Do me a favor, please," said the servant to his master → The servant *begged/implored his master to do him a* favor.

**h. Trường thuật lời đề nghị, tự nguyện (offers) dựng cấu trúc: offer to do something**

Lời đề nghị: - Shall I + V

- Would you like me + to V

- Let me + V

Eg: Mary said to Ann, "Shall I get you a glass of orange juice?" → Mary *offered to get* Anna a glass of orange juice.

"Shall I bring you some tea?" He asked → He *offered to bring* me some tea

**i. Tường thuật lời hứa (Promises) dựng cấu trúc: promise (not) to do something**

Eg: "I'll give the book back to you tomorrow," he said → He *promised to give* the book back to me the next day.

**j. Tường thuật lời đe dọa (threat) dựng cấu trúc: threaten to do something.**

"I'll shot if you move," said the robber → The robber threatened to shoot if I moved

#### **4. Câu tường thuật với "gerund"**

Các cấu trúc của câu tường thuật với danh động từ:

S + V + V-ing: *admit, deny, suggest...*

S + V + preposition + V-ing: *apologize for, complain about, confess to, insist on, object to, dream of, think of...*

S + V + O + preposition + V-ing: *accuse.. of, blame...for, congratulate...on, criticize...for, warn...about/against, praise...for, thank...for, prevent...from...*

Eg: "I've always wanted to study abroad," he said. → He's *dreaming of studying* abroad.

"It's nice of you to give me some fruit. Thanks," Ann said to Mary → Ann *thanked Mary for giving* her some fruit

"I'm sorry, I'm late," Tom said to the teacher. → Tom *apologized to the teacher for being* late

"Shall we meet at the theater?" he asked → He *suggested meeting* at the theater.

#### **5. Cấu cảm thán trong lời nói gián tiếp**

What a lovely dress! → She exclaimed that the dress was lovely.

She exclaimed that the dress was a lovely one.

She exclaimed with admiration at the sight of the dress.

#### **6. Các hữnh thức hỗn hợp trong lời nói gián tiếp**

She said, "Can you play the piano?" and I said "no"

→ She asked me if I could play the piano and I said that I could not

### **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

#### **A. Choose the correct answer among A, B C or D.**

1. "I wish..... eat vegetables", he said.

- A. my children will    **B. my children would**    C. whether my children would    D. my children must
2. He wants to know whether I \_\_\_\_\_ back tomorrow.  
A. come                      B. came                      **C. will come**                      D. would come
3. I wonder why he \_\_\_\_\_ love his family.  
**A. doesn't**                      B. don't                      C. didn't                      D. hasn't
4. He begged them -----.  
A. help him                      B. should help him                      **C. to help him**                      D. help to him
5. Peter asked Jane why ----- the film on T. V the previous night.  
A. didn't she watch    B. hadn't she watched                      C. she doesn't watch                      **D. she hadn't watched**
6. He advised them ----- in class.  
A. to not talk                      **B. not to talk**                      C. to talk not                      D. don't talk
7. Some one was wondering if the taxi ----- yet.  
**A. had arrived**                      B. arrived                      C. arrives                      D. has arrived
8. The government has announced that taxes -----.  
A. would be raised    **B. had been raised**                      C. were raised                      D. will be raised
9. He proved that the earth ----- round the Sun.  
A. had gone                      **B. was going**                      C. goes                      D. would go
10. Claire wanted to know what time -----.  
A. do the banks close                      **B. the banks closed**  
C. did the banks close                      D. the banks would close
11. Julia said that she \_\_\_\_\_ there at noon.  
A. is going to be                      **B. was going to be**                      C. will be                      D. can be
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ that he was leaving that afternoon.  
**A. told me**                      B. told to me                      C. said me                      D. says to me
13. She said to me that she \_\_\_\_\_ to me the Sunday before.  
A. wrote                      **B. had written**                      C. was writing                      D. has written
14. Nam wanted to know what time \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. does the movie begin    B. did the movie begin                      C. the movie begins                      **D. the movie began**
15. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ Robert and I said I did not know \_\_\_\_\_.

A. that did I know / who were he

B. that I knew / who he had been

**C. if I knew/ who he was**

D. whether I knew / who had he been

16. I asked Martha \_\_\_\_\_ to enter law school.

A. was she planning

B. is she planning

**C. if she was planning**

D. are you planning

17. I wondered \_\_\_\_\_ the right thing.

**A. whether I was doing**

B. if I am doing

C. was I doing

D. am I doing

18. Thu said she had been \_\_\_\_\_ the day before.

A. here

**B. there**

C. in this place

D. where

19. Peter said that if he \_\_\_\_\_ rich, he \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.

A. is – will travel

**B. were- would travel**

C. was – will travel

C. been–would travel

20. They said that they had been driving through the desert \_\_\_\_\_.

**A. the previous day**

B. yesterday

C. the last day

D. Soday previously

21. He asked the children \_\_\_\_\_ too much noise.

**A. not to make**

B. not making

C. don't make

D. if they don't make

22. Laura said she had worked on the assignment since \_\_\_\_\_.

A. yesterday

B. two days ago

**C. the day before**

D. the next day

23. Mr Hawk told me that he would give me his answer the..... day

A. previous

**B. following**

C. before

D. last

24. John said he \_\_\_\_\_ her since they \_\_\_\_\_ school.

A. hasn't met–left

**B. hadn't met-had left**

C. hadn't met/ left

D. didn't meet – left

25. The woman asked \_\_\_\_\_ get lunch at school.

A. can the children

**B. whether the children could**

C. if the children can

D. could the children

26. She said that when she \_\_\_\_\_ to school, she saw an accident.

A. was walking

B. has walked

**C. had been walking**

D. has been walking

27. He asked, "Why didn't she take the final exam?" - He asked why \_\_\_\_\_ the final exam.

A. she took

B. did she take

**C. she hadn't taken**

D. she had taken

28. Peter said he \_\_\_\_\_ some good marks the semester before.

A. gets

B. got

**C. had gotten**

D. have got

29. They told their parents that they \_\_\_\_\_ their best to do the test.

A. try

B. will try

C. are trying

**D. would try**

30. Mary asked me where I \_\_\_\_\_ from.

**A. came**

B. coming

C. to come

D. come

31. She asked me \_\_\_\_\_ my holidays \_\_\_\_\_.

A. where I spent / the previous year

**B. where I had spent/ the previous year**

C. where I spent / last year

D. where did I spend / last year

32. He asked me who \_\_\_\_\_ the editor of that book.

**A. was**

B. were

C. is

D. has been

33. Jason told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ his best in the exam the \_\_\_\_\_ day.

A. had done/ following  
previous

B. will do/previous

**C. would do/ following**

D. was going/

34. The guest told the host that \_\_\_\_\_.

A. I must go now

B. he must go now

C. he had to go now

**D. he had to go then**

**B. Choose the sentence that is closest in meaning to each sentence below.**

35. " **Where did you go last night**"? she said to her boyfriend.

A. She asked her boyfriend where did he go last night.

B. She asked her boyfriend where he went the night before.

C. She asked her boyfriend where had he gone the night before.

**D. She asked her boyfriend where he had gone the night before.**

36. " **Remember to write to your aunt**". I said to Miss Linh.

A. I said to Miss Linh remember to write to her aunt.

B. I said to Miss Linh to remember to write to her aunt.

C. I told Miss Linh remember to write to her aunt.

**D. I reminded Miss Linh to remember to write to her aunt.**

37. " **How long have you lived in Ha Noi**"? said my friend.

A. My friend asked me how long have I lived in HaNoi.

B. My friend asked me how long had I lived in HaNoi.

**C. My friend asked me how long I had lived in HaNoi.**



D. My friend asked me how long I have lived in HaNoi.

**38. "Close the books, please" said our teacher.**

A. Close your book said by our teacher.

B. Our teacher asked us close our book.

C. Our teacher said us close our book.

***D. Our teacher asked us to close our book.***

**39. "I didn't break your watch" the boy said.**

***A. The boy told the girl that he hadn't broken her watch.***

B. The boy asked the girl that he hadn't broken her watch.

C. The boy told the girl that he didn't break her watch.

D. The boy told the girl that he hadn't broken your watch.

**40. "Don't make noise because I am listening music now" he said to me.**

A. He asked me not to make noise because I am listening music now.

B. He asked me not to make noise because I was listening music then.

***C. He asked me not to make noise because he was listening music then.***

D. He asked me to make noise because I was listening music then.

**41. "I have just seen your mother this morning". Laura said to Lewis.**

A. Laura told Lewis I have just seen your mother this morning.

***B. Laura told Lewis she had just seen his mother that morning.***

C. Laura told Lewis she has just seen his mother that morning.

D. Laura told Lewis he had just seen her mother that morning.

**42. "We are ready to come with our friends" they said.**

A. They told us they are ready to come with their friends.

B. They told us they were ready to come with our friends.

C. They told us we were ready to come with our friends.

***D. They told us they were ready to come with their friends.***

**43. "I was intending to meet you tomorrow" she said.**

A. She told me she was intending to meet me tomorrow.

B. She told me she had intending to meet me the next day.

C. She told me she had been intending to meet me tomorrow.

***D. She told me she had been intending to meet me the next day.***

**44. Mrs Smith: "Don't play in front of my windows"**

- A. Mrs Smith told us not to play in front of her windows.
- B. Mrs Smith told us not to play in front of my windows.
- C. Mrs Smith told us to not play in front of her windows.**
- D. Mrs Smith said us not to play in front of her windows.

45. **“I didn’t witness that accident.”**

- A. He denied not having witnessed that accident.
- B. He denied having witnessed that accident.**
- C. He denied not having witnessing that accident.
- D. He denied not had witnessed that accident.

46. **“You cheated in the exam.” The teacher said to his students**

- A. The teacher insisted his students on cheating in the exam.
- B. The teacher prevented his students from cheating in the exam.
- C. The teacher advised his students to cheat in the exam.
- D. The teacher accused his students of cheating in the exam.**

47. **" Don't forget to give the book back to Mary," he said to me.**

- A. He reminded me to give the book back to Mary.**
- B. He reminded me to forget to give the book back to Mary.
- C. He advised me to give the book back to Mary.
- D. He advised me to forget to give the book back to Mary.

48. **"Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight?" he said.**

- A. He invited me to go to the cinema with him that night.**
- B. He offered me to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- C. He asked me if I'd like to go to the cinema with him tonight.
- D. He would like me to go to the cinema with him this night.

49. **'Remember to pick me up at 6 o'clock tomorrow afternoon,' she said.**

- A. She told me to remember to pick her up at 6 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
- B. She reminded me to pick her up at 6 o'clock the following afternoon.**
- C. She reminded me to remember to pick her up at 6 o'clock the next afternoon.
- D. She told me to pick her up at 6 o'clock the next day afternoon.

**50. " Let's have a picnic next Saturday," Julia said.**

A. Julia said that let's have a picnic the next Saturday.

**B. Julia suggested having a picnic the following Saturday.**

C. Julia advised how about having a picnic the next Saturday.

D. Julia told that why they didn't have a picnic next Saturday.

**51. "If I were you, I'd tell him the truth," she said to me.**

A. She said to me that if I were you, I'd tell him the truth.

B. She will tell him the truth if she is me.

C. She suggested to tell him the truth if she were me.

**D. She advised me to tell him the truth.**

**52. " Why don't you have your room repainted?" said Viet to Nam.**

**A. Viet suggested that Nam should have his room repainted.**

B. Viet suggested having Nam's room repainted.

C. Viet asked Nam why you didn't have your room repainted.

D. Viet wanted to know why Nam doesn't have his room repainted.

**53. "If I were you. Bill, I'd buy the house, " Stephen said.**

A. Stephen suggested Bill to buy the house.

**B. Stephen advised Bill to buy the house.**

C. Stephen promised Bill that he would buy the house.

D. Stephen forced Bill to buy the house.

**54. "Don't forget to feed the chicken twice a day. "**

A. He said don't forget to feed the chicken twice a day.

B. He told not to forget to feed the chicken twice a day.

**C. He reminded me to feed the chicken twice a day.**

D. He suggested me to feed the chicken twice a day

**55. "Never borrow money from friends," my father said.**

**A. My father told me never to borrow money from friends.**

B. My father said to me never borrow money from friends.

C. My father suggested me never borrowing money from friends.

D. My father advised me not borrow money from friends

**56. "Right. I'll take the brown pair, "Andrew said.**

A. Andrew promised to take the brown pair.

B. Andrew wanted to take the brown pair.

**C. Andrew agreed to take the brown pair.**

D. Andrew asked to take the brown pair.

**57. "I will ring you up after I get home. " Peter said to Mary.**

A. Peter promised to give Mary a wedding ring after he got home.

B. Peter asked Mary to pay him a visit after he' got home.

C. Peter promised to visit Mary after he got home.

**D. Peter promised to telephone Mary after he got home.**

**58. I suggested that he should paint the house light blue.**

A. "Shall we painted the house light blue?" I said to him.

B. "How about to paint the house light blue?" I said to him.

C. "Let's paint the house light blue," I said to him.

**D. "Why don't you paint the house light blue?" I said to him.**

**59. He reminded me to buy him some stamps.**

**A. "Don't forget to buy me some stamps," he said.**

B. "Remember buying me some stamps," said he.

C. "Remind to buy me some stamps," said he.

D. "Don't deny buying me some stamps.," he said.

**60. "I'll definitely return it to you tomorrow, " John said.**

A. John said that he'll return it to me the next day.

**B. John promised to return it to me the next day.**

C. John told that he'll return it to me the next day.

D. John decided to return it to me next day.

**61. "You mustn't call the police," he said to his wife.**

A. He accused his wife of calling the police.

B. He warned his wife calling the police.

**C. He stopped his wife from calling the police.**

D. He apologized his wife for calling the police.

32. "It's me. I made your dress dirty," Jane said to Ann.

A. Jane accused Ann of making her dress dirty.

B. Ann prevented Jane from making her dress dirty.

C. Jane denied making Ann's dress dirty.

**D. Jane admitted making Ann's dress dirty.**

63. "Don't go near that deserted house," Tuan said to me.

A. Tuan advised me not going near that deserted house.

B. Tuan insisted me going near that deserted house.

**C. Tuan warned me against going near that deserted house.**

D. Tuan suggested me not to going near that deserted house.

64. "How beautiful the dress you have just bought is!" Peter said to Mary.

A. Peter promised to buy Mary a beautiful dress.

B. Peter said thanks to Mary for her beautiful dress.

**C. Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.**

D. Peter asked Mary how she had just bought her beautiful dress.

*C. Choose the word or phrase in each of the following sentences that needs correcting.*

65. He said me if I had done my homework.

**A**      B      C      D

66. They wanted to know how much could you pay for it.

A                  B                  **C**                  D

67. You promised you will go on a picnic with us the next Sunday

A                  **B**                  C                  D

68. They asked me what did happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.

A                  **B**                  C                  D

69. Ron said that he wasn't sure, but the storm may stop already.

A      B      C                  **D**

70. I asked him how far was it to the station if I went there by taxi.

A                  **B**                  C                  D

71. The shopkeeper warned the boys don't lean their bicycles against his windows.

A                  **B**                  C                  D

72. They asked me that I could do the shopping for them.

**A**      B      C                  D

73. Her mother ordered her do not go out with him the night before.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

74. The traffic warden asked me why had I parked my car there.

A                    B                    **C**                    D

75. He said that he will pick me up at 8 am the following day.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

76. She said that the books in the library would be available tomorrow

A                    B                    C                    **D**

77. He advised her thinking about that example again because it needed correcting.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

78. The receptionist said I must fill out that form before I attended the interview.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

79. Marty said a good friendship is like a diamond – valuable, beautiful and durable.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

80. The mayor apologized on having slept in an international summit and resigned afterwards.

A                    **B**                    C                    D

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7

### MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSES)

#### RELATIVE CLAUSES - REDUCED RELATIVE CLAUSES – REDUCED CLAUSES

### I. LÝ THUYẾT

#### A. RELATIVE CLAUSES

- Mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề phụ được nối với mệnh đề chính bởi các đại từ quan hệ (who, whom, whose, which, that) hay các trạng từ quan hệ như (where, when, why). Mệnh đề quan hệ đứng ngay đằng sau danh từ. Chức năng của nó giống như một tính từ do vậy nó cũn được gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ.

Eg: The man who lives next door is very friendly.

Danh từ đứng trước (Antecedent)	Chủ ngữ (Subject)	Tồn ngữ (Object)	Sở hữu cách (Possessive Case)
Người (person)	Who/That	Whom/That	Whose
Vật (Thing)	Which/That	Which/That	Of which/ whose

#### **I. Đại từ quan hệ (Relative pronouns)**

1. **WHO:** thay thế cho người, làm chủ ngữ/ tồn ngữ trong MĐQH.

Ex: - I need to meet *the boy*. *The boy* is my friend's son.

→ I need to meet the boy who is my friend's son.

The girl is John's sister. You saw her at the concert.

=> The girl who you saw at the concert is ...

2. **WHOM:** thay thế cho người, làm tồn ngữ trong MĐQH.

Ex:- I know *the girl*. I spoke to *this girl*.

→ I know the girl whom I spoke to.

3. **WHICH:** - thay thế đồ vật, làm chủ ngữ /tồn ngữ trong MĐQH.

Ex: - She works for *a company*. *It* makes cars

→ She works for a company which makes cars.

The accident wasn't very serious. Daniel saw it.

=> The accident which Daniel saw .....

**\* Thay thế cho cả mệnh đề đứng trước nó – a connector**

Ex: He passed his exam. This pleased his parents.

He passed his exam, which pleased his parents. (*dùng dấu phẩy trước đại từ quan hệ*)

4. **THAT**: thay thế cho *WHO/ WHOM/ WHICH* trong MĐQH hạn định (*Mã không có dấu phẩy*)

Ex: - I need to meet the boy that/ who is my friend's son.

- I know the girl that/ who/ whom I spoke to.

- She works for a company that/ which makes cars.

**\*Notes:**

**+ Những trường hợp thường dùng THAT:**

- Sau đại từ bất định: *something, anyone, nobody,...* hoặc sau “ *all, much, none, little...* ” được dùng như đại từ.

Ex: I'll tell you **something** that is very interesting.

**All** that is mine is yours. / These walls are all **that** are remains of the city.

- Sau các tính từ so sánh hơn nhất, các từ chỉ thứ tự: *only, first, last, second, next...*

Ex: - This is **the most beautiful dress** that I've ever had.

- You are **the only person** that can help us.

- Trong cấu trúc: **It + be + ... + that ...** (chính là ...)

**It is/was not until + time/clause + that.....**(mới tới khi... thì...)

Ex: *It is* my friend that wrote this sentence.

It was not until 1990 that she became a member of the team.

**+ Những trường hợp khụng dựng THAT:**

- Trong mệnh đề tính từ không hạn định.

Ex: Mr Brown, that we studied English with, is a very nice teacher. (sai)

- Sau giới từ.

Ex: The house in that I was born is for sale. (sai)

**+ Bắt buộc dựng THAT:**

- Sau cụm từ vừa chỉ người và vật, bắt buộc dùng “that”:

Ex: He told me **the places and people** that he had seen in London.

We can see **the farmers and their cattle** that are going to the field.

- Trong cấu trúc: **It be ..... that .....** (cú thể dựng WHO khi chủ ngữ Hoặc tân ngữ đứng giữa “**It be N/O that ....**” chỉ người)



**5. WHOSE (OF WHICH):** thay thế cho các danh từ có tính từ sở hữu đi kèm (*his-, her-, its-, their-*).

Ex: - John found *the cat*. *Its leg* was broken.

→ John found a cat *whose leg/(the leg of which)* was broken. (*Of which is informal*)

- This is the student. I borrowed his book.

→ This is the student *whose book* I borrowed.

\*Các từ chỉ số lượng như (**quantifiers**): **All of, None of, each of, most of, many of, neither of, the majority of ...**=> có thể dùng với **WHICH / WHOM/ WHOSE** trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định:

Ex: - Daisy has *three brothers*. All of *them* are teachers.

→ Daisy has three brothers, *all of whom* are teachers.

- He asked me a lot of *questions*. I couldn't answer most of *them*.

→ He asked me a lot of questions, *most of which* I couldn't answer

She has a teddy- bear. Both of its eyes are brown.

=> She has a teddy-bear, *both of whose eyes* are brown.

**\*Lưu ý về mệnh đề quan hệ:**

**1. Giới từ có thể đứng trước Whom và which.**

- in *formal written* style: prep + which/ whom Eg: *The man about whom you are talking is my brother.*

- in *informal* style: giới từ thường đứng sau động từ: *The man whom you are talking about is my brother.*

**Chú ý:** Khi ĐTQH làm tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định và giới từ đứng sau động từ trong mệnh đề thì ta có thể bỏ đại từ quan hệ.

Eg: *The picture (which) you are looking at is very expensive.*

- Nhưng khi giới từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ thì ta không thể bỏ đại từ quan hệ:

Eg: *The picture **at which** you are looking is very expensive.*

**2. Giới từ không dùng trước That và Who:**

**3. Khi động từ trong mệnh đề là Phrasal verbs: không được chuyển giới từ lên trước ĐTQH whom /which:**

Eg: Did you find the word which you were *looking up*?

The child whom I have *looked after* for a year is very naughty.

The man whom you are looking *forward to* is the chairman of the company.

**4. Without** luôn đứng trước **whom/ which:**

Eg: The woman **without whom** I can't live is Jane.

Fortunately we had a map *without which* we would have got lost.

**5. Các đại từ quan hệ có chức năng tân ngữ (mà trước chúng không có giới từ) trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định đều có thể lược bỏ.** Tuy nhiên trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định thì không thể lược bỏ.

Eg: *That's the house (which) I have bought.*

*The woman (whom) you met yesterday **works in advertising.*** (làm nghề quảng cáo)

Eg: *Mr Tom, whom everybody suspected, turned out to be innocent.*

## **II. Phó từ quan hệ (Relative Adverbs)**

**1. WHERE:** thay thế cho cụm từ chỉ **nơi chốn** hoặc thay cho (**in/ at / on... which**), **there / here.**

Ex: - The movie theater is *the place*. We can see films *at that place*.

→ The movie theater is the place **where we can see films**.

### at which

Eg: That is the house. We used to live in it.

=> That is the house where we used to live. (= in which)

This is the table. My teacher put his book on it.

=> This is the table where my teacher put his book. (= on which)

## 2. **WHEN:** thay thế cho cụm từ chỉ **thời gian hoặc thay cho (in/ on/at... which), then**

Ex: - Do you remember *the day*. We first met *on that day*.

→ Do you remember the day **when/on which** we first met?

Eg: That was the time when he managed the company. (= at which)

→ Spring is the season when flowers of all kinds are in full bloom. (= in which)

## 3. **WHY (for which):** thay thế cho cụm trạng từ chỉ **lý do**.

Ex: - Tell me *the reason*. You are so sad *for that reason*.

→ Tell me the reason **why/for which** you are so sad.

### \*Note:

- **“Where”** có thể được sử dụng mà không cần cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.

Eg: Put it where we all can see it.

- Không sử dụng giới từ trước **“Where, When, Why”**.

Eg: The building **in where he lives/ where he lives in** is very old. (sai)

=> The building in which he lives is very old.

## III. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (Defining & Non-Defining relative clauses)

### 1. Defining Relative Clauses:

- Dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước chưa được xác định rõ, nếu bỏ đi thì mệnh đề chính sẽ không rõ nghĩa. (*modify the antecedent which is unclear in meaning*)

Ex: - I saw *the girl*. She helped us last week.

→ I saw the girl who/that helped us last week.

• LƯU Ý: Ta có thể bỏ đại từ quan hệ: WHO, WHOM, WHICH, THAT khi chúng làm tân ngữ trong MĐQH hạn định.

### 2. Non-Defining Relative Clauses:

- Dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước đó được xác định rõ (nó chỉ là phần giải thích thêm), nếu bỏ đi thì mệnh đề chính vẫn rõ nghĩa (*modify the antecedent which is clear in meaning, so it's just an extra information*).

- Mệnh đề này ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng **dấu phẩy** (*use commas to separate with main clause*).

Ta dùng mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định khi:

+ Trước đại từ quan hệ có: **this/that/these/those/my/her/his/...+ N**

+ Trước đại từ quan hệ là **từ riêng, danh từ riêng, vật duy nhất**.

Ex: - *My father* is a doctor. *He* is fifty years old.

→ My father, who is fifty years old, is a doctor.

- *Mr. Brown* is a very nice teacher. We studied English with *him*.

→ Mr Brown, who we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.

- The sun made the traveler thirsty. It was hot at midday.

→ *The Sun*, which was hot at midday, made the traveler thirsty.

\* LƯU Ý: + KHÔNG được bỏ đại từ quan hệ trong MĐQH không hạn định.

+ Không dùng THAT trong mệnh đề này.

## B. REDUCED RELATIVE CLAUSES

**Điều kiện:** Khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ, trước ĐTQH không có giới từ.

### 1. Dạng phân từ:

a. Dạng hiện tại phân từ (*present participle*): **V-ing** -> Khi V trong MĐ ở dạng **chủ động**

Eg: + The man who is standing there is my brother.

=> The man standing there is my brother

+ Bill, who wanted to make an impression on Ann, invited her to his house.

=> Bill, wanting to make an impression on Ann, invited her to his house.

\* Notes: Không nên dùng HTPT để diễn đạt hành động đơn trong quá khứ.

Eg: + The police wanted to interview *the people who saw the accident*.

=> The police wanted to interview the people seeing the accident. (khụng nờn)

**But:** + The people who saw the accident had to report it to the police.

=> *The people seeing the accident* had to report it to the police.

b) Dạng quá khứ phân từ (*Past participle*): **Ved/3** Khi V trong MĐ ở dạng **bị động**

Eg: + The boy who was injured in the accident was taken to the hospital.

=> The boy injured in the accident.....

+ Most of the goods that are made in this factory are exported.

=> Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.

+ Some of the people who have been invited to the party can't come.

=> Some of the people invited to the party can't come.

### 2) Dạng cụm to inf: (To V/ For sb to V / to be + PII...) (2)

-Dùng khi danh từ đứng trước có các từ sau đây: *The ONLY, LAST, FIRST, NEXT, SECOND...*

Ex: + This is the only student who can solve the problem. (động từ mang nghĩa chủ động)

=> This is the only student to solve the problem.

+ She is the youngest player who won the game.

=> She is the youngest player to win the game.

- ĐTQH là tân ngữ trong mệnh đề, khi muốn diễn đạt mục đích, sự cho phấp.

Ex: + The children need a big yard which they can play in.

=> The children need a big yard to play in.

-Câu bắt đầu bằng: *HERE (BE), THERE (BE)*

Ex: + Here is the form that you must fill in.

=> Here is the form for you to fill in.

+ There are six letters which have to be written today. (động từ mang nghĩa bị động)

There are six letters to be written today.

**GHI NHỚ:** Trong phần **to-inf** này cần nhớ 2 điều sau:

- Nếu chủ ngữ của 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì dựng **for sb +to V**.

Ex: + We have some picture books that *children* can read.

=> We have some picture books *for children to read*.

Tuy nhiên nếu chủ ngữ đó là đại từ có nghĩa chung chung như: *we, you, everyone...* thì có thể khuyết cần ghi ra.

Ex: + Studying abroad is the wonderful thing that *we* must think about.

=> Studying abroad is the wonderful thing (*for us*) to think about.

- Nếu trước **relative pronouns** cú giới từ thì phải đưa giới từ xuống cuối câu.

Ex: + We have a peg **on which** we can hang our coat.

=> We have a peg **to hang** our coat **on**.

### **3) Dùng cụm danh từ (đồng cách danh từ/ ngữ đồng vị)**

Dùng khi mệnh đề quan hệ có dạng:

**Which/ Who+ BE + DANH TỪ / CỤM DANH TỪ / CỤM GIỚI TỪ/ TÍNH TỪ (3)**

Cách làm: bỏ *who, which* và *be*

Ex: Vo Nguyen Giap, who was the first general of Vietnam, passed away one week ago.

=> VNG, *the first general of Vietnam*, passed away one week ago.

Ex: We visited Barcelona, which is a city in northern Spain.

=> We visited Barcelona, *a city in northern Spain*.

### **PHƯƠNG PHÁP LÀM BÀI LOẠI RÚT GỌN MĐQH:**

Bước 1: - Tìm xem mệnh đề quan hệ nằm ở đâu.

Bước 2: Rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ thành cụm danh từ.

1. Nhìn xem mệnh đề có công thức S + BE + CỤM DANH TỪ không? Nếu có áp dụng công thức (3).

2. Nếu không có công thức đó thì xem tiếp trước ĐTQH có các dấu hiệu *the first, only, second, third...* /so sánh hơn nhất..., nếu có thì áp dụng công thức (2). Lưu ý thêm, xem 2 chủ ngữ có khác nhau không (để dùng **for sb+ V**)

3. Nếu không có 2 trường hợp trên mới xét xem câu đó **chủ động** hay **bị động** mà dùng **V-ing** hay **Ved/3**.

### **C. REDUCED CLAUSES: RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG TỪ (Reduce an adverbial clause)**

\* **Điều kiện:** Chủ từ trong mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề trạng từ giống nhau

\* **Cách rýt gọn:**

- Bỏ các liên từ bắt đầu một mệnh đề trạng từ.

- Chuyển các hình thức động từ ở dạng chủ động thành **present participle** (đối với các thì đơn / tiếp diễn) hoặc **having + past participle (V<sub>3, ed</sub>)** (đối với các thì hoàn thành).

**Example:** + After he had finished his work, he went home.

→ **(After) having finished his work**, he went home.

+ He was lying on the floor, he was reading a book.

→ **Lying on the floor**, he was reading a book.

**Or:** He was lying on the floor, **reading a book**.

- Giữ nguyên hình thức động từ ở dạng bị động ở dạng **past participle** hoặc **being + past participle** (Đối với các thì đơn / tiếp diễn) hoặc **having been + past participle (V<sub>3, ed</sub>)** (đối với các thì hoàn thành).

**Example:**

+ He was punished by his father, he cried bitterly.

→ **Being punished** by his father, he cried bitterly.

**Or: Punished** by his father, he cried bitterly.

+ After she had been treated cruelly by her husband, she divorced him.

→ **Having been treated** cruelly by her husband, she divorced him.

**a. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.**

- Hai hành động xảy ra song song:

+ He was lying on the floor, he was reading a book.

-> He was lying on the floor, **reading a book**.

- Hai hành động xảy ra trước sau (thường rút ngắn mệnh đề xảy ra trước)

+ When I came home, I turned on the lights.

-> Coming home, I turned on the lights.

**b. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân.**

+ Because she was unable to afford a car, she bought a motorcycle.

→ **Being unable to afford a car**, she bought a motorcycle.

+ She felt very confident because she had prepared well for the test.

→ Having prepared well for the test, she felt very confident.

**c. Mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản.**

+ Although I admit he is right, I do not like him.

→ **Admitting he is right**, I do not like him.

+ Although he is famous, he looks very simple.

→ **Being famous**, he looks very simple.

**d. Mệnh đề điều kiện.**

+ If you follow my advice, you can win the game.

→ **Following my advice**, you can win the game.

+ If you had gone to the party, you would have met her.

→ **Having gone to the party**, you would have met her.

**e. Mệnh đề kết quả: Khi hành động thứ 2 tạo thành một phần hoặc là kết quả của hành động 1, ta có thể rút ngắn hành động 2 về cụm HTPT (V-ing).**

+ As she went out, she slammed the door.

→ She went out, **slamming** the door.

+ He fired, **wounding** one of the bandits.

## \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

**Choose the best answer.**

1. Sunday is the day..... I go to Water park with my kids.

A. when                      B. where                      C. why                      D. which

2. That was the reason..... he didn't marry her.

A. when                      B. where                      C. why                      D. which

3. An architect is someone..... deigns buildings.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

4. The boy to..... I lent my money is poor.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that

5. The land and the people..... I have met are nice.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that

6. I can answer the question..... you say is very difficult.

A. which                      B. who                      C. whom                      D. whose

7. This is the place..... the battle took place ten years ago.

A. which                      B. in where                      C. where                      D. from where

8. Sunday is the day..... which we usually go fishing.

A. during                      B. at                      C. in                      D. on

9. This is the last time..... I speak to you.

A. of which                      B. whose                      C. that                      D. which

10. He talked about the books and the authors..... interested him.

A. who                      B. that                      C. which                      D. whom

11. Bondi is the beautiful beach..... I used to sunbathe.

A. when                      B. where                      C. which                      D. why

12. Dec 26th, 05 was the day..... the terrible tsunami happened.

A. when                      B. where                      C. which                      D. why

13. The woman..... lives next my door is doctor.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

14. The boy..... Mary likes is my son.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

15. The boy..... eyes are brown is my son.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

16. The table..... legs are broken should be repaired.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

17. The town..... we are living is noisy and crowded

A. where                      B. in where                      C. which                      D. at which

18. The year..... we came to live here was 1997

A. when                      B. which                      C. that                      D. in the time

19. The worker..... house is next to mine died this morning.

A. whose                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

20. The lady..... son went on a picnic with us last weekend is a teacher at our school.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. that

21. Take..... measures you consider best.

A. whatever                      B. however                      C. whenever                      D. wherever

22..... difficulties you may encounter, I'm sure you'll succeed.

A. how                      B. whatever                      C. however                      D. how great

23. He is the only friend..... I like.

A. who                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. whose

24. I didn't get the job..... which I applied.

A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. for

25. The man..... whom she is married has been married twice before.

A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. to

26. I wasn't interested in the things..... which they were talking.

A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. about

27. The bed..... which I slept was too soft.

- A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. for

28. The party..... which we went wasn't very enjoyable.

- A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. to

29. The flight..... which we wanted to travel was fully booked.

- A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. for

30. She is the most beautiful girl..... ever lived.

- A. which                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. that

31. The decision was postponed,..... was exactly what he wanted.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that

32. All the people..... have gone into the room are still young.

- A. which                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. that

33. Jack has three brothers, all of..... are married.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that

34. They gave us a lot of information, most of..... was useless.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. that

35. There were a lot of people at the party, only a few of..... I had met before.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. them                      D. that

36. I have sent him two letters, neither of..... has arrived.

- A. who                      B. them                      C. which                      D. that

37. John won \$,600, half of..... he gave to his parents.

- A. whom                      B. which                      C. that                      D. it

38. Ten people applied for the job, none of..... were suitable.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. them                      D. that

39. Jill isn't on the phone,..... makes it difficult to contact her.

- A. which                      B. that                      C. who                      D. it

40. Bob is the kind of person to..... one can talk about anything.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. him

41. He is a person..... friends trust him.



A. who                      B. whose                      C. his                      D. that

42. Your career should focus on a field in..... you are genuinely interested.

A. which                      B. what                      C. that                      D. why

43. People..... outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people.

A. whose                      B. whom                      C. that                      D. which

44. Anna's marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man.....

A. that she hardly knows him                      B. whom she hardly knows him  
C. she hardly knows                      D. she hardly knows him

45. They said they didn't have any money,..... was a pity.

A. which                      B. that                      C. this                      D. it

46. I haven't got a passport..... means I can't leave my country.

A. it                      B. that                      C. this                      D. which

47. The part of town where I live is very noisy at night,..... makes it difficult to sleep.

A. which                      B. where                      C. that                      D. this

48. That is the place..... the accident occurred.

A. where                      B. which                      C. on which                      D. that

49. The boys ..... tennis over there are my new neighbor.

A. who plays                      B. playing                      C. that playing                      D. are playing

50. He read the Old Man and The Sea, a novel ..... by Ernest Hemingway.

A. writing                      B. which written                      C. written                      D. that wrote

51. No one present noticed anything strange.

A. The people who were there didn't notice anything strange.  
B. The people who were there didn't notice anything usual.  
C. The people were there didn't notice anything strange.  
D. The people who were there didn't notice something strange.

52. Jane refused to attend his birthday party, which made him feel sad.

A. Jane's refusal to attend his birthday party made him feel sad.  
B. He felt sad not to be able to attend his birthday party.  
C. Jane made him sad despite her refusal to attend his birthday party.  
D. Jane refused to attend his birthday party because it made him feel sad.

53. The plants may develop differently. They grow on that island.

A. The plants which grows on that island may develop differently.  
B. The plants which grow on that island may develop differently.  
C. The plants grow on that island may develop differently.  
D. The plants which grow that island may develop differently.

54. John Smith is a farmer. I bought his land.

- A. John Smith, whose land I bought, is a farmer.  
 B. John Smith, who is a farmer, whose land I bought.  
 C. John Smith, whom I bought his land, is a farmer.  
 D. John Smith, a farmer, bought his land.
55. The first man who was interviewed was entirely unsuitable.  
 A. The first man interviewing was entirely unsuitable.  
 B. The first man to interview was entirely unsuitable.  
 C. The first man was interviewed was entirely unsuitable.  
 D. The first man to be interviewed was entirely unsuitable.
56. Astronomy is the study of planets and stars. It is one of the world's oldest sciences  
 A. Astronomy which is the study of planets and stars is one of the world's oldest sciences  
 B. Astronomy, who is the study of planets and stars, is one of the world's oldest sciences  
 C. Astronomy is the study of planets and stars which are one of the world's oldest sciences  
 D. Astronomy, the study of planets and stars, is one of the world's oldest sciences
57. Our solar system is in a galaxy. It is called the Milky Way.  
 A. Our solar system is in a galaxy where is called the Milky Way.  
 B. Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way.  
 C. Our solar system is in a galaxy, that is called the Milky Way.  
 D. Our solar system is in a galaxy calling the Milky Way.
58. I saw men, women, cats and dogs. They moved round and round.  
 A. I saw men, women, cats and dogs that moved round and round.  
 B. I saw men, women, cats and dogs which moved round and round.  
 C. I saw men, women, cats and dogs moved round and round.  
 D. I saw men, women, cats and dogs when moved round and round.
59. One evening, he and the writer went to a restaurant. They had a wonderful meal in it.  
 A. One evening, he and the writer went to a restaurant which they had a wonderful meal.  
 B. One evening, he and the writer went to a restaurant where they had a wonderful meal in.  
 C. One evening, he and the writer went to a restaurant where they had a wonderful meal.  
 D. One evening, he and the writer went to a restaurant they had a wonderful meal.
60. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of them were not very practical.  
 A. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, most of them were not very practical  
 B. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, most of which were not very practical  
 C. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of which were not very practical  
 D. Most of the suggestions which were made at the meeting were not very practical.
61. \_\_\_\_\_ in 1937, the Golden Gate Bridge spans the channel at the entrance to San Francisco Bay.  
 A. Completed                      B. Having completed                      C. Completing                      D. To be completed
62. After seeing the movie Centennial, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the book made many people want to read it                      B. many people want to read the book  
 C. the reading of the book interested many people                      D. the book was read by many people
63. \_\_\_\_\_ of the shop, my friend came in.  
 A. Coming out                      B. On coming out                      C. When coming out                      D. As I came out
64. \_\_\_\_\_ two hours over lunch, they left the restaurant.  
 A. Spending                      B. Having spent                      C. After spend                      D. Spent
65. I notice the lorry \_\_\_\_\_ down the hill.

A. having come                      B. coming                      C. to come                      D. came

66. \_\_\_\_\_, I decided to stop trading with them.

- A. Despite of the fact that they were the biggest dealer
- B. Though being the biggest dealer
- C. Being the biggest dealer
- D. Even though they were the biggest dealers

67. She told a very funny story, \_\_\_\_\_ everyone to burst into a laugh.

- A. allowing                      B. making                      C. taking                      D. causing

68. I wasn't properly dressed for the party and felt \_\_\_\_\_ about my appearance.

- A. embarrass                      B. embarrassment                      C. embarrassing                      D. embarrassed

69. Young people \_\_\_\_\_ to succeed in life should work hard.

- A. who wanting                      B. want                      C. wanting                      D. wanted

70. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to be good for digestion.

- A. Eating yoghurt                      B. Having eaten yoghurt                      C. Yoghurt eaten                      D. Yoghurts

71. \_\_\_\_\_ over the exam results, she rushed home to tell her family the good news.

- A. Excited                      B. Excitement                      C. To excite                      D. Exciting

72. Are there any household chores for \_\_\_\_\_ men are better \_\_\_\_\_ than women ?

- A. that/suit                      B. whose/suited                      C. which/suited                      D. which/suit

73. Can you please tell me some information \_\_\_\_\_ to the job ?

- A. relating                      B. that relate                      C. that are relating                      D. that related

74. The truck \_\_\_\_\_ crashed into the back of a bus scattering glass everywhere.

- A. it was loading with empty bottles                      B. loaded with empty bottles
- C. which loading with empty bottles                      D. loading with empty bottles

75. None of the people \_\_\_\_\_ to the party can come.

- A. invite                      B. invited                      C. inviting                      D. to invite

76. \_\_\_\_\_ the noise and pollution in the city, the Browns move to the countryside.

- A. Be tired of                      B. Being tired of                      C. Tired of                      D. Were tired of

77. *the author / released / earned / last year / the book / a lot of money.*

- A. Released last year, the book earned the author a lot of money.

B. Released last year, the author earned the book a lot of money.

C. The author released the book last year a lot of money earned.

D. The released book last year earned the author a lot of money.

78. Do you know any restaurant..... ?

A. have a really good meal

B. where we can have a really good meal

C. has a really good meal

D. that we can have a really good meal

79. The secretaries were the only people.....

A. to get a pay rise

B. getting a pay rise

C. who to get a pay rise

D. to whom get a pay rise.

80. The reason..... was that her mother fell seriously ill.

A. where she didn't come

B. when she didn't come

C. she didn't come

D. for which she didn't come

#### ERROR IDENTIFICATION

1. There are about 500 species of poisonous snakes, 200 of them are harmful to man.

A

B

C

D

2. The electric cooker who is wrapped in the box is made of steel.

A

B

C

D

3. The legal age which a person is considered to be an adult is customarily 18.

A

B

C

D

4. The gardener used the scissors which he had bought them from a village shop to cut the flowers.

A

B

C

D

5. The area with the greatest number of thunderstorms each year is the interior of the Florida

A

B

C

peninsula, which the Atlantic and Gulf airstreams meet.

D

6. Aloha is a Hawaiian word meaning 'love', that can be used to say hello or goodbye.

A

B

C

D

7. People whose exercise frequently have greater physical endurance than those who doesn't.

A

B

C

D

8. I have always wanted to visit Paris, that is the capital of France.

A

B

C

D

9. Shakespeare, who works are famous all over the world, was an English writer.

A

B

C

D

10. The water temperature in a spring depends on that of the soil through where the water flows.

A

B

C

D



## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8

### COMPARISON

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

Adj: - long adj / short adj

Adv: - long adv / short adv

Note:

- Nếu dùng động từ *To be* hoặc *V* nối thờ trong câu sẽ dựng so sánh với tính từ, cũn nếu dựng *V* thường thờ trong câu sẽ dựng so sánh với trạng từ.

- Nếu động từ trước và sau “*than/as*” giống nhau thờ động từ sau “*than/as*” ta có thể thay thế bằng trợ động từ, hoặc ta có thể bỏ động từ sau “*than/as*”

*I earn less than he does. (less than he earns).*

*I swim better than he does/better than him.*

- Trong văn nói hoặc tiếng anh không trang trọng có thể bỏ động từ sau “*than/as*”, và có thể dùng đại từ tân ngữ

*He has more time than I have.*

*He has more time than I.*

*He has more time than me.*

- So sánh ngang bằng và so sánh hơn chỉ dùng khi so sánh giữa 2 người hoặc 2 vật, cũn khi so sánh từ 3 người hoặc 3 vật trở lên ta dùng so sánh hơn nhất.

#### A. So sánh ngang bằng (Equal Comparison)

**1. S + “be/Vnối” + as + adj + as + N (Pronoun) + (Verb)**

Ex. - Peter is *as tall as* his father.

- Mary is *as beautiful as* her friend.

**2. S + V thường + as + adv + as + N (Pronoun) + (Verb)**

Ex. - Jane sings *as well as* his sister.

Note:

- Sau “*as*” thứ hai nhất thiết phải là đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngữ (được dùng tân ngữ nhưng chủ yếu trong văn nói.)

- Nếu là câu phủ định (so sánh không bằng), “*as*” thứ nhất có thể thay bằng “*so*”

Ex: *His work is not so difficult as mine*

- Danh từ cũng có thể dùng so sánh trong trường hợp này nhưng đảm bảo danh từ đó phải có tính từ tương ứng.

Chỳ ý các tính từ sau và các danh từ tương ứng của chúng.

Adj		N
- heavy, light	→	weight
- wide, narrow	→	width
- deep, shallow	→	depth

- long, short → length
- big, small → size
- old → age

- **Danh từ cũng được dùng để so sánh**, nhưng trước khi so sánh thờ cần xác định danh từ đó là đếm được hay là không đếm được và sử dụng cụm thức so sánh sau:

N đếm được: Ex: book, pen, table.....

N không đếm được: money, water, salt.....

	<b>many/ few</b>	<b>N đếm được số nhiều</b>	
<b>S + V + as</b>	+	+	<b>+ as + noun/pronoun</b>
	<b>much/little</b>	<b>N không đếm được</b>	

Ex: David earns as much money as his wife

\* í “bằng nhau, như nhau” có thể được diễn đạt cách khác:

<b>S+ V + the same + (N) + as + N (pronoun).</b>
--

Ex. - My house is as high as his.

→ My house is the same height as his.

-Tom is as old as Mary.

→ Tom and Mary are the same age.

**Note:**

-Đối nghĩa của **the same..... as** là **difference ..... from**

Ex: My teacher is different from yours.

-Chú ý ta đừng “the same as” chứ đừng “the same like”

## **B. So sánh hơn. (Comparative)**

### **1. So sánh hơn (Comparative)**

<b>S + be/ V nối</b>	<b>short Adj +er</b> <b>more + long Adj</b>	<b>+ than</b>	<b>+ N (pronoun)</b>
----------------------	--	---------------	----------------------

Ex. -Today is *hotter than* yesterday.

-This chair is *more comfortable than* the other.

<b>S + V +</b>	<b>short Adv +er</b> <b>more + long Adv</b>	<b>+ than</b>	<b>+ N (pronoun)</b>
----------------	--	---------------	----------------------

Ex. - He speaks English *better than* me.

- My father sings *more beautifully than* my brother.

\* **Để nhấn mạnh so sánh, có thể thêm much/far trước so sánh, công thức:**

**S + V + far/much + Adj/Adv + er + than + noun/pronoun**

**S + V + far/much + more + Adj/Adv + than + noun/pronoun**

Eg: Harry's watch is far more expensive than mine

He speaks English much more rapidly than he does Spanish.

**Note:**

- **Adj ngắn 1 âm tiết + er/ est:**

Ex. Thick → thicker / thickest, cold → colder/ coldest ....

+ Với những tính từ 1 âm tiết cú cấu tạo: **phụ âm + nguyên âm + phụ âm** thì ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm **er/ est:**

Ex. Hot → hotter/ hottest, big → bigger// biggest

+ Với những tính từ tận cùng là nguyên âm + y ta giữ nguyên và thêm **er / est**

Ex: gay → gayer / gayest

gray → grayer / grayest

+ Với những tính từ 2 âm tiết có tận cùng là đuôi: **-y, -er, -ow, -le:** thì ta thêm đuôi **er / est:**

Ex. dirty → Dirtier

simple → simpler

clever → cleverer

narrow → narrower

+ Với những tính từ tận cùng là phụ âm + y, ta đổi **y = i + er / est**

Eg: happy → happier

easy → easier

+ Còn lại những tính từ 2 âm tiết khác ta thêm **more** đứng trước tính từ.

- Với những tính từ 3 âm tiết trở lên ta thêm **more** đứng trước:

Ex. beautiful → more beautiful

intelligent → more intelligent

interesting → more interesting

### C. So sánh nhất (Superlative)

So sánh nhất bắt buộc phải có từ 3 đối tượng trở lên. (thường là N tập hợp)

**S + V + the +**

**short adj/ adv + est**

**+(N)+ (in/ of) + N**

**most + long adj/ adv**

Ex: Lan is the most beautiful in my class

**Note:**

-Dùng **in** với danh từ số ít. Dùng **of** với danh từ số nhiều

Ex. This dress is the most beautiful of the dresses.



-Các quy tắc khác cũng giống như dạng so sánh hơn.

Ex. *Hottest, biggest*

Ex. *John is the tallest boy in my class.*

-Các trường hợp adj/ adv biến đổi đặc biệt.

+Một số adj cũng đồng thời là adv:

**Early, hard, fast, long**

-Nếu dựng mệnh đề quan hệ thường ta dựng với *thờ* hoàn thành

Ex.

*It/This is the best beer (that) I have ever drunk.*

*It/This was the worst film (that) he had ever seen.*

*He is the kindest man (that) I have ever met.*

*It was the most worrying day (that) he had ever spent.*

## D. So sánh kộp

### 1. So sánh kộp hơn:

**S + V + less + adj/adv + than + noun/ pronoun**

Ex. - Nga is less young than I.

- My brother runs less fast than I.

### 2. So sánh kộp hơn nhất:

**S + V + the + least + adj/ adv + (N) + (in/ of) + N**

Ex. - These shoes are *the least expensive* of all.

### 3. So sánh lũy tiến càng ngày càng kộp

**S+ V+ less and less + long/short adj/ adv**

She becomes *less and less beautiful*.

## E. So sánh kộp (Double Comparative)

### a) So sánh đồng tiến: (càng.....thờ càng)

**The+ comparative + S + V +(O), the + comparative + S + V +(O)**

Ex. *The hotter it is, the more terrible I feel.*

*The sooner you leaver, the earlier you will arrive at your destination.*

*The more you study, the smarter you will become.*

### b) So sánh lũy tiến: (càng ngày càng.....)

- **Tớnh từ và trạng từ dài:**

**S+ V+ more+ and +more + long adj/ adv**

Ex. She becomes *more and more beautiful*.

(Cụ ấy càng ngày càng xinh.)

- **Tính từ và trạng từ ngắn:**

**S + V + short adj/ adv + er and + short adj/ adv + er**

Ex. Lan is *younger and younger*. (Lan càng ngày càng trẻ)

**Note:** Một số adj không dùng để so sánh là những adj chỉ tính chất duy nhất, đơn nhất, chỉ kích thước, hình học (mang tính qui tắc)

**Eg:** *only, unique, square, round, perfect, extreme, just..*

### COMPARISON CHART

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>One syllable adjective: old, fast, clean, long</b>	<b>Older, faster, cleaner, longer</b>	<b>The oldest, the fastest, the cleanest, the longest</b>
<b>One syllable adjectives ending in -e: wide, nice</b>	<b>Wider, nicer</b>	<b>The widest, the nicest</b>
<b>Two syllable adjectives ending in -y, -er, -ow, -le: dirty, simple, clever, narrow</b>	<b>Dirtier, simpler, cleverer, narrower</b>	<b>The dirtiest, the simplest, the cleverest, the narrowest</b>
<b>Other adjectives with two or more syllables: honest, modern, comfortable</b>	<b>More honest, more modern, more comfortable</b>	<b>The most honest, the most modern, the most comfortable</b>
<b>Irregular adjectives: good, bad, far, old</b>	<b>Better, worse, farther/further, older/elder(only with family members)</b>	<b>The best, the worst, the farthest/the furthest, the oldest/the eldest (only with family members)</b>

### \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

#### I. Choose the best answer A, B, C, or D to complete each sentence.

1. Ms. Jones isn't as nice ..... Ms. Smith.

- A. as                                      B. for                                      C. like                                      D. to

2. The rooms in Graduate Towers are..... Patterson Hall.

- A. larger than                                      B. larger than that of  
C. larger than those in                                      D. larger than in

3. Although she is very popular, she is not.....her sister.

- A. pretty as                                      B. as pretty  
C. prettier than                                      D. most pretty than

4. Tuition at an American university runs..... Six thousand dollars a semester.

- A. so high as                                      B. as high to  
C. as high as                                      D. as high than

5. Everyone looks much..... today than they did yesterday.  
 A. happy                      B. happily                      C. more happily                      **D. happier**
6. Mr. Brown receives a ..... salary than anyone else in the company.  
 A. big                      B. more bigger                      **C. bigger**                      D. the bigger
7. The Boeing 747 is twice..... the Boeing 707.  
 A. bigger than                      B. as bigger as  
**C. as big as**                      D. more bigger than
8. “Do you know that beautiful lady over there?” “ Yes, that’s Wanida. She’s..... in her group. ”  
 A. more beautiful than any girl                      **B. more beautiful than any other girl**  
 C. so beautiful as other girl                      D. beautiful more than another girl
9. My young brother grew very quickly and soon he was..... my mother.  
 A. more big than                      B. so big than  
**C. as big as**                      D. too big than
10. He is not..... tall as his father.  
 A. the                      **B. as**                      C. than                      D. more
11. John’s grade..... than his sister’s.  
**A. higher**                      B. more high                      C. more higher                      D. the highest
12. Diana is the..... of the three sisters.  
 A. more short                      B. shorter                      **C. shortest**                      D. more short
13. She speaks English as..... as her friend does.  
 A. good                      **B. well**                      C. better                      D. the best
14. Of three shirts, this one is the.....  
 A. prettier                      B. more prettiest                      **C. prettiest**                      D. most pretty
15. The baby’s illness is..... than we thought at first.  
 A. bad                      B. worst                      **C. worse**                      D. badly
16. Today is the..... day of the month.  
 A. hot                      B. hotter                      C. hottest than                      **D. hottest**
17. He works more ..... than I.  
 A. slow                      **B. slowly**                      C. most slowly                      D. slowest
18. My book is as..... as yours.  
**A. good**                      B. well                      C. better                      D. the best
19. I love you..... than I can say.  
 A. much                      B. many                      **C. more**                      D. the most
20. It’s..... to go by bus than by car.  
**A. cheaper**                      B. cheapest                      C. more cheap                      D. more cheaper
21. That house is .....one on the street.

- A. oldest                      **B. the oldest**                      C. old                      D. older
22. This hotel must be..... than the small one next door.  
A. expensive                      **B. more expensive**  
C. the most expensive                      D. the more expensive
23. An orange is ..... than a plum.  
A. more large                      B. more larger                      **C. larger**                      D. the largest
24. What is the..... thing you have done ever done?  
A. more difficult                      **B. most difficult**  
C. difficulty                      D. difficult than
25. This river is..... than that river.  
A. narrow                      B. narrowest                      **C. narrower**                      D. most narrow
26. The test is not.....difficult..... it was last month.  
A. as/ as                      B. so/ as                      C. more/ as                      **D. A and B**
27. Peter usually drives..... Mary.  
A. more fast                      B. more fast than                      **C. faster than**                      D. B and C
28. My brother sang.... of all the pupils of the group.  
A. more beautifully                      **B. the most beautifully**  
C. less beautifully                      D. most beautifully
29. At 3,810 meters above sea level in Bolivia stands Lake Titica, .....in the world.  
**A. the highest large lake**                      B. largest high lake  
C. high largest                      D. the high largest lake
30. The hotel was..... any one we had stayed at before.  
**A. more expensive than**                      B. more expensive as  
C. most expensive than                      D. better expensive than
31. A: It's a long way from Britian, isn't it?  
B: Yes, but it isn't as..... as Hong Kong.  
**A. far**                      B. farther                      C. farthest                      D. further
32. Of the four dresses, which is ..... expensive?  
A. the best                      **B. the most**                      C. the more                      D. the greater
33. The larger the apartment, the..... the rent.  
A. expensive                      **B. more expensive**  
C. expensively                      D. most expensive
34. The faster we walk,..... we will get there.  
A. the soonest                      B. the soon  
C. the more soon                      **D. the sooner**
36. " Why did you buy these oranges? " "They were ..... I could find. "  
A. cheapest                      B. cheapest ones

**C. the cheapest ones** D. the most cheapest

37. She plays the piano ..... as she sings.

**A. as beautifully**

B. more beautifully

C. as beautiful

D. the most beautifully

38. The streets are getting more and ..... these days.

A. crowded

B. less crowded

**C. more crowded**

D. most crowded

39. The larger the city, ..... the crime rate.

A. highest

B. higher

C. the highest

**D. the higher**

40. You must explain your problems .....

A. as clear as you can

**B. as clearly as you can**

C. as clear than you are

D. as clearly as you are

41. Pil is ..... person we know.

A. the happier

**B. the happiest**

C. happier

D. happiest

42. Which woman are you going to vote for? –I 'm not sure. Everyone says that Joan is.....

A. smarter

**B. the smarter**

C. more smarter

D. more smart

43. Bill is .....

**A. lazier and lazier**

B. more and more lazy

C. lazier and more lazy

D. more lazy and lazier

44. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere .....

A. noisier

B. more quiet

C. more noisy

**D. quieter**

45. .... the time passes, ..... I feel ! The deadline of my thesis is coming, but I have just finished half of it.

A. The faster / the nervous

B. The more fast / the nervous

C. The fast / the more nervous

**D. The faster / the more nervous**

46. China is the country with..... population.

A. the larger

B. the more large

**C. the largest**

D. the most large

47. She sat there quietly, but during all that time she was getting..... Finally she exploded.

A. more and more angry

D. the most angry

B. the more angry

**C. angrier and angrier**

48. For ....., it is certain that in the future some things will be very different.

A. the better or the worse

B. the good or the bad

C. good or bad

**D. better or worse**

49. Her grandfather's illness was..... we thought at first.

A. more seriously as

B. as seriously as

**C. more serious than**

D. as serious than

50. My brother was feeling tired last night, so he went to bed..... usual.

A. more early than

B. as early as

C. more earlier as

**D. earlier than**

51. \_\_\_\_\_ you study for these exams, \_\_\_\_\_ you will do.  
A. **The harder / the better** B. The more / the much  
C. The hardest / the best D. The more hard / the more good
52. His house is \_\_\_\_\_ mine.  
A. **twice as big as** B. as twice big as  
C. as two times big as D. as big as twice
53. A: It's hot there, isn't it?  
B: It's very..... during the day.  
A. **hot** B. hotter C. hottest D. hotter than
54. .... apples are grown in Washington State.  
A. Best B. The most good C. **The best** D. The better
55. The test becomes..... and.....  
A. hard/ hard B. difficult/ difficult  
C. **harder/ harder** D. difficulty/ difficulty
56. His health is getting..... and.....  
A. good/ good B. **better/ better**  
C. bad/ bad D. well/ well
57. The more paper we save,.....preserved.  
A. more is wood pulp B. **the more wood pulp is**  
C. wood pulp is D. the much wood pulp is
58. The more polluted air we breathe,..... we get.  
A. the more weaker B. the more weak C. **the weaker** D. weaker more
59. The more we study, the.....we are.  
A. more good B. **better** C. better than D. good
60. The more I tried my best to help her, ..... she became.  
A. less lazy B. **the lazier** C. the more lazy D. lazier
61. The weather becomes.....  
A. colder with colder B. **colder and colder**  
C. colder and more colder D. more and more cold
62. The more he slept,..... irritable he became.  
A. the most B. the vey more C. much more D. **the more**
63. .... he worked, the more he earned.  
A. The more hard B. The hard C. **The harder** D. The hardest
64. ....I get to know Jim, the more I like him.  
A. For more B. More C. **The more** D. The most
65. The competition makes the price of goods.....  
A. most cheap and cheap B. **cheaper and cheaper**

C. more cheap and more cheap

D. cheaper and more cheaper

66. That factory is producing..... pollution.

**A. more and more** B. better and better

C. less and least

D. more and less

67. The .....I read about history, the..... it makes me realize how relevant history is for us today.

A. more/ better

B. better/ better

**C. more/ more**

D. better/ more

68. The less we study, the..... we are.

**A. worse**

B. bad

C. well

D. good

69. .... the match was, the more spectators it attracted.

A. The most interesting

B. The best interesting

**C. The more interesting**

D. The interesting

70. The more running water you use,.....

A. your bill will be higher

B. will be higher your bill

**C. the higher your bill will be**

D. the highest your bill will be

71. ....you study for these exams, ..... you will do.

**A. The harder/ the better**

B. The more / the much

C. The hardest / the best

D. The more hard / the more good

72. My neighbour is driving me mad! It seems that..... it is at night, .....he plays his music!

A. the less / the more loud

B. the less / less

B. the more late / the more loudlier

**D. the later / the louder**

73. Thanks to the progress of science and technology, our lives have become.....

A. more and more good

**B. better and better**

C. the more and more good

D. gooder and gooder

74. The Sears Tower is..... building in Chicago.

A. taller

B. the more tall

**C. the tallest**

D. taller and taller

75. Peter is.....John.

**A. younger and more intelligent than**

B. more young and intelligent than

C. more intelligent and younger than

D. the more intelligent and younger than

76. Robert does not have..... Peter does.

A. money more than

B. as many money as

C. more money as

**D. as much money as**

77. It gets..... when the winter is coming.

A. cold and cold

B. the coldest and coldest

**C. colder and colder**

D. more and more cold

78. French is a.....language to learn than English is.

A. difficult

**B. more difficult**

C. most difficult

D. more and more difficult

79. A car is..... than a motorbike.

- A. cheap      **B. cheaper**      C. expensive      D. more expensive

80. Thanks to the great effort of doctors and nurses, her health is getting.....

- A. worse      B. better      C. worse and worse      **D. better and better**

**II. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C, or D that needs correcting.**

1. Richard feels good than several days ago.

- A      B      C      D

2. Mary and Daisy are both intelligent students. Mary is so intelligent as Daisy.

- A                      B                      C      D

3. I found the conversation as most interesting and I was glad to practice my English.

- A                      B                      C                      D

4. The Caspian Sea, a salt lake, is the largest than any other lakes in the world.

- A                      B                      C                      D

5. He drives the car more dangerous than his brother does.

- A                      B      C                      D

6. It was the most biggest building that I had ever seen.

- A              B                      C              D

7. I wish my house were so large as Jone's.

- A      B      C      D

8. The Mekong is one of the longer river in the world.

- A                      B                      C                      D

9. She can play the piano more good than her sister.

- A      B                      C                      D

10. Many people believe that New York is the most great city in America.

- A                                      B                      C                      D

11. Jessica is only an amateur, but she sings well than most professionals.

- A      B                                      C      D

12. This house is more spacious as that white house I bought in Rapid City, South Dakota last year.

- A                      B                      C                                      D

13. Lan is the more capable of the three girls who have tried out for the part in the play.

- A                      B                      C                                      D

14. This telephone isn't as cheap the other one, but it work much better.

- A              B                                      C      D

15. Stories are the most good way of teaching moral lessons to young people.

- A                      B              C                      D

16. The fastest you drive, the greater you get.



A B C D

17. This exercise is **much more** easier than the others.

A B C D

18. London is much more exciting **as** I expected.

A B C D

19. **The large** the room is, more people can sit in it.

A B C D

20. The suitcase seemed to get **heavy** and heavier as I carried it along the road.

A B C D

### III. Choose one sentence that best rewrites the sentence given:

1. *They understand more than we do.*
  - A. We don't understand as much as they do.**
  - B. We don't understand anything at all.
  - C. They understand everything inside out.
  - D. They are very intelligent.
2. *It is much more difficult to speak English than to speak French.*
  - A. To speak French is more difficult than to speak English.
  - B. To speak English is more difficult than to speak French.**
  - C. Speaking English is more difficult than to speak French.
  - D. Speaking French is not as difficult as to speaking English.
3. *My interview lasted longer than yours.*
  - A. Your interview wasn't as short as mine.
  - B. Your interview was shorter than mine.**
  - C. Your interview was as long as mine.
  - D. Your interview was longer than mine.
4. *When I was younger, I used to go climbing more than I do now.*
  - A. Now I don't go climbing anymore.
  - B. I used to go climbing when I younger.
  - C. Now I don't go climbing as much as I did.**
  - D. I don't like going climbing any more.
5. *Your coffee is not as good as mine.*
  - A. Mine is better than yours.
  - B. My coffee is better than your.
  - C. My coffee is better than yours.**
  - D. My coffee is more good than yours.
6. *I can't cook as well as my mother does.*

**A. My mother can cook better than I can.**

B. My mother can't cook better than I can.

C. My mother can cook well than I can.

D. I can cook better than my mother can.

7. *Murder is the most serious of all crimes.*

A. Murder is very serious.

**B. No crime is more serious than murder.**

C. Everyone is very afraid of murder.

D. Murder is the dangerous crime.

8. *No one in this class as tall as peter.*

A. Peter is taller than in this class.

**B. Peter is the tallest in this class.**

C. Peter is the most tall in this class.

D. Peter is more tall than in this class.

9. *This is the best music I have ever heard.*

**A. I've never heard better music than this.**

B. I've ever heard such a good music as this.

C. I've ever heard so good music as this.

D. This is the first time I've heard this good music.

10. *This is the most interesting novel I've ever read.*

A. Knowing that the novel will be interesting, I read it.

B. If only I had known the novel was so interesting, I'd have read it earlier.

C. I don't think it is the most interesting novel.

**D. I have never read a more interesting novel than this.**

**LIÊN TỪ (CONJUNCTIONS)**

**\* PHẦN 1: LÝ THUYẾT**

\* A conjunction is used to join words or group of words

\* Kinds of conjunctions

- 1, Coordinating conjunctions
- 2, Correlative conjunctions
- 3, Subordinating conjunctions
- 4, Conjunctive Adverbs

**I. Coordinating Conjunctions**

The short, simple conjunctions are called "coordinating conjunctions":

- and, but, or, nor, for, yet, so

A coordinating conjunction joins parts of a sentence (for example words or independent clauses) that are grammatically equal or similar. A coordinating conjunction shows that the elements it joins are similar in importance and structure:

Look at these examples - the two elements that the coordinating conjunction joins are shown in square brackets [ ]:

- I like [tea] and [coffee].
- [Ram likes tea], but [Anthony likes coffee].

Coordinating conjunctions always come between the words or clauses that they join.

When a coordinating conjunction joins independent clauses, it is always correct to place a comma before the conjunction:

- I want to work as an interpreter in the future, so I am studying Russian at university.

However, if the independent clauses are short and well-balanced, a comma is not really essential:

- She is kind so she helps people.

When "and" is used with the last word of a list, a comma is optional:

- He drinks beer, whisky, wine, and rum.
- He drinks beer, whisky, wine and rum.

The 7 coordinating conjunctions are short, simple words. They have only two or three letters. There's an easy way to remember them - their initials spell:

F A N B O Y S

For And Nor But Or Yet So

## II. Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions are sort of like tag-team conjunctions. They come in pairs, and you have to use both of them in different places in a sentence to make them work. They get their name from the fact that they work together (co-) and relate one sentence element to another. Correlative conjunctions include pairs like “both/and,” “whether/or,” “either/or,” “neither/nor,” “not/but” and “not only/but also. ”

- I want either the cheesecake or the frozen hot chocolate.
- I’ll have both the cheesecake and the frozen hot chocolate.
- I didn’t know whether you’d want the cheesecake or the frozen hot chocolate, so I got you both.
- Oh, you want neither the cheesecake nor the frozen hot chocolate? No problem.
- I’ll eat them both - not only the cheesecake but also the frozen hot chocolate.
- I see you’re in the mood not for dessert but appetizers. I’ll help you with those too.

Here are some more pairs of correlative conjunctions:

- as/as - Bowling isn’t as fun as [skeet shooting](#).
- such/that - Such was the nature of their relationship that they never would have made it even if they’d wanted to.
- scarcely/when - I had scarcely walked in the door when I got the call and had to run right back out again.
- as many/as - There are as many curtains as there are windows.
- no sooner/than - I’d no sooner lie to you than strangle a puppy.
- rather/than - She’d rather play the drums than sing.

## III. Subordinating Conjunctions

- ✦ Subordinating conjunctions introduce subordinate clauses, which are clauses that cannot stand by themselves as a complete thought.
- ✦ The subordinate conjunction connects a subordinate clause to an independent clause, which can stand by itself.

Ex. We will go whale watching if we have time

\*List of Subordinating Conjunctions

time	Purpose	Manner	Cause	Comparison
After	In order that	As	because	As
As	So that	As if		than
As long as	That	As though		
As soon as				
Before				

Since

Until

When

Whenever

While

### Subordinating Conjunctions of Condition

Although	Even though	Though
As long as	If	Unless
Even if	Provided that	While

The most common subordinating conjunctions are:

**After** – later than the time that: later than when.

*Example:* “Call me after you arrive at work”

**Although** – despite the fact that: used to introduce a fact that makes another fact unusual or surprising.

*Example:* “Although she was tired, she couldn’t sleep”

**As** – used to introduce a statement which indicates that something being mentioned was known, expected, etc.

*Example:* “As we explained last class, coordinating conjunctions are sentence connectors”

**Because** – for the reason that.

*Example:* “I painted the house because it was a horrible colour”

**Before** – earlier than the time that: earlier than when.

*Example:* “Come and visit me before you leave”

**How** – in what manner or way.

*Example:* “Let me show you how to knit”

**If** -used to talk about the result or effect of something that may happen or be true.

*Example:* “It would be fantastic if you could come to the party”

**Once** – at the moment when: as soon as.

*Example:* “Once you’ve learnt how to cycle, it’s very easy”

**Since** – used to introduce a statement that explains the reason for another statement.

*Example:* “Since you’ve studied so well, you can go outside and play”

**Than** – used to introduce the second or last of two or more things or people that are being compared — used with the comparative form of an adjective or adverb.

*Example:* “My sister is older than I am”

**That** – used to introduce a clause that states a reason or purpose.

*Example:* “Olivia is so happy that it’s summer again”

**When** – at or during the time that something happened.

*Example:* “A teacher is good when he inspires his students”

**Where** – at or in the place that something happened.

*Example:* “We went to the bar where there most shade”

**Whether** -used to indicate choices or possibilities.

*Example:* “Bruno wasn’t sure whether to go to India or Thailand”

**While** – during the time that something happened”

*Example:* “While we were in Paris, it snowed”

**Until** – up to the time or point that something happened”

*Example:* “We stayed up talking until the sun came up”

#### **IV. Conjunctive Adverbs**

\*A conjunctive adverb is an adverb that functions somewhat like a coordinating conjunction.

\*Conjunctive adverbs usually connect independent clauses.

A semicolon precedes the conjunctive adverb, and a comma usually follows it.

#### *Examples of Conjunctive Adverbs in Sentences*

- You must do your homework; otherwise, you might get a bad grade.
- I will not be attending the show. Therefore, I have extra tickets for anyone that can use them.
- Amy practiced the piano; meanwhile, her brother practiced the violin.
- Marion needed to be home early. Consequently, she left work at 3 p. m.

#### List of Conjunctive Adverbs

- ✳ Instead
- ✳ Later
- ✳ Moreover
- ✳ Nevertheless
- ✳ Otherwise
- ✳ Still
- ✳ Therefore
- ✳ Thus
- ✳ Accordingly
- ✳ Also
- ✳ Besides
- ✳ Consequently
- ✳ Finally
- ✳ Furthermore
- ✳ However
- ✳ Indeed

#### **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**Exercise 1.** Paying attention to the expressions used in the following sentences, fill in the blanks with the given words. *Some can be used more than once.*

**and, but also, nor, or, than, when,**

1. I have both respect \_\_\_\_\_ admiration for them.
2. It will rain either today \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
3. He could not decide whether to tell the truth \_\_\_\_\_ keep silent.
4. It was not only a beautiful day, \_\_\_\_\_ the first day of Spring.
5. He is neither proud \_\_\_\_\_ condescending.
6. No sooner had I opened my eyes \_\_\_\_\_ I remembered where I was.
7. Scarcely had I heard the news \_\_\_\_\_ my friend arrived.
8. I do not know whether he has seen the movie before \_\_\_\_\_ not.
9. She could find the book neither at the Library \_\_\_\_\_ at the bookstore.
10. The crowd was both large \_\_\_\_\_ enthusiastic.

Answers:

- |         |         |       |             |         |
|---------|---------|-------|-------------|---------|
| 1. and  | 2. or   | 3. or | 4. but also | 5. nor  |
| 6. than | 7. when | 8. or | 9. nor      | 10. and |

**Exercise 2.** Paying attention to the meanings of the sentences, and to the presence of inverted word order, fill in the blanks with the correct coordinate conjunctions chosen from the pairs given in brackets.

1. I opened the door \_\_\_\_\_ looked out. (and, yet)
2. She was not in the back yard, \_\_\_\_\_ was she upstairs. (or, nor)
3. The sun had set, \_\_\_\_\_ it was still light outside. (or, yet)
4. Do you know his address \_\_\_\_\_ telephone number? (but, or)
5. He has not arrived yet, \_\_\_\_\_ have they. (and, nor)
6. I read the book, \_\_\_\_\_ did not understand it. (but, or)
7. We searched diligently, \_\_\_\_\_ found nothing. (or, yet)
8. I invited him \_\_\_\_\_ his friends. (and, but)
9. Our washing machine hasn't been working properly recently, and \_\_\_\_\_ has our dishwasher. (neither, so)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the book \_\_\_\_\_ the magazine is necessary for me. I will buy one of them. (Both-and, Either-or)

Answers:

- |        |        |        |            |               |
|--------|--------|--------|------------|---------------|
| 1. and | 2. nor | 3. yet | 4. or      | 5. nor        |
| 6. but | 7. yet | 8. and | 9. neither | 10. Either-or |

**Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences using appropriate subordinating conjunctions.**

1. I make it a point to visit the Taj Mahal ..... I go to Agra.
2. This is the place ..... I used to stay when I was studying at college.
3. .... you get the first rank, I will buy you a car.
4. .... you work hard, you can't pass the entrance test.
5. I am leaving tomorrow ..... or not you give me the permission.
6. He could not get a seat, ..... he came early.
7. The players delivered a splendid performance ..... they had rehearsed well.
8. Parents should give enough attention to children ..... they will not feel neglected.
9. He is ..... dishonest ..... no one trusts him.
10. I will note it down ..... I should forget.

Answers:

- |             |          |            |                |            |
|-------------|----------|------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. whenever | 2. where | 3. If      | 4. Unless      | 5. whether |
| 6. though   | 7. as    | 8. so that | 9. so.... that | 10. lest   |
-

**Exercise 4.** The following sentences are incorrect, because they contain correlative conjunctions, but do not use parallel construction. Rewrite the sentences correctly, using parallel construction.

1. The train proceeded neither quickly nor was it smooth.
2. They will leave either today or they will go tomorrow.
3. The child hates both getting up in the morning and to go to bed at night.
4. She is neither kind nor has patience.
5. He is not only talented, but also he has charm.
6. The street is lined with both oak trees and there are elm trees.
7. The lecture was not only very long but also it was very dull.
8. You should either eat less, or should exercise more.
9. I am not only proud to be here, but also feel happy to meet you.
10. The town is both historical and it is picturesque.

**Answers:**

1. The train proceeded neither quickly nor smoothly.
2. They will leave either today or tomorrow.
3. The child hates both getting up in the morning and going to bed at night.
4. She is neither kind nor patient.
5. He is not only talented, but also charming.
6. The street is lined with both oak trees and elm trees.
7. The lecture was not only very long but also very dull.
8. You should either eat less, or exercise more.
9. I am not only proud to be here, but also happy to meet you.
10. The town is both historical and picturesque.

**Exercise 5:** Combine the following sentences using an appropriate conjunction.

1. We decided to set out. It was raining.
2. I respect him. He is a brave man.
3. He did not win the first prize. He worked hard.
4. He is not a knave. He is not a fool.
5. He was not there. His brother was not there.
6. I went to the market. I bought some grocery.
7. He didn't come. He didn't write.
8. He must be tired. He has been working since morning.
9. Men have fought for their country. Men have died for their country.
10. He didn't want to miss the train. He ran fast.

**Answers**

1. We decided to set out **though** it was raining.
2. I respect him **because** he is a brave man.
3. **Though** he worked hard, he did not win the first prize.
4. He is **neither** a knave **nor** a fool.
5. **Neither** he **nor** his brother was there.
6. I went to the market **and** bought some grocery.
7. He **neither** came **nor** wrote. OR Neither did he come nor did he write.
8. He must be tired **because** he has been working since morning.
9. Men have fought **and** died for their country.



10. **As** he didn't want to miss the train, he ran fast.

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10

### MẠO TỪ (ARTICLES)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

##### I. Mạo từ không xác định: a / an

###### \* “a” hay “an”

###### “a”: được dùng:

- Trước các từ được bắt đầu bằng phụ âm hoặc 1 nguyên âm đọc như phụ âm.

Vớ dụ: a book, a pen

a university, a one-way street

###### “an” – được dùng

- Trước các từ được bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (U, E, O, A, I) hoặc trước các từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm nhưng được đọc như nguyên âm

Vớ dụ: an apple, an orange

an hour, an honest person

- Hoặc trước các danh từ được viết tắt và đọc như một nguyên âm

Vớ dụ: an L-plate, an SOS, an MP

###### \*Cỏch dựng a/ an

Dựng trước các danh từ đếm được số ít

Khi danh từ đó:

1. Được nhắc đến lần đầu hoặc không xác định cụ thể về mặt đặc điểm, tính chất...

Vớ dụ: I have **a dog** and **a cat**.

2. Được dùng để chỉ 1 loài nào đó (tương đương với danh từ số nhiều không có mạo từ)

Vớ dụ: **A dog** is a loyal animal

3. Được dùng để chỉ nghề nghiệp, chức vụ

Vớ dụ: I am **a teacher**

4. Trước tên người mà người nói không biết là ai *a Mr Smith* nghĩa là “người đàn ông được gọi là Smith” và ngụ ý là ụng ta là người lạ đối với người nói. Cũn nếu khụng cú a tức là người nói biết ông Smith

5. Trong cõu cảm thõn

Vớ dụ: *Such a long queue! What a pretty girl!*

Nhưng: *Such long queues! What pretty girls.*

6. Dựng với ‘such’: .... such a/ an + singular countable noun

Vớ dụ: *It is such an interesting book.*

7. Dựng với ‘so’: ...so + adj. + a/ an + singular countable noun

Vớ dụ: *He is so good a player.*

8. Dựng với ‘too’:... too+ adj. + a/ an + singular countable noun.

Ví dụ: *This is too difficult a lesson for them.*

9. Được dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ số lượng nhất định

Ví dụ: *a lot of, a couple, a dozen, a great many+ plural noun, a great deal of + uncountable noun, many a+ singular noun, a large/ small amount of +uncountable noun, a good many of/ a good number of + plural noun, a few, a little, only a few, only a little.*

9. Dùng trước những số đếm nhất định, đặc biệt là chỉ hàng trăm, hàng ngàn

Ví dụ: *a hundred, a thousand, a million, a billion.*

11. Với từ 'half':

- trước *half* khi nó theo sau 1 đơn vị nguyên vẹn.

Ví dụ: *a kilo and a half* và cũng có thể là *one and a half kilos.*

**Chú ý:**  $1/2 \text{ kg} = \text{half a kilo}$  (không có *a* Trước *half*).

- dùng trước *half* khi nó đi với 1 danh từ khác tạo thành từ ghép.

Ví dụ: *a half-holiday* nửa kỳ nghỉ, *a half-share*: nửa cổ phần.

- *half a dozen*; *half an hour*

12. Dùng trước các phân số như  $1/3$ ,  $1/4$ ,  $1/5$ , = *a third, a quarter, a fifth* hay *one third, one fourth, one fifth.*

13. Dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ giá cả, tốc độ, tỉ lệ

Ví dụ: *five dollars a kilo; four times a day; once a week; 60km an hour..*

14. There + (be) + (N)

is + a/an + singular noun

is + uncountable noun

are+ plural noun

15. Từ 'time' trong các cụm từ:      Have a good time

Have a hard time

Have a difficult time

16. Thường được dùng sau hệ từ (động từ nối) hoặc sau 'as' để phân loại người hay vật đó thuộc loại nào, nhóm nào, kiểu nào

Vớ dụ: He **is a liar**

The play **was a comedy**

He **remained a bachelor** all his life.

Don't use your plate **as an astray**.

## II. Mạo từ xác định: The

1. Được sử dụng khi danh từ được xác định cụ thể về tính chất, đặc điểm, vị trí hoặc được nhắc đến lần thứ 2 trong câu.

2. The + noun + preposition + noun.

Vớ dụ: *the girl in blue; the man with a banner; the gulf of Mexico; the United States of America.*

- *The + (n) + of the + (n).*

Vớ dụ: *The leg of the table; The back of the house*

- *Most + plural noun:*      Vớ dụ: *Most women want to be beautiful (phụ nữ nói chung)*

*Most of the + plural noun:*      Vớ dụ: *Most of the women in my school want to be beautiful (không phải phụ nữ nói chung mà là phụ nữ ở trường tôi)*

*All + plural noun vs all of the + plural noun*

*Some + plural noun vs some of the + plural noun*

3. *The + danh từ + mệnh đề quan hệ*

Vớ dụ: *the boy whom I met; the place where I met him.*

4. Trước 1 danh từ được nhắc đến lần đầu nhưng được ngầm hiểu giữa người nói và người nghe.

Vớ dụ: *Jane's teacher asked her a question but she doesn't know **the** answer.*

5. The + tính từ so sánh bậc nhất, số thứ tự hoặc *only, next, last*.

Vớ dụ: *The first week; the only way, the next day, the last person*

**Note:** - khi nói về trình tự của 1 quy trình nào đó 'the' không được dùng:

*First,..*

*Second,..*

*Third,.....*

Next,.....

.....

Lastly,.....

- 'next' và 'last' không được sử dụng trong các cụm trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian: next Tuesday, last week

6. The + danh từ số ít tượng trưng cho một nhóm thú vật hoặc đồ vật thờ cú thể bỏ *the* và đổi danh từ sang số nhiều.

Vớ dụ: *The whale = Whales, the shark = sharks, the deep-freeze = deep - freezes.*

Nhưng đối với danh từ **man** (chỉ loài người) thờ khụng cú quỏn từ (*a, the*) đứng trước.

Vớ dụ: *if oil supplies run out, man may have to fall back on the horse.*

7. The + adj: đại diện cho 1 lớp người, nó không có hỡnh thờ số nhiều nhưng được coi là 1 danh từ số nhiều và động từ sau nó phải được chia ở số nhiều.

Vớ dụ: *the old = người già nói chung; The disabled = những người tàn tật;*

*The unemployed = những người thất nghiệp.*

*The homeless, the wounded, the injured, the sick, the unlucky, the needy, the strong, the weak,*

*The English, the American...*

8. Dùng trước tên các khu vực, vũng đố nổi tiếng về mặt địa lý hoặc lịch sử

Vớ dụ: *The Sahara. The Netherlands.*

9. The + phương hướng

Vớ dụ: *He lives in the North (of Viet Nam)*

- *The + East / West/ South/ North + noun.*

Vớ dụ: *the East/ West end.*

*The North / South Pole.*

- *Giới từ (to, in, on, at, from) + the + phương hướng: to the North*

- Nhưng không được dùng *the* trước các từ chỉ phương hướng này, nếu nó đi kèm với tên của một châu lục hoặc 1 quốc gia.

Vớ dụ: *South Africa, North America, West Germany.*

- Không được dùng 'the' trước các từ chỉ phương hướng khi nó đi với các động từ như: *go, travel, turn, look, sail, fly, walk, move*

Ví dụ: *go north/ south*

10. The + các ban nhạc phổ thông.

Ví dụ: *the Bach choir, the Philadelphia Orchestra, the Beatles.*

8. The + tên các tờ báo lớn/các con tàu biển

Ví dụ: *the Times, the Titanic*

9. The + tên họ ở số nhiều có nghĩa là gia đình họ nhà...

Ví dụ: *the Smiths = Mr and Mrs Smith (and their children)*

10. The + Tên ở số ít + cụm từ/ mệnh đề có thể được sử dụng để phân biệt người này với người khác cùng tên

Ví dụ: *We have two Mr Smiths. Which do you want? I want the Mr Smith who signed this letter.*

11. Với các buổi trong ngày: *in the morning; in the afternoon, in the evening (but at noon, at night, at mid-night.)*

12. Danh từ đếm được số nhiều có 'the' và không có 'the'

Danh từ đếm được số nhiều

The + danh từ đếm được số nhiều

Chỉ loài

Chỉ đối tượng cụ thể, xác định

*Dogs are loyal*

*The dog that is under the table is lovely*

13. Với trường học nếu có 'of' hoặc 'for' theo sau thì dùng 'the': *The university of architecture; the school for the blind*

Nếu không có 'of' thì không dùng mạo từ: *Foreign Trade university.*

14. Với các nhạc cụ: *play the guitar/ the piano/ the violin*

15. Với các thể chế quân sự: *the army, the police, the air force, the navy, the military*

16. Với từ 'same':

- *the same + (N)*

Ví dụ: *We have the same grade*

*Twins often have the same interest.*

- *The same as + (N)/ (Pro.)*

*Your pen is the same as my pen/ mine.*

- *The same + (N) + as + (N)/ (Pro.)*

Ví dụ: *Her mother has the same car as her father*

17. Với dạng so sánh kép

*The + so sánh hơn + S+ V, the + so sánh hơn + S+ V*

Ví dụ: *The hotter it is, the more uncomfortable I feel.*

18. Với tên sông, suối, đại dương, kênh đào, rặng núi

Vớ dụ: The Red River, the River Nile, the Volga, the Thames, the Amazon, The pacific Ocean, The Atlantic Ocean, the Suez Canal, the Panama Canal, The Alps, the Andes, the Himalayas, the Rockies

(nhưng không dùng ‘the’ khi danh từ riêng đứng sau: Lake Ba Be, Mountain Everest)

19. Với thứ duy nhất: the sun, the moon, the sky, the atmosphere, the Great Wall of China, the stars, the equator

20. Với tên nước (ở dạng số nhiều hoặc có các từ như: Republic, Union, Kingdom, States)

Vớ dụ: The US, The United Kindom, The Soviet Union, The Republic of South Africa, The Philippines...

(thông thường không dùng mạo từ với tên nước)

21. Với môn học cụ thể: The applied Maths

(môn học núi chung khụng dựng mạo từ: English, Mathematics, Literature..)

22. Với các giai đoạn lịch sử

Vớ dụ: The stone Age; The middle Age; The Renaissance; The Industrial Revolution

23. ‘office’ cú ‘the’ và khụng cú ‘the’

The office (be)in office

Cơ quan, văn phũng đưong chức

24. Trong các cách diễn đạt:

At the moment; at the end of; in the end; at the beginning of; at the age of; for the time being...

25. Với ‘radio’, ‘cinema’ và ‘theatre’: Vớ dụ: Listen to **the radio**

26. Với 1 số tòa nhà và cụng trỡnh nổi tiếng: the Empire State Building, the White House, the Royal Palace, the Golden Gate Bridge, the Vatican

27. Với tỡn rờong của cốc viện bảo tàng/ phũng trưng bày nghệ thuật, rạp hát, rạp chiếu phim, khách sạn, nhà hàng: the National Museum, the Globe Theatre, the Odeon Cinema, the Continental Hotel, the Bombay Restaurant..

\*Nhưng nếu nhà hàng, khách sạn đưong đặt tên theo tên của người sáng lập thờ khụng dựng mạo từ.

Vớ dụ: McDonald, Matilda’s restaurant

### III. Khụng dựng mạo từ:

1. Không dùng mạo từ trước danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm đưong với nghĩa chung

Vớ dụ: Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.

Nhưng: **The water in this bottle** can be drunk. (vỡ cú cụm giới từ bổ nghĩa)

Elephants are intelligent animals

Nhưng: **The elephants in this zoo** are intelligent. (mang nghĩa cụ thể)

2. Không dùng mạo từ Trước 1 số danh từ như: *home, church, bed, court, hospital, prison, school, college, university* khi nó đi với động từ và giới từ chỉ chuyển động (chỉ đi tới đó làm mục đích chính).

Vớ dụ: *He is at home. I arrived home before dark. I sent him home.*

We go	to bed (để ngủ)
	to church (để cầu nguyện)
	to court (để kiện tụng)
	to hospital (chữa bệnh)
	to prison (đi tù)
	to school / college/ university (để học)

Tương tự

We can be	in bed
	at church
	in court
	in hospital
	at school/ college/ university

We can be / get back (hoặc be/ get home) from school/ college/university.

We can	leave school
	leave hospital
	be released from prison.

Vớ mục đích khỏc thờ phải dựng *the*.

Vớ dụ: *I went to the church to see the stained glass.*

*He goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures.*

*Student go to the university for a class party.*

### 3. Sea

Go to sea (thủ thủ ra biển)

to be at the sea (hành khách/thủy thủý đi trên biển)

Go to the sea / be at the sea = to go to/ be at the seaside: đi tắm biển, nghỉ mát

We can live by / near the sea.

#### 4. Work and office.

Work (nơi làm việc)

Go to work.

nhưng *office* lại phải cú *the*.

Go to the office.

Vớ dụ: *He is at / in the office.*

Nếu to be in office (khụng cú *the*) nghĩa là đang giữ chức

To be out of office – thụi giữ chức

#### 5. Town

*The* có thể bỏ đi khi nói về thị trấn hoặc chủ thể

Vớ dụ: *We sometimes go to town to buy clothes.*

*We were in town last Monday.*

Go to town / to be in town – Vớ mục đích chính là đi mua hàng

#### 6. Không dùng trước tên đường phố khi nó có tên cụ thể: street, avenue, road, lane,

Vớ dụ: She lives on **Ly Thai To street**.

But: I can't remember the name of **the street (the + n of the + n)**

There is **a road. (cấu trúc 'there')**

#### 7. Không dùng mạo từ với tên nước, tên tiểu bang, thành phố

Vớ dụ: Viet Nam, Ha Noi, Bac Ninh, California

(trừ 1 số trường hợp đó để cập ở trên)

#### 8. Không dùng mạo từ với sân vận động, công viên, trung tâm thương mại, quảng trường, nhà ga, sân bay

Vớ dụ: My Đình Stadium, Thong Nhat Park, Trang Tien Plaza, Crescent Mall ; Times Square, Kenedy Airport; Victoria Station

(but: the Mall of America)

#### 9. Khụng dựng mạo từ với tòn ngụn ngữ

Vớ dụ: **English** is difficult



10. Khụng dùng mạo từ với các bữa ăn: breakfast, lunch, dinner/ supper  
 Ví dụ: I often have breakfast at 6. 30  
 (nhưng a/ an có thể được dùng khi có tính từ đứng trước: I had **a very nice breakfast** with my mother)
11. Khụng dựng mạo từ với cộc mụn học núi chung: Maths  
 Nhưng lại dùng ‘the’ với môn học cụ thể: the applied Maths
12. Không dùng mạo từ trước các môn thể thao:  
 Ví dụ: He is playing **golf/ tennis**.
13. Không dùng mạo từ trước các danh từ trừu tượng:  
 Ví dụ: Life is complicated  
 Nhưng: He is studying **the life of** Beethoven. (vỡ cú cụm giới từ bổ nghĩa)
14. Khụng dựng mạo từ với danh từ chỉ bệnh tật: cancer, heart disease, high blood, measles, mumps,..
15. Khụng dựng mạo từ với các phương tiện đi lại: by car, by bus, by plane..
16. Khụng dựng mạo từ với ‘television’/ TV: watch TV  
 Nhưng: Can you turn off **the television**? (ở đây ‘television’ không mang nghĩa truyền hỡnh mà là 1 cỏi TV cụ thể được ngầm hiểu giữa người nói và người nghe)
17. Không dùng mạo từ với tính từ chỉ định, đại từ chỉ định, tính từ sở hữu, tính từ bất định, đại từ quan hệ, và các từ như: enough, another, either, neither, much, every, some, any, no
18. Khụng dựng mạo từ với cộc hành tinh: Venus, Mars, Jupiter
19. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên riêng ở dạng sở hữu cách  
 Ví dụ: Tim’s house  
 Nhưng: the boss’s house
20. Khụng dựng mạo từ trước tên của các đảo, hồ, núi, đồi  
 Ví dụ: Phu Quoc, Lake Michigan, Lake Babe, Everest, North Hill  
 Nhưng dùng mạo từ ‘the’ nếu chúng ở dạng số nhiều: the Canary Islands, the British Isles, the Philippines; the Great Lakes, the Alps..
21. Khụng dựng mạo từ trước các từ chỉ ngày tháng hoặc ngày lễ  
 Ví dụ: on Monday, in June, at Christmas..  
 Nhưng với các mùa có thể dùng ‘the’ hoặc không dùng ‘the’  
 Ví dụ: in (the) summer  
 ‘the’ luôn được dùng trong cụm từ ‘in the fall’

**Bảng dựng the và khụng dựng the trong một số trường hợp đặc biệt**

<b>Dựng the</b>	<b>Khụng dựng the</b>
Trước các đại dương, sông ngũi, biển, vịnh và cộc hồ ở số nhiều Ví dụ:	Trước tên 1 hồ (hay cộc hồ ở số ít). Ví dụ: <i>Lake Geneva, Lake Erie</i>

*The Red sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes.*

Trước tên các dãy núi.

Ví dụ: *The Rocky Mountains*

Trước tên 1 vật thể duy nhất trên thế giới hoặc vũ trụ.

Ví dụ: *the earth, the moon, the Great Wall*

Trước *School/college/university + of + noun*

Ví dụ:

*The University of Florida.*

*The college of Arts and Sciences.*

Trước các số thứ tự + noun.

Ví dụ: *The first world war.*

*The third chapter.*

Trước tên các nước có từ 2 từ trở lên. Ngoại trừ *Great Britain*.

Ví dụ:

*The United States, the United Kingdom, the Central African Republic.*

Trước tên các nước được coi là 1 quần đảo.

Ví dụ: *The Philippines.*

Trước tên các nhạc cụ.

Ví dụ: *To play the piano.*

Trước tên các môn học cụ thể

Ví dụ: *The applied Math.*

*The theoretical Physics*

Trước tên 1 ngọn núi

Ví dụ: *Mount McKinley*

Trước tên các hành tinh hoặc các chòm sao

Ví dụ: *Venus, Mars, Earth, Orion*

Trước tên các trường này khi trước đó là 1 tên riêng.

Ví dụ:

*Cooper's Art school, Stetson University.*

Trước các danh từ mà sau nó là 1 số đếm.

Ví dụ: *World war one*

*chapter three*

Trước tên các nước có 1 từ như: *Sweden, Venezuela* và các nước được đứng trước bởi *new* hoặc tính từ chỉ phương hướng.

Ví dụ: *New Zealand, South Africa.*

Trước tên các lục địa, tiểu bang, tỉnh, thành phố, quận, huyện

Ví dụ: *Europe, California.*

Trước tên bất cứ môn thể thao nào.

Ví dụ: *Base ball, basket ball.*

Trước các môn học chung





9. We visited \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.  
 A. Canada and the United States  
 B. the Canada and the United States  
 C. the Canada and United States  
 D. Canada and United States
10. Are you going away next week? No, \_\_\_\_\_ week after next.  
 A. a  
 B. the  
 C. some  
 D. X
11. We haven't been to \_\_\_\_\_ for years.  
 A. cinema  
 B. the cinema  
 C. a cinema  
 D. any cinema
12. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was \_\_\_\_\_ journey.  
 A. three hour  
 B. a three- hours  
 C. a three- hour  
 D. three- hours
13. I can't work here. There's so much \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. noise  
 B. noises  
 C. the noise  
 D. a noise
14. I've seen \_\_\_\_\_ good films recently.  
 A. a  
 B. the  
 C. some  
 D. an
15. I often watch \_\_\_\_\_ television for two hours every night.  
 A. some  
 B. the  
 C. any  
 D. X
16. The injured man was taken to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. hospital  
 B. any hospital  
 C. the hospital  
 D. hospitals
17. She went out without \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
 A. any  
 B. an  
 C. a  
 D. x
18. Did \_\_\_\_\_ police find \_\_\_\_\_ person who stole your bicycle?  
 A. a / a  
 B. the / the  
 C. a / the  
 D. the / a
19. Can anyone give me..... hand, please because I have just fallen over?  
 A. a  
 B. an  
 C. the  
 D. X
20. I don't know what to do. It's..... problem.  
 A. quite difficult  
 B. a quite difficult  
 C. quite a difficult  
 D. the quite difficult
21. I have left my book in..... kitchen and I would like you to get it for me.  
 A. a  
 B. an  
 C. the  
 D. X
22. Please meet me at the train station in..... hour from now.  
 A. a  
 B. an  
 C. the  
 D. X

👉 **Exercise 3: Choose the best answer that is made from the given words**

1. I/ not have/ time/ breakfast/ this morning.

- A. I didn't have time for the breakfast this morning.
- B. I didn't have the time for the breakfast this morning.
- C. I didn't have time for breakfast this morning.
- D. I didn't have time to breakfast this morning.

2. Opinion/ violent films/ not show/ television.

- A. To my opinion, violent films should not be shown on television.
- B. In my opinion, violent films should not be shown on television.
- C. In my opinion, the violent films should not be shown on television.
- D. For my opinion, violent films should not be shown on television.

3. Music/ play/ important part/ film.

- A. Music plays an important part in film.
- B. The music plays a important part in film.
- C. Music plays the important part in a film.
- D. Music plays an important part in a film.

4. Margaret/ loved/ have/ holidays/ seaside.

- A. Margaret loved having holidays at the seaside.
- B. Margaret loved having holidays in the seaside.
- C. Margaret loved having holidays at seaside.
- D. Margaret loved have holidays at the seaside.

5. Aunt/ sent/ me/ wonderful present.

- A. My aunt sent me wonderful present.
- B. My aunt sent me a wonderful present.
- C. My aunt sent a wonderful present me.
- D. My aunt sent me the wonderful present.

☞ **Exercise 4: Identify the one underlined word or phrase (A,B,C or D) that must be changed in order to make the sentence correct.**

1. I visited Mexico and United States last year.  
A B C D
2. France and Britain are separated by Channel.  
A B C D
3. Next year we are going skiing in Swiss Alps.  
A B C D
4. The word 'restroom' is an euphemism for toilet.  
A B C D
5. The mechanic in the orange shirt put the quart of oil into the engine.  
A B C D
6. If you are in the hurry, I can get it for you now.  
A B C D
7. Is this the kind of the party you like?  
A B C D
8. My grandmother had a bad heart and a arthritis.  
A B C D
9. The most people believe that marriage and family life are the basis of our society.  
A B C D
10. In Britain the coffee is more expensive than tea.  
A B C D

☞ **Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete the sentences:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ driver was \_\_\_\_\_ strong athletic young man.  
A. The/the B. The/a C. A/ the D. A/a
2. He took \_\_\_\_\_ cigar from his mouth and blew away \_\_\_\_\_ long trail of smoke.  
A. the/a B. a/a C. the/the D. a/the
3. We sat \_\_\_\_\_ side by \_\_\_\_\_ side smoking and thinking.  
A. x/a B. x/the C. the/x D. x/x
4. We got back to \_\_\_\_\_ inn as \_\_\_\_\_ night was falling.  
A. the/the B. a/the C. the/x D. the/a
5. It was \_\_\_\_\_ late afternoon and their shadows lay long across \_\_\_\_\_ road.  
A. x/the B. x/x C. the/the D. a/the
6. \_\_\_\_\_ invitations to \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for 16 people were sent out.  
A. x/the B. x/a C. the/the D. a/the
7. He worked hard and often got out of \_\_\_\_\_ bed at \_\_\_\_\_ night to make sure that he had written \_\_\_\_\_ point down.  
A. x/the/a B. x/x/a C. the/the/x D. a/the/x
8. They stood for \_\_\_\_\_ moment, then all together slowly moved towards \_\_\_\_\_ church.  
A. x/the B. x/x C. the/a D. a/the

9. "Do you usually go to \_\_\_\_\_ church?" "Occasionally"  
 A. a                                      B. an                                      C. the                                      D. x
10. They are at \_\_\_\_\_ sea now. They write that they are having \_\_\_\_\_ marvelous time.  
 A. the/the                                      B. a/the                                      C. x/x                                      D. the/a
11. I'll drive you to \_\_\_\_\_ town this morning.  
 A. a                                      B. x                                      C. the                                      D. an
12. Although it was \_\_\_\_\_ early afternoon, all \_\_\_\_\_ lights in \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant were on.  
 A. x/the/the                                      B. x/x/a                                      C. the/the/x                                      D. a/the/x
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Nile flows right through \_\_\_\_\_ city  
 A. x/the                                      B. x/a                                      C. the/the                                      D. a/the
14. It was \_\_\_\_\_ sort of \_\_\_\_\_ occasion when one wants to help but doesn't know how.  
 A. the/the                                      B. a/the                                      C. the/a                                      D. the/x

### ĐÁP ÁN

**Exercise 1:**

1. C	2. A	3. A	4. D	5. D	6. C	7. D	8. B
9. C	10. B	11. D	12. C	13. A	14. C	15. D	16.

**Exercise 2:**

1. C	2. A	3. D	4. A	5. A	6. A
7. B	8. B	9. A	10. B	11. B	12. C
13. A	14. C	15. D	16. C	17. A	18. B
19. A	20. C	21. C	22. B		

**Exercise 3:**

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

**Exercise 4:**

1. C	2. D	3. D	4. B	5. B
6. B	7. D	8. D	9. A	10. B

**Exercise 5:**

1B	2A	3D	4C	5B
6B	7B	8D	9D	10D
11B	12A	13C	14D	







## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11

### GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

##### A. Definition

Giới từ là từ hay cụm từ thường được dùng trước danh từ hay đại từ để chỉ mối liên hệ giữa các từ này với các thành phần khác trong câu.

##### B. Kinds of prepositions

##### **I. PREPOSITIONS OF TIME: (Giới từ chỉ thời gian)**

- **On**  
On Sunday (morning) / 25<sup>th</sup> April / New Year's Day ...  
On holiday / business / duty / a trip / an excursion / fire / sale / a diet...
- **In**  
In April / 1980  
In summer / spring / autumn / winter  
In five minutes / a few days / two years  
In the morning / afternoon / evening
- **At**  
At 8 o'clock / the weekend / night / Christmas  
At the end of... / at the age of
- **From... to...**  
From 1977 to 1985
- **Since**  
Since 1985 / Monday / 2 o'clock
- **For**  
For three days / a long time / one hour.

##### **II. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE: (Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn, địa điểm)**

- **On**  
On a table / a wall / a bus / a train / a plane / the floor / a horse / television / the radio / the telephone
- **In**  
In a garden / a park / a town / the water / my office / hospital / a car

In the middle of...

- **At**

At home / work / school / university / the station / the airport / a concert / a party / a football match

At 10 Pasteur Street

- **By**

By car / bus / plane (on foot)

By accident / chance: tởnh cờ, ngẫu nhiên

- **For**

For a walk / a swim / a drink

For breakfast / lunch / dinner

**(\*) SOME OTHER PREPOSITIONS:**

- **From** : từ ... Ex: I am from Vietnam, I get the book from the man
- **From ... to ...**: từ ... đến. Ex: From 4 o'clock to 6 o'clock; from my house to school
- **Next to = near** : ở cạnh Ex: I live near her house
- **Behind** : ở phía sau Ex: the shop is behind the postoffice
- **In front of** : ở trước Ex: my house is in front of the school
- **On** : ở trên Ex: the book is on the table
- **Under** : ở dưới Ex: the pen is under the book
- **In the middle of** : ở giữa. Ex: the tree is in the middle of the yard
- **In** : ở trong Ex: he is in the room
- **Out** : ở ngoài Ex: he is out of the room
- **Opposite** : đối diện Ex: my house is opposite the shop

**III. VERB + NOUN + PREP: (Động từ + danh từ + giới từ)**

- give way to : nhường bộ, chịu thua	- catch sight of : thoáng thấy
- give place to : nhường chỗ cho	- keep pace with : theo kịp
- lose sight of : mất huyệt, khụng nhờn thấy nữa	- pay attention to : chú ý đến
- lose track of : mất dấu vết	- put a stop to : put an end to: chấm dứt
- lose touch with: mất liờn lạc với	- set fire to: burn : phúng hỏa
- make allowance for: xất đến, chiếu cố	- take advantage of : lợi dụng
- make use of : dụng, tận dụng	- take care of : chăm sóc

- make fun of : chọc ghẹo, chế nhạo	- take account of : quan tâm tới, lưu ý tới
- make room for: dọn chỗ cho	- take note of : lưu ý đến
- make a fuss over / about: làm om xồm về	- take notice of : chỳ ý thấy, nhận thấy

#### IV. VERB + PREP: (Động từ + giới từ)

<b>1. VERB + TO</b> - apologize to sb for sth - belong to - complain to sb about sb / sth - happen to - introduce to - listen to - speak / talk to sb - write to - prefer... to... - explain... to... - invite... to...	<b>2. VERB + FOR</b> - apply for - care for - pay for - look for - wait for - blame... for - leave... for - search... for - ask... for	<b>3. VERB + ABOUT</b> - care <b>about</b> - dream <b>about</b> sb / sth - think <b>about</b> - hear <b>about</b> : be told about - warn... <b>about</b>
<b>4. VERB + ON</b> - concentrate on / focus on - depend on / rely on - live on - congratulate... on - spend... on	<b>5. VERB + OF</b> - consist of - die of - take care of - accuse... of - remind... of	<b>6. VERB + AT</b> - laugh at / smile at - shout at - look at / stare at / glance at - point at / aim at
<b>7. VERB + IN</b> - succeed in - arrive in / at	<b>8. VERB + WITH</b> - provide... with - charge... with	<b>9. VERB + FROM</b> - suffer... from / borrow... from - save / protect / prevent... from

#### V. ADJECTIVE + PREP: (Tính từ + giới từ)

<b>1. ADJ + TO</b> - accustomed to - addicted to - harmful to - similar to / agreeable to - good / nice / kind / polite / rude /... <b>to sb</b> - important <b>to</b>	<b>2. ADJ + FOR</b> - available for - responsible for - famous for - late for	<b>3. ADJ + ABOUT</b> - angry about - anxious about - worried about - excited about
<b>4. ADJ + ON</b> - keen on - dependent on	<b>5. ADJ + OF</b> - afraid of / full of - aware of / tired of - ashamed of - capable of	<b>6. ADJ + AT</b> - surprised at - quick at - bad / good at - brilliant at
<b>7. ADJ + IN</b> - confident in - successful in - interested in - rich in	<b>8. ADJ + WITH</b> - equipped with - bored with - busy with - acquainted with	<b>9. ADJ + FROM</b> - different from - absent from - safe from

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

*Choose the correct prepositions.*

- She was very surprised \_\_\_\_\_ the grade she received.  
A. at                      B on                      C. of                      D. about
- Tom's grandfather died \_\_\_\_\_ 1977 \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 79.  
A. for/at                      B. on/in                      C. at/in                      D. in/at
- Jane doesn't spend much money \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.  
A. over                      B. about                      C. at                      D. on
- She always takes good care \_\_\_\_\_ her children.  
A. for                      B. in                      C. of                      D. with
- There are usually a lot of parties \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve.  
A. in                      B for                      C. on                      D. with
- Mr. Smith is not accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ hot weather.

- A. to                      B. at                      C. for                      D. in
7. Tom has to try hard to keep pace \_\_\_\_\_ his classmates.  
A. to                      B. with                      C. at                      D. for
8. The librarian advised us to take full advantage \_\_\_\_\_ all the facilities available.  
A. of                      B. at                      C. for                      D. about
9. Don't make fun \_\_\_\_\_ that disabled boy.  
A. upon                      B. in                      C. to                      D. of
10. Did you know that Linda is engaged \_\_\_\_\_ a friend of mine?  
A. to                      B. at                      C. for                      D. towards
11. She stood there, saying nothing until she lost sight \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.  
A. to                      B. of                      C. inside                      D. about
12. The Vietnamese participants always take part \_\_\_\_\_ sports events with great enthusiasm.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. to
13. He isn't independent \_\_\_\_\_ any means. He depends \_\_\_\_\_ his father \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
A. by/ on/ in                      B. for/ on/ in                      C. of/ in/ for                      D. on/ in/ with
14. He may be quick \_\_\_\_\_ understanding but he isn't capable \_\_\_\_\_ remembering anything.  
A. in/ of                      B. on/ at                      C. at/ of                      D. of/ at
15. Mum is always busy \_\_\_\_\_ her work in the laboratory.  
A. with                      B. at                      C. in                      D. of
- 16 Lan will stay there \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning in September \_\_\_\_\_ November.  
A. from/ to                      B. till/ to                      C. from/ in                      D. till/ of
17. I would like to apply \_\_\_\_\_ the position of sales clerk that you advised in the Sunday newspaper.  
A. for                      B. to                      C. with                      D. in
18. I have been looking \_\_\_\_\_ this book for months, and at last, I have found it.  
A. over                      B. up                      C. for                      D. at
19. My sister is very keen \_\_\_\_\_ eating chocolate candy.  
A. on                      B. with                      C. about                      D. at
20. Who's going to look \_\_\_\_\_ the children while you're away?  
A. at                      B. up                      C. after                      D. over
21. I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the rain to stop.  
A. for                      B. away                      C. from                      D. up
22. Sorry I haven't written \_\_\_\_\_ you for such a long time.

A. into                      B. to                      C. for                      D. round

23. Who was that man I saw you talking \_\_\_\_\_ in the pub?

A. up                      B. back                      C. from                      D. to

24. What happened \_\_\_\_\_ the gold watch you used to have?

A. with                      B. against                      C. for                      D. to

25. I look stupid with this haircut. Everyone will laugh \_\_\_\_\_ me.

A. in                      B. at                      C. into                      D. away

26. George's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live \_\_\_\_\_

A. about                      B. round                      C. on                      D. down

27. I've lost my keys. Can you help me look \_\_\_\_\_ them?

A. up                      B. after                      C. for                      D. into

28. I believe \_\_\_\_\_ saying what I think.

A. on                      B. in                      C. with                      D. for

29. When I realized I was wrong, I apologized to him \_\_\_\_\_ my mistake.

A. at                      B. for                      C. up                      D. before

30. Would you care \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee?

A. for                      B. about                      C. of                      D. with

31. When I heard he had passed his examination, I phoned him to congratulate him \_\_\_\_\_ his success.

A. back                      B. over                      C. on                      D. with

32. Three students were accused \_\_\_\_\_ cheating in the examination.

A. on                      B. off                      C. with                      D. of

33. We had an enormous meal. It consisted \_\_\_\_\_ seven courses.

A. off                      B. of                      C. in                      D. up

34. I'm really satisfied \_\_\_\_\_ what I have.

A. with                      B. along                      C. back                      D. out

35. I feel sorry \_\_\_\_\_ Bob. He has no friends and no money.

A. with                      B. about                      C. for                      D. by

36. I'm sorry \_\_\_\_\_ the noise last night. We're having a party.

A. with                      B. about                      C. for                      D. by

37. I wasn't very impressed \_\_\_\_\_ the film.

A. back                      B. up                      C. by                      D. through

38. I'm sure you are capable \_\_\_\_\_ passing the examination.

A. round                      B. along                      C. among                      D. of

39. Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ art and architecture.

A. from                      B. for                      C. up                      D. in

40. Mary is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ animals. She has three cats and two dogs.

A. about                      B. since                      C. of                      D. between

41. We are grateful \_\_\_\_\_ our teacher

A. with                      B. about                      C. to                      D. out

42. I'm a bit short \_\_\_\_\_ money. Can you lend me some?

A. at                      B. over                      C. of                      D. down

43. I was amazed \_\_\_\_\_ her knowledge of French Literature.

A. by                      B. about                      C. of                      D. off

44. He is excellent \_\_\_\_\_ playing the flute.

A. at                      B. over                      C. to                      D. behind

45. Why are you always so jealous \_\_\_\_\_ other people?

A. on                      B. of                      C. in                      D. below

46. He was proud \_\_\_\_\_ himself for not giving up.

A. of                      B. during                      C. after                      D. under

47. Are you excited \_\_\_\_\_ going on holiday next week?

A. into                      B. about                      C. above                      D. over

48. You get fed up \_\_\_\_\_ doing the same thing every day.

A. between                      B. up                      C. against                      D. with

49. I'm really satisfied \_\_\_\_\_ what I have.

A. with                      B. along                      C. back                      D. out

50. It's silly \_\_\_\_\_ you to go out without a coat. You'll catch cold.



A. to

B. of

C. since

D. by

Suggested answers:

1. A	6. A	11. B	16. A	21. A	26. C	31. C	36. B	41. C	46. A
2. D	7. B	12. A	17. A	22. B	27. C	32. D	37. C	42. C	47. B
3. D	8. A	13. A	18. C	23. D	28. B	33. B	38. D	43. A	48. D
4. C	9. D	14. C	19. A	24. D	29. B	34. A	39. D	44. A	49. A
5. C	10. A	15. A	20. C	25. B	30. A	35. C	40. C	45. B	50. B

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12**

**CÁC TỪ (CỤM TỪ) DIỄN TẢ SỐ LƯỢNG (EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY)**

**\* PHẦN I: LÍ THUYẾT**

**I. Some/Any**

Cả *some* và *any* đều được dùng để chỉ một số lượng không xác định khi không thể hay không cần phải nêu rõ số lượng chính xác

**1. Some: một ít, một vài**

\* “**Some**” thường được đặt trong câu khẳng định, trước danh từ đếm được (số nhiều) hoặc danh từ không đếm được.

EX: I want some *milk*. -

I need some *eggs*.

\* Đôi khi “**some**” được dùng trong câu hỏi (khi chúng ta mong chờ câu trả lời là **YES**. Hoặc được dùng trong câu yêu cầu, lời mời hoặc lời đề nghị.

EX: Did you buy some oranges?

Would you like some more coffee?

May I go out for some drink?

**2. Any: một ít, một vài**

\* “**Any**” thường đặt trước danh từ đếm được (số nhiều) hoặc danh từ không đếm được trong câu phủ định hoặc nghi vấn.

EX: Do you want any sugar?

She didn't see any boys in her class.

\* “Any” được dùng trong mệnh đề khẳng định, trước danh từ số ít (đếm được hoặc không đếm được) hoặc sau các từ có nghĩa phủ định (never, hardly, scarcely, without....)

EX: I'm free all day. Come and see me **any time** you like.

He's lazy. He **never** does **any work**

If there are any letters for me, can you send them on to this address?

If you need any more money, please let me know.

### Notes:

- Khi danh từ đó được xác định, chúng ta có thể dùng some và any không có danh từ theo sau

EX: Tim wanted some milk, but he couldn't find **any**.

or If you have no stamps, I will give you **some**.

-Các đại từ (*something, anything, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody, somewhere, anywhere...*) được dùng tương tự như cách dùng *some, any*

EX: I don't see anything on the table.

Or Is there anybody in your house now?

Or I want to do something to help you.

## II. Much, many, a great deal of, a large number of, a lot of, lots of...

<u>With countable nouns</u>	<u>With uncountable nouns</u>
- many	- much
- a large number of	- a large amount of
- a great number of	- a great deal of
- plenty of	- plenty of
- a lot of	- a lot of
- lots of	- lots of

EX: I don't have much *time* for night clubs.

There are so many *people* here that I feel tired.

She has got a great deal of *homework* today.

Did you spend much *money* for the beautiful cars?

There's plenty of *milk* in the fridge.

There are plenty of *eggs* in the fridge.

A large number of *students* in this school are good.

I saw lots of *flowers* in the garden yesterday.

A large amount of *air pollution* comes from industry.

- Theo nguyên tắc chung, chúng ta dùng **many, much** trong câu phủ định và câu nghi vấn và dùng **a lot of, lots of** trong câu khẳng định.

EX: Do you know **many** people here?

Or We didn't spend **much** money for Christmas presents. But we spent a lot of money for the party

Tuy nhiên trong lối văn trang trọng, đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng **many** và **much** trong câu xác định. Và trong lối nói thôn mật, **a lot of** cũng có thể dùng được trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn

Ex: **Many** students have financial problem

There was **much** bad driving on the road

I don't have **many/ a lot of** friends

Do you eat **much/ a lot of** fruit?

- Notes:

-Khi trong câu xác định có các từ "very, too, so, as." thì phải dùng "Much, Many". **(Không được dùng a lot of, lots of, plenty of)**

EX: There is too much bad news on TV tonight.

There are too many mistakes in your writing.

There are so many *people* here that I feel tired.

**Very much** thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định như một trạng từ, chứ không phải là từ hạn định

Ex: I **very much** enjoy travelling.

Or Thank you **very much**

**Many of, much of + determiner/ pronoun**

Ex: I won't pass the exam; I've missed **many of** my lessons.

You can't see **much of** a country in a week.

**III. Few, A few, Little, A little:**

**1. Few/ A few:** dùng trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

\* **FEW:** rất ít, hầu như không có (chỉ số lượng rất ít, không nhiều như mong muốn, thường có nghĩa phủ định)

EX: I don't want to take the trip to Hue because I have *few* friends there.

They hardly find a job because there are *few* jobs.

\* **A few:** Một vài, một ít

EX: There are *a few* empty seats here.

You can see *a few* houses on the hill.

**2. Little/ A little:** dùng trước các danh từ không đếm được.

\* **Little:** rất ít, hầu như không có (thường có nghĩa phủ định)

EX: I have very *little* time for reading.

We had *little* rain all summer.

\* **A little:** một ít, một chút (thường có nghĩa khẳng định)

EX: I need *a little* help to move these books.

Would you like *a little* salt on your vegetables?

NOTES:

- Only a little và only a few có nghĩa phủ định

Ex: We must be quick. We've got only a little time (only a little = not much)

Only a few customers have come in (only a few = not many)

- (a) little of/ (a) few of + determiner/ pronoun

Ex: Only **a few of the** children in this class like math

Could I try **a little of your** wine?

**IV. All, most, some, no, all of, most of, some of, none of:**

**1. All** (tất cả), **most** (phần lớn, đa số), **some** (một vài), **no** (không), được dùng như từ hạn định (determiner):

<b>All/ most/ some/ no (+ adj) + plural noun/ uncountable noun</b>
--

Ex: All children are fond of candy. Or Most cheese is made from cow's milk

There are no rooms available Or All classical music sends me to sleep

**2. All of, most of, some of, none of:** được dùng trước các từ hạn định (*a, an, the, my, his, this, ...*) và các đại từ

Ex: Some of those people are very friendly. Or Most of her friends live abroad.

NOTES:

- Chỳng ta cú thể bỏ *of* sau *all* hoặc *half* khi *of* đứng trước từ hạn định (không được bỏ *of* khi *of* đứng trước đại từ)

Ex: All (*of*) my friends live in London. But all **of** them have been to the meeting

Half (*of*) this money is mine, and half **of** it is yours

- Chúng ta thường không dùng *of* khi không có từ hạn định (mạo từ hoặc từ sở hữu) đứng trước danh từ. Tuy nhiên trong một vài trường hợp *most of* cũng có thể được dùng mà không có từ hạn định theo sau, ví dụ như trước các tên riêng và địa danh.

Ex: The Romans conquered **most of England**

- Cộc cụm danh từ đứng sau *all of, most of, some of, ...* thường xác định (phải có *the, these, those, ...* hoặc cộc tónh từ sở hữu)

Ex: **Most of the boys** in my class want to choose well-paid job

- Chỳng ta cú thể bỏ danh từ sau *all, most, some, none* nếu nghĩa đó rừ ràng

Ex: I wanted some cake, but there was **none** left.

Or The band sang a few songs. **Most** were old ones, but **some** were new.

## V. Every, each

Thường được dùng trước danh từ đếm được ở số ít

Ex: The police questioned *every/ each* person in the building.

Or *Every/ each* room has a number

Trong nhiều trường hợp, *every* và *each* có thể được dùng với nghĩa tương tự nhau

Ex: You look more beautiful *each/ every* time I see you

Tuy nhiên *every* và *each* vẫn có sự khác biệt nhau về nghĩa

### - **Every (mỗi, mọi)**

Chỳng ta dựng *every* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật như một tổng thể hoặc một nhóm (cùng nghĩa với *all*)

Ex: *Every* guest watched as the President came in.

Or I go for a walk *every* day

*Every* có thể được dùng để nói về ba hoặc nhiều hơn ba người hoặc vật, thường là một số lượng lớn

Ex: There were cars parked along *every* street in town

### - **Each (mỗi)**

Chúng ta dùng *each* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật một cách riêng rẽ, từng người hoặc từng vật trong một nhóm

Ex: *Each* day seemed to pass very slowly

*Each* có thể được dùng để nói về hai hoặc nhiều hơn hai, thường là một nhóm nhỏ người hoặc vật

Ex: There are four books on the table. *Each* book was a different colour

*Each* có thể được dùng một mình hoặc dùng với **of** (*each of* + determiner/ pronoun)

Ex: There are six flats. *Each* has its own entrance.

Or *Each of* the house has a backyard

## VI. Subject-verb agreement

**With fractions, percentages and indefinite quantifiers (e. g., all, few, many, much, some), the verb agrees with the preceding noun or clause:**

With a **singular** or **non-count** noun or clause, use a singular verb:

One-third of *this article* **is** taken up with statistical analysis.

Much of *the book* **seems** relevant to this study.

Half of *what he writes* **is** undocumented.

Fifty percent of *the job* **is** routine.

All *the information* **is** current

With a plural noun, use a plural verb:

One-third of *the students* **have** graduate degrees.

Many *researchers* **depend** on grants from industry.

Half of *his articles* **are** peer-reviewed.

Fifty percent of *the computers* **have** CD-ROM drives.

All *the studies* **are** current.

With a **collective** noun, use either a singular or a plural verb, depending on whether you want to emphasize the single group or its individual members:

Half of *my family* **lives/live** in Canada.

All of *the class* **is/are** here.

Ten percent of *the population* **is/are** bilingual.

**The words majority and minority are used in a variety of ways:**

When *majority/minority* mean an **unspecified number** more or less than 50%, use a singular verb:

The *majority* **holds** no strong views.

A *small minority* **indicates** it supports the proposal.

When *majority/minority* mean a **specific percentage**, you may use either a singular or a plural verb:

A *75% majority* **have/has** voted against the measure.

A *10% minority* **are/is** opposed to the measure.

When *majority/minority* refers to a **specified set of persons**, use a plural verb:

A *majority of Canadians* **have** voted for change.

A *minority of the students* **are willing** to pay more.

**Expressions of time, money and distance usually take a singular verb:**

*Ten dollars* **is** a great deal of money to a child.

*Ten kilometres* **is** too far to walk.

*Six weeks* **is** not long enough.

**Expressions using the phrase number of depend on the meaning of the phrase:**

They take a singular verb when referring to a **single quantity**:

The number of *students registered in the class* **is** 20.

They take plural verbs when they are used as **indefinite quantifiers**

A number of *students* **were** late

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**I. Choose the best option.**

1. The snow was getting quite deep. I had \_\_\_\_\_ hope of getting home that night.  
A. much                      B. **little**                      C. a great deal of                      D. a little
2. I don't think Jill would be a good teacher. She's got \_\_\_\_\_ patience.  
A. some                      B. few                      C. **little**                      D. all
3. Would you like milk in your coffee? " Yes, please \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. little                      B. **a little**                      C. a few                      D. some
4. Have you seen \_\_\_\_\_ good films recently?  
- No, I haven't been to the cinema for ages.  
A. **any**                      B. some                      C. a few                      D. most of
5. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ coffee for my breakfast?  
A. any                      B. few                      C. little                      D. **some**
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the Vietnamese people make their living by farming.  
A. Most                      B. **Most of**                      C. Some of                      D. Many of
7. Don't drink \_\_\_\_\_ wine. It's bad for your health.  
A. many                      B. a few                      C. **so much**                      D. little
8. He had spent \_\_\_\_\_ time writing an essay about his childhood.  
A. a large number of      B. **a great deal of**      C. a few                      D. many
9. In spite of the heavy storm, some villagers were planning to rescue the injured climbers, but \_\_\_\_\_ refused to do so.  
A. **many of them**      B. most of people      C. few of farmers                      D. many of a number
10. The government is \_\_\_\_\_ worried about the increase of the youth unemployment rates.  
A. **very**                      B. much                      C. a great deal of                      D. no
11. You talk too \_\_\_\_\_ and you often do too \_\_\_\_\_ tricks in class.  
A. **much / many**      B. little / much                      C. little / much                      D. many / much
12. \_\_\_\_\_ the countries in that area of the world, perhaps Nigeria has the most potential.  
A. **Of all**                      B. All of                      C. Most                      D. A great deal of
13. After doing the shopping, she had got \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a few money left      B. **little money left**      C. some left of money                      D. several of money left
14. The examination was not very difficult, but it was \_\_\_\_\_ long.  
A. so much                      B. too much                      C. very much                      D. **much too**
15. Increasing \_\_\_\_\_ of fruit in the diet may help to reduce the risk of heart disease.  
A. **the amount**                      B. an amount                      C. the number                      D. a number
16. While Southern California is densely populated, \_\_\_\_\_ live in the northern part of the state.  
A. a number of                      B. many people                      C. **few people**                      D. a few of people

17. Nowadays, due to the increasing unemployment rate, young graduates have \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities to find jobs.

- A. little                      B. a little                      C. **few**                      D. a few

18. \_\_\_\_\_ of Asian students reject the American view that marriage is a partnership of equals.

- A. The majority**              B. The many                      C. The number                      D. A great deal

19. In \_\_\_\_\_ people, the areas of the brain that control speed are located in the left hemisphere.

- A. mostly of                      B. **most**                      C. almost of                      D. the most of

20. The \_\_\_\_\_ boy is very interested in football, but it is actually not good at playing it.

- A. most of                      B. **little**                      C. some                      D. few

21. They knew \_\_\_\_\_ about him but they said they didn't.

- A. many                      B. a lot of                      C. **much**                      D. little

22. Although the government has taken certain measures to protect elephants, **numerous** threats remain for them.

- A. too much                      B. **a lot of**                      C. some                      D. a few

23. The room is almost empty. There are very \_\_\_\_\_ people there.

- A. few**                      B. a few                      C. some                      D. several

24. The teacher gave us \_\_\_\_\_ difficult exercises. We could do only \_\_\_\_\_ of them and \_\_\_\_\_ of them couldn't be done.

- A. many / a few / most**                      C. some / one / many  
B. a lot of / a little / some                      D. a great number of / one / some

25. We have to delay this course because there are \_\_\_\_\_ students.

- A. a large number of              B. **few**                      C. some                      D. many

**II. Choose the correct sentence A, B, C or D which is CLOSEST in meaning to each of the following questions.**

26. ***Hardly anybody applied for the job.***

- A. Nobody applied for the job because it was hard.  
B. Anybody found it hard to apply for the job.  
C. There were very few applicants for the job  
D. Anybody applied hardly for the job.

27. ***The majority of the students in this college are from overseas.***

- A. Everyone in this college is from overseas.  
B. No one in this college is from overseas.  
C. Few students in this college are from overseas.  
**D. Most of the students in this college are from overseas.**

28. ***The tourists were unharmed after the train crash.***

- A. All the tourists were injured in the train crash.



**B.** None of the tourists were injured in the train crash.

C. The train crash was not harmful for the tourists.

D. The tourists were very afraid after the train crash.

29. ***Had the announcement been made earlier, more people would have attended the lecture.***

A. Not many people came to hear the lecture because it was held so late.

**B.** Since the announcement was not made earlier, fewer people came to hear the lecture.

C. The lecture was held earlier so that more people would attend.

D. Fewer people attended the lecture because of the early announcement.

30. ***Most of the students ignored what the teacher was saying.***

A. The teacher was ignored what she was saying by most of students.

B. The majority of the students ignored the teacher's saying.

C. Most of the students didn't listen to the teacher.

**D.** Few students paid attention to what the teacher was saying.

31. ***The Prime Minister is unlikely to call an early general election.***

A. It's likely that the Prime Minister will call an early general election.

B. The likelihood is that the Prime Minister will call an early general election

C. There is little likelihood of the Prime Minister calling an early general election

D. The likelihood is great that the Prime Minister will call an early general election

32. ***Had he known more about the internet, he would have invested in some computer companies***

A. Knowing about the internet would help him invest in some computer companies.

**B.** He didn't know much about the internet and he didn't invest in any computer companies

C. Knowing about the internet, he would have invested in some computer companies

D. He would have invested in some computer companies without his knowledge of the internet

33. ***Some children give a great deal of thought to their future work.***

A. Some children think a great deal of their given work.

B. Some children's future work is given to them.

C. Some children think a great deal of their future work.

D. Some children thought a lot of their future work.

34. ***They have no knowledge of what to expect when they start their work.***

A. They know little about what to expect when they start their work.

B. They don't have little knowledge of what to expect when they start their work.

C. When they start their work, they think about their knowledge that they expect.

D. They hardly know of what to expect when they start their work.

35. ***He gave us and his classmates a lot of help in the study.***

A. He gave many help to us and his classmates in the study.

**B.** He helped us and his classmates a lot in the study.

- C. He offered much help in the study to us and his classmates.
- D. They were given a lot of help in the study by him.

**III. Find one word or phrase(A, B, C or D) that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct.**

36. It was disappointing that almost of the guests left the wedding too early.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

37. He has a great deal of books most of which are on science and technology.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

38. John had made several spelling mistake in his assignment so he didn't get good marks.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

39. In the early days of the devolopment, cars used a large number of fuel, and now cars are more economical.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

40. A number of the participants in the survey was 250 students for Oxford University.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

41. He had smoked a lot of cigarettes that he died of cancer.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

42. There is only a few food for dinner. I think you should buy some more to eat.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

43. Although Mary has been inViet nam for 10 months, she knows a little Vietnamese.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

44. There is too many bad news on TV tonight.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

45. My friends can't buy these jackets because they cost too many.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

46. If either of you take a vacation now, we will not be able to finish the work.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

47. Because they had spent too many time considering the new contract, the students lost the

opportunities to lease the apartment.

**C                                    D**

48. Some the plants in this store require very little care, but this one needs much more

sunlight than the others.

49. The company has so a little money that it can hardly operate any more.

**A                                    B                                    C                                    D**

50. Although the weather was not perfect a bunch of people turned out for the annual parade.

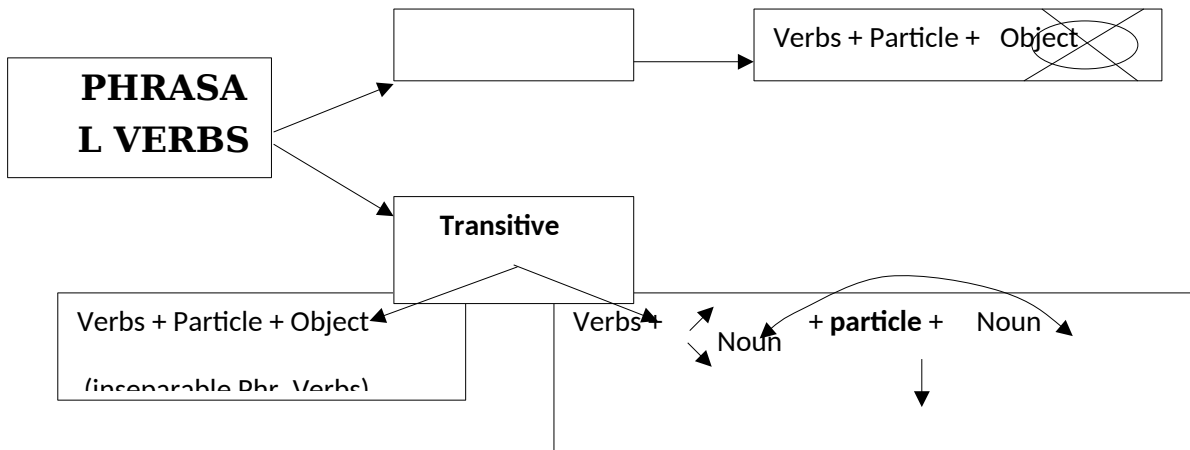
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13**CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)****\* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT****A/ PHRASAL VERB (CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ) là gì?**

- Phrasal verb (cụm động từ) là sự kết hợp của động từ và giới từ hoặc trạng từ (được gọi chung là tiểu từ - particle)

Eg: V+ prep: look for, look like

V+ adv: get away, take off

V+ adv+ prep: catch up with

**B/ PHÂN LOẠI****1. Nội cụm động từ (Intransitive phrasal verbs)**

Là những cụm động từ không cần tân ngữ theo sau

Dưới đây là một số các nội cụm động từ thường gặp

VERB	MEANING	
<b>break down</b>	hỏng,	That old Jeep had a tendency to the most.
<b>catch on</b>	phổ biến, thịnh hành	Popular songs seem to eastward.
<b>come back</b>	trở về, trở lại	Father promised that we would never plice.
<b>come in</b>	vào, bước vào	They tried to <u>come in</u>
<b>come to</b>	hồi tỉnh	He was hit on the head very hard, but after several minutes, he

		started to <u>come to</u>
<b>come over</b>	đến thăm	The children promised to
<b>drop by</b>	ghã thăm	We used to just <u>drop by</u> doing that.
<b>eat out</b>	ăn nhà hàn	When we visited Paris, we loved
<b>get by</b>	xoay sở (tài chính)	Uncle Heine didn't have much money, but he always seemed to <u>get by</u> without borrowing money from relatives.
<b>get up</b>	dậy, trở dậy	Grandmother tried to couldn't make it on her own.
<b>go back</b>	quay về	It's hard to imagine that we will ever
<b>go on</b>	continue	He would finish one Dickens novel and then just
<b>go on (2)</b>	happen	The cops heard all the noise and stopped to see what was
<b>grow up</b>	trưởng thành, lớn lên	Charles <u>grew up</u> to be a lot like his father.
<b>keep away</b>	remain at a distance	The judge warned the stalker to home.
<b>keep on (with gerun)</b>	continue with the same	He tried to <u>keep on</u>
<b>pass out</b>	ngất, bất tỉnh	He had drunk too much; he bar.
<b>show off</b>	demonstrate haughtily	Whenever he sat down at the piano, we knew he was going to <u>show off</u> .
<b>show up</b>	arrive	Day after day, Elfrain
<b>wake up</b>	tỉnh giấc	I <u>woke up</u> when the rooster crowed.

## 2. Ngoại cụm động từ (Transitive phrasal verbs)

Ngoại cụm động từ là những cụm động từ cần cú tồn ngữ theo sau

- E. g. 1. We are **looking for** my key  
2. Remember to **turn** the lights **off** when going out.

### 2.1 Ngoại cụm động từ có thể tách (Separable phrasal verbs)

Là những cụm động từ mà tân ngữ của nó có thể theo sau hoặc tách cụm từ đó ra thành 2 phần.

E. g. You have to do this paint job over.

You have to do over this paint job.

Nhưng khi tân ngữ của cụm động từ đó là đại từ thì cụm động từ đó thường phải được tách ra làm 2.

E. g. You have to do it over.

VERB	MEANING	EXAMPLE
blow up	explode	The terrorists tried to <u>blow up</u> the railroad station.
bring up	mention a topic	My mother <u>brought up</u> that little matter of my prison record again.
bring up	nuôi dưỡng	It isn't easy to <u>bring up</u> children nowadays.
call off	cancel	They <u>called off</u> this afternoon's meeting
do over	làm lại, ụn lại	<u>Do</u> this homework <u>over</u> .
fill out	complete a form	<u>Fill out</u> this application form and mail it in.
fill up	lấp đầy, điền đầy	She <u>filled up</u> the grocery cart with free food.
find out	phát hiện, khóm phỏ ra	My sister <u>found out</u> that her husband had been planning a surprise party for her.
give away	cho, phỏn phỏt	The filling station was <u>giving away</u> free gas.
give back	trả lại	My brother borrowed my car. I have a feeling he's not about to <u>give it back</u> .
hand in	nỏp, đệ trỏnh	The students <u>handed in</u> their papers and left the room.
hang up	gỏc, treo, múc	She <u>hung up</u> the phone before she hung up her clothes.
hold up	delay	I hate to <u>hold up</u> the meeting, but I have to go to the bathroom.
hold up (2)	rob	Three masked gunmen <u>held up</u> the Security Bank this afternoon.
leave out	omit	You <u>left out</u> the part about the police chase down Asylum Avenue.
look over	examine, check	The lawyers <u>looked over</u> the papers carefully before questioning the witness. (They <u>looked</u> them <u>over</u> carefully.)
look up	search in a list	You've misspelled this word again. You'd better <u>look it up</u> .
make up	invent a story or lie	She knew she was in trouble, so she <u>made up</u> a story about going to the movies with her friends.
make out	bịa (chuyện)	He was so far away, we really couldn't <u>make out</u> what he was saying.
pick out	nhật ra, chọn ra	There were three men in the line-up. She <u>picked out</u> the guy she thought had stolen her purse.
pick up	hái, lượm	The crane <u>picked up</u> the entire house. (Watch them <u>pick it up</u> .)
point out	call attention to	As we drove through Paris, Francoise <u>pointed out</u> the major

		historical sites.
put away	save or store	We <u>put away</u> money for our retirement. She <u>put away</u> the cereal boxes.
put off	postpone	We asked the boss to <u>put off</u> the meeting until tomorrow. (Please <u>put it off</u> for another day.)
put on	mặc (quần áo), đội, đeo, ...	I <u>put on</u> a sweater and a jacket. (I <u>put them on</u> quickly.)
put out	extinguish	The firefighters <u>put out</u> the house fire before it could spread. (They <u>put it out</u> quickly.)
read over	đọc lướt	I <u>read over</u> the homework, but couldn't make any sense of it.
set up	arrange, begin	My wife <u>set up</u> the living room exactly the way she wanted it. She <u>set it up</u> .
take down	make a written note	These are your instructions. <u>Write them down</u> before you forget.
take off	remove clothing	It was so hot that I had to <u>take off</u> my shirt.
talk over	discuss	We have serious problems here. Let's <u>talk them over</u> like adults.
throw away	discard	That's a lot of money! Don't just <u>throw it away</u> .
try on	thử đồ	She <u>tried on</u> fifteen dresses before she found one she liked.
try out	thử nghiệm	I <u>tried out</u> four cars before I could find one that pleased me.
turn down	lower volume	Your radio is driving me crazy! Please <u>turn it down</u> .
turn down (2)	reject	He applied for a promotion twice this year, but he was <u>turned down</u> both times.
turn up	raise the volume	Grandpa couldn't hear, so he <u>turned up</u> his hearing aid.
turn off	switch off electricity	We <u>turned off</u> the lights before anyone could see us.
turn off (2)	repulse	It was a disgusting movie. It really <u>turned me off</u> .
turn on	switch on the electricity	<u>Turn on</u> the CD player so we can dance.
use up	exhaust, use completely	The gang members <u>used up</u> all the money and went out to rob some more banks.

## 2.2 Ngoại cụm động từ không thể tách (Separable phrasal verbs)

Là những cụm động từ có phần tiểu từ không thể tách ra khỏi động từ gốc vỡ nú chứa nghĩa

**của cụm động từ đó (verb-meaning).**

VERB	MEANING	EXAMPLE
call on	ask to recite in class	The teacher <u>called on</u> students in the back row.
call on (2)	visit	The old minister continued to <u>call on</u> his sick parishioners.
get over	bõnh phục, khỏi (bệnh)	I <u>got over</u> the flu, but I don't know if I'll ever <u>get over</u> my broken heart.
go over	review	The students <u>went over</u> the material before the exam. They should have <i>gone over</i> it twice.
go through	use up; consume	They country <u>went through</u> most of its coal reserves in one year. Did he <u>go through</u> all his money already?
look after	take care of	My mother promised to <u>look after</u> my dog while I was gone.
look into	investigate	The police will <u>look into</u> the possibilities of embezzlement.
run across	tõnh cờ gặp	I <u>ran across</u> my old roommate at the college reunion.
run into	meet	Carlos <u>ran into</u> his English professor in the hallway.
take after	resemble	My second son seems to <u>take after</u> his mother.
wait on	serve	It seemed strange to see my old boss <u>wait on</u> tables.
break in on	interrupt (a conversation)	I was talking to Mom on the phone when the operator <u>broke in on</u> our call.
catch up with	bắt kịp	After our month-long trip, it was time to <u>catch up with</u> the neighbors and the news around town.
check up on	examine, investigate	The boys promised to <u>check up on</u> the condition of the summer house from time to time.
come up with	Đóng góp (suggestion, money) Nghĩ ra	After years of giving nothing, the old parishioner was able to <u>come up with</u> a thousand-dollar donation. We've <u>come up with</u> how to deal with the problem
cut down on	cắt giảm	We tried to <u>cut down on</u> the money we were spending on entertainment.
drop out of	leave school	I hope none of my students <u>drop out of</u> school this semester.
get along with	have a good relationship with	I found it very hard to <u>get along with</u> my brother when we were young.
get away with	trốn tội	Janik cheated on the exam and then tried to <u>get away with</u> it.

get rid of	eliminate	The citizens tried to <u>get rid of</u> their corrupt mayor in the recent election.
get through with	finish	When will you ever <u>get through with</u> that program?
keep up with	theo kịp	It's hard to <u>keep up with</u> the Joneses when you lose your job!
look forward to	anticipate with pleasure	I always <u>look forward to</u> the beginning of a new semester.
look down on	khinh thường	It's typical of a jingoistic country that the citizens <u>look down on</u> their geographical neighbors.
look in on	visit (somebody)	We were going to <u>look in on</u> my brother-in-law, but he wasn't home.
look out for	be careful, anticipate	Good instructors will <u>look out for</u> early signs of failure in their students
look up to	respect	First-graders really <u>look up to</u> their teachers.
make sure of	verify	<u>Make sure of</u> the student's identity before you let him into the classroom.
put up with	tolerate	The teacher had to <u>put up with</u> a great deal of nonsense from the new students.
run out of	dùng hết	The runners <u>ran out of</u> energy before the end of the race.
take care of	be responsible for	My oldest sister <u>took care of</u> us younger children after Mom died.
talk back to	answer impolitely	The star player <u>talked back to</u> the coach and was thrown off the team.
think back on	recall	I often <u>think back on</u> my childhood with great pleasure.
walk out on	abandon	Her husband <u>walked out on</u> her and their three children.

## CÁC CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERB) THƯỜNG GẶP

(trong chương trình SGK phổ thông)

- |  |
|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. account for: giải thích, kể đến</li> <li>2. ask for: đòi hỏi</li> <li>3. break down = fail, collapse: hỏng, sụp đổ</li> <li>4. break out = start suddenly: bùng nổ, bùng phát</li> <li>5. bring up = raise and educate: nuôi nấng</li> <li>6. bring about = cause sth to happen: xảy ra, mang lại</li> </ol> |
|--|



7. catch up / catch up with: bắt kịp, theo kịp.
8. call off: hủy bỏ
9. call on = visit: viếng thăm
10. call up: gọi điện
11. carry on: tiến hành
12. carry out: tiến hành
13. catch up with: theo kịp với
14. come along: tiến hành
15. come on = begin: bắt đầu
16. come out = appear: xuất hiện
17. come about = become lower: giảm xuống, sa sút
18. come over = visit: ghé thăm
19. come up with: think of: Nghĩ ra
20. cool off: (nhiệt tởnh) nguội lạnh đi, giảm đi.
21. count on = investigate, examine: tởnh, dựa vào
22. differ from = not be the same: khụng giống với
23. fall behind: thụt lợi, tụt lại đằng sau.
24. fill in: điền vào, ghi vào
25. fill out = discover: khỏm phỏ ra
26. get over = recover from: vượt qua, khắc phục
27. get up: thức dậy
28. get along / get on with sth: have a good relationship with sb: hũa thuận
29. give in: nhượng bộ, chịu thua.
30. give up = stop: từ bỏ, bỏ
31. go after: theo đuổi
32. go by (thời gian): trụi qua
33. go after = chase, pursue: theo đuổi, rượt đuổi
34. go ahead = be carried out: đợc diễn ra, tiến hành
35. go along = develop, progress: tiến bộ
36. go away: biến mất, tan đi.
37. go back = return: trở lại
38. go in: vào, đi vào.
39. go off (chuụng): reo, (sụng, bom): nổ, (sữa): chua, hỏng, (thức ăn), (điờn) tắt, (máy móc): hư
40. go on = continue: tiếp tục
41. go over: xem lại
42. go out (ánh sáng, lửa, điờn): tắt
43. go up: lớn lên, trưởng thành = grow up, (giá cả): tăng lên
44. go down: (giỏ cả): giảm xuống
45. hold up = stop =delay: hoón lại, ngừng
46. hurry up: làm gấp
47. keep on = continue: tiếp tục
48. keep up with: theo kịp, bắt kịp.
49. lay down: đề ra
50. let down: khiến ai thất vọng
51. lie down: nằm nghỉ
52. jot down = make a quick note of something: ghi nhanh
53. look after: chăm sóc
54. look at: nhỡn
55. look down on sb = coi thường
56. look up to sb = respect: kớnh trọng
57. look up: tởm, tra cứu (trong sỏch, từ điờn)
58. look for: tởm kiếm
59. make out = understand: hiểu
60. make up = invent, put sth together: phỏt minh, trộn
61. pass away = die: chết
62. put on: mặc (quần ỏ), mang (giày), đội (mũ), mở (điờn)

63. put out = make st stop burning, produce: dập tắt, sản xuất
64. put off = postpone: hoãn lại
65. put up = build: xây dựng
66. result in = lead to = cause: gây ra
67. speak up: nói to, nói thẳng
68. set off = begin: khởi hành
69. set up = establish: thành lập
70. set out/ set off: khởi hành
71. stand by: ủng hộ
72. stand for: là viết tắt của...
73. take after = resemble: giống
74. take off: cởi (quần áo, giày, mũ); (mô-đay) cất cồng
75. take over = take responsible for st /V-ing: đảm nhận trách nhiệm
76. take up = start doing: bắt đầu tham gia
77. try out: thử
78. try on: mặc thử (quần áo)
79. turn down: gạt bỏ, bác bỏ
80. turn off: khóa, tắt (đèn, máy móc, động cơ ...)
81. turn on: mở (đèn, máy móc, động cơ ...)
82. turn round: quay lại, thay đổi hướng
83. turn up: đến = arrive = appear (xuất hiện)
84. wait up (for): thức đợi ai
85. wash away: cuốn trôi đi, quét sạch
86. wash up: rửa bát đĩa.
87. watch out: đề phòng, chỳ ý
88. wipe out = remove, destroy completely: xóa bỏ, phỏ hủy

## \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### CHỌN ĐÁP ÁN ĐÚNG

1. What may happen if John will not **arrive** in time?  
A. go along                      B. count on                      C. keep away                      **D. turn up**
2. Johnny sometimes **visits** his grandparents in the countryside.  
**A. calls on**                      B. keeps off                      C. takes in                      D. goes up
3. They decided to **postpone** their journey till the end of the month because of the epidemic.  
A. take up                      B. turn round                      **C. put off**                      D. do with
4. The stranger came ..... me and asked, "Is there a post office near here?"  
A. on to                      B. away from                      C. out of                      **D. up to**
5. Frankly speaking, your daughter does not take ..... you at all.  
**A. after**                      B. along                      C. up                      D. over
6. She is not really friendly. She does not get on well \_\_\_\_\_ her classmates.  
A. from                      **B. with**                      C. for                      D. to
7. I would be grateful if you kept the news ..... yourself. Do not tell anyone about it.  
A. from                      **B. to**                      C. for                      D. at
8. I do not use those things any more. You can ..... them away.  
A. get                      B. fall                      **C. throw**                      D. make
9. They were late for work because their car ..... down.

- A. got                                      B. put                                      C. cut                                      **D. broke**
10. The authority ..... down that building to build a supermarket.  
**A. knocked**                                      B. came                                      C. went                                      D. fell
11. I didn't get to see the end of that movie on TV last night. How did it ..... out?  
A. go                                      B. make                                      C. bring                                      **D. turn**
12. I'm not surprised Margaret's ill. With all the voluntary work she's ....., she's really been doing too much.  
A. taken off                                      **B. taken on**                                      C. taken in                                      D. taken to
13. At present we are ..... an anti-drug campaign.  
A. setting up for                                      **B. carrying out**                                      C. taking part                                      D. joining with
14. At the station, we often see the sign "..... for pickpockets".  
A. Watch on                                      **B. Watch out**                                      C. Watch up                                      D. Watch at
15. Let's wait here for her; I'm sure she'll .....  
A. turn down                                      B. turn off                                      C. turn over                                      **D. turn up**
16. UNESCO..... United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.  
**A. stands for**                                      B. brings about                                      C. takes after                                      D gets across
17. Don't forget to ..... your gloves on. It is cold outside.  
A let                                      B. make                                      **C put**                                      D. fix
18. The passengers had to wait because the plane.....off one hour late.  
**A. took**                                      B. turned                                      C. cut                                      D. made
19. Be careful! The tree is going to fall.  
**A. Look out**                                      B. Look up                                      C. Look on                                      D. Look after
20. The bomb exploded in the garage; fortunately no one hurt.  
A put on                                      **B. went off**                                      C. got out                                      D. kept up
21. These shoes felt too tight, so I took.....and tried a larger size.  
A. away them                                      B. off them                                      C. them away                                      **D. them off**
22. My father still hasn't really recovered from the death of my mother.  
A went over                                      **B. got over**                                      C. took over                                      D. looked over
23. I can't ..... walking. Can we stop and have a short rest?  
**A go on**                                      B. get on                                      C. go up                                      D. get up
24. When you are finished using the computer, can you please ..... it off.  
A take                                      **B. turn**                                      C. do                                      D go
25. When the alarm went off, everyone proceeded calmly to the emergency exits.  
A fell                                      B. exploded                                      C. called                                      **D. rang**
26. Look out. There is a rattlesnake under the picnic table!  
A Listen                                      **B. Be careful**                                      C. Go                                      D. Watch
27. Mrs. Jones's husband passed away fast Friday. We're all shocked by the news.  
A got married                                      B. divorced                                      **C. died**                                      D. were on business
28. If you want to be healthy. you should ..... your bad habits in your lifestyles  
**A. give up**                                      B call off                                      C break down                                      D get over
29. Watch ..... ! a car is coming  
**A. out**                                      B up                                      C. away                                      D off
30. Try to study harder to catch ..... your classmates.  
A up                                      **B. up with**                                      C. out                                      D. with
31. Don't be impatient! I 'm sure he will turn .....on time  
**A. up**                                      B. round                                      C. on                                      D. off

33. Go \_\_\_\_\_ this book because it has the information you need.  
**A. over**                                      B. by                                      C. off                                      D. on
34. My husband spends far more time helping our three kids \_\_\_\_\_ homework and studying for tests than I do.  
 A. on                                      B. to                                      **C. with**                                      D. in
35. My husband and I take turns cleaning \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen depending \_\_\_\_\_ who gets home from work earlier.  
 A. away / to                                      B. from / in                                      **C. up / on**                                      D. with / for
36. The efforts for the advancement of women have resulted \_\_\_\_\_ several respectively achievement in women's life and work.  
 A. at                                      B. with                                      C. for                                      **D. in**
37. The small white flowers are my favorite. They **give off** a wonderful honey smell that scents the entire garden.  
**A. release**                                      B. stop                                      C. end                                      D. melt
38. I couldn't **make out** what he had talked about because I was not used to his accent.  
 A. stand                                      **B. understand**                                      C. write                                      D. interrupt
39. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to interrupt you. Please, **go on** and finish what you were saying.  
 A. talk                                      B. quit                                      **C. continue**                                      D. stop
40. The firefighters fought the blaze while the crowd was **looking on** it.  
 A. blowing                                      B. watering                                      C. preventing                                      **D. Watching**
41. What does "www" \_\_\_\_\_ for? Is it short for "world wide web?"  
 A. sit                                      **B. stand**                                      C. lie                                      D. point
42. If you do not understand the word "superstitious," look it up in the dictionary.  
**A. find its meaning**                                      B. write it                                      C. draw it                                      D. note it
44. The firefighters fought the blaze while the crowd was looking on it.  
 A. blowing                                      B. watering                                      C. preventing                                      **D. watching**
45. Not all women can do two jobs well at the same time: rearing children and working at office.  
 A. educating                                      **B. taking care of**                                      C. homemaking                                      D. giving a birth
46. The driver skidded and .... a dog.  
 A. ran                                      B. ran into                                      C. ran after                                      **D. ran over**
47. Aren't you going to ...the dress...before you buy it?  
 A. try/ X                                      B. try/ up                                      **C. try/ on**                                      D. try /in
48. I'm sorry, sir. But you've already worn this dress. That's why we can't...it.....  
**A. take/ back**                                      B. take /after                                      C. take/ in                                      D. take/ again
49. Are you telling the truth? Or are you ..... the story.

A. making                      **B. making up**                      C. making for                      D. doing

50. It took women a long time to struggle \_\_\_\_\_ the right to vote.

A. **for**                                      B. with                                      C. against                                      D. upon

51. Women are increasingly involved \_\_\_\_\_ the public life.

A. of                                      B. **in**                                      C. with                                      D. from

52. Although the team was both mentally and physically exhausted, they \_\_\_\_\_ on walking.

A. stopped                                      B. **kept**                                      C. took                                      D. put

53. If you don't pay your rent, your landlord is going to kick you out!

A. lend you some money                                      B. play football with you  
C. give you a kick                                      **D. force you to leave**

54. Everything is \_\_\_\_\_ you. I cannot make \_\_\_\_\_ my mind yet.

A. out off / on                                      **B. up to / up**                                      C. away from / for                                      D. on for / off

55. There is no food left. Someone must have eaten it \_\_\_\_\_.

A. out                                      B. **up**                                      C. off                                      D. along

56. The explorers made a fire to \_\_\_\_\_ off wild animals.

A. get                                      B. **keep**                                      C. take                                      D. go

57. If something urgent has \_\_\_\_\_ up, phone me immediately and I will help you.

A. picked                                      B. **come**                                      C. kept                                      D. brought

58. The organization was established in 1950 in the USA.

A. come around                                      **B. set up**                                      C. made out                                      D. put on

59. Within their home country, National Red Cross and Red Crescent societies assume the duties and responsibilities

of a national relief society.

A. **take on**                                      B. get off                                      C. go about                                      D. put in

60. It took me a very long time to recover from the shock of her death.

A. turn off                                      B. take on                                      C. **get over**                                      D. keep up with

61. He did not particularly want to play any competitive sport.

A. use up                                      B. do with                                      C. **take up**                                      D. go on

62. I am tired because I went to bed late last night.

A. **stayed up**                                      B. kept off                                      C. put out                                      D. brought up

63. If I get this report finished I will knock \_\_\_\_\_ early and go to the pub for some drink.

- A. up                                      B. over                                      C. on                                      D. **off**

64. Boy! \_\_\_\_\_ away all your toys and go to bed right now.

- A. Come                                      B. Lie                                      C. **Put**                                      D. Sit

65. I have been trying to ring him up all day and I could not \_\_\_\_\_ through.

- A. **get**                                      B. take                                      C. look                                      D. hang

66. The water supply of the building was \_\_\_\_\_ off because the pipes burst.

- A. handed                                      B. held                                      C. **cut**                                      D. paid

67. Did your son pass the university entrance examination?

- A. make up                                      B. get along                                      C. go up                                      D. **get through**

68. Frankly speaking, your daughter does not take \_\_\_\_\_ you at all.

- A. **after**                                      B. along                                      C. up                                      D. over

69. I would be grateful if you kept the news \_\_\_\_\_ yourself. Do not tell anyone about it.

- A. from                                      B. **to**                                      C. for                                      D. at

70. My husband spends far more time helping our three kids \_\_\_\_\_ homework and studying for tests than I do.

- A. on                                      B. to                                      C. **with**                                      D. in

71. My husband and I take turns cleaning \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen depending \_\_\_\_\_ who gets home from work earlier.

- A. away / to                                      B. from / in                                      C. **up / on**                                      D. with / for

72. The efforts for the advancement of women have resulted \_\_\_\_\_ several respectively achievement in women's life

and work.

- A. at                                      B. with                                      C. for                                      D. **in**

73. I couldn't make out what he had talked about because I was not used to his accent.

- A. stand                                      B. **understand**                                      C. write                                      D. interrupt

51. The firefighters fought the blaze while the crowd was looking on it.

- A. blowing                                      B. watering                                      C. preventing                                      D. **watching**

74. I cannot believe Peter and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ up last week. They have been married for almost fifteen years. I hope

they get back together.

- A. went                                      B. gave                                      C. looked                                      D. **broke**

75. It took us over twelve hours to hike over the mountain. By the time we got back to our campsite, I was completely \_\_\_\_ out.

- A. **worn**                      B. went                      C. put                      D. knocked

76. The meeting didn't ..... until late.

- A. end up                      B. **break up**                      C. come about                      D. fall through

77. The hotel didn't ..... my expectations.

- A. **come up to**                      B. add up to                      C. get up to                      D. come down to

78. You should always have an alternative plan to .....

- A. bring about                      B. ask after                      C. feel up to                      D. **fall back on**

79. When I took I got over the business, I got more than I .....

- A. ask after                      B. **bargained for**                      C. drew up                      D. came in for

80. At first Tim insisted he was right, but then began to .....

- A. **back down**                      B. follow up                      C. drop off                      D. break up

### CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14

#### CẤU TẠO TỪ (WORD FORMATION)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

##### A. Cách thành lập DANH TỪ

Formation	NOUNS
<i>Verb + er/ or/ ant</i>	Teacher, manager, driver, actor, director, attendant, assistant.....
<i>Verb + ion</i>	Action, invention, construction, direction, revolution, decision.....
<i>Verb + ment/ al</i>	Development, appointment, refusal, removal, approval.....
<i>Verb + ing</i>	Swimming, teaching, jogging, training, building.....
<i>Adj + ness</i>	Kindness, goodness, happiness, sadness, darkness, illness, sickness.....
<i>Adj + ty</i>	Safety, loyalty, variety, ability, honesty, cruelty,.....
<i>Adj + th</i>	Length, depth, width, truth, warmth, strength.....
<i>Adj + dom</i>	Freedom, wisdom, boredom.....

<i>Noun + ist/ ian</i>	Guitarish, novelish, violinist, musician, physician, historian.....
<i>Noun + ism</i>	Patriotism, capitalism, socialism, heroism.....
<i>Noun + ship</i>	Friendship, leadership, scholarship, comradeship.....
<i>Noun + hood</i>	Childhood, brotherhood, neighbourhood, parenthood.....
<i>Super/ over/ sub/ sur + N</i>	<b>Super</b> market, <b>super</b> man <b>over</b> expenditure <b>sub</b> way <b>over</b> expenditure

### Vị trí của DANH TỪ

<b>Sau tính từ (adj + N)</b>	They are interesting <u>books</u> .
<b>Sau- mạo từ: a /an / the</b> - từ chỉ định: <b>this, that, these, those, every, each, ...</b> - từ chỉ số lượng: <b>many, some, few, little, several...</b> - tính từ sở hữu: <b>my, his, her, your, our, their, its...</b>	He is a <u>student</u> . These <u>flowers</u> are beautiful. She needs some <u>water</u> .
<b>Sau ngoại động từ (V cần O)</b>	She buys <u>books</u> . She meets a lot of <u>people</u> .
<b>Sau giới từ (prep. + N)</b>	He talked about <u>the story</u> yesterday. He is interested in <u>music</u> .
<b>Trước V chia thì (N làm chủ từ)</b>	<u>The main</u> has just arrived.
<b>Sau enough (enough + N)</b>	I don't have enough <u>money</u> to buy that house.

### B. Cách thành lập TÍNH TỪ

<b>formular</b>	<b>Adjectives</b>
- <i>ful</i>	Harmful, useful, successful, hopeful, helpful, peaceful, careful.....
- <i>less</i>	Childless, odourless, careless, hopeless, harmless, useless.....
- <i>ly</i>	Manly, worldly, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, friendly.....
- <i>like</i>	Childlike, godlike, lifelike, ladylike, manlike.....
- <i>ish</i>	Childish, boyish, girlish, selfish.....
- <i>y</i>	Hearthy, dirty, dusty, snowy, windy, rainy, cloudy, sunny, sandy.....
- <i>al</i>	Natural, national, industrial, agricultural, cultural, magical.....
- <i>ous</i>	Dangerous, courageous, poisonous, mountainous.....
- <i>ic</i>	Artistic, electric, alcoholic, economic.....



- <i>able</i>	Enjoyable, reasonable, respectable.....
Un/ im/ il/ ir/in/ dis + adj	Unimportant, impossible, illegal, irregular, disable.....

### Vị trí của TÍNH TỪ

<b>Trước N</b> (Adj + N)	This is an <i>interesting</i> books.
<b>Sau TO BE</b>	I am <i>tired</i> .
<b>Sau: become, get, look, feel, taste, smell, seem ...</b>	It becomes <i>hot</i> . She feels <i>sad</i> .
<b>Sau trạng từ (adv + adj): extremely</b> (cực kỳ), <b>completely</b> (hoàn toàn), <b>really</b> (thực sự), <b>terribly</b> , <b>very</b> , <b>quite</b> , <b>rather</b> , ...	It is extremely <i>cold</i> . I'm terribly <i>sorry</i> . She is very <i>beautiful</i> .
<b>Sau keep / make)</b>	The news made me <i>happy</i> .
<b>Sau too</b> (be + too + adj)	That house is too <i>small</i> .
<b>Trước enough</b> (be + adj + enough)	The house isn't <i>large</i> enough.
<b>Trong cấu trúc: be + so + adj + that</b>	She was so <i>angry</i> that she can't speak.
<b>A, an, the, this, that, his, her, their, my, ... + (Adj) + Noun</b>	My <i>new</i> car is blue.
<b>Trong câu cảm thán:</b> - <b>How + adj + S + V</b> - <b>What + (a / an) + adj + N</b>	How <i>beautiful</i> the girl is! What an <i>interesting</i> film!

Note: adj-ed

adj-ing

**Hình thức hiện tại phân từ (-ING):** Diễn tả nhận thức của người nói về người/việc gì đó.

Ex: That film is **interesting**. (Bộ phim đó hay.) (Người xem nhận thấy bộ phim hay.)

**Hình thức quá khứ phân từ (-ED):** Diễn tả cảm giác của người nói do người/việc gì đó đem lại.

Ex: I am confused about the question. (Tôi bị bối rối về câu hỏi.) (Câu hỏi làm tôi bối rối.)

### C. Cách thành lập ĐỘNG TỪ

formular	_Verbs
Dis + verb	Dislike, disagree, discharge, disappear, disappoint.....
Mis + verb	Mislead, misread, misunderstand,.....
Out + verb	Outrun, outlive, outnumber,.....

Over + verb	Overweigh, overpay, overturn, overheat, overcharge.....
Re + verb	Rewrite, reuse, recycle, return, retell, recall,.....
Under + verb	Underdevelop, underdo, underline, undercharge, undersign.....
En + adj	Enable, enrich, enlarge, encourage, endanger.....
ADJ/ noun + en	Weaken, sharpen, tighten, loosen, shorten, soften
Adj/ noun + ise/ ize	Socialize, memorize, industrialize, sympathise economise.....

### **C. Cách thành lập TRẠNG TỪ**

Phần lớn: **Adj + -ly ---> Adv**

Ex: beautifully, carefully, suddenly, carelessly, recently...

**Lưu ý:** Một số trạng từ đặc biệt cần ghi nhớ:

- good (a)                      well (adv): giỏi, tốt
- late (a)                      late / lately (adv): trễ, chậm
- ill (a)                         ill (adv): xấu, tồi, kộ
- fast (a)                      fast (adv): nhanh
- hard (a)                    hard (adv): tích cực, vất vả, chăm chỉ     **hardly (adv): hầu như không**

#### **Vị trí của Trạng từ**

1. Adv + adj

Ex: She is very beautiful.

The weather is extremely hot.

2. Adverbs are placed at the beginning of the sentence.

Ex: Unfortunately, he failed the exam.

3. Adverbs are placed after the verb modified.

Ex: He is running fast.

4. Adv + Pii

Ex: He is well educated.

The wedding day is carefully chosen by groom's parents.

### **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1. My mother is a _____ of English.                  | (TEACH)   |
| 2. Her father is a _____                             | (FARM)    |
| 3. She sent her best wishes for my future _____.     | (HAPPY)   |
| 4. He was punished for his _____.                    | (LAZY)    |
| 5. We like going in his car as he is a _____ driver. | (CARE)    |
| 6. AIDS is a _____ disease.                          | (DANGER)  |
| 7. She looks _____ in her new coat.                  | (ATTRACT) |

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 8. He turns out to be the _____ student in his class.              | (GOOD)       |
| 9. Nam is always _____   | (BUSINESS)   |
| 10. There are four _____ in my house.                              | (BOOKSELF)   |
| 11. The photocopy is between the _____ and the drugstore.          | (BAKE)       |
| 12. Is your brother an _____?                                      | (ACT)        |
| 13. Mai's sister is a _____  | (SING)       |
| 14. We must be _____ when we cross the road.                       | (CARE)       |
| 15. This tree has a lot of green _____                             | (LEAF)       |
| 16. Is your father a _____?  | (BUSINESS)   |
| 17. I'm Vietnamese. What's your _____?                             | (NATION)     |
| 18. Air..... is a big problem in many cities in the world.         | (POLLUTE)    |
| 19. Yoko is from Japan. She is _____                               | (JAPAN)      |
| 20. Mary likes attending the English..... contests.                | (SPEAK)      |
| 21. My neighborhood is..... for good and cheap restaurants.        | (FAME)       |
| 22. I like the city life because there are many kinds of.....      | (ENTERTAIN)  |
| 23. Lan's classroom is on the..... floor.                          | (TWO)        |
| 24. These children like..... weather.                              | (SUN)        |
| 25. Lan speaks English..... than me.                               | (WELL)       |
| 26. The Great Wall of China is the world's..... structure.         | (LONG)       |
| 27. What's Mary's.....? - She's British.                           | (NATION)     |
| 28. We should not waste..... and water.                            | (ELECTRIC)   |
| 29. Let him do it.....   | (HE)         |
| 30. My aunt is a good .....  | (TEACH)      |
| 31. Thao is my friend. She is very .....                           | (BEAUTY)     |
| 32. I want to go ..... in the summer.                              | (SWIM)       |
| 33. My sister .....gets up early in the morning.                   | (USUAL)      |
| 34. Don't go out at night because it is very .....                 | (DANGER)     |
| 35. This exercise is very ..... I can't do it.                     | (DIFFICULTY) |
| 36. He can speak English ..... than his brother.                   | (GOOD)       |
| 37. How do you feel now? - I feel .....                            | (TIRE)       |
| 38. My uncle lives in the city. He is a .....                      | (DRIVE)      |
| 39. Where is Tom? - He is in the ..... room.                       | (LIVE)       |
| 40. Nam is the ..... of the three boys.                            | (TALL)       |
| 41. Vietnam has a lot of ..... beaches.                            | (BEAUTY)     |
| 42. Air ..... is a big problem in many cities in the world.        | (POLLUTE)    |
| 43. Our school children sometimes go ..... on the weekend.         | (CAMP)       |
| 44. I'm Vietnamese. What's your ....?                              | (NATION)     |
| 45. Mount Everest is very high. It is ..... mountain in the world. | (HIGH)       |
| 46. Don't make a fire here. It's very .....                        | (DANGER)     |
| 47. Is your father a .....?  | (BUSINESS)   |
| 48. We went to bed early because we had a ..... day.               | (TIRE)       |
| 49. There were two ..... yesterday:fire-making and rice-cooking.   | (COMPLETE)   |
| 50. The old lamp ..... in China is five dollars.                   | (MAKE)       |

### Multiple choice

1. He has been very interested in doing research on \_\_\_\_\_ since he was at high school.

- a. biology                      b. biological                      c. biologist                      d. biologically
2. You are old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ for what you have done.
- a. responsible                      b. responsibility                      c. responsibly                      d. irresponsible
3. Many Vietnamese people \_\_\_\_\_ their lives for the revolutionary cause of the nation
- a. sacrifice                      b. sacrificed                      c. sacrificial                      d. sacrificially
4. They had a \_\_\_\_\_ candlelit dinner last night and she accepted his proposal of marriage.
- a. romance                      b. romantic                      c. romantically                      d. romanticize
5. She sent me a \_\_\_\_\_ letter thanking me for my invitation.
- a. polite                      b. politely                      c. politeness                      d. impoliteness
6. As an \_\_\_\_\_, Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.
- a. educate                      b. education                      c. educator                      d. educative
7. He was the only \_\_\_\_\_ that was offered the job.
- a. apply                      b. application                      c. applicant                      d. applying
8. Many people have objected to the use of animals in \_\_\_\_\_ experiments.
- a. science                      b. scientist                      c. scientific                      d. scientifically
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is increasing, which results from economic crisis.
- a. Employment                      b. Unemployment                      c. Employ                      d. Unemployed
10. \_\_\_\_\_! I have heard of your success in the new project.
- a. Congratulate                      b. Congratulating                      c. Congratulation                      d. Congratulations
11. A / an \_\_\_\_\_ species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.
- a. dangerous                      b. endanger                      c. endangered                      d. endangerment
12. Almost half of turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. extinct                      b. extinction                      c. extinctive                      d. extinctly
13. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ the pool to 1.8 meter.
- a. deep                      b. depth                      c. deepen                      d. deeply
14. The referee had no hesitation in awarding the visiting team a \_\_\_\_\_.
- a. penalty                      b. penalize                      c. penal                      d. penalization
15. The referee's \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important in any sport competition.
- a. decide                      b. decisive                      c. decision                      d. decider
16. Johnny used to be one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ athletes in my country.

- a. succeed                      b. success                      c. successful                      d. successfully
17. The success of the 22nd SEA Games had a great contribution of many \_\_\_\_ volunteers.
- a. support                      b. supporter                      c. supportive                      d. supportively
18. He was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he could not even say a word.
- a. nerve                      b. nerves                      c. nervous                      d. nervously
19. I am really \_\_\_\_\_ in the way he talks, but the way he behaves.
- a. interest                      b. interested                      c. interesting                      d. interestingly
20. Thanks to labor-saving devices, women have more time to take part in \_\_\_\_\_ activities.
- a. society                      b. social                      c. socially                      d. socialize

## Grade 12

### UNIT 1: HOME LIFE

#### Exercise 1: Choose the most suitable word or phrase

1. He has been very interested in doing research on \_\_\_\_\_ since he was at high school.  
 a. biology                      b. biological                      c. biologist                      d. biologically
2. Are you sure that boys are more \_\_\_\_\_ than girls?  
 a. act                      b. active                      c. action                      d. activity
3. You are old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ for what you have done.  
 a. responsible                      b. responsibility                      c. responsibly                      d. irresponsible
4. These quick and easy \_\_\_\_\_ can be effective in the short term, but they have a cost.  
 a. solve                      b. solvable                      c. solutions                      d. solvability
5. He was looking at his parents \_\_\_\_\_, waiting for recommendations.  
 a. obey                      b. obedience                      c. obedient                      d. obediently
6. The interviews with parents showed that the vast majority were \_\_\_\_\_ of teachers.  
 a. support                      b. supportive                      c. supporter                      d. supporting
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ of you to leave the medicine where the children could get it.  
 a. care                      b. caring                      c. careless                      d. careful
8. For \_\_\_\_\_ reasons, passengers are requested not to leave any luggage unattended.  
 a. secure                      b. securely                      c. security                      d. securing
9. The leader of the explorers had the great \_\_\_\_\_ in his native guide.  
 a. confident                      b. confidence                      c. confidential                      d. confidentially
10. We are impressed by his \_\_\_\_\_ to help us with the hard mission.  
 a. will                      b. willing                      c. willingness                      d. willingly

### UNIT 2: CULTURAL DIVERSITY

#### Exercise 1: Choose the most suitable word or phrase

1. John cannot make a \_\_ to get married to Mary or stay single until he can afford a house and a car.    a.  
 decide                      b. decision                      c. decisive                      d. decisively
2. My mother used to be a woman of great \_\_\_\_\_, but now she gets old and looks pale.

- a. beauty                      b. beautiful                      c. beautifully                      d. beautify
3. Although they are twins, they have almost the same appearance but they are seldom in \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. agree                      b. agreeable                      c. agreement                      d. agreeably
4. The more \_\_\_\_\_ and positive you look, the better you will feel.  
a. confide                      b. confident                      c. confidently                      d. confidence
5. My parents will have celebrated 30 years of \_\_\_\_\_ by next week.  
a. marry                      b. married                      c. marriageable                      d. marriage
6. Many Vietnamese people \_\_\_\_\_ their lives for the revolutionary cause of the nation  
a. sacrifice                      b. sacrificed                      c. sacrificial                      d. sacrificially
7. They had a \_\_\_\_\_ candlelit dinner last night and she accepted his proposal of marriage.  
a. romance                      b. romantic                      c. romantically                      d. romanticize
8. Are there any \_\_\_\_\_, between Vietnamese and American culture?  
a. differences                      b. different                      c. differently                      d. differential
11. Some people are concerned with physical \_\_\_\_\_ when choosing a wife or husband.  
a. attractive                      b. attraction                      c. attractiveness                      d. attractively
12. What could be more \_\_\_\_\_ than a wedding on a tropical island?  
a. romance                      b. romantic                      c. romanticizing                      d. romanticism
13. In my hometown, many people still believe in \_\_\_\_\_ marriage.  
a. contract                      b. contractual                      c. contracts                      d. contracting
14. \_\_\_\_\_ women are responsible for the chores in the house and taking care of the children.  
a. With tradition                      b. On tradition                      c. Traditional                      d. Traditionally
15. Though their performance was not perfect yet, the students held the audience's \_\_\_\_\_ until the end.  
a. attentive                      b. attention                      c. attentively                      d. attentiveness
16. The survey will cover various ways of \_\_\_\_\_ the different attitudes toward love and marriage of today's youth.  
a. determination                      b. determine                      c. determined                      d. determining
17. Both Asian and Western students seem \_\_\_\_\_ about how to answer the questionnaire of the survey.  
a. confusedly                      b. confused                      c. confusing                      d. confusion
19. She was \_\_\_\_\_ unaware of the embarrassing situation due to her different cultural background.                      a. complete                      b. completed                      c. completing                      d. completely
20. What is more important to you, intelligence or \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. attraction                      b. attractiveness                      c. attractive                      d. attracted

### UNIT 3: WAYS OF SOCIALISING

1. The family has a very important role in \_\_\_\_\_ children.  
A. social                      B. socialist                      C. socializing                      D. socialism
3. In U. S. schools, teachers don't mind their students' \_\_\_\_\_ them during the lectures.  
A. interrupt                      B. interrupted                      C. interrupting                      D. to interrupt
4. His achievements were partly due to the \_\_\_\_\_ of his wife.  
A. assist                      B. assistant                      C. assisted                      D. assistance
5. By working day and night, they succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ their work in time.  
A. finished                      B. to finish                      C. finishing                      D. in finishing
6. They started, as \_\_\_\_\_ gatherings but they have become increasingly formalized in the last few years.  
A. informal                      B. informally                      C. informalize                      D. informality
7. Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. communicate                      B. communication                      C. communicative                      D. communicator

8. The lecturer explained the problem very clearly and is always \_\_\_\_\_ in response to questions.

- A. attention                      **B. attentive**                      C. attentively                      D. attentiveness

9. I make no \_\_\_\_\_ for encouraging my children to succeed in school.

- A. apologize                      B. apologetic                      **C. apologies**                      D. apoplectic

10. It was very more \_\_\_\_\_ of a chat than an interview.

- A. formal                      **B. informal**                      C. formality                      D. informality

#### **Unit 4: SCHOOL EDUCATION SYSTEM**

#### **Exercise: Choose the most suitable word or phrase**

1. As an \_\_\_\_\_, Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.

- a. educate                      b. education                      **c. educator**                      d. educative

2. In England, primary education is provided by state schools run by the government and by \_\_\_\_\_ fee-paying schools.

- a. independent**                      b. independently                      c. depended                      d. independence

3. He did not do well at school and left with few \_\_\_\_\_ qualifications.

- a. academic**                      b. academy                      c. academician                      d. academically

4. The Minister of the Education and Training Department appeared on TV last night to----- his new policy.

- a. public                      b. publicly                      **c. publicize**                      d. publicizing

5. He owed his success not to privilege but to self-education and a driving desire for \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. achieve                      b. achiever                      **c. achievement**                      d. achievable

6. To Vietnamese students, the \_\_\_\_\_ examination to university is very difficult.

- a. require                      **b. requirement**                      c. requiring                      d. required

7. Despite many recent \_\_\_\_\_ advances, there are parts where schools are not equipped with computers.

- a. technology                      **b. technological**                      c. technologically                      d. technologist

8. There is a wide range of \_\_\_\_\_ in the education system of the USA.

- a. select                      b. selective                      c. selected                      **d. selection**

10. Military is \_\_\_\_\_ in this country. Every man who reaches the age of 18 has to serve in the army for two years.

- a. compulsory**                      b. optional                      c. illegal                      d. unnecessary

#### **UNIT 5: HIGHER EDUCATION**

#### **Exercise: Choose the best option**

3. He was the only \_\_\_\_\_ that was offered the job.

- a. apply                      b. application                      **c. applicant**                      d. applying

4. Parents can express a \_\_\_\_\_ for the school their child attends.

- a. prefer                      **b. preference**                      c. preferential                      d. preferable

5. Many people have objected to the use of animals in \_\_\_\_\_ experiments.

- a. science                      b. scientist                      **c. scientific**                      d. scientifically

6. I would like to invite you to participate in the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. graduate                      b. graduated                      **c. graduation**                      d. graduating

7. Mr. Pike provided us with an \_\_\_\_\_ guide to the full-time and part-time programs on offer to a range of candidates drawn from schools and colleges.  
 a. inform                      **b. informative**                      c. informed                      d. information
8. Not many places at the universities are left, so choice is on a severe \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. limiting                      **b. limitation**                      c. delimitation                      d. limited
9. You should ask him about your choice because he often made the right .....  
 A. decides                      **B. decision**                      C. decisive                      D. deciding
10. Can you tell me about the.....process to tertiary study in Vietnam?  
 A. applies                      B. applying                      **C. application**                      D. apply

## UNIT 6: FUTURE JOBS

### Exercise: Choose the best option

1. I am so \_\_\_\_\_ that I cannot say anything, but keep silent.  
 a. nerve                      **b. nervous**                      c. nervously                      d. nervousness
2. A letter of \_\_\_\_\_ is sometimes really necessary for you in a job interview.  
 a. recommend                      b. recommended                      c. recommender                      **d. recommendation**
3. Doctors have to assume \_\_\_\_\_ for human life.  
 a. responsible                      b. responsibly                      **c. responsibility**                      d. responsables
4. He was offered the job thanks to his \_\_\_\_\_ performance during his job interview.  
 a. impress                      b. impression                      **c. impressive**                      d. impressively
5. The interviewer gave his consent to John's \_\_\_\_\_ for work and promised to give him a job.  
 a. keen                      b. keenly                      c. keener                      **d. keenness**
6. \_\_\_\_\_! I have heard of your success in the new project.  
 a. Congratulate                      b. Congratulating                      c. Congratulation                      **d. Congratulations**
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to fail a job interview, but try again.  
 a. disappoint                      **b. disappointing**                      c. disappointedly                      d. disappointment
10. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ jobs. In fact, I never want to work under high pressure.  
 a. stress                      b. stressed                      c. stressing                      **d. stressful**

## UNIT 10: ENDANGERED SPECIES

### Exercise: Choose the best answer

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a branch of Natural Science, and is the study of living organisms and how they interact with their environment.  
**a. Biology**                      b. Biological                      c. Biologist                      d. Biologically
2. A / an \_\_\_\_\_ species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.  
 a. dangerous                      b. endanger                      **c. endangered**                      d. endangerment
3. Only a few of the many species at risk of extinction actually make it to the lists and obtain legal \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. protect                      **b. protection**                      c. protective                      d. protector
3. Almost half of turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. extinct                      **b. extinction**                      c. extinctive                      d. extinctly



4. Current extinction rates are at least 100 to 1,000 times higher than \_\_\_\_\_ rates found in the fossil record.  
a. nature                      **b. natural**                      c. naturally                      d. naturalness
5. It is reported that humans are the main reason for most species' declines and habitat \_\_\_\_\_ and degradation are the leading threats.  
a. destroy                      b. destructive                      c. destructor                      **d. destruction**
6. They eventually realize that reckless \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth's resources can lead only to eventual global disaster.  
a. exploit                      b. exploitable                      **c. exploitation**                      d. exploitative
7. Farmers make their soil more productive by distributing \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. fertile                      b. fertility                      **c. fertilizers**                      d. fertilizable
8. Chemical wastes from factories are \_\_\_\_\_ that cause serious damage to species habitats.  
a. pollutes                      **b. pollutants**                      c. pollutions                      d. polluters
9. Development of the area would \_\_\_\_\_ wildlife.  
a. danger                      b. dangerous                      **c. endanger**                      d. dangerously
10. England was one of the first countries to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. industry                      b. industrial                      **c. industrialize**                      d. industrialization
11. Their \_\_\_\_\_ is rejected due to some problems of pollution.  
a. suggest                      **b. suggestion**                      c. suggestive                      d. suggestible
12. We all regard pollution as a \_\_\_\_\_ matter to human beings.  
**a. serious**                      b. seriously                      c. seriousness                      d. seriousful
13. The people in our village are leading a \_\_\_\_\_ life.  
a. peace                      **b. peaceful**                      c. peacefully                      d. peacefulness
14. We have to suffer a lot of floods due to our serious \_\_\_\_\_ of forests.  
a. destroy                      b. destructive                      **c. destruction**                      d. destructor

## UNIT 11: BOOKS

### Exercise: Choose the best answer.

1. This book is not really \_\_\_\_\_. It is a waste of money buying it.  
a. inform                      b. information                      **c. informative**                      d. informatively
2. Sometimes it is \_\_\_\_\_ to find suitable books for our children.  
**a. difficult**                      b. difficulty                      c. difficultly                      d. difficulties
3. Read the book \_\_\_\_\_ and you can find the information you need.  
a. care                      b. careful                      c. carefulness                      **d. carefully**
4. Not many people find reading more \_\_\_\_\_ than watching TV.  
a. interest                      b. interested                      **c. interesting**                      d. interestingly
5. To become a novelist, you need to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. imagine                      b. imagination                      **c. imaginative**                      d. imaginarily
6. Mary enjoys reading \_\_\_\_\_, adventure, and whatever else she can either buy or borrow.  
**a. romance**                      b. romantic                      c. romanticize                      d. romanticism

7. The novel has had a tremendous impact on \_\_\_\_\_ and publishing markets.  
 a. entertain                      b. entertainer                      **c. entertainment**                      d. entertainingly
8. The children have very different \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. person                      b. personal                      c. personality                      **d. personalities**
9. He talked \_\_\_\_\_ of the past and his youth.  
 a. romance                      b. romantic                      **c. romantically**                      d. romances
10. *Star Wars* was created by a highly \_\_\_\_\_ writer.  
 a. imaginable                      **b. imaginative**                      c. imaginary                      d. imagination
15. The film *The First to Fly* is an \_\_\_\_\_ biography of the two famous Wright brothers.  
 a. entertainer                      b. entertaining                      c. entertained                      **d. entertainment**

### UNIT 13: THE 22<sup>th</sup> SEA GAMES

**Exercise: Choose the best answer to complete the following sentence.**

1. Johnny used to be one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ athletes in my country.  
 a. succeed                      b. success                      **c. successful**                      d. successfully
2. The 22<sup>nd</sup> SEA Games consisted of athletes from eleven \_\_\_\_\_ countries.  
 a. participate                      b. participant                      c. participation                      **d. participating**
3. \_\_\_\_\_, the athlete broke the world's record with two attempts.  
 a. Surprise                      b. Surprised                      c. Surprising                      **d. Surprisingly**
4. Before the 22<sup>nd</sup> SEA Games, Vietnam had made a good \_\_\_\_\_ in every aspect.  
 a. prepare                      **b. preparation**                      c. preparative                      d. preparer
5. The second part of the program in the 22<sup>nd</sup> SEA Games opening ceremony was named " \_\_\_\_\_ for Peace".  
 a. Cooperate                      **b. Cooperation**                      c. Cooperative                      d. Cooperatively
6. The success of the 22<sup>nd</sup> SEA Games had a great contribution of many \_\_\_\_\_ volunteers.  
 a. support                      b. supporter                      **c. supportive**                      d. supportively

### UNIT 14: INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

**Exercise: Choose the best answer**

1. The International Red Cross helps people in need without any discrimination based on \_\_\_\_\_, race, religion, class or political opinions.  
 a. national                      b. nationally                      **c. nationality**                      d. native
2. The International Committee of the Red Cross is a private \_\_\_\_\_ institution founded in 1863 in Geneva, Switzerland.  
 a. human                      b. humanity                      c. humanization                      **d. humanitarian**
3. In former days, after the battles soldiers on both sides died or were left wounded on the field without any \_\_\_\_\_ attendance and basic care.  
 a. medicine                      **b. medical**                      c. medication                      d. medically
4. All payments to the ICRC are \_\_\_\_\_ and are received as donations.  
 a. volunteer                      **b. voluntary**                      c. voluntarily                      d. voluntariness

5. The Red Cross organizes and leads relief assistance missions after \_\_\_\_\_, such as natural disasters, man-made disasters, and epidemics.  
 a. emergent                      **b. emergencies**                      c. emergently                      d. emergence
6. One of the tasks of the Red Cross is also to support local \_\_\_\_\_ care projects.  
**a. health**                      b. healthy                      c. healthful                      d. healthily
8. According to World Bank figures, 41 per cent of Brazilians live in absolute \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. poor                      b. poorer                      c. poorly                      **d. poverty**
9. Up until the middle of the 19th century, there were no \_\_\_\_\_ and well established army nursing systems for casualties.  
 a. organize                      b. organized                      **c. organizational**                      d. organizers

## UNIT 15: WOMEN IN SOCIETY

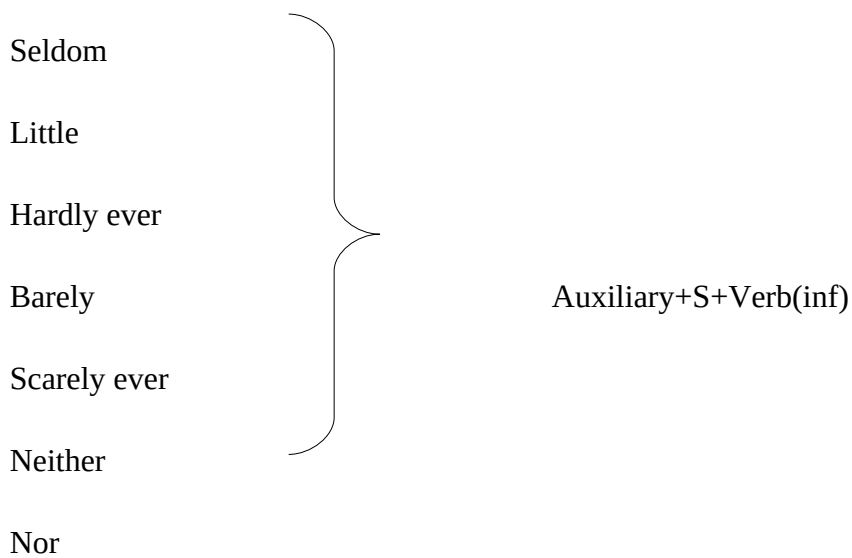
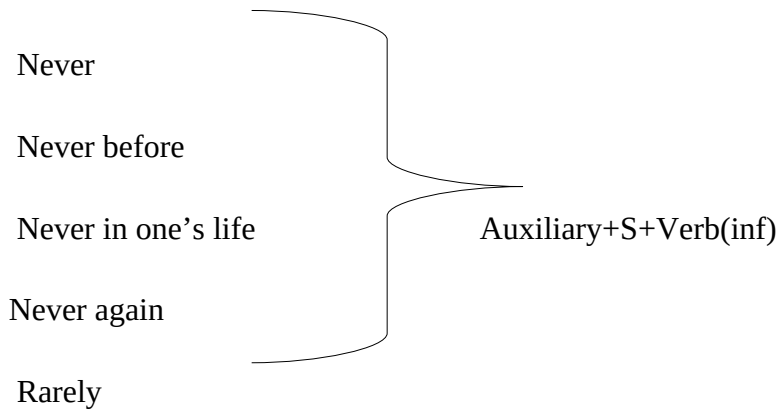
**Exercise: Choose the best answer to complete the following sentence.**

1. A child receives his early \_\_\_\_\_ from their parents.  
 a. educate                      **b. education**                      c. educator                      d. educative
2. Thanks to the women's liberation women can take part in \_\_\_\_\_ activities.  
**a. social**                      b. society                      c. socially                      d. socialize
3. To preserve that \_\_\_\_\_, it was necessary to preserve the people that had created it.  
 a. civil                      b. civilize                      c. civility                      **d. civilization**
4. The Prime Minister is to consider changes to sexually \_\_\_\_\_ laws to enforce equal opportunities.  
 a. discriminate                      b. discrimination                      **c. discriminatory**                      d. discriminated
5. In former days, women were considered not to be suitable for becoming a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. politics                      b. political                      c. politically                      **d. politician**
6. Western women are more \_\_\_\_\_ than Asian women.  
 a. depend                      b. dependent                      **c. independent**                      d. independently
7. In some communities a husband's \_\_\_\_\_ over his wife is absolute.  
**a. power**                      b. powerful                      c. powerfully                      d. powered
8. I think that up to now there has not been a real \_\_\_\_\_ between men and women.  
 a. equal                      b. equally                      **c. equality**                      d. equalize
9. It is illegal to \_\_\_\_\_ on grounds of race, sex or religion.  
 a. differ                      b. differentiate                      **c. discriminate**                      d. certify

**ĐẢO NGỮ (INVERSIONS)**

**\* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT**

**1. Inversions with negative Adverbs:**



EG. - Never in mid-summer does it snow.

- Rarely do they
- Hardly ever does he speak in the public
- Nor do I

**2. Inversions with NO và NOT**

No+ N + auxiliary+S+Verb(inf)

Not any+ N+ auxiliary+ S+ verb(inf)

Eg: No money shall I lend you from now on  
= Not any money shall I lend you from now on

### 3. Inversions with ONLY

- Only with

Only once  
only in this way  
only in, on, at + N  
only then  
only later

Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

Eg: Only once **did I meet** her

- only after

only when + S +BE/V, Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

only if

Eg. Only after he had graduated, **did he start** looking for a job.

Only after all guests had gone home, **could we relax**

- Only by + Ving, Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

Eg. Only by practising E every day, **can you speak** it fluently

### 4. Inversions with some phrases

At no time  
On no condition  
On no occasion  
On no account  
Under/ in no circumstances  
For no reason  
In no way  
No longer  
In Vain.

+ Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

Not for one moment.

Eg. For no reason **will you play** traunt

The money is not to be paid under any circumstances

= Under no circumstances **is the money** to be paid

On no condition shall we accept their proposal

**5. No sooner..... than.....**

**Hardly/ Barely/ Scarcely..... When/ before**

Eg. No sooner had I arrived home than the telephone rang

Hardly had she put up her umbrella before the rain began down in torrents

**6. Not only..... but..... also.....**

Not only + auxiliary + S + V, but.... also.....

but S+ v/be ..... as well.

.....too

Eg. Not only is he good at E but he also draws very well

Not only does he sing well but he also plays musical instruments perfectly

Not only do they rob you, they smash everything too

**7. Inversions after “SO”**

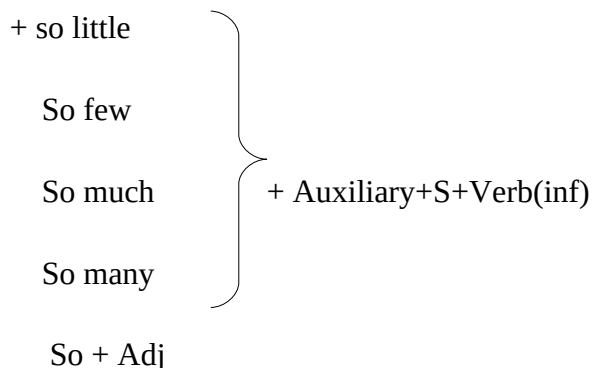
+So+ adj/ adv + auxiliary + S+V+ that clause

Eg. So dark is it that I can't write

So busy am I that I don't have time to look after myself

So difficult was the exam that few students pass it

So attractive is she that many boys run after her



Eg. So much beer did he drink that he didn't know the way to home

**8. Inversion with “such”**

**SUCH + be+ N+ clause**

Eg. Such was the force of the storm that all the trees were uprooted

### 9. Inversions after As, Than

- S + V/BE + ....., As + Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

Eg. I am very worried about bullying in the school, as are a lot of the parents.

- S + V/BE + the comparative than + Auxiliary+S+Verb(Inf)

Eg. The police in this area make more arrests than do officers in other parts of the country.

### 10. Inversions with : not until, adverbs of time

Not until/ till+ clause/ adv of time,

Not since

}  
+ auxiliary+ S+ V(Inf)

I won't come home till 10 o'clock

=Not until/ till o'clock that I will come home

= It is not until 10 o'clock that I will come

I didn't know that I had lost my key till I got home

= Not until/ till I got home did I know that I had lost my key

### 11. Inversions with No where+ Auxiliary+ S+V

Eg. No where in the Việt Nam is the scenery as beautiful as that in my country

No where do I feel as comfortable as I do at home

No where can you buy the goods as good as those in my country

### 12. Inversions with "here and there"

- Here } + Be/ Main V +N  
There }

Eg. Here comes the bus.

Here are the answers,

There goes the bus.

### **BUT**

Here he comes

There they arrive

**\*\*There are some idiomatic expressions with here and there**

Here } you are = This is for you.  
There }

Here are you.

Here we are.

There you are.

### **13. Inversions with Adverb, adverb phrases of place**

- Adverb, adverb phrases of place + MainV + N

Eg:

Near the end of September **came** several bad storms

In the door **stood** her father

In the cave **were found** skulls of prehistoric men

At the head of our village **stands** an old pagoda

### **14. Inversions with prepositions**

Down  
in  
from  
over  
up

} + Verbs of motion + S

away ...

Eg. Away went the runner

#### **Note**

Away they went

### **15. Inversions with conditional sentences**

**a, Type 1:** If clause = should+S+V

Eg. Should she come late she wil miss the train



should he lend me some money I will buy that house,

**b, Type 2:** If clause = Were S + to V

Were + S + .....

If I were you I would work harder

= Were I you.....

If I knew her I would invite her to the party

= Were I to know her.....

**C, Type 3:** If clause = Had + S + PII

If my parents hadn't encouraged me, I would have taken pass exam

= Had my parents not encouraged me....

## 16. Inversions with Adjectives and past participle

Eg.

Gone were the memorable days

## 17. Inversions with Adverb of Order (first, second)

Eg. First **came** the ambulance

## \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Choose the best answer (5 points)

- Only when he started working with her, \_\_\_\_ that she was intelligent.  
A he had realized    B did he realize    C he did realized    D he realized
- \_\_\_\_ worked outside the home as nowadays.  
A Never so many women have    B Never have so many women  
C The women are not never    D The women who have never
- No longer \_\_\_\_ any pleasure to do this job.  
A I do have    B do I have    C do have I    D I have
- John stops smoking.  
A John does not smoke no longer    B John smokes any longer  
C No longer does John smoke    D Any longer John smokes
- Only when you grow up \_\_\_\_ the truth.  
A you will know    B will you know    C you know    D do you know
- No sooner had he arrived home \_\_\_\_ he was called out again.  
A when    B and    C than    D but
- \_\_\_\_ had the restaurant opened \_\_\_\_ people were flocking to eat there.  
A Hardly... than    B No sooner.. that    C No sooner.. than    D hardly.. that
- Down \_\_\_\_ for three days.  
A the rain poured    B did the rain pour    C poured the rain    D do the rain pour
- Out \_\_\_\_ the children when the bell rang.  
A did the children run    B ran the children    C run the children    D do the children run
- Such \_\_\_\_ that he would stop at nothing.  
A his ambition was    B did his ambition    C does his ambition    D was his ambition

11. Only once \_\_\_\_ late to school.  
A he came                      B did he came                      C came he                      D did he come
12. He no longer collects stamps as he used to. No longer \_\_\_\_  
A he collects stamps as he used to                      B does he collects stamps as he used to  
C does he collect stamps as he used to                      D doesn't he collect stamps as he used to it.
13. \_\_\_\_, all the matter is formed of molecules.  
A It doesn't matter if the complex                      B It's not a complex matter  
C No matter how complex it is                      D How complex is not a matter
14. No more \_\_\_\_ to worry about the future sources of energy.  
A don't we have                      B we don't have                      C do we have                      D we do have
15. Hardly \_\_\_\_ asleep when the phone woke him up again.  
A had the doctor fallen B did the doctor fall C the doctor fell D the doctor has fallen
16. Not until darkness fell \_\_\_\_ he hadn't done half of his work.  
A that he realized                      B did he realize                      C that he didn't realize                      D didn't he realize
17. Seldom \_\_\_\_ of Nancy Johnson as coloured.  
A her classmates thought                      B thought her classmates  
C her classmates did think                      D did her school classmates think
18. On the hill \_\_\_\_ a big pine tree.  
A stands                      B stand                      C. does                      D. standing
19. Not once \_\_\_\_ into her eyes.  
A he looked                      B does he looks                      C. did he look                      D. he was looking
20. Not until next year \_\_\_\_ take place.  
A the new tax change will                      B will the new tax change  
C. the new tax changes                      D. they change the new tax
21. Not until a monkey is several years old ..... to exhibit signs of independence from its mother.  
A. it begins                      B. does it begin                      C. and begin                      D. is it begin
22. .... did Jerome accept the job.  
A. Only because it was interesting work.                      B. Because it was an interesting work.  
B. Only because it was interested work.                      D. The work was interesting.
23. .... great was the destruction that the south took decades to recovered.  
A. Very                      B. too                      C. Such                      D. So
24. .... when the Charges found themselves 7-0 down.  
A. Hardly had the games begun                      B. Hardly the games had begun  
C. The games had hardly begun                      D. Hardly had begun the games
25. Not until the fist land plants developed.....  
A. land animals appeared                      B. did land animals appear  
C. would land animals appear                      D. the land animals appeared
26. Not until it was too late ..... I call Susan.  
A. I remembered                      B. did I remember                      C. did I remembered                      D. I did remember
27. Never before ..... Such a wonderful child.  
A. I have seen                      B. I had seen                      C. I saw                      D. have I seen
28. Hardly had we settle down in our seats ..... the lights went out.  
A. than                      B. when                      C. then                      D. after
29. Only after checking three times ..... certain of the answer. Jim promised that never would he tell anyone else.  
A. I was                      B. was I                      C. were I                      D. I were
30. Only when he is here, .....  
A. he speaks English                      B. does he speak English  
C. he can speak English                      D. he does speak English

31. Never \_\_\_\_\_ me again.  
A. will she love  
C. she won't love  
B. she loves  
D. she will love
32. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ but she is also intelligent.  
A. she is beautiful  
C. is she beautiful  
B. beautiful she is  
D. beautiful is she
33. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ out than it rained.  
A. did I go  
C. had I gone  
B. I went  
D. I had gone
34. Seldom \_\_\_\_\_ the guitar.  
A. he plays  
C. he doesn't play  
B. does he play  
D. he does play
35. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ a word when her son came back.  
A. couldn't she say  
C. she couldn't say  
B. she could say  
D. could she say
36. Often \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting.  
A. do we have  
C. have we  
B. we do have  
D. we have
37. Many a time \_\_\_\_\_ he wants to marry me.  
A. said he  
C. has he said  
B. he said  
D. he has said
38. Only at weekend \_\_\_\_\_ my kids to Water Park.  
A. I don't take  
C. I take  
B. do I take  
D. I do take
39. So old \_\_\_\_\_ that she couldn't dance.  
A. she wasn't  
C. wasn't she  
B. she was  
D. was she
40. \_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday, you would have met me.  
A. Were you  
C. Had you been  
B. You were  
D. You had been
41. On the battle field \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the tanks did lie  
C. did the tanks lie  
B. the tanks lay  
D. lay the tanks
42. Nowhere \_\_\_\_\_ such cooperative staff.  
A. you can find  
C. you could find  
B. you found  
D. can you find
43. Never before \_\_\_\_\_ in an earnest attempt to resolve their differences.  
A. have the leaders of these two countries met  
B. the leaders of these two countries have meet  
C. have the leaders of these two countries meet  
D. met the leaders of these two countries
44. Only by studying hard \_\_\_\_\_ this exam.  
A. can you pass  
C. pass you can  
B. you can pass  
D. can pass you
45. Seldom \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper.  
A. buy Anna  
C. bought Anna  
B. does Anna buy  
D. Anna does buy
46. Out \_\_\_\_\_ from its tiny cage.  
A. does the bird fly  
B. fly the bird

- C. did the bird fly  
D. flew the bird
47. It was ..... a victory that even Smith's fans couldn't believe it.  
A. such surprising  
B. too surprising  
C. so surprising  
D. surprising enough
48. Such \_\_\_\_\_ that we all felt numb.  
A. a cold weather was  
B. was a cold weather  
C. cold the weather  
D. was cold weather
49. \_\_\_\_\_ that he felt he didn't need to revise any more.  
A. So confident was that arrogant student of passing  
B. Such was the confidence of that arrogant student on passing.  
C. So confident in passing was that arrogant student.  
D. Such confidence in passing did that arrogant student have.
50. Not until ..... himself seriously ill.  
A. he had completed the task did he find.  
B. had he completed the task did he find.  
C. had he completed the task he found.  
D. did he completed the task he had found.
51. No longer ..... to do all her housework with her husband because our family now owns some new labour-saving devices.  
A. my mother has  
B. has my mother  
C. does my mother has  
D. does my mother have
52. ....the story he read last night.  
A. interesting is  
B. is interesting.  
C. were interesting.  
D. interesting were.
53. Rarely ..... out after 9. 00.  
A. does my sister go  
B. did my sister go  
C. my sister goes  
D. my sister does go
54. She had only just put the telephone down when the boss rang.  
A. She put the telephone down and the boss rang.  
B. Hardly had she put the telephone down when the boss rang.  
C. The boss rang back, but she put the telephone down.  
D. She had put the telephone down, so she let it ring when the boss rang.
55. No sooner .....than the boss came in.  
A. he had left  
B. had he left  
C. he was leaving  
D. was he leaving
56. Not only ..... to take the medicine, but he also hit the nurse.  
A. he refused  
B. does he refuse  
C. he was refused  
D. did he refuse
57. As soon as he waved his hand, she turned away.  
A. He saw her turn away and he waved his hand.  
B. He waved his hand and at once she turned away.  
C. She turned away because he waved his hand.  
D. No sooner had he waved his hand than she turned away.
58. Here ....  
A. he come  
B. does he come  
C. comes the bus  
D. the bus comes
59. No longer ..... them to go to the music club.  
A. their parents allow  
B. does their parents allow  
C. do their parents allow  
D. has their parents allow
60. Second .....  
A. came the bus  
B. did the bus come  
C. come the bus  
D. does the bus come
61. So surprised at the news ..... that he couldn't say anything.  
A. did he become  
B. he became  
C. does he become  
D. did he became
62. Not only ..... shade and beauty, but they also reduce carbon dioxide.  
A. trees provide  
B. provide trees  
C. do trees provide  
D. trees do provide
63. Under no circumstances ..... in his story  
A. do we believe  
B. we do believe  
C. we believe  
D. we believed
64. For no reason .....a lie to her.  
A. had I tell  
B. that I told  
C. did I tell  
D. I did tell
65. Only by booking in advance ..... stay ion the room you like.  
A. can you  
B. you can  
C. you will  
D. you
66. In no time ..... know the result of the recognition.

- A. the public will      B. will the public      C. the public      D. does the public
67. .... in medicine relieve distress but they also prevent and cure illness.  
A. Do computers      B. computers      C. Computers not only      D. Not only do computers
68. .... reptiles hunt at temperatures of 12°C or below.  
A. Seldom do      B. Do seldom      C. Do      D. Seldom
69. .... continental crust older than 200 million years.  
A. It is nowhere the      B. Nowhere is the      C. Is nowhere the      D. Is the nowhere
70. Not only .... in the field of psychology but animal behavior is examined as well.  
A. human behavior is studied      B. is human behavior studied  
C. is studied human behavior      D. human behavior
71. We didn't have them repaired. ....  
A. Nor we know who did it      B. Nor we had idea who did it  
C. Nor did we know who did it      D. We do not know who did it, either
72. Everyone started complaining the moment the announcement was made.  
A. No sooner did everyone start complaining than the announcement was made.  
B. As soon as the announcement made, everyone started complaining.  
C. No sooner had the announcement been made, everyone started complaining.  
D. Everyone started complaining that the announcement was made.
73. The worker only called off the strike after a new pay offer.  
A. Not until a new pay was offered, the workers called off the strike.  
B. The worker called off the strike only when a new pay offer.  
C. A new pay was offered, which made the strike call off.  
D. Not until a new pay was offered did the workers call off the strike.
74. My uncle didn't recognize me until I spoke.  
A. My uncle recognized me not until I spoke      B. Not until I spoke did my uncle not recognize me.  
C. Not until I spoke did my uncle recognize me.      D. Only when my uncle recognized me did I speak.
75. As soon as he arrived at the airport, he called home.  
A. He arrived at the airport sooner than he had expected.  
B. No sooner had he arrived at the airport than he called home.  
C. Calling home, he said that he had arrived at the airport.  
D. He arrived at the airport and called me to take him home.
76. Helen wrote a novel and made a cowboy film.  
A. Helen wrote not only a novel but also made a cowboy film.  
B. Helen both wrote a novel as well as made a cowboy film.  
C. Helen either wrote a novel or made a cowboy film.  
D. Not only did Helen write a novel but she also made a cowboy film.
77. Not until I met Jack did I get some news about you.  
A. I didn't get any news about you until I met Jack.      B. Jack shouldn't have told me news about you.  
C. Until I met Jack I got some news about you.      D. As soon as I got news about you, I met Jack.
78. It is rare that my sister goes to the cinema.  
A. My sister is rare of going to the cinema.      B. Rarely does my sister go to the cinema.  
C. That my sister goes to the cinema rarely.      D. Going to the cinema is rare to my sister.
79. Soon after they sold their house, they were offered a better price for it.  
A. No sooner they sold their house were they offered a better price for it.

B. They were offered a better price for their house, and they sold it.

C. They had no sooner sold their house than they were offered a better price for it.

D. No sooner had they sold their house and they were offered a better price for it.

80. It was only when I left home that I realized the meaning of "family".

A. I realized the meaning of "family" before I left home.

B. Only when I left home I realized the meaning of "family".

C. Not until I left home did I realize the meaning of "family".

D. I didn't leave home until I realized the meaning of "family".

### KEY

1. B	21. B	41. D	61. A
2. B	22. A	42. D	62. C
3. B	23. D	43. A	63. A
4. C	24. A	44. A	64. C
5. B	25. B	45. B	65. A
6. C	26. B	46. D	66. B
7. C	27. D	47. C	67. D
8. C	28. B	48. D	68. A
9. B	29. B	49. A	69. B
10. D	30. B	50. A	70. B
11. D	31. A	51. D	71. C
12. B	32. C	52. A	72. C
13. C	33. C	53. A	73. D
14. C	34. B	54. B	74. C
15. A	35. D	55. B	75. B
16. B	36. A	56. D	76. D
17. D	37. C	57. D	77. A
18. A	38. B	58. C	78. B
19. C	39. D	59. C	79. C
20. B	40. C	60. A	80. C

### CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16

#### SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ (COLLOCATIONS)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

1. Thế nào là sự kết hợp từ tự nhiên? (What are collocations?)

Collocations là sự kết hợp các từ theo tập quán, qui ước (conventional word combinations), hay gọi cách khác là sự kết hợp từ tự nhiên.

Chúng ta có thể nói: "a burning desire" (một khao khát cuồng nhiệt) hay "a blazing row" (một chuỗi, hàng sòng rục)... nhưng ta không nói: "a blazing desire" hay "a burning row". Một ai đó có thể là "a heavy smoker" (một tay nghiện thuốc lá nặng) hoặc "a devoted friend" (một bằng hữu tận tụy) nhưng không thể nói, "a devoted smoker" hoặc "a heavy friend". Theo ngữ nghĩa thì những cách dựng từ như trên cũng được xem là những cấu trúc đặc biệt của Anh ngữ.

Những cách diễn đạt như thế khá dễ hiểu, nhưng thật không dễ dàng cho người học tiếng Anh sử dụng cho đúng. Làm thế nào để kết hợp các từ lại cho chính xác, cho "giống như người bản xứ sử dụng"? Chẳng hạn để diễn tả một người hút thuốc lá nhiều, ta có thể nghĩ đến một loạt các tính từ để kết hợp với danh từ smoker như: strong, hard, big, mad, fierce, devoted... nhưng sự việc đó được người Anh "chọn sẵn" từ lâu rồi. Đó là tính từ: heavy, và chỉ những người biết được từ này thì diễn đạt "người hút thuốc lá nhiều, hay người ghiền thuốc lá" là heavy smoker mới chính xác. Một người mới học tiếng Anh có thể dùng các tính từ liệt kê ở trên để đặt trước smoker như "strong smoker" chẳng hạn để nói thì người nghe vẫn hiểu, nhưng câu nói sẽ không được tự nhiên.

Cách kết hợp từ theo quy ước như trên trong Anh ngữ gọi là collocations và bất cứ ngôn ngữ nào cũng có một số rất lớn những collocations này. Thí dụ trong Việt ngữ, con chó đen ta kêu là "chó mực", con mồi có ba màu lông ta kêu là "mồi tam thể"... nhưng nếu một người nước ngoài học tiếng Việt nói "chó đen" hay "mồi ba màu" thì ta cũng vẫn hiểu.

Tóm lại, việc học các collocations không có một quy tắc nào rừ rệt, chúng ta cần phải học thuộc lòng (learn by heart) rồi thực tập (practice), ộp dụng (put in use), dần dần sẽ có thể mở rộng vốn từ.

(Original text in the Dictionary of English Usage, Trè, 2006 - edited by StevenVu)

## 2. Các dạng kết hợp từ tự nhiên (Types of Collocation)

### A. Tính từ + Danh Từ (Adjectives and Nouns)

Chúng ta cần chú ý rằng, có nhiều tính từ được sử dụng với những danh từ cụ thể.

e. g.

Jean always wears red or yellow or some other bright color.

(Jean luôn luôn mặc đồ đỏ, đồ vàng, hoặc những đồ có màu chói sáng)

We had a brief chat about the exams but didn't have time to discuss them properly.

(Tôi tôi có một cuộc nói chuyện phiếm ngắn ngủi về những kỳ thi, nhưng không có thời giờ thảo luận chàyng đúng mực)

Unemployment is a major problem for the government at the moment.

(Thất nghiệp là vấn đề chính yếu đối với chính phủ ngay thời điểm này)

Improving the health service is another key issue for the government.

(Việc cải thiện dịch vụ chăm sóc sức khỏe lại là một vấn đề quan trọng khác đối với chính phủ)

### B. Danh từ + Động Từ hoặc Động Từ + Danh từ (Nouns and Verbs)

Ta hãy để ý cách kết hợp danh từ và động từ trong câu. Tất cả các ví dụ sau đây đều liên quan đến kinh tế học và thương mại.

e. g.

The economy boomed in the 1990s. (the economy was very strong)  
(Nền kinh tế này rất mạnh vào thập niên 90)

The company has grown and now employs 50 more people than last year.  
(Công ty phát triển và giờ thờ cú thể tuyển dụng nhiều hơn 50 công nhân so với năm rồi)

The company has expanded and now has branches in most major cities. The company launched the product in 2002. (introduced the product)  
(Công ty giới thiệu sản phẩm này hồi năm 2002)

The price increase poses a problem for us. (is a problem)  
(Sự tăng giá thành là một khó khăn cho chúng ta)

### C. Giữa các danh từ (a + Noun + of + Noun)

Có rất nhiều sự kết hợp tự nhiên dựa trên mẫu: a... of...

e. g.

As Sam read the lies about him, he felt a surge of anger. (nói một cách văn chương: a sudden angry feeling)

(Khi Sam đọc được những lời nói láo về nó, nó bỗng nổi cơn giận dữ)

Every parent feels a sense of pride when their child does well or wins something.  
(Bất cứ bậc làm cha mẹ nào cũng có niềm tự hào khi con em họ làm tốt hay thắng được cái gì)

I felt a pang of nostalgia when I saw the old photos of the village where I grew up.  
(Lũng tụi trở dậy một nỗi nhớ quê hương khi xem những bức hình cũ về cõi xóm nơi tôi trưởng thành)

### D. Động từ và những đặc ngữ với giới từ. (Verbs and Expressions With Prepositions)

Một số động từ liên kết với đặc ngữ (gồm giới từ + danh từ) cụ thể để tạo sự kết hợp tự nhiên.

e. g.

As Jack went on stage to receive his gold medal for the judo competition you could see his parents swelling with pride. (looking extremely proud)

(Khi Jack tiến lên sỗn khấu nhận huy chương vàng trong cuộc đấu Nhu đạo, anh có thể thấy ba má nó tràn trề kiêu hính)

I was filled with horror when I read the newspaper report of the explosion.  
(Tôi thấy kinh sợ khi đọc mẩu tin báo về vụ nổ)

When she spilt juice on her new skirt the little girl burst into tears. (suddenly started crying)  
(Khi làm đổ nước trái cây lên cái đầm mới, đứa bé gỏi ùa khóc)

### E. Động từ và Phó từ (Verbs and Adverbs)

She pulled steadily on the rope and helped him to safety. (pulled firmly and evenly)  
(Nàng nắm chặt không buông sợi dây thừng để cứu chàng đến nơi an toàn)



He placed the beautiful vase gently on the window ledge.  
(Hắn đặt nhẹ nhàng cái bình hoa đẹp trên cái tủ dưới cửa sổ)

"I love you and want to marry you," Derek whispered softly to Marsha.  
("Ta yêu nàng và muốn cưới nàng làm vợ," Derek thì thầm nhẹ nhàng vào tai Marsha)

She smiled proudly as she looked at the photos of her new grandson.  
(Bà ta mỉm cười hóm hỉnh khi ngắm nhìn những tấm hình chụp thẳng cháu mới ra đời)

#### F. Phó từ + Tính từ (Adverbs and Adjectives)

They are happily married.  
(Họ kết hôn (và chung sống) trong hạnh phúc)

I am fully aware that there are serious problems. (I know well)  
(Tôi biết rừ rằng đang có những vấn đề nghiêm trọng)

Harry was blissfully unaware that he was in danger. (Harry had no idea at all)  
(Thằng Harry hoàn toàn không nhận thức được rằng nó đang bị nguy hiểm)

### MỘT SỐ VÍ DỤ VỚI 1 SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ

#### MAKE

- make arrangements for: sắp đặt, dàn xếp  
e. g. The school can make arrangements for pupils with special needs.  
Nhà trường có thể sắp đặt cho học sinh những nhu cầu đặc biệt.
- make a change / changes: đổi mới  
e. g. The new manager is planning to make some changes.  
Vị tân giám đốc đang trù hoạch một số thay đổi.
- make a choice: chọn lựa  
e. g. Jill had to make a choice between her career and her family.  
Jill phải chọn lựa giữa sự nghiệp và gia đình.
- make a comment / comments (on): bình luận, chỳ giải  
e. g. Would anyone like to make any comments on the talk?  
Cú ai muốn bình luận gỡ về bài diễn thuyết khụng ạ?
- make a contribution to: gúp phần vào  
e. g. She made a useful contribution to the discussion.  
Cổ đó cú đóng gúp hữu dụng vào cuộc thảo luận.
- make a decision: quyết định  
e. g. I'm glad it's you who has to make the decision, not me.  
Tao mừng vỡ chính mà phải quyết định, chứ không phải tao.

- make an effort: nỗ lực  
e. g. Joe is really making an effort with his maths this term.  
Joe đang thực sự nỗ lực học toán ở học kỳ này.
- make friends: làm bạn, kết bạn.  
e. g. Karen is very good at making friends.  
Karen rất giỏi kết giao bạn.
- make an improvement: cải thiện  
e. g. Repainting the room has really made an improvement.  
Việc sơn lại căn phòng thực sự đó được cải thiện.
- make a mistake: phạm sai lầm, nhầm lẫn  
e. g. They've made a mistake in our bill.  
Họ đó nhầm lẫn gỡ đó trong cái hóa đơn của chúng ta.
- make a phone call: điện thoại  
e. g. I've got to make some phone calls before dinner.  
Tôi phải gọi một số cuộc điện thoại khi ăn tối.
- make progress: tiến bộ  
e. g. Harriet is making progress with all her schoolwork.  
Harriet đang có tiến bộ với việc học ở trường.
- make noise: làm ồn  
e. g. Stop making noise!  
Dừng làm ồn coi!
- make a journey/ a trip / journeys: đi du hành  
e. g. I still use my car, but now I make fewer journeys.  
Tôi vẫn cũn đi xe hơi, nhưng giờ tôi ít đi du hành hơn trước.
- make a promise: hứa  
e. g. She made a promise to visit them once a month.  
Nàng hứa đi thăm họ mỗi tháng một lần.
- make an inquiry / inquiries: đũi hỏi, yêu cầu, hỏi để biết  
e. g. I don't know who sent the gift, but I'll make some inquiries.  
Tôi không biết ai đó gửi mún quà này, nhưng tôi sẽ hỏi để biết.
- make a remark: bỡnh luận, nhận xét.  
e. g. The Senator denied making the remark.  
Ngài Thượng nghị sĩ từ chối bỡnh luận.
- make a speech: đọc diễn văn  
e. g. Each child had to make a short speech to the rest of the class.  
Mỗi đứa trẻ đều phải đọc diễn văn ngắn trước cả lớp.
- make a fuss of / over someone: lộ vẻ quan tồm (bạn nguyenhoaphuong bổ sung)  
e. g. They made a great fuss of the new baby.  
Bọn họ quan tâm nhiều đến đứa bả mới đẻ.

- make a fuss / kick up a fuss (about something): cấn nhấn tức giận, phàn nàn (về cỏi gỡ đố  
e. g. Josie made a fuss / kicked up a fuss because the soup was too salty.  
Josie phàn nàn vớ mún canh quỏ mấn.
- make a plan / plans: trự hoặch, lờn kế hoặch (bạn nguyenhoaphuong bổ sung)  
e. g. We need to make plans for the future.  
Chúng ta cần lên kế hoặch cho tương lai.
- make a demand / demands (on): đũ hỏi (bạn nguyenhoaphuong bổ sung)  
e. g. Flying makes enormous demands on pilots.  
Chuyển bay đũ hỏi người phi công rất nhiều.
- make an exception: tạo ngoại lệ, cho phấp một ngoại lệ (bạn nguyenhoaphuong bổ sung)  
e. g. Children are not usually allowed in, but I'm prepared to make an exception in this case.  
Trẻ em thường không được phấp vô đây, nhưng tôi chuẩn bị tạo ngoại lệ trong trường hợp này (tức là cho tụi nó vô.
- make cững thông dụng với nghĩa: làm, tạo ra, chế tạo ra; như khi ta nói "make a bicycle" (chế tạo ra chiếc xe đạp), "make a cake" (nướng, làm ra cái bánh),...

## DO

- do your best: làm hết sức mớnh  
e. g. All that matters in the exam is to do your best.  
Điều quan trọng nhất trong kờ thi là hóy làm hết sức mớnh.
- do damage (to): gây hại đế  
e. g. The storm did some damage to our roof.  
Cơn bão đố gốy thiệt hại phần nào cho cỏi trần nhà của chỳng tụi.
- do an experiment: làm thớ nghiệm  
e. g. We are doing an experiment to test how the metal reacts with water.  
Chúng tôi đang làm thí nghiệm để kiểm tra xem kim loại phải ứng với nước như thế nào.
- do exercises: làm bài tập, tập thể dục.  
e. g. We'll do some exercises practicing these collocations tomorrow.  
Chỳng con sẽ làm bài tập thực hành những sự kết hợp tự nhiên này vào ngày mai.
- do someone a good turn / do someone a favor: làm việc tốt, làm ỏn huệ  
e. g. Scouts and guides are supposed to do someone a good turn every day.  
Các hướng đạo sinh nên làm việc tốt mỗi ngày.
- do harm: cú hại, gốy hại  
e. g. Changing the rules may do more harm than good.  
Thay đỏi luật lệ có thể có hại hơn là có lợi.
- do your hair: thay đỏi kiểu tóc, làm tóc  
e. g. No, I'm not ready. I haven't done my hair yet.  
Khụng, mớnh chưa sẵn sàng. Mớnh vẫn chưa làm tóc xong mà.

- do your homework: làm bài tập về nhà  
e. g. My son has to do his homework straight after school.  
Con trai tôi phải làm bài tập về nhà của nó ngay sau khi đi học về.
- do the ironing / shopping / washing, etc.: ủi đồ, đi mua sắm, giặt giũ...  
e. g. I'll do the washing if you do the ironing.  
Em sẽ giặt giũ nếu anh ủi đồ.
- do research: nghiên cứu.  
e. g. I'm still doing research for my thesis.  
Tôi vẫn còn đang nghiên cứu để làm luận văn.
- do a / the crossword: giải ô chữ (bạn Nguyenhoaphuong bổ sung)  
e. g. I like doing the crossword.  
Tôi thích chơi giải ô chữ.

Từ gốc gốc kết hợp từ tự nhiên tròn, ta có thể thấy, nhiều sự kết hợp giữa DO/MAKE + Danh từ thường có nghĩa tương đương với 1 động từ. Thử dụ, do research = (to) research, make a mistake = (to) mistake... Nhưng trên thực tế, người bản xứ thường sử dụng lối thành lập collocations. Đây là một tập quán hành văn của người Anh, Mỹ (styles), thay vì dựng một tiếng động từ, họ ưa chuộng dùng động từ + danh từ để kéo dài phần vị ngữ (predicative) hơn.

## HAVE

- have an accident: gặp tai nạn.  
e. g. Mr. Grey had an accident last night but he's OK now.  
Ông Grey bị tai nạn tối qua nhưng giờ ông ổn cả rồi.
- have an argument / a row: cói cọ  
e. g. We had an argument / a row about how to fix the car.  
Tôi tao cói cọ về cách sửa cỗ xe hơi.
- have a break: nghỉ giải lao (cũng: take a break)  
e. g. Let's have a break when you finish this exercise.  
Chỵng ta hỷ nghỉ giải lao sau khi anh giải xong bài tập này.
- have a conversation / chat: nủi chuyện  
e. g. I hope we'll have time to have a chat after the meeting.  
Tôi mong là chỵng ta sẽ cú thờ giờ nủi chuyện sau cuộc họp.
- have difficulty (in) (doing something): gặp khó khăn  
e. g. The class had difficulty understanding what to do.  
Lớp học gặp trở ngại trong việc hiểu được những điều phải làm.
- have a dream / nightmare: mơ / gặp ác mộng  
e. g. I had a nightmare last night.  
Tôi gặp ác mộng đêm rồi.

- have an experience: trải nghiệm  
e. g. I had a frightening experience the other day.  
Ngày hôm kia tao có một trải nghiệm đáng sợ.
- have a feeling: cảm giác rằng  
e. g. I have a feeling that something is wrong.  
Em cảm giác có điều gì khùng ổn.
- have fun / a good time: vui vẻ  
e. g. I'm sure you'll have fun on the school trip.  
Tụi chắc em sẽ vui vẻ trong kỳ nghỉ của trường.
- have a look: ngắm nhìn  
e. g. The teacher wanted to have a look at what we were doing.  
Ông thầy muốn ngắm nhìn xem chỵng tụi đang làm gì.
- have a party: tổ chức tiệc tưng  
e. g. Let's have a party at the end of term.  
Chỵng ta hớy tổ chức tiệc tưng vào cuối học kỳ.
- have a problem / problems (with): gặp vấn đề, gặp khó khăn  
e. g. Ask the teacher if you have problems with the exercise.  
Hớy hỏi cụ giỏo nếu như em gặp khó khăn với bài tập.
- have a try / go: thử  
e. g. I'll explain what to do and then you can have a go / try.  
Tao sẽ giải thớch những gì cần làm và sau đó, mày có thể làm thử.

## TAKE

- take a holiday: đi nghỉ  
e. g. We're so glad we decided to take a holiday here.  
Chỵng tụi rất vui vớ đó quyết định đi nghỉ ở đây.
- take a trip: đi du hành  
e. g. Yesterday we took a trip to the mountains.  
Hôm qua chúng tụi đi du hành đến những ngọn núi.
- take a train / bus: đón xe lửa / xe buýt  
e. g. First we took a train to a little town and then we took a bus going to various villages.  
Đầu tiên chúng tụi đón xe lửa tới thị trấn nhỏ, và rồi đón xe buýt đi thăm nhiều ngôi làng.
- take a liking to: thấy hứng thỳ, thấy thớch thỳ  
e. g. We got off when we saw one that we took a liking to.  
Chỵng tụi xuống xe khi thấy những thứ gỡy thớch thỳ.
- take an interest in: thấy hứng thỳ, thớch thỳ với  
e. g. Some kids took an interest in us.  
Vài em nhỏ thớch thỳ với sự xuất hiện của chỵng tụi.

- take a photo / photos: chụp hình

e. g. We took a lot of photos.

Chàng tụi chụp nhiều hình.

- take a chance: mạo hiểm

e. g. I'd take a chance and leave if I were you.

Tao sẽ mạo hiểm và rời khỏi đó nếu tao là mày.

- take a dislike to: khụng thích / ghét

e. g. The boss has taken a dislike to you.

Ông chủ khụng thích anh từ lâu.

- take advantage of: lợi dụng, tận dụng

e. g. Take advantage of being in London - there are always plenty of jobs there.

Hớ tận dụng cơ hội khi anh ở Luân Đôn, nơi đây luôn có rất nhiều việc làm.

- take action: hành động

e. g. You'll soon find something else, so take action, that's my advice!

Chẳng bao lâu anh sẽ tìm thấy điều gỡ khỏ, lỳc đó hớ hành động - lời khuyên của tời đó!

## PAY

- pay attention to: chú ý đến

e. g. You must pay attention to the teacher.

Em phải chú ý đến giáo viờn.

- pay (someone) a compliment: khen tặng (ai)

e. g. I was trying to pay her a compliment but she misunderstood.

Tời cố khen tặng cô nhưng cô lại hiểu lầm tời.

- pay your (last) respects: cầu chỳc kớnh cẩn

e. g. At a funeral people pay their last respects to the person who has died.

Tại tang lễ, người ta cầu chỳc lần cuối cho người đó khuấ.

- pay tribute: bài tỏ lũng kớnh ngưỡng

e. g. When Jack retired, his boss made a speech paying tribute to all he had done for the company.

Khi ông Jack hồi hưu, ông chủ của ống đọc diễn văn bài tỏ lũng biết ơn về tất cả những gỡ Jack đó cống hiến cho cụng ty.

Practice: Choose the correct collocation.

1. She had / took / paid attention to what I told her and started working harder.

2. I had / made / took over a hundred photographs on my trip to Antarctica.

3. She made / paid / brought me a nice compliment yesterday.

4. I got / made / had a bad dream last night and woke up sweating.

5. The President made / gave / paid tribute to all the people who had supported him.
6. I got / took / had a liking to our new teacher the moment I met her.
7. I gave / made / had a feeling I had met Richard before, but I couldn't remember where.
8. I went to Douglas Farnham's funeral to give / take / pay my last respects to a fine man.
9. I think I'll take / make / do a chance and leave my flight booking till the last minute. I may get a cheaper ticket.
10. Shall we make / get / have a party for Jane? She's leaving the school next week.
11. I had / got / took a feeling that he was trying to hide something from me.

## WEATHER

### 1. Talking about the weather (Nói về thời tiết)

- unbroken sunshine: trời quang đong (chỉ có nắng mà không có mây)
- (be) scorching hot: cực kỳ nóng, nóng (nắng) cháy da thịt
- soak up the sunshine: tắm nắng
- torrential rain: mưa lớn, nặng hạt

### 2. Weather conditions (Điều kiện thời tiết)

- weather + deteriorate (verb): thời tiết trở nên tệ hại (động từ deteriorate rất trang trọng, từ đồng nghĩa kém trang trọng hơn của nó là: get worse)
  - e. g. The weather is likely to deteriorate later on today.
  - Thời tiết có khả năng trở nên tệ hại vào cuối ngày hôm nay.
  - Từ phản nghĩa của deteriorate trong ngữ cảnh này là: improve (đễ chịu hơn)
- thick / dense fog: màn sương mù dày đặc
  - e. g. There is thick fog on the motorway.
  - Có sương mù dày đặc trên xa lộ.
- patches of fog / mist: khu vực nhỏ có sương mù
- fog / mist + come down: sương mù che phủ (phản nghĩa: fog / mist + lift (sương mù tan đi))
  - e. g. There are patches of fog on the east coast but these should lift by midday.
  - Có nhiều khu vực sương mù trên diện hẹp ở bờ Đông nhưng chúng sẽ tan hết lúc giữa trưa.
- a blanket of fog: vùng có sương mù khá dày đặc (nhóm từ này dùng trong văn chương)
- strong sun (phản nghĩa: weak sun): nắng gay gắt
  - e. g. Avoid going on the beach at midday when the sun is strongest.
  - Tránh đi ra bãi biển lúc giữa trưa, khi nắng gay gắt nhất.

- heavy rain (NOT strong rain): mưa to, nặng hạt

- driving rain: mưa mau tạnh và nặng hạt

e. g. Road conditions are difficult because of the driving rain.

Tình trạng đường xá gặp khó khăn do cơn mưa nặng hạt.

- heavy / fresh / crisp / thick / driving snow: tuyết dày, đặc cứng

e. g. The snow is lovely and crisp this morning.

Tuyết thật dễ thương và dày cứng sáng nay.

- hard frost (phản nghĩa: light frost): sương giá đậm

e. g. There will be a hard frost tonight.

Tối nay sẽ có sương giá đậm.

- high / strong / light / biting winds: gió lớn / nhẹ / lạnh lẽo.

the wind + pick up: gió mạnh hơn (phản nghĩa: die down (sức gió hạ))

e. g. The wind was light this morning but it's picking up now and will be very strong by the evening.

Sáng nay gió nhẹ nhưng đang tăng cường độ và sẽ rất mạnh trước chiều tối nay.

- the wind + blow / whistle: gió thổi / vi vu.

e. g. The wind was whistling through the trees.

Nàng gió đang vi vu xuyên qua cây cối.

Practice: Change the underlined words so that each sentence has the opposite meaning.

1. There was a light wind yesterday.

2. The wind picked up in the evening.

3. The weather is likely to improve tomorrow.

4. It was scorching hot here yesterday.

5. There may be some light rain later on today.

6. The mist came down at about midday.

KEY

1. strong    2. died down    3. deteriorate / get worse    4. freezing cold    5. heavy / driving    6. lifted

## RELATIONSHIPS (NHỮNG MỐI QUAN HỆ TRONG ĐỜI SỐNG)

### A. Friendship (Tình bằng hữu)

- make friends (with someone): đánh bạn (với)

e. g. When you go to university you will make a lot of new friends.

Khi em lên Đại học, em sẽ quen nhiều bạn mới.

- strike up a friendship: bắt đầu làm bạn (start a friendship)

e. g. Jack struck up a friendship with a girl he met on holiday.



Thằng Jack bắt đầu đánh bạn với một cô gái nó gặp trong kỳ nghỉ.

- form / develop a friendship: dựng xây tình bạn / phát triển tình bạn

e. g. Juliet formed a lasting friendship with the boy she sat next to at primary school.

Juliet dựng xây tình bạn dài lâu với thằng con trai mà nó ngồi sát bên hồi tiểu học.

- cement / spoil a friendship: bồi dưỡng tình bạn / làm rạn vỡ tình bạn.

e. g. Spending several weeks on holiday together has cemented their friendship.

Ở chung nhau nhiều tuần trong kỳ nghỉ đó bồi đắp thêm tình bạn của họ.

- a friendship + grow: tình bạn bền vững hơn

e. g. We were at school together, but our friendship grew after we'd left school.

Tụi tụi học chung trường, nhưng sau khi ra trường tình bạn bền vững hơn.

- close / special friends: bạn thân thiết / bạn đặc biệt

e. g. I'm glad that our children are such close friends, aren't they?

Mỡnh vui vỡ con em chỵng ta là bạn thân thiết của nhau, cũn bạn thờ sao?

- mutual friends: bạn bỗ chung (trong một nhúm)

- a casual acquaintance: bạn xó giao (biết mặt)

e. g. I don't know Rod well. We're just casual acquaintances.

Tụi khụng rành Rod lắm. Chỵng tụi chỉ là bạn xó giao.

- have a good relationship with someone: cú mỡi giao hảo tốt với ai

e. g. Anna and Marie have a very good relationship. They love doing things together.

Anna và Marie cú mỡi giao hảo rất tốt. Họ thóch làm còc thờ cụng nhau.

- keep in contact / touch: giữ liờn lạc (phản nghĩa: lose contact / touch)

e. g. We must keep in contact when the course ends.

Tụi mỡnh phải giữ liờn lạc sau khi khúa học kết thờ nhe.

B. More than just good friends. (Cũn hơn cả bạn bỗ tốt)

I fell madly in love with Anton from the moment I met him. It was certainly love at first sight. I knew at once that he was the love of my life but at first I was not sure if my love was returned or not. Within a few days, however, he had told me that he was desperately in love with me too. A couple of weeks later, we realized that we wanted to make a commitment to each other and, when Anton asked me to marry him, I immediately accepted his proposal. I'm sure we will always love each other unconditionally. Neither of us would ever consider having an affair with someone else.

- fall madly in love with: yêu điên cuồng, say đắm, không thay đổi

- love at first sight: ỏi tình sắt đánh (tức là mỡi tình mỡi gặp đó yêu)

- the love of one's life: người tình của đời mỡi ai đó

- love is / were returned: tình cảm đợc đáp lại (tức là người mỡnh yêu thóch cũng yêu thóch mỡnh)

- desperately in love: rất yêu...

- make a commitment: hứa hẹn
- accept one's proposal: chấp nhận lời đề nghị của ai (ở đây là chấp nhận lời cầu hôn)
- love each other unconditionally: yêu nhau vô điều kiện
- have an affair (with someone): ngoại tởnh

Practice:

I. Look at A. Choose an appropriate word to complete each sentence.

1. Kay is quite a shy person and finds it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
2. Do Paul and Sophie \_\_\_\_\_ a good relationship?
3. Sam is always \_\_\_\_\_ up friends with people he meets on trains and planes.
4. I hope their disagreement over the bill won't \_\_\_\_\_ their relationship.
5. It's amazing, when you meet someone new, how often you find that you have some \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
6. Apparently, people \_\_\_\_\_ most of their closest friendships when they are young.
7. I wouldn't call Graham a close friend, more a casual \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We didn't really like each other at first, but our friendship \_\_\_\_\_ as we got to know each other better.

II. Complete these questions.

1. Have you ever fallen in love at first \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Do you think it's true that men are more reluctant to \_\_\_\_\_ a commitment than women?
3. How old were you when you \_\_\_\_\_ in love for the first time?
4. Do you think it is possible to have one person who is the love of your \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Have you ever been in love with someone who has not \_\_\_\_\_ your love?
6. Do you think that men or women are more likely to be tempted to \_\_\_\_\_ an affair?

KEY

- I. 1. make    2. have    3. striking    4. spoil    5. mutual    6. form    7. acquaintance    8. grew  
 II. 1. sight    2. make    3. fell    4. life    5. returned    6. have

HEALTH AND ILLNESS

Verb collocations referring to illnesses and injuries.

(Sự kết hợp tự nhiên của động từ với những căn bệnh và chấn thương)

- catch [ a cold, the flu, a chill, pneumonia ]: bị [ cảm, cúm, cảm lạnh, viêm phổi ]

e. g. I got soaking wet and caught a cold.

Tôi ướt sũng và rồi bị cảm.

- contract [ a disease, malaria, typhoid ]: nhiễm [ một bệnh, bệnh sốt rất, bệnh thương hàn ] (formal)

e. g. Uncle Jess contracted malaria while he was working in Africa.

Ông cậu Jess nhiễm sốt rất khi đang làm việc ở Phi châu.

- develop [ (lung / breast) cancer, diabetes, AIDS, arthritis, Alzheimer's disease ]: phát (bệnh) [ ung thư (phổi / vú, bệnh đái đường, bệnh Si đa, bệnh thoái hóa não bộ ] (formal)

e. g. My grandfather developed Alzheimer's disease and could no longer remember things or recognize people.

Ông của tụi phát bệnh thoái hóa não bộ và khụng cũn nhớ gỡ hay nhận ra ai nữa.

- suffer from [ asthma, hay fever, backache ]: bị [ hen suyễn, sốt mùa hỉ, đau lưng ]

e. g. She has suffered from asthma all her life.

Cổ bị hen suyễn suốt đời.

- have an attack of [ bronchitis, asthma, hay fever, diarrhoea ]: lên cơn [ viêm cuống phổi, sốt mùa hỉ, hen suyễn, tiêu chảy ]

e. g. She had an attack of hay fever and was sneezing non-stop.

Cổ lên cơn sốt mùa hỉ và hắt hơi khụng ngừng

- be diagnosed with [ (lung / breast) cancer, AIDS, leukaemia, autism ]: được chẩn đoán là bệnh [ ung thư (phổi / vú 🤔, Si đa, bệnh bạch cầu, bệnh tự kỉ ]

e. g. He was diagnosed with lung cancer and died a year later.

Hắn được chẩn đoán là bị ung thư phổi, rồi một năm sau hắn chết.

- suffer / sustain [ (major / minor / serious / head) injuries ]: chịu đựng [ chấn thương (nặng / nhẹ / nghiêm trọng / ở đầu ]

e. g. The driver sustained serious head injuries in the crash.

Người tài xế chịu chấn thương ở đầu nghiêm trọng trong vụ đụng xe.

Practice: Look at the lesson. Match the verbs and expressions on the left with their collocations on the right.

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. sustain           | diarrhoea      |
| 2. contract          | a cold         |
| 3. have an attack of | breast cancer  |
| 4. develop           | minor injuries |
| 5. be diagnosed with | typhoid        |

6. catch

autism

### KEY

1. sustain minor injuries    2. contract typhoid    3. have an attack of diarrhoea  
4. develop breast cancer    5. be diagnosed with autism / breast cancer    6. catch a cold

## NEWS (TIN TỨC, THỜI SỰ)

- a news / story + break: tin tức / chuyện bị lộ

e. g. The singer was out of the country when the story about his wife broke.

Chàng ca sĩ rời nước khi câu chuyện về vợ chàng bị lộ.

- news + come in: tin tức có liên quan đến...

e. g. TV newscaster: News has just come in of an earthquake.

Phát thanh viên truyền hình nói: Vừa có tin tức liên quan đến một vụ động đất.

- news + leak out: thụng tin bị rỉ rả

e. g. Although the two stars tried to keep their relationship secret, news of it soon leaked out.

Dẫu rằng hai ngôi sao đó cố giữ kín quan hệ của họ, nhưng tin tức về họ đó sớm bị rỉ rả.

- hit the headlines: làm nóng mặt báo

e. g. The scandal is expected to hit the headlines tomorrow.

Người ta tin rằng vụ tai tiếng sẽ làm nóng mặt báo ngày mai.

- make headlines: được đăng tải rộng rãi

e. g. A dramatic story like that will make headlines world-wide

Một câu chuyện kịch tính như thế sẽ lên trang nhất khắp thế giới.

- front-page headline: lờn trang nhất

e. g. The scandal was the front-page headline in all the newspapers.

Vụ tai tiếng lờn trang nhất khắp cỏc mặt báo.

- the latest news: tin mới nhất

e. g. The latest news from the earthquake zone is more hopeful.

Tin mới nhất về vùng động đất trở nên lạc quan hơn.

- be headline / front-page news: lên trang nhất (được đăng tải rộng rãi)

e. g. Any story about the Royal Family will be the headline / front-page news in Britain.

Bất kỳ câu chuyện nào về Hoàng tộc đều được đăng tải rộng rãi ở Anh quốc.

- item of news: mục tin

e. g. The main item of news today is the earthquake in Broskva City.

Mục tin chính ngày hôm nay là vụ động đất ở thành phố Broskva.

- run a story (= publish a story): tường thuật tin tức

e. g. The Daily Times recently ran a story about an affair between a famous rock star and a politician.

Tờ Nhật báo vừa mới tường thuật chuyện ngoại tởnh giữa một siều sao nhạc Rốc và một chònh trị gia.

- flick through the newspaper: sơ lược trang báo

e. g. He flicked through the newspaper as he didn't have time to read it properly.

Hắn sơ lược mặt báo vớ hần khụng cú đủ thờ giờ coi hết.

## **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "How was your exam?" "A couple of questions were tricky, but on the \_\_\_\_\_ it was pretty easy."  
A. spot                      B. general                      C. hand                      D. whole
2. If you practice regularly, you can learn this language skill in short \_\_\_\_\_ of a time.  
A. period                      B. aspect                      C. arrangement                      D. activity
3. Students can \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.  
A. concern                      B. install                      C. appear                      D. memorize
4. A few years ago, a fire \_\_\_\_\_ much of an overcrowded part of the city.  
A. battled                      B. devastated                      C. mopped                      D. developed
5. I have learned a lot about the value of labour from my \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
A. credit                      B. energy                      C. chores                      D. pot plants
6. Although he tried to hide it, it was \_\_\_\_\_ that Peter didn't like his birthday present.  
A. foolish                      B. basic                      C. obvious                      D. vigorous
7. Environmental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful \_\_\_\_\_ on their crops.  
A. economy                      B. agriculture                      C. investments                      D. chemicals
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.  
A. concentrate                      B. develop                      C. organize                      D. complain
9. Good health and methods of study are very necessary, or \_\_\_\_\_ for success in college.  
A. available                      B. dependable                      C. essential                      D. efficient
10. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.  
A. manage                      B. catch                      C. establish                      D. achieve

**Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several \_\_\_\_\_ including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.  
 A. turns                      B. factors                      C. ramarks                      D. sides
2. The Business Advisory Council has been specially designed for those in \_\_\_\_\_ of advice about setting up new businesses.  
 A. absence                      B. duty                      C. want                      D. need
3. The city has \_\_\_\_\_ of young consumers who are sensitive to trends, and can, therefore, help industries predict the potential risks and success of products.  
 A. a high rate                      B. a high proportion                      C. a high tendency                      D. a great level
4. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.  
 A. hurry                      B. jump                      C. rush                      D. run
5. I wonder if you could \_\_\_\_\_ me a small favour, Tom?  
 A. bring                      B. make                      C. give                      D. do
6. Sicientists warn that many of the world's great cities are \_\_\_\_\_ flooding.  
 A. being                      B. at risk                      C. in danger of                      D. endangered
7. The boy's strange behavior aroused the \_\_\_\_\_ of the shop assistant.  
 A. thought                      B. consideration                      C. exectations                      D. suspicions
8. The young should \_\_\_\_\_ themselves in social activities.  
 A. determine                      B. serve                      C. involve                      D. promote.
9. I know from \_\_\_\_\_ that everything will be all right.  
 A. conscience                      B. experience                      C. wisdom                      D. care
10. Your second essay \_\_\_\_\_ improvement on the first one.  
 A. showed                      B. made                      C. cast                      D. presented

**Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to inducate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. The Women's World Cup is \_\_\_\_\_ in popularity.  
 A. competing                      B. establishing                      C. advancing                      D. growing
2. Our class team has won four \_\_\_\_\_ football matches.  
 A. successful                      B. unsuccessful                      C. success                      D. successive
3. We interviewed a number of candidates buit none of them \_\_\_\_\_ us.

- A. enlivened      B. encouraged      C. delighted      D. impressed.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ to British universities depends on examination results.  
A. Admission      B. Admittance      C. Permission      D. Permit
5. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ jobs because I don't like keep on moving and changing all the time.  
A. demanding      B. challenging      C. tough      D. secure
6. The investment has had \_\_\_\_\_ on the development of our project.  
A. results      B. progress      C. interruptions      D. effects
7. In China, there are still a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ families sharing the same house.  
A. extent      B. extension      C. extended      D. extensive
8. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ problems.  
A. unsolving      B. unsolved      C. insolved      D. solving
9. He received a medal in \_\_\_\_\_ to his bravery.  
A. turns      B. response      C. favour      D. reward
10. He left the country \_\_\_\_\_ arrest of he returned.  
A. in fear that      B. with fear of      C. under threat of      D. with threat of

**KEY**

**Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

5. "How was your exam?" "A couple of questions were tricky, but on the \_\_\_\_\_ it was pretty easy."  
A. spot      B. general      C. hand      **D. whole**

**On the whole = in general**

**On the spot = immediately**

6. If you practice regularly, you can learn this language skill in short \_\_\_\_\_ of a time.  
**A. period**      B. aspect      C. arrangement      D. activity

**In short period of time:** Trong khoảng thời gian ngắn:

7. Students can \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.  
A. concern      B. install      C. appear      **D. memorize**
8. A few years ago, a fire \_\_\_\_\_ much of an overcrowded part of the city.  
A. battled      **B. devastated: tàn phá**      C. mopped      D. developed

5. I have learned a lot about **the value of labour** (giá trị của sức lao động) from my \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

A. credit

B. energy

**C. chores:** công việc nhà

D. pot plants

6. Although he tried to hide it, it was \_\_\_\_\_ that Peter didn't like his birthday present.

A. foolish

B. basic

**C. obvious:** rõ ràng

D. vigorous: mạnh liệt

7. Environmental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful \_\_\_\_\_ on their crops.

A. economy

B. agriculture

C. investments

**D. chemicals**

8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.

**A. concentrate**

B. develop

C. organize

D. complain

**Concentrate on (phr v): tập trung vào**

9. Good health and methods of study are very necessary, or \_\_\_\_\_ for success in college.

A. available

B. dependable

**C. essential**

D. efficient

**Necessary = essential**

10. In order to \_\_\_\_\_ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.

A. manage

B. catch

C. establish

**D. achieve**

**Achieve/ attain a goal: đạt được mục tiêu**

**Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Before choosing a job, you should **take into consideration** several \_\_\_\_\_ including **the supply and demand for** professionals in any particular field.

A. turns

**B. factors**

C. remarks

D. sides

Trước khi chọn một công việc, bạn nên **xem xét** nhiều **khóa cạnh** bao gồm nguồn cung và cầu nghề nghiệp trong những lĩnh vực cụ thể



2. The Business Advisory Council has been specially designed for those in \_\_\_\_\_ of advice about setting up new businesses.

- A. absence                      B. duty                              C. want                              **D. need**

**In need of advice:** đang cần lời khuyên

3. The city has \_\_\_\_\_ of young consumers who are sensitive to trends, and can, therefore, help industries predict the **potential risks** and success of products.

- A. a high rate**                      B. a high proportion      C. a high tendency      D. a great level

**High/ low rate:** tỷ lệ cao/ thấp

4. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.

- A. hurry                              **B. jump**                              C. rush                              D. run

**Jump to conclusions / leap to the conclusion** that: kết luận vội vàng

5. I wonder if you could \_\_\_\_\_ me a small favour, Tom?

- A. bring                              B. make                              C. give                              **D. do**

Could do me a favour = please help me

6. Scientists warn that many of the world's great cities are \_\_\_\_\_ flooding.

- A. being                              B. at risk                              **C. in danger of**                      D. endangered

**In danger of:** đang có nguy cơ

7. The boy's strange behavior aroused the \_\_\_\_\_ of the shop assistant.

- A. thought                              B. consideration                      C. expectations                      **D. suspicions**

**Arouse the suspicions:** dấy lên/ khơi gợi lên mối nghi ngờ

8. The young should \_\_\_\_\_ themselves in social activities.

- A. determine                              B. serve                              **C. involve**                              D. promote.

**Involve sb in sth = take part in**

9. I know from \_\_\_\_\_ that everything will be all right.

A. conscience: lương tâm

**B. experience** kinh nghiệm

C. wisdom: trí tuệ

D. care: chăm sóc

10. Your second essay \_\_\_\_\_ improvement on the first one.

A. showed

**B. made**

C. cast

D. presented

**Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. The Women's World Cup is \_\_\_\_\_ in popularity.

A. competing

B. establishing

C. advancing

**D. growing**

**Grow/ gain in popularity**

2. Our class team has won four \_\_\_\_\_ football matches.

A. successful

B. unsuccessful

C. success

**D. successive**

**Successive win: thành công liền tiếp**

3. We interviewed a number of candidates but none of them \_\_\_\_\_ us.

A. enlivened

B. encouraged

C. delighted

**D. impressed**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ to British universities depends on examination results.

**A. Admission**

B. Admittance

C. Permission

D. Permit

**Gain admission to university: vào đại học**

5. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ jobs because I don't like keep on moving and changing all the time.

A. demanding

B. challenging

**C. steady**

D. secure

**Steady job: công việc ổn định**

6. The investment has had \_\_\_\_\_ on the development of our project.

A. results

B. progress

C. interruptions

**D. effects**

7. In China, there are still a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ families sharing the same house.

A. extent

B. extension

**C. extended**

D. extensive

**Extended family: gia đình nhiều thế hệ**

8. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ problems.

A. unsolving

**B. unsolved**

C. insolved

D. solving

**Unsolved problem: vấn đề chưa được giải quyết**

9. He received a medal in \_\_\_\_\_ to his bravery.

A. turns

**B. response**

C. favour

D. reward

**In response to: đáp lại**

**In favour of: ủng hộ**

**To reward for: thưởng, tặng**

10. He left the country \_\_\_\_\_ arrest of he returned.

A. in fear that

B. with fear of

**C. under threat of: bị đe dọa** D. with threat of

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17

### MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ (ADVERBIAL CLAUSES)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

#### I. Clauses and phrase of concession introduced by **although, though, even though, even if, In spite of, despite...** (mệnh đề, cụm chỉ sự nhượng bộ)

- Nghĩa: Mặc dù
- Cách dựng
  1. **although, though, even though, even if** + Clause
  2. **In spite of, despite** + phrase

#### II. Clauses and phrase of reason introduced by **as/ because/since** (mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân)

- Nghĩa: Bởi vì
- Cách dựng
  1. **Because, Since/As** + Clause
  2. **Because of, / Due to/ Thanks to** + phrase

#### III. Clauses and phrase of result with **such/ so. that** (mệnh đề, cụm chỉ kết quả)

1. Clause of result:
  - ❶ S - V + SO + adv/ adj + THAT + S - V (quá đến nỗi)
  - ❷ S - V + SUCH + (a/ an) + adj + noun + THAT + S - V (quá đến nỗi)
  - ❸ S - V + SO MANY (plural countable noun) / + THAT + S - V  
SO MUCH (uncountable noun)
2. Phrase of result:
  - ❶ S - V + TOO + adj/ adv + (for some one) + TO V (quá đến nỗi không thể)
  - ❷ S - V + ENOUGH + noun + (for some one) + TO V (đủ để)  
Adj/ adv + ENOUGH

#### IV. Clauses and phrase of purpose expressed by **so that, in order that** (mệnh đề, cụm chỉ mục đích)

- Nghĩa: Để
- Cách dựng
  1. Clause: S - V + **so that / in order that** + S + can/ could/ will/ would + V (bare – infinitive)
  2. Phrase: ✦ Khẳng định: S - V + **to/ so as to/ in order to** + V(bare-inf.)  
S - V + **in order for some one to** + V(bare-inf.)  
✦ Phủ định: S - V + **so as not to/ in order not to** + V(bare-inf.)

#### \*\*\*HOW TO CHANGE FROM CLAUSES – PHRASES:

- Clause: S+V + O (câu)
- Phrase: Noun phrase, verb phrase ... (cụm)
- Cách chuyển một clause → phrase

1.



HIS/ HER/ MY + NOUN  
(sở hữu) (Adj-ness)

2.

THE + NOUN + BE + ADJ

THE + ADJ ← NOUN

3. Khi chủ ngữ ở hai mệnh đề giống nhau

S + V  
↓

V-ING

## \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### EXERCISES FOR ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

#### I. CLAUSE OF CONCESSION

##### A. Choose the best answer:

- \_\_\_\_\_ having the best qualifications among all the applicants, Justin was not offered the job.  
A. Although      B. While      C. In spite of      D. Despite of
- \_\_\_\_\_ the internet is very popular, many older people do not know how to use it.  
A. However      B. Nevertheless      C. Even though      D. Despite
- \_\_\_\_\_ he wasn't feeling very well, David was determined to take part in the inter-university athletics meet.  
A. Although      B. While      C. Where as      D. yet
- \_\_\_\_\_ what Megan prepared for the job interview, she didn't pass it.  
A. Despite of      B. In spite of      C. Though      D. However
- Bruce was not praised \_\_\_\_\_ he was a hard worker.  
A. despite      B. in spite of      C. although      D. no matter how
- It looks like they are going to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ their present difficulties.  
A. despite      B. although      C. in spite      D. even though
- Mary usually goes to parties. She likes meeting people and crowded places \_\_\_\_\_ she is rather shy.  
A. In spite of      B. Even though      C. On the contrary      D. In other words
- Ann:** Have you decided to get the job?  
**Terry:** Yes, I've just decided. I'll accept that job \_\_\_\_\_ it is not suitable with my major. It is not an interesting job, \_\_\_\_\_ the salary is very good.  
A. although / but      B. despite / and      C. but / though      D. yet / however
- \_\_\_\_\_, he has continued to work on his thesis.  
A. Although all these problems      B. Even though there are problems  
C. Despite of all these problems      D. In spite of there are problems
- In spite of \_\_\_\_\_, he was determined to finish his work.  
A. was seriously ill.      B. be seriously ill      C. his serious illness      D. he was seriously ill
- \_\_\_\_\_ some German and British management styles are similar, there are many differences between them.  
A. In spite      B. In spite of      C. although      D. Despite
- I could not eat \_\_\_\_\_ I was very hungry.  
A. even though      B. in spite      C. despite      D. despite of
- In spite \_\_\_\_\_, the baseball game was not cancelled.  
A. the rain      B. of the rain      C. it was raining      D. there was a rain
- \_\_\_\_\_ he had enough money, he refused to buy a new car.  
A. In spite      B. In spite of      C. Despite      D. Although
- \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

- A. Despite being tired  
C. In spite being tired
16. The children slept well despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. it was noise      B. the noise      C. of the noise      D. noisy
17. She left him \_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.  
A. even if      B. even though      C. in spite of      D. despite
18. \_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.  
A. In spite      B. Even though      C. In spite of      D. Despite of
19. \_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look alike.  
A. Although      B. Even      C. Despite      D. In spite of
20. Our new neighbors are quite nice \_\_\_\_\_ they are sometimes talkative.  
A. despite      B. in spite of      C. though      D. as though
21. \_\_\_\_\_ of the difficulty, they managed to climb to the top of the mountain.  
A. In spite      B. Despite      C. But      D. Although
22. \_\_\_\_\_, he could not finish the job.  
A. As hard as he work      B. Despite he worked hard  
C. Though he worked hard      D. Although hard work
23. He went to work \_\_\_\_\_ his headache.  
A. despite      B. although      C. because      D. because of
24. Despite the fact that \_\_\_\_\_, we enjoyed our trip.  
A. the weather is bad      B. it is a bad weather  
C. the bad weather      D. the weather was bad
25. Julie failed the exam \_\_\_\_\_ of working very hard.  
A. despite      B. in spite      C. even if      D. though
26. Tom went to work despite \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that he did not feel very well      B. of the fact not feeling well  
C. he did not feel very well      D. not feeling very well
27. Though \_\_\_\_\_, they are good friends.  
A. their sometimes quarrel      B. to have a quarrel sometimes  
C. they sometimes have a quarrel      D. of having a quarrel sometimes
28. Despite \_\_\_\_\_, we arrived on time.  
A. the traffic      B. of the traffic  
C. there was heavy traffic      D. of there was heavy traffic
29. \_\_\_\_\_ it was very cold, she did not put on her coat.  
A. In case      B. But      C. Even if      D. Although
30. \_\_\_\_\_ rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.  
A. Despite      B. Although      C. Despite of      D. Although
31. \_\_\_\_\_ it was so cold, he went out without an overcoat.  
A. If      B. Since      C. Although      D. Because
32. We understood him \_\_\_\_\_ he spoke very fast.  
A. because of      B. though      C. in spite of      D. despite
33. \_\_\_\_\_ all my warnings, he tried to fix the computer himself.  
A. Because      B. Because of      C. Although      D. In spite of
34. Hans finished school \_\_\_\_\_ his leg injury.  
A. because of      B. despite      C. though      D. because
35. I try to do my homework \_\_\_\_\_ the noise  
A. because of      B. although      C. despite of      D. in spite of

36. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained heavily, we enjoyed our holiday.  
 A. Because of      B. Because      C. Despite      D. Though
37. \_\_\_\_\_ having little money, they are happy.  
 A. Despite      B. Because of      C. Although      D. Because
38. \_\_\_\_\_ she was not well, she still went to work.  
 A. Because      B. Because of      C. Although      D. In spite of
39. We are going to have a picnic \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.  
 A. because      B. despite      C. although      D. because of
40. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.  
 A. Because of      B. Because      C. Though      D. Despite
41. Although the sun was shining, \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. it wasn't very hot    B. it was very hot    C. yet it was very hot    D. but it was very hot
42. Nowadays, the divorce rate is higher than it used to be \_\_\_\_\_ young people are allowed to decide on their marriage.  
 A. despite      B. but      C. even though      D. in spite of
43. \_\_\_\_\_ his poor health, Mr. Brown still works hard to support his family.  
 A. Despite of      B. Despite      C. Although      D. Because of
44. I gave up the job \_\_\_\_\_ the attractive salary.  
 A. because      B. because of      C. although      D. despite
45. \_\_\_\_\_ my father is old, he still goes jogging.  
 A. Although      B. Because      C. So that      D. Despite

**B. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.**

46. In spite her severe pain, she tried to walk to the auditorium to attend the lecture.  
 A      B      C      D
47. Despite of growing industrial activity, the majority of the American people continued  
 A      B      C
- to make their living from farming until the beginning of the twentieth century.  
 D
48. Although our grandfather was old but he could help us.

A B C D

49. He tried to explain, so she refused to listen.

A B C D

50. He decided not to get that job in spite of the salary was low.

A B C D

51. Although the bad traffic, I managed to arrive at the meeting on time.

A B C D

52. In spite of my father is old, he still goes to work.

A B C D

53. Though he loves her very much, but he can't talk to her.

A B C D

54. She always behaves childishly despite she has grown up.

A B C D

55. Although the rise in unemployment, people still seem to be spending more.

A B C D

56. Despite he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.

A B C D

57. Although the time of the year, yesterday's temperature was hot enough to turn on the

A B C D

air conditioning.

58. In spite of the quantity was small, we had enough supplies to finish the experiment.

A B C D

59. However she looks very young, she is twice as old as my-twenty-year old sister.

A B C D

60. Despite of his smiling face, the second place contestant is sadder than the winner.

A B C D

61. Gold was one of the first to be discovered despite it is one of the rarest metals.

A B C D

62. Polar bears rarely kill people in spite they hunt other animals.

A B C D



63. Even though the extremely bad weather in the mountain, the climbers decided not to

A

B

C

cancel their climb.

D

64. Although the harm of smoking, smokers can't get rid it.

A

B

C

D

**C. Choose the sentence which has the closest meaning to the original one.**

65. We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.

A. Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed there.

B. We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.

C. Although the hotel was noisy, we stayed there.

D. Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

66. Young as he is, he has a big fortune.

A. Although he is young, he has a big fortune.

B. He has a big fortune because he is young.

C. He is not only young but also has a big fortune.

D. When he is young, he has a big fortune.

67. Despite the bad weather, people travel by air.

A. Even though the weather is bad, people travel by air.

B. Because the weather is bad, people travel by air.

C. In spite of people travel by air, the weather is bad.

D. Although the bad weather, people travel by air.

68. Although his leg was hurt, he managed to drive a car.

A. His leg was hurt. However, he managed to drive a car.

B. his leg was hurt. But he managed to drive a car.

C. Despite his hurt leg, he managed to drive a car.

D. In spite of the fact that his hurt leg, he managed to drive a car.

69. He was very tired but he kept on working.

- A. Despite he was very tired, he kept on working.
- B. In spite of he was very tired, he kept on working.
- C. Though his tiredness, he kept on working.
- D. Although he was very tired, he kept on working.

70. Although she was very old, she looked very grateful.

- A. Despite she was very old, she looked very grateful.
- B. Despite her old age, she looked very grateful.
- C. In spite of very old, she looked very grateful.
- D. In spite her being old, she looked very grateful.

### KEY TO ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF CONCESSION

1. C	2. C	3. A	4. B	5. C	6. A	7. B	8. A	9. B	10. C
11. C	12. A	13. B	14. D	15. A	16. B	17. B	18. C	19. A	20. C
21. A	22. C	23. A	24. D	25. B	26. D	27. C	28. A	29. D	30. A
31. C	32. B	33. D	34. B	35. D	36. D	37. A	38. C	39. B	40. D
41. A	42. C	43. B	44. D	45. A	46. A	47. A	48. B	49. B	50. B
51. A	52. A	53. C	54. C	55. A	56. A	57. A	58. A	59. A	60. A
61. C	62. B	63. A	64. A	65. C	66. A	67. A	68. C	69. D	70. B

## II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF REASON

I/ Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ he is tired, he can't work longer.

A. Because                      B. Even though                      C. Although                      D. Besides

2. \_\_\_\_\_ it was so cold, he went out without an overcoat.

A. If                                  B. Since                                  C. Although                                  D. Because

3. \_\_\_\_\_ it was late, we decided to take a taxi home.

A. Because                      B. Since                                  C. Because of                      D. Although

4. \_\_\_\_\_ you subtract 7 from 12, you will have 5.

A. Because                      B. If    C. Though                                  D. As

5. We couldn't reach the house \_\_\_\_\_ the road was flooded.

A. because                      B. because of                      C. if    D. though

6. \_\_\_\_\_ he has a headache, he has to take an aspirin.

A. Because                      B. Because of                      C. Although                                  D. In spite of

7. The flight had to be delayed \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.

A. because                      B. Because of                      C. despite                                  D. when

8. \_\_\_\_\_ he comes to the theater with me, I shall go alone.

A. Because of                      B. Because                                  C. Unless                                  D. When

9. Take a map with you \_\_\_\_\_ you lose your way.

A. so    B. because                                  C. although                                  D. in case

10. \_\_\_\_\_ rain or snow, there are always more than fifty thousand fans at the football games.

A. Even though                      B. Because                                  C. Despite                                  D. Because of

11. \_\_\_\_\_ his illness, he had to cancel the appointment.

A. However                      B. Despite                                  C. If    D. Because of

12. Minh had a terrible headache. \_\_\_\_\_, he went to school.

A. However                      B. But    C. Although                                  D. Because

13. Tom has a bike, \_\_\_\_\_ he always walks to school.

A. but    B. because of                      C. because                                  D. despite

14. My sister will take the plane \_\_\_\_\_ she dislikes flying.

A. because                      B. so that                                  C. although                                  D. before

15. We decided to leave the party early \_\_\_\_\_ it was boring.

A. due to                                  B. because                                  C. but    D. and

16. The students arrived late \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic jam.

A. because                      B. owing to                      C. despite                      D. so

17. \_\_\_\_\_ he missed the first bus, he came ten minutes late.

A. Since                      B. Although                      C. However                      D. Therefore

18. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.

A. In spite of                      B. Because of                      C. If                      D. Although

19. It was difficult to deliver the letter \_\_\_\_\_ the sender had written the wrong address on the envelope.

A. though                      B. but                      C. so                      D. because

20. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained heavily, I went to school on time.

A. However                      B. But                      C. Although                      D. Because

21. He didn't answer the questions correctly \_\_\_\_\_.

A. although he isn't intelligent                      B. because he is intelligent

C. in spite of his intelligence                      D. despite his intelligent

22. \_\_\_\_\_, I can't hear what he is saying.

A. Because of the noise                      B. Because of the soft music

C. Though the music is noise                      D. In spite of the noise music

23. \_\_\_\_\_, I feel very refresh.

A. Because I work very hard                      B. Although I get up early

C. Because of getting up early                      D. Despite getting up late

24. They live happily \_\_\_\_\_.

A. because they have no money                      B. though they are rich

C. in spite of their poverty                      D. because of their poor

25. He can't join in the volunteer campaign \_\_\_\_\_.

A. although he is busy                      B. because he hurts his legs

C. in spite of working very hard                      D. because of registering for it

26. Though he drove carefully, he had an accident yesterday.

A. Despite his carelessness, he had an accident yesterday.

B. Despite he drove carefully, he had an accident yesterday.

C. In spite of driving carefully, he had an accident yesterday.

D. In spite of a careful drive, he had an accident yesterday.

27. He was very tired but he kept on working.
- A. Despite very tired, he kept on working.
  - B. Though his tiredness, he kept on working.
  - C. Although he was very tired, but he kept on working.
  - D. He kept on working although he was very tired.
28. Although it rained heavily, they went on working.
- A. In spite of the rain heavily, they went on working.
  - B. In spite of the raining heavily, they went on working.
  - C. Despite the heavy rain, they went on working.
  - D. Though the fact that it rained heavily, they went on working.
29. Cars cause pollution but people still want them.
- A. Because cars cause pollution, people want them.
  - B. Despite the fact that cars cause pollution, people want them.
  - C. Cars cause pollution although people want them.
  - D. Cars cause pollution because people still want them.
30. She was seriously ill but she enjoyed life very much.
- A. In spite of her serious illness, she enjoyed life very much.
  - B. Although she enjoyed life very much, she was seriously ill.
  - C. She was seriously ill because she enjoyed life very much.
  - D. Despite seriously ill, she enjoyed life very much.

**II/ Choose the underlined part among A, B, C, or D that needs correcting:**

31. My friends advised her to stop doing the housework because her old age.
- A                      B                      C                      D
32. Because the invention of machines such as vacuum cleaners, washing machines,
- A    B
- women spend less time doing the housework.
- C                      D
33. John didn't go to work because of he was seriously ill.
- A              B                      C                                      D

34. In spite of my father is old, he still goes to work.

- A B C D

35. Peter succeeded in his exam because of he worked hard and methodically.

- A B C D

36. Rice plants grow well because the climate is warmly and damp.

- A B C D

37. The plane couldn't take off because the bad weather.

- A B C D

38. He couldn't drive fast owing to the street was crowded and narrow.

- A B C D

39. The train was late because the fog is thick.

- A B C D

40. Since the difficult test, I couldn't finish it on time.

- A B C D

**KEY TO ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF REASON**

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. A	6. A	7. B	8. C	9. D	10. C
11. D	12. A	13. A	14. C	15. B	16. B	17. A	18. A	19. D	20. C
21. B	22. D	23. D	24. C	25. B	26. C	27. D	28. C	29. B	30. A
31. C	32. A	33. C	34. A	35. B	36. D	37. D	38. B	39. D	40. A

**III. ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF RESULT**

**A. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct option to fill each of the following blanks.**

1. Our seats were \_\_\_\_\_ far from the stage that we couldn't see the actors and actresses clearly.

- A. very B. too C. enough D. so

2. He was \_\_\_\_\_ he never washed his clothes by himself.

- A. too lazy B. so lazy that C. very lazy that D. such lazy that

3. They are \_\_\_\_\_ young \_\_\_\_\_ drive the car.

A. so / that                      B. too / to                      C. enough / to D. not only / but also

4. It was \_\_\_\_\_ a boring speech that I felt asleep.

A. such                      B. so                      C. very                      D. too

5. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ for everyone?

A. food and drink enough                      B. enough food and drink  
C. enough of food and drink                      D. enough food and drink enough

6. He was \_\_\_\_\_ he could not continue to work.

A. very tired that                      B. such tired that                      C. too tired that                      D. so tired that

7. John's eyes were \_\_\_\_\_ bad that he couldn't read the number plate of the car in front.

A. such                      B. too                      C. so                      D. very

8. - Why don't we make a fire? - It's not cold \_\_\_\_\_ to make a fire.

A. too                      B. enough                      C. such                      D. much

9. Most of the pupils are \_\_\_\_\_ to pass the examination.

A. enough good                      B. good enough                      C. too good                      D. very good

10. You can send me a letter if you want to, but your phone call is \_\_\_\_\_ for me.

A. enough good                      B. good as enough                      C. good enough                      D. good than enough

11. Davis has \_\_\_\_\_ many patients \_\_\_\_\_ he is always busy.

A. too / that                      B. very / until                      C. such / that                      D. so / that

12. It was \_\_\_\_\_ a difficult question that they couldn't explain.

A. so                      B. such                      C. very                      D. too

13. The lesson \_\_\_\_\_ for me to understand.

A. is very difficult                      B. too difficult                      C. difficult too                      D. is too difficult

14. The tent show is \_\_\_\_\_ for us to see.

A. enough interesting                      B. very interesting  
C. interesting enough                      D. interesting

15. They are \_\_\_\_\_ that they can't buy a bicycle.

A. enough poor                      B. poor enough                      C. so poor                      D. too poor

**B. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to show the underlined part that needs correction.**

1. These televisions are all too expensive for we to buy at this time.

A B C D

2. Mi has such many things to do that she has no time to go out.

A B C D

3. My brother is too young not to do volunteer work.

A B C D

4. These televisions were so expensive for us to buy at that time.

A B C D

5. That is such an interested story that everybody would like to read it.

A B C D

6. The road is very slippery for us to drive fast.

A B C D

7. The woman was so surprised that she couldn't say nothing.

A B C D

8. She had so many luggage that there was not enough room in the car for it.

A B C D

9. He had so a difficult exercise that he couldn't do it.

A B C D

10. John had so interesting and creative plans that everyone wanted to work with him.

A B C D

**C. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence which is closest in meaning to the given one**

1. We couldn't go out because the weather was so bad.

- A. It was so bad a weather that we couldn't go out.
- B. It was such a bad weather that we couldn't go out.
- C. It was so bad weather that we couldn't go out.
- D. It was such bad weather that we couldn't go out.

2. She was so busy that she couldn't answer the phone.

- A. She was very busy that she couldn't answer the phone.
- B. She was too busy to answer the phone.
- C. She was too busy not to answer the phone.



D. She was very busy so that she couldn't answer the phone

3. The coffee was too hot for me to drink.

A. The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it

B. The coffee is so hot that I can't drink.

C. The coffee was so hot that I couldn't drink it.

D. The coffee was so hot that I could drink it.

4. If I were taller, I could reach the top shelf.

A. I am not tall enough to reach the top shelf.

B. I am too tall to reach the top shelf.

C. I cannot reach the top shelf because I am very tall.

D. In spite of being tall, I cannot reach the top shelf.

5. It was such a boring speech that we began to yawn.

A. The speech was very boring that we began to yawn.

B. It was so a boring speech that we began to yawn.

C. The speech was too boring that we began to yawn.

D. The speech was so boring that we began to yawn.

6. It was so late that nothing could be done.

A. It was too late for nothing to be done.

B. It was too late for anything to be done.

C. It was such late that nothing could be done.

D. It was so late that nothing to be done.

7. This is the first time I have lived in such a friendly neighborhood.

A. I have lived in such a friendly neighborhood before.

B. I haven't lived in such a friendly neighborhood before.

C. I had lived in such a friendly neighborhood before.

D. I hadn't lived in such a friendly neighborhood before.

8 The test was so difficult that we couldn't finish it in two hours.

A. It was such a difficult test that we couldn't finish it in two hours.

B. The test was too difficult for us to finish it in two hours.

C. The test was not difficult enough for us to finish in two hours.

D. The test was too difficult for us to finish it in two hour.

9. The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.

A. It was so a good book that I couldn't put it down.

B. It was such a good book that I couldn't put it down.

C. The book was so good for me to put it down.

D. The book was so good that I couldn't put down.

10. Sue is too slow to understand what you might say.

A. Sue is not enough quick to understand what you might say.

- B. What you might say, Sue can understand slowly.
- C. Sue is so slow to understand what you might say.
- D. So slow is Sue that she can't understand what you might say.

**ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF RESULT**

**I.**

<b>1. D</b>	<b>2. B</b>	<b>3. B</b>	<b>4. A</b>	<b>5. B</b>	<b>6. D</b>	<b>7. C</b>	<b>8. B</b>	<b>9. B</b>	<b>10. C</b>
<b>11. D</b>	<b>12. B</b>	<b>13. D</b>	<b>14. C</b>	<b>15. C</b>	<b>11. D</b>	<b>12. B</b>	<b>13. D</b>	<b>14. C</b>	<b>15. C</b>

**II.**

<b>1. C</b>	<b>2. A</b>	<b>3. C</b>	<b>4. B</b>	<b>5. B</b>	<b>6. A</b>	<b>7. D</b>	<b>8. A</b>	<b>9. B</b>	<b>10. A</b>
-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

**III.**

<b>1. D</b>	<b>2. B</b>	<b>3. C</b>	<b>4. A</b>	<b>5. D</b>	<b>6. B</b>	<b>7. B</b>	<b>8. A</b>	<b>9. B</b>	<b>10. D</b>
-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

**IV. ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF PURPOSE**

**Choose the best answer to complete each sentence.**

1. He chained up the lioness at night \_\_\_\_\_ could frighten anyone.
  - A. so that he
  - B. in order that she
  - C. for fear that she
  - D. for her not to
  
2. The burglar cut the telephone wires \_\_\_\_\_ call the police.
  - A. so that he can
  - B. in order that I could
  - C. for fear that I
  - D. for me not to
  
3. The manufacturers have made the taps of their new gas cooker very stiff \_\_\_\_\_ young children not to be able to turn them on.
  - A. so that
  - B. in order that they wanted
  - C. for fear that
  - D. for
  
4. The policeman stopped the traffic every few minutes. He wanted the pedestrians to be across the road.
 

→ The policeman stopped the traffic every few minutes \_\_\_\_\_

  - A. in order that the pedestrians can be across the road.
  - B. in order to the pedestrians be across the road.

- C. so that the pedestrians could be across the road.
- D. so the pedestrians could be across the road.
5. I am putting the nets over my strawberry plants\_\_\_\_\_ the birds can eat all the strawberries.
- A. so that                      B. in order that              C. for not                      D. for fear that
6. We put bars in the lower windows\_\_\_\_\_ climb in.
- A. so that every one could                      B. in order that no one
- C. for fear that no one                      D. for no one to
7. Turn down the oven. We don't want the meat to burn while we are out.
- Turn down the oven\_\_\_\_\_
- A. for the meat don't burn while we are out.
- B. not for the meat to burn while we are out.
- C. so as to the meat not burn while we are out.
- D. so that the meat can't burn while we are out.
8. He telephoned from a public call-box. He didn't want the call to be traced to his own address.
- He telephoned from a public call-box\_\_\_\_\_
- A. less the call could be traced to his own address.
- B. in order that the call to be traced to his own address.
- C. so the call can't be traced to his own address.
- D. so that the call could be traced to his own address.
9. We keep the spade in the house. There may be a heavy fall of snow in the night.
- We keep the spade in the house\_\_\_\_\_
- A. so that there may be a heavy fall of snow in the night.
- B. in order to there may be a heavy fall of snow in the night.
- C. so to be a heavy fall of snow in the night.
- D. so there may be a heavy fall of snow in the night.
10. The debate on education has been postponed. The government wants to discuss the latest crisis.
- The debate on education has been postponed\_\_\_\_\_
- A. in order that the government wants to discuss the latest crisis.
- B. in order to the government wants to discuss the latest crisis.
- C. so that the government can discuss the latest crisis.

D. so the government wants to discuss the latest crisis.

11. The ceiling is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. too high for me to reach

B. too tall for me to reach

C. so high for me reaching

D. enough high of me to reaching

12. He goes to England\_\_\_\_\_.

A. so that he learns English

B. so that he may learn English

C. so to learn English

D. so he learns English

13. It was too late \_\_\_\_\_.

A. to go for them to the party.

B. for them to go to the party.

C. because they go to the party.

D. so they go to the party.

14. She hid the present\_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_.

A. so that the children wouldn't find it

B. in order to the children not to find it

C. for the children not find it

D. in order that the children not to find it

15. " I tried to study English well. I wanted to get a good job. " means\_\_\_\_\_.

A. I tried to study English well so that I can get a good job

B. I tried to study English well in order that I can get a good job

C. I tried to study English well to get a good job

D. I try to study English well in order that I can get a good job

16. "They whispered. They didn't want anyone to hear them. " means \_\_\_\_\_.

A. They whispered in order to make anyone hear them

B. They whispered so that no one could hear them

C. They whispered to make everyone hear them

D. They whispered in order that make everyone hear them

17. "We preserve natural resources. We can use them in the future. " means\_\_\_\_\_.

A. We preserve natural resources so that we can use them in the future

B. We preserve natural resources so as to we can use them in the future

C. We preserve natural resources in order to we can use them in the future

D. We preserve natural resources for fear that we can use them in the future

18. The teacher was explaining the lesson slowly and clearly\_\_\_\_\_.

A. to make his students to understand it

- B. in order that his students can understand it  
 C. so as to that his students could understand it  
 D. so that his students could understand it
19. I am not \_\_\_\_\_ a car.  
 A. rich enough to buy  
 B. too rich enough to buy  
 C. too poor to buy  
 D. enough rich to buy
20. \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the cinema.  
 A. it was late so that  
 B. that it was late  
 C. it was too late  
 D. such too late
21. The piano was too heavy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. for nobody to move  
 B. for nobody to moving  
 C. for anyone to move  
 D. for anyone to moving
22. The school boys are in hurry \_\_\_\_\_ they will not be late for school.  
 A. so as to  
 B. to  
 C. in order that  
 D. for
23. He turned off the lights before going out \_\_\_\_\_ waste electricity.  
 A. so that not  
 B. as not to  
 C. in order that not  
 D. so as not to
24. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ through.  
 A. too long for us to see  
 B. very long for us to see it  
 C. too long for us seeing it  
 D. too long enough for us to see
25. The coffee was \_\_\_\_\_ to drink.  
 A. so strong  
 B. strong  
 C. enough strong  
 D. too strong
26. I bought this new software \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.  
 A. for learning  
 B. learning  
 C. to learn  
 D. learned
27. Mary jogs everyday \_\_\_\_\_ lose weight.  
 A. so she can  
 B. so that she can  
 C. because she can  
 D. so that to
28. He was playing very softly \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ disturb anyone.  
 A. in order that / couldn't  
 B. so that / can't  
 C. so that / could  
 D. so/ can
29. I sent him out of the room \_\_\_\_\_ discuss his progress with his headmaster.  
 A. for  
 B. in order to  
 C. so as  
 D. in order that
30. He fixed a metal ladder to the wall below his window \_\_\_\_\_ escape if there was a fire.

- A. to                                  B. not to                                  C. so as not                                  D. so that

31. The police had barricaded the main street\_\_\_\_\_ prevent the demonstrators from marching through the town.

- A. so as to                                  B. not to                                  C. so as not to                                  D. in order

32. They evacuated everybody from the danger zone\_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ reduce the risk.

- A. to/ could                                  B. so that/ couldn't                                  C. in order that / can                                  D. so that/ could

33. He sent his children to the school\_\_\_\_\_ get more knowledge.

- A. for him to                                  B. to for them                                  C. so as for them to                                  D. so that he could

34. The workmen left red lights near the hole\_\_\_\_\_ warn motorists.

- A. to                                  B. for them not to                                  C. so for them to                                  D. so

35. I am learning skiing at an indoor school\_\_\_\_\_ when I get to Switzerland.

- A. to skiing                                  B. to ski                                  C. so as not to ski                                  D. so that I can't ski

36. Keep my hens in a field surrounded by wire netting\_\_\_\_\_ I can protect them against the foxes.

- A. to                                  B. not to                                  C. so as not to                                  D. so that

37. I am saving up\_\_\_\_\_ buy a helicopter.

- A. due to                                  B. owing to                                  C. so as to                                  D. despite

38. He had the telephone installed in his car\_\_\_\_\_ his secretary to be able to contact him wherever necessary.

- A. so that                                  B. in order that                                  C. so as to                                  D. for

39. We built the roof with a steel slope\_\_\_\_\_ the snow to slide off easily.

- A. less                                  B. in order that                                  C. for fear that                                  D. for

40. The notices are written in several languages\_\_\_\_\_ to understand them.

- A. for no one                                  B. every one                                  C. so that every one can                                  D. for every one

<b>1. C</b>	<b>2. D</b>	<b>3. D</b>	<b>4. C</b>	<b>5. D</b>	<b>6. D</b>	<b>7. D</b>	<b>8. A</b>	<b>9. A</b>	<b>10. C</b>
<b>11. A</b>	<b>12. B</b>	<b>13. B</b>	<b>14. A</b>	<b>15. C</b>	<b>16. B</b>	<b>17. A</b>	<b>18. D</b>	<b>19. A</b>	<b>20. C</b>
<b>21. A</b>	<b>22. C</b>	<b>23. D</b>	<b>24. A</b>	<b>25. D</b>	<b>26. C</b>	<b>27. B</b>	<b>28. A</b>	<b>29. B</b>	<b>30. A</b>
<b>31. A</b>	<b>32. D</b>	<b>33. C</b>	<b>34. A</b>	<b>35. B</b>	<b>36. D</b>	<b>37. C</b>	<b>38. D</b>	<b>39. D</b>	<b>40. D</b>

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18**

**NGỮ ÂM (PHONETICS)**

**\* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT**

# CHƯƠNG 1: PRONUNCIATION

## Phần 1: NGUYÊN ÂM

### **A. Giới thiệu về nguyên âm (The vowel sounds):**

\* 20 vowels in the English language:

- The 12 pure vowels: /i - i:/, /e - ɛ/, /ɔ - ɔ:/, /ʌ - ʌ:/, /u - u:/, /ə - ɜ:/.

- The 8 diphthongs: /ei - ai - ɔi/, /au - əu/, /iə - eə - uə /

\* Triphthongs and other vowel sequences:

/aiə /: *fire, hire, tyre, buyer, wire, flyer, iron,...*

/əuə /: *slower, lower, grower, sower, mower,...*

/auə /: *flower, power, tower, shower, sour, flour,...*

/eiə /: *greyer, player, layer, payer, prayer,...*

/ɔiə /: *employer, destroyer, royal, loyal, annoyance,...*

### **B. Nguyên âm đơn và cách phát âm của 5 chữ cái (A, E, I, O, U).**

#### I. Chữ A có 7 âm đơn sau:

1. Âm /e/ trong những tiếng đặc biệt sau:

→ many, any, anybody, anything, area...

2. Âm /ɛ/ trong nhóm sau:

→ a-: bad, bat, cat, dad, fan, fat, hang...

3. Âm /a:/ trong nhóm cú nhấn trọng âm:

→ ar(-): bar, bark, car, cart, depart...

4. Âm /ɔ:/ trong 3nhóm sau:

→ al-: all, ball, call, fall, halt, salt, talk, walk...

→ aw(-): draw, drawn, dawn, raw, want...

→ wa-: watch, wall, water, want...

5. Âm /ə:/ trong nhóm cú nhấn trọng âm.

→ ear-: **early**, **earth**, **earthly**, **learn**...

6. Âm /ə/: ở một số vần khụng nhấn trọng ơm:

→ **woman**, **workman**, **about**, **away**...

7. Âm /i/: khụng nhấn trọng ơm trong tiếng tận cứng là:

- age: **passage**, **package**, **carriage**, **marriage**...

- ate: **temperate**, **climate**, **adequate**, **immediate**...

## II. Chữ E có 8 âm đơn sau:

1. Âm /i:/ trong 3 nhóm:

→ e: **be**, **he**, **me**, **she**, **we**...

→ ee(-): **bee**, **beet**, **meet**, **weep**, **wee**, **sweet**...

→ ea(-): **pea**, **beat**, **meat**, **heat**, **teat**, **tea**, **sea**, **seat**...

2. Âm /i/ trong nhóm sau:

**English**, **enlarge**, **enhance**, **pretty**,...

3. Âm /e/ trong nhóm:

→ e-: **egg**, **hen**, **fen**, **fed**, **ten**, **debt**...

4. Âm /ə:/ trong nhóm:

→ er(-): **her**, **err**, **stern**, **sterse**, **verse**...

5. Âm /u:/ trong một số tiếng cú tận cứng là:

→ -ew: **crew**, **aircrew**, **screw**, **airscrew**, **flew**...

6. Âm /ju:/ trong một số tiếng cú tận cứng là:

→ -ew: **new**, **news**, **fews**...

7. Âm /ə/ ở một số vần khụng nhấn trọng ơm:

→ **children**, **garden**, **problem**, **excellent**,...

8. Âm /i/ trong các tiếp đầu ngữ sau:



→be-, de-, ex-, em-, en-, pre-, re-

### III. Chữ I có 4 âm đơn sau:

1. Âm /i:/ trong những từ mượn của tiếng Pháp:  
→ automobiles, machines, régime, élite, routine...
2. Âm /i:/ cú trong nhóm:  
→ i-: big, dig, sick, thick, bin, bit, sin, sit, tin, tit...
3. Âm /ə:/ trong nhóm:  
-ir: fir, stir, whir...  
-ir-: bird, firm, first, girl, skirt, shirt, third, thirst...
4. Âm /ə/ ở một số vần khụng nhấn trọng ơm:  
-il: pencil, to pencil, stencil, to stencil...

### IV. Chữ O có 7 âm đơn sau:

1. Âm /i/ trong tiếng women
2. Âm /ɔ/ cú trong nhóm:  
o-: box, dog, god, got, pot, stop, spot...
3. Âm /ə/ trong 2 nhóm sau:  
o-: won, son, Monday...  
o-e: dove, glove, love, shove...
4. Âm /ə:/ trong 2 nhóm sau:  
wor-: word, world, worm...  
- or: doctor, inventor, sailor...
5. Âm /ə/ ở một số vần khụng nhấn trọng ơm:  
**nation**, **formation**, **information**...
6. Âm /u/ trong một số tiếng: woman, wolf...
7. Âm /u:/ trong 2 nhóm:

-o(-): do, two, who, whom, tomb, womb...

-oo(-): too, bamboo, noon, school, afternoon...

## V. Chữ U có 8 âm đơn sau:

1. Âm /i/ trong một số tiếng:

Ex: busy, business, busily...

2. Âm /e/ trong tiếng đặc biệt: to bury

3. Âm /ê / cú trong nhóm:

u-, -uck, -ug,...: cut, duck, hug, must, trust...

4. Âm /ə:/ trong nhóm:

-ur(-): blur, fur, burn, turn, hurt...

5. Âm /ə/ ở những vần khụng nhấn trọng ơm:

‘furniture, ‘future,....

6. Âm /u/ trong mắt số tiếng sau:

u-: pull, push, bush

7. Âm /u:/ trong mắt số tiếng sau:

rule, ruler, fruit...

8. Âm /ju:/ trong nhóm:

u-e: cure, cute, acute, use...

## **VI. Chữ cái “Y” và cách phát ơm.**

\* Chữ cái “Y”: có thể là một phụ âm nếu nó đứng đầu một từ,

có thể là một nguyên âm nếu nó đứng ở giữa hay cuối từ.

1. Chữ Y được phát âm /i/: Khi ‘Y’ đứng ở giữa hay cuối từ có hai âm tiết trở lên.

Ngoại lệ: Pyramid /'pirəmid/).

Ex: any /'eni/, gym, hymn, oxygen, system, myth, syllable, typical, baby, happy, candy, lively, worry, physics, sympathy, mystery,...

Ngoại lệ: July /dʒu:'lai/

2. Chữ Y phát âm là /ai/: Khi ‘Y’ đứng cuối một từ đơn âm tiết

buy /bai/, shy, by, my, sky...

Ngoại lệ: deny /di'nai/ (2 âm tiết)

3. Chữ Y được phát âm là /ai/ ở các động từ có đuôi:

-ify/-ly: simplify /'simplifai/, reply /ri'plai/, apply/ə'plai/, amplify, modify, multiply, rely,...

4. Chữ Y được phát âm là /j/: ý

yes, youth, yacht, yard,....

### C. Nguyên âm đôi và cách phát âm:

1. Âm /ai/: Có trong 10 nhóm sau:

-y: by, buy, dry, fry, guy, my, sky, shy, try, why...

- y-e: dyke, tyre, style...

-i-e: dike, tire, bite, five, guide, hike, like, time, wide...

- ie: die, tie, lie, flies...

- ye: dye, eyes...

- igh(-): fight, flight, light, high, height, right, sigh...

- ild: child, mild...

- ind: find, bind, grind, kind, behind, kind...

- C + i + V (consonant + i + vowel): lion, diamond...

**Special words**: pilot, science, silent, sign, design...

2. Âm /ei/: Có trong 9 nhóm sau:

→ ey: obey, convey,....

→ -ei-: eight, weight, neighbor, veil, .....

→ ea-: great, break, steak,

→ a-e: late, mate, lake, take, sale, tale...

→ a - - e: table, change, waste...

→ ai-: nail, lain, sail, tail, waist...

→ -ay: day, may, ray, way, play...

→ -ation: nation, education...

→ -asion: invasion, occasion...

3. **Âm** /ɔi/: Cú trong 2 nhóm:

-oi: noisy, coin, boil,...

-oy: boy, destroy, toy, enjoy,...

4. **Âm** /au/: Cú trong 2 nhóm:

-ou-: round, mountain, noun, house, count, ground, loud,....

- ow-: now, how, cow, crowd,.....

5. **Âm** /əu/: Cú trong 5 nhóm:

- o(-): no, so, go, don't, won't, host, rose, rope, soldier, cold,...

-ow (-): grow, grown, know, known, throw,...

-oa-: boat, coach, coal, goal, ....

- ou-: soul, although, mould, ....

- oe: toe, goes, .....

6. **Âm** /iə/: Cú trong 3 nhóm:

- ea(r): ear, rear, fear, clear, gear, near,...

- eer: beer, deer, engineer, mountaineer, auctioneer,...

- ere: here, atmosphere, sphere,....

Ngoại lệ: there/ðeə/, where/weə/

7. **Âm** /eə/: Cú trong 4 nhóm sau:

- air: pair, hair, air, chair, fair, stairs, dairy, repair, affair,....

- ea-: pear, bear, ...

- ary: Mary.

- eir: their.

8. **Âm** /uə/: Cú trong nhóm sau:

- **our**, - **ure**, - **oor**: tour, tournament /'tuənəmənt/, sure, poor/puə(r)/, ...

- **ual**: usual, casual, actually,....

#### **D. Từ đồng dạng (Homographs)**

1. wound: - wound /waund/ (past participle): to wind

- wound/wu:nd/ (n): vết thương

2. wind: - wind /wind/ (n): cơn gió

- wind /waind/(v): chỉnh, lên dây, vặn (đồng hồ,...)

3. lead:- lead /li:d/ (n): sự lónh đạo, sự hướng dẫn

- lead /led/ (n): than chì, chì

4. row: - row /rəu/ (v): chèo thuyền

- row /rau/ (n): cuộc cới vó

5. house: - house /hauz/ (v): cho ở, chứa

- house /haus/ (n): ngui nhà

6. live: - live /liv/ (v): sống, sinh sống

- live /laiv/ (adj): trực tiếp

7. record: - ['rekɔ:d] (n): đĩa hát, đĩa ghi âm, thành tích

- [ri'kɔ:d] (v): thu, ghi lại (õm thanh hoặc hõnh ảnh) trên đĩa hoặc băng

8. read: - read /ri:d/ (v):

- read /red/ (past participle):

9. sow - sow /sau/ (n): lợn cỏi

- sow /səu/ (v): gieo hạt

10. close: - close /kləus/ (adj)

- close /kləuz/ (v)

11. excuse: - excuse /iks'kju:s/ (n)

- excuse /iks'kju:z/ (v)

12. use - use /ju:s/ (n)

- use /ju:z/ (v)

13. abuse: - abuse /ə'bjʊ:s/ (n)

- abuse /ə'bjʊ:z/ (v)

etc,.....

## **Phần 2: PHỤ ÂM**

### **A. Giới thiệu về phụ âm (The consonants sounds): 24 consonants in English**

devided into voiceless and voiced consonants and are shown below:

**I. Voiceless consonants:** /p/, /f/, /θ/, /t/, /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /k/, /h/.

**II. Voiced consonants:** /b/, /v/, /ð/, /d/, /z/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /r/, /w/, /j/.

### **III. The consonant clusters:**

1. /s/ + /p, t, k, f, m, n, w, j/:

*Spy, stay, sky, smile, snow, sleep, swear, suit, speak,...*

2. / p / + / l, r, j /:

*Plough, play, proud, pray, pure, puritant,...*

3. /t/ + /r, w, j/:

*Tree, try, twin, twice, tune, tunic,...*

4. / k / + / l, r, w, j /:

*Clerk, clay, crown, cry, quite, quick, cure, curious,...*

5. /b/ + /l, r, j/:

*Blind, blow, brown, bring, brick, beauty, bureau,....*

6. /g/ + /l, r/:

*Glass, glance, grass, grow,...*

7. /d/ + /r, w, j/:

*Draw, dress, dwell, dwinkle, duty,...*

8. /f/ + /l, r, j/:

*Fly, flat, free, frozen, few, fuse,...*

9. /θ/ + /r, w/:

*Throw, throat, thwart, thwack,...*

10. /v/ + /j/:

*view, viewer,...*

11. /ʃ/ + /r/:

*shrink, shriek,...*

12. /m/ + /j/:	Music, mule,...
13. /n/ + /j/:	New, nude,...
14. /spr/:	spread, spray, ...
15. /str/:	strand, stray, string,...
16. /skr/:	scratch...
17. /spj/:	spure, spurious, ...
18. /spl/:	splendid, split,...
19. /stj/:	stupid, student,...
20. /skj/:	skew, skewer,...
21. /skw/:	square, squash,...

## B. Cách phát âm của một số phụ âm:

### 1. Chữ C có thể được đọc thành 4 âm: /s/, /k/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/

#### a. 'C' được phát âm là /s/: Khi 'C' đứng trước e, i, y

Eg: ceiling /'si:liŋ/, sentence, silence, cigarette, presidency...

#### b. 'C' được phát âm là /ʃ/: Khi 'C' đứng trước ia(-), cie, cio, ciu và cean

- cia(-) musician, mathematician, special, official, artificial...

- cie: efficient /ɪfɪfənt/, conscience /kɒnʃəns/: lương tâm

- io(-): specious, delicious, unconscionable (không hợp với lương tâm),

conscious: chú ý thức, efficacious, spacious: rộng chỗ, specious: có vẻ đúng.

- cean: ocean /'ouʃən/, crustacean /krʌ'teɪʃiən/: Loài tùm cua

- ciu: confucius /kən'fju:ʃəs/: Đức Khổng Tử

**Ngoại lệ:** science /'saɪəns/

#### c. 'C' được phát âm là /k/: Khi 'C' đứng trước a, o, u và các phụ âm.

ca-: can /kɒn/, car, cat

co-: coat, come, computer

cu-: cup, cut

c + consonant: circle, class, crude, crowd, create...

**d. 'C' được phát âm là /tʃ/ trong các từ:** cello /'tʃelou/, cellist, concerto

**e. 'C' là một âm câm:**

- Khi 'C' đứng trước **k**: black /blɒk/, duck, nickel...

- thỉnh thoảng 'c' câm sau 's': scene /si:n/, science, muscle, scissors...

**2. Chữ D có thể được đọc thành 2 âm: /d/, /dʒ/**

**a. 'D' được phát âm là /d/** trong hầu hết mọi trường hợp.

eg. date, dirty, down, damage, made, bird...

**b. 'D' được phát âm là /dʒ/** trong một số trường hợp đặc biệt:

soldier, education graduate, schedule /'skedʒu:l/,

verdure /'və: dʒuə/: (màu xanh tươi của cây cỏ)

**c. Chữ D câm ở một số từ:** handkerchief, handsome, Wednesday

**3. Chữ G có thể được đọc thành: /d/, /dʒ /, /ʒ/.**

**a. 'G' được phát âm là /dʒ/:** Khi 'G' đứng trước các nguyên âm **e, i, y** và tận cùng của một từ là **ge**

Eg: germ, apology, ginger, ginseng, giant, gigantic (a) /'dʒaigəntik/: khổng lồ, gyp /dʒip/ (mảnh niềng), gymnastic, gill /dʒil/: đơn vị đo bằng 1/8 lít...

Eg: language, village, age, ....

Ngoại lệ: get, hamburger, tiger, gift, gear, gill /gil/: mang cá

**b. 'G' được phát âm là /ʒ/** ở một số từ mượn của tiếng Pháp

Eg: regime /rei'ʒi:m/, massage, mirage, garage /'gɔʁaʒ/, (to) rouge /ru:ʒ/: (tự) son phấn

**c. 'G' được phát âm là /g/:** Khi đứng trước bất kỳ mẫu tự nào trừ các trường hợp vừa nêu ở mục 1. Eg: game, good, get, guard, figure, go...

Ngoại lệ:: a gaol /dʒeɪl/(n) nhà tù, to gaol /dʒeɪl/(v) = to jail/ to imprison: bỏ tù

**d. 'G' câm (silent G)**



\* "g" câm: nếu nó đứng đầu của từ và trước "n":

Eg: gnar /na:l/: mẫu, đầu mẫu;

gnash /nɔʃ/: nghiền răng

gnome /'noumi:/: chòm ngọn;

gnu /nu:/: linh dương đầu bũ

gnaw /nɔ:/: động vật gặm nhấm;

gnostic /'nɔstik/: ngộ đạo

\* "g" câm: nếu nó đứng cuối của từ và trước "m", "n":

Eg: sign, design, campaign, foreign, phlegm /flem/: đờm

**e. 'G' trong "ng" ở cuối từ hoặc từ gốc được phát âm là /ŋ/:**

Eg: sing, running, song, singer...

#### **4. Chữ 'n' được phát âm là /n/ và /ŋ/**

**a. Chữ 'n' được phát âm là /ŋ/:** khi 'n' đứng trước mẫu tự mang âm /k/ và /g/.

Eg: uncle, single, longer, English, ink, drink,....

**b. Chữ 'n' được phát âm là /n/** ở hầu hết các mẫu tự trừ 'k' và 'g'.

Eg: natural, not, name, strange /streɪndʒ/, danger /'deɪndʒə/

#### **5. Chữ 'qu' được phát âm là /kw/ và /k/**

**a. Chữ 'q' luôn đi kèm với 'u', và qu thường được phát âm là /kw/**

Eg: question, quiet, quick, require, queen

**b. Tuy nhiên, thỉnh thoảng 'qu' được phát âm là /k/**

Eg: quay, technique, antique, liquor, queue

#### **6. Chữ 's' được phát âm là /s/, /ʃ/, /z/ và /z/**

**a. Chữ 's' được phát âm là /s/**

Eg: see, sight, slow, dispense, cost,...

**b. Chữ 's' được phát âm là /z/.**

Eg: has, is, because, rose, reason,...

**c. Chữ 's' được phát âm là /z/**

Eg: decision, vision, conclusion, occasion, usual, pleasure, measure, leisure,....

**d. Chữ 's' được phát âm là /ʃ/:**

Eg: sugar, sure,...

**e. Chữ 'se' ở cuối từ:** 'se' thường được phát âm là /s/ hoặc /z/. Tuy nhiên, 'se' được phát âm là /s/ hay /z/ thường là dựa vào âm trước nó hoặc dựa vào từ loại.

**\* Chữ 'se' được phát âm là /s/:**

Khi nó đứng sau âm /ə:/, /ə/, /au/, /n/ và /i/

Eg: nurse, purpose, mouse, sense, promise,...

**\* Chữ 'se' được phát âm là /z/:**

Khi nó đứng sau âm /ai/, /ɔi/, /a:/

Eg: rise, noise, vase,...

**\* Chữ 'se' được phát âm là /z/ hay /s/ dựa vào từ loại (Phần này được trình bày trong ở mục D- từ đồng dạng):**

- động từ: /z/;

- danh từ/adj: /s/

**f. Chữ 's' câm trong một số từ sau đây:**

corps /kɔ:/ (quân đoàn), island /'aɪlənd/ (hũn đảo), isle /aɪl/(hũn đảo nhỏ), aisle /aɪl/ (lối đi giữa hai hàng ghế)

**g. Cách phát âm mẫu tự "s" ở dạng động từ ngôi thứ ba số ít, danh từ số nhiều và sở hữu cách:**

**\* trường hợp 1: 's' được phát âm là /s/**

Âm đứng trước 's'	Danh từ số nhiều (Plural form)	Động từ ngôi thứ 3 số ít (3rd singular V)	Sở hữu cách (Possessives)	Cách đọc kí tự 's'
/p/	maps      capes	stops		

/t/	cats, mates	beats, calculates	Janet' s	/s/
/k/	books, lakes	Attacks, makes	Frank' s	
/f/	paragraphs, laughs, chiefs, safes	photographs laughs	Cliff' s	
/ð/	months photographs	bathes photographs	Gareth' s	

\* **trường hợp 2:** 'es' được phát âm là /iz/:

- Nếu danh từ số ớt cú tận cùng là: **s, x, ch, sh, -ce, -es, -ge**

**Ngoại lệ:** những danh từ gốc Hy Lạp tận cùng bằng **ch** chỉ thêm 's' và đọc là /ks/.

Eg: a monarch /mɒ'næk/ (vua) → monarchs /mɒ 'næks/

Âm đứng trước 's/es'	Danh từ số nhiều (Plural form)	Động từ ngôi thứ 3 số ít (3rd singular V)	Sở hữu chỏch (Possessives)	Cách đọc kí tự 's/es'
/s/	glasses sentences	kisses sentences	Bruce's	/iz/
/ks/	Boxes	Mixes	Felix's	
/tʃ/	Churches	Teaches	Mrs. Gooch's	
/ʃ/	Wishes	Washes	Trish's	
/ʒ/	Garages	massages	Solange's	
/dʒ/	Pages	stages	Gorge's	
/z/	bruises	rise	Rose's	

\* **trường hợp 3:** 's' được phát âm là /z/: Các trường hợp cũn lại:

Âm đứng trước 's'	Danh từ số nhiều (Plural form)	Động từ ngôi thứ 3 số ít (3rd singular V)	Sở hữu cách (Possessives)	Cách đọc kí tự 's'
/b/	Cubs	robs	Bob' s	/z/
/v/	Caves	lives	Olive' s	
/ð/	clothes	breathes	Smith' s	
/d/	Beds	reads	Donald' s	
/g/	Eggs	digs	Peg' s	
/l/	Hills	fills	Daniel's	
/m/	rooms	comes	Tom's	
/n/	Pens	learns	Jane's	
/ŋ/	Rings	brings	King's	
/əu/	potatoes	goes	Jo's	
/ei/	Days	plays	Clay's	
/eə/	Hairs	wears	Clare's	

**Note:** Cách đọc tận cùng “s” như tròn cũn cú thể ỏp dụng cho:

- Danh từ số ỏt cú tận cựng là 's': physics /'fiziks/, series /'siəriz/.

- Thể giản lược: What's /wɒts/ Phong doing?

He's /hi:z/ reading.

- Tận cùng “s” trong đũoi của tính từ như: **-ous, -ious**: đũợc đợc là /s/.

## 7. Chữ ‘t’ đũợc phát âm là /t/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/ và /ʒ/

**a. Chữ ‘t’ đũợc phát âm là /t/ trong hầu hết các từ như:**

take, teacher, tell, computer, until, amateur...

**b. Chữ ‘t’ đũợc phát âm là /tʃ/ khi đũng trước chữ ‘u’**

Eg: picture/'pɪktʃə/, mixture, century, future, actual, statue, fortunate, punctual, situation, mutual...

**c. Chữ ‘t’ đũợc phát âm là /ʃ/ khi nó ở giữa một từ và đũng trước **ia, io****

- **t+ia:** militia (dồn quân), initial, initiate, potential, residential, differentiate, spatial (thuộc về không gian)...

Ngoại lệ: Christian /'kristʃən/ (theo Cơ Đốc Giáo)

- **t + io(-):** patio (sân trống giữa nhà), ratio (tỉ lệ), infectious, cautious, conscientious, notion, option, nation, intention, information...

Ngoại lệ: question /'kwesʃən/, suggestion /sə'seʃən/, righteous /'raɪtʃəs/ (đúng đắn, ngay thẳng), combustion /kəm'bʌstʃən/(sự đốt cháy), Christian /'kristʃən/.

#### **d. Chữ 't' được phát âm là /z/**

Eg: equation (n) /i'kweɪʒn/ (phương trình)

#### **e. Chữ "T" câm**

\* khi kết hợp thành dạng STEN ở cuối từ

Eg: fasten /'fa:sn/, hasten/'heɪsn/ (thực giục), listen /'lɪsn/

\* khi kết hợp thành dạng STLE ở cuối từ

castle /ka:sl/, apostle /'əpɒsl/ (tông đồ, sứ đồ), whistle /wɪsl/ (huýt sáo)

\* Ngoài ra Chữ "T" câm trong trường hợp sau:

Christmas /'krɪsməs/, often/ 'ɔ: fn/, ballet (vũ bale), beret(mũ nôi)

### **8. Chữ 'x' có thể được phát âm là /ks/, /gz/, /kʃ/, /z/**

#### **a. Chữ 'x' có thể được phát âm là /ks/:**

fix, mix, fax, box, oxen...

**b. Chữ 'x' có thể được phát âm là /gz/:** khi 'x' đứng sau chữ **e** bắt đầu của một từ

**Eg:** example /ɪg'zɒmpl/, examine /ɪg'zɒmɪn/, executor /ɪg'zɛkjʊtə/, exit, exhaust, exact...

Ngoại lệ: to execute /'eksɪkjʊt/: thi hành

**c. Chữ 'x' có thể được phát âm là /kʃ/:** khi 'x' đứng trước **u** hay **io(-)**

Eg: sexual, luxury, anxious, obnoxious đáng ghét)

Ngoại lệ: luxurious/ˌlʌg'zʊəriəs/(sang trọng, lộng lẫy), anxiety/ˈæŋ'zaiəti/: sự lo lắng.

**d. Chữ 'x' có thể được phát âm là /z/ ở một số từ:**

anxiety / ˈæŋ'zaiəti/: nỗi lo, lũng khao khát, xylophone (mộc cầm),

**9. Chữ 'z' có thể được phát âm là /s/ trong những từ đặc biệt:**

waltz /wɔ:ls/ điệu nhảy valse

eczema/'eksimə/: bệnh lở loét

Mozart /'mouza:t/: Mozart

Nazi /nɑ:si/: Quân Phát xít Đức

**10. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /ð/ và /θ/.**

**a. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /ð/:** 'th' đứng đầu từ, giữa từ hay cuối từ.

Eg: thick, thin, think, both, mouth, death, health, wealth, birth, author, toothache....

**b. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /ð/:** chỉ dạng danh từ của một tính từ.

Eg: width/widð/, depth, length, strength,...

**c. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /ð/:** chỉ số thứ tự

Eg: fourth, fifth, sixth, tenth, thirteenth, fortieth, fiftieth,....

**d. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /θ/:** 'th' đứng đầu từ, giữa từ hay cuối từ.

Eg: this, that, these, weather, although, another, clothing, clothe, mother,...

**Note:** bath /ba:ð; bɑ:ð/ → baths /ba:ð/ (n. pl.)

**e. 'th' có ở các từ sau:**

asthma /æsmə/ (n): bệnh hen suyễn; isthmus /isməs/ (n): eo đất

**f. Chữ 'th' có thể được phát âm là /ð/ hay /θ/:** cần phụ thuộc vào từ loại hoặc nghĩa của chýng.

North /nɔ:ð/ (n)	Northern /'nɔ: ðən/ adj)
South/auð/ (n)	Southern /səðən/
cloth /klɔð/	clothe /kləuð; kləuð/(v)
bath/ba:ð ; bɑ:ð/ (n)	bathe /beɪð/

teeth/ti:ð/ (n)	teethe /ti:ð/ (v)
.....	

**11. Chữ 'sh' được phát âm là /ʃ/:** trong mọi trường hợp:

Eg: wash /wɒʃ/, she /ʃi:/, fish/fiʃ/...

**12. Chữ 'gh' & 'ph'**

**a. Chữ 'gh' & 'ph' được phát âm là: /f/.**

Eg: laugh, cough, rough, phone, photo, orphan, phrase /freiz/, physics /fiziks/, paragraph /'pɑ:ɾəgrɑ:f/, mimeograph /'mimiougrɑ:f/,.....

**Note:** - nephew /'nevju:/ (Br E) và /'nefju:/ (Am. E)

- 'gh' được phát âm là /g/: ghost, ghoul /gu:/ (ma cà rồng), ghetto (khu người Do Thái)

**b. Chữ 'gh' câm:** Khi 'gh' đứng cuối từ hoặc trước 't'

Eg: nigh, night, sigh (thở dài), though, sight, flight, light, plough, weight, ought, caught,...

**13. Chữ 'ch' được phát âm là /tʃ/, /k/, /ʃ/.**

**a. Chữ "ch" phần lớn được phát âm là: /tʃ/**

Eg: chair, cheep, cheese, chicken, chat, children, channel, chocolate, chin, chest,...

**b. Chữ "ch" được phát âm là /k/ trong một số chữ đặc biệt có gốc Hy Lạp.**

Eg: Christ, Christmas,	chorus /'kɔ: rəs/ (hợp ca),
choir /kwaɪə/ (ca đoàn),	chaos /'keɪs/ (sự rối loạn),
holera/'kɔləɾə/(bệnh thổ tả),	chemist, chemistry,
architect, architecture,	mechanic,
scheme /ski:m/ (kế hoạch, âm mưu)	
monarch (vua trong chế độ quân chủ),	
monarchy (nước quân chủ chuyên chế),	
stomach, echo, orchestra, school, scholar, character,....	

**c. Chữ "ch" được phát âm là /ʃ/ trong những từ có nguồn gốc từ tiếng Pháp.**

Eg: chic /ʃik/ (bảnh bao), chef /ʃef/ (đầu bếp),

chute /ʃu:t/ (thác nước),

chagrin /'ʃɑ̃grin/ (sự buồn phiền)

chemise /ʃə'mi:z/,

machine,

chevalier /'ʃev even evəliə/ (hiệp sỹ),

chandelier /'ʃɑ̃dɑ'liə/(đèn treo),

parachute,

mustache,

attaché /ətʃɛi/ (tựy viên),

chauffeur/'ʃoufə/ (tài xế)

chassis /'ʃɑ̃si/(khung xe),

chiffon /ʃi'fɔn/ (vải the),

charlatan /'ʃa:lətən/ (thầy lang),

chivalry /'ʃivəli/(hiệp sỹ đạo),

chicanery (ʃi'keinəri/ (sự lừa đảo)

Chicago,

(to) douche (tắm bằng vòi),

chargé d' affaires

### C. Những âm câm.

Là những nguyên âm và phụ âm được viết ra nhưng không được đọc. (chỉ đề cập đến những âm chưa được đề cập ở những mục trên).

#### 1. 'B' câm (silent B)

- 'b' câm trước 't': doubt /daʊt/, debt, subtle

- 'b' câm sau 'm': climb /klaɪm/, numb, thumb, tomb...

#### 2. 'h' câm (silent h)

- 'h' câm khi đứng sau 'g' ở đầu từ:

Eg ghoul /gu:/, ghetto, ghost,....

- 'h' câm khi đứng sau 'r' ở đầu từ:

Eg: rhetoric /'retərik/, rhinoceros, rhubarb (cây đại hoàng), rhyme /raɪ/ (vần thơ), rhythm /'riðm/ (nhịp điệu),.....

- 'h' câm khi đứng sau 'ex' ở đầu từ:

Eg: exhaust /ɪg'zɔ:st/ (kiệt sức),

exhibit(ion),

exhilarant (điều làm phấn khởi),

exhort /ɪg'zɔ: t/ (hạ hào rýt khởi),

exhilarate (làm phấn khởi),

exhauster /ɪg'zɔ:stə/ (quạt hýt giú),....

- 'h' câm khi nó đứng ở cuối từ:



Eg: ah (A! Chà!), verandah /və'ɒndə/ (hàng hiên), catarrh /kə'tɑː/(viêm chảy)

- 'h' câm ở một số từ sau:

Eg: heir /eə/ (người kế thừa),	hierdom (tờn trạng kế thừa),
heirless (không có người thừa kế),	heirloom (vật gia truyền),
heirship (quyền thừa kế), hour (giờ)	honour (đanh dự),
honourable (đáng tôn kính),	honorific
honorary,	honest, honestly, honesty, dishonest
vehicle (xe cộ) /'vi:kl/ (Br. E) but /'vi:hik/ (Am. E)	

### 3. 'k' câm khi nó đứng ở đầu từ và trước 'n'

knife /naif/, knee, knit, knitter (máy đan sợi), knitting,

Knitting-machine (máy đan len, máy dệt), knitting -needle (kim đan, que đan), know, knock, knob,...

### 4. 'l' câm khi

- đứng sau 'a' và trước 'f', 'k', 'm'

Eg: half /ha:f/, calf, balk, walk, chalk, balm, calm, palm, salmon, alms (của bố thí)

- đứng sau 'o' và trước 'd', 'k': could, should, would, folk,.....

### 5. 'M' câm khi đứng trước 'n' và ở đầu từ:

Eg: mnemonics /ni:'mɒniks/ (thuật nhớ), mnemonic /ni:'mɒnik/ (giúp trở nhớ)

### 6. 'n' câm khi đứng sau 'm' và ở cuối từ:

Eg: autumn /'ɔ:təm/,	condemn (kết án, kết tội), culum,
hymn /him/ (quốc ca),	solemn (long trọng, trang nghiêm),.....

### 7. 'p' câm khi

- đứng trước 'n' và ở đầu một từ:

pneumatic /nju:'mɔ:tik/ (thuộc khí/hơi), pneumatics /nju:'mɔ:tiks/ (khớ lực học)

pneumatology /nju:mə'tɒlədʒi/ (thuyết tởm linh), pneumonia /nju:'mɒnjə/,

pneumonic /nju:'mɒnik/ (thuộc bệnh viêm phổi)

- đứng trước 's'

psalm /sa:m/ (bài thánh ca)

psalmodic /sɔl'mɔdɪk/, psalmodist /sɔl'mədɪst/,

psalmodize /sɔl'mədaɪz/ (hót thánh ca)

psalmist /'sa:mɪst/ (người soạn thánh ca)

psalmody /'sɔlmədi/

pseudonym /'sju:dənim/ (biệt hiệu, bặt danh)

pseudograph /'sju:dəgrəf/ (tác phẩm văn học giả mạo)

pseudologer /'sju:'dɔlə dʒə / (kẻ trỏ hỡnh)

psyche /'saiki:/ (linh hồn, tởm thần)

psychedelic /'saiki'delɪk/ (ma túy, cảm giỏc lũng lũng)

psychiatry /sai'kaiətri/ (tởm thần học)

psychiatrist /sai'kaiətrɪst/ (bỏc sỹ tởm thần)

psychic /sai'kɪk/ ông đồng, bà đồng)

psychology /sai'kɔlə dʒə/ (n)

psychological /saɪkələdʒɪkl/ (adj)

- 'p' câm khi đứng trước 't'

receipt /ri'si:t/ (n), empty /'emti/, ptisan /ti'zɔn/ (nước thuốc sắc)

- 'p' câm khi đứng trước 'b'

cupboard /'cʌbəd/, raspberry /'ra:zbri/ (quả mỗm xụi)

## 8. 'u' cõm khi

- đứng trước 'a'

Eg: guard /ga:d/ (sự canh chừng), piquant /'pi:kənt/ (cay đắng, chua cay),

guarantee /gʊrən'ti:/(đảm bảo),.....

- đứng sau 'g'

Eg: guerilla /g'ri:l/ (du kích, quân du kích), guess /ges/(đoán), guest/gest/ (khách),...

- đứng trước 'e'

conquer /'kɒŋkə/ (chinh phục); league /lig/ (đồng minh)

catalogue /'kɒtəlɒg/ (n); dialogue /'daɪə'lɒg/, prologue /'prɒlɒg/ (đoạn mở đầu), epilogue/'epɪlɒg/ (phần kết); fatigue /fə'ti:g/ (sự mệt mỏi), oblique /'əblik/ (nghiêng, xiên)

- đứng trước 'i'

buil /bild/, guild / gild/ (phường hội, hội)

guillotine /gilə'ti:n/ (mỏ chày) guilt /'gilti/ (cú tội, phạm tội)

biscuit /'biskit/; circuit /'sə:kit/ (chu vi, vòng đua)

conduit /'kɒndit/ (ống dẫn, máng nước),.....

- đứng trước 'y'

plaguy /'pleigi/ (phiền hà, quở quắt) ; buy /bai/,.....

## 9. 'I' cõm khi đứng sau 'u'

Eg: fruit, juice, suit, bruise

## 10. 'R' cõm khi

- đứng giữa nguyên âm và phụ âm

Eg:arm, farm, harm, dark, darn, work, mark, mercy, /'mə:si/, world, word, worm, worn,....

**Note:** Người Mỹ thường phát âm 'R' ở những từ trên.

- đứng sau 'e' trong đôi 'er': teacher, mother, water,.....

## 11. 'w' cõm khi

- 'w' đứng trước 'r' và ở đầu từ

Eg: wrap, wreck (làm hỏng), write, wrong, wrist (cổ tay), wrest(giật mạnh), wrench (xoăn), wrinkle /'rɪŋkl/ (gợn sóng), wright /rait/ (thợ), writ /rit/ (lệnh), wrick /rik/ (làm trật/trẹo), wriggle /'rigl/ (lựa vào)

- 'w' đứng trước 'h'

who /hu:/, whom, whose, whole, wholly, whoever...

- 'w' câm trong những từ sau đây:

answer/'a:nsə/, sword/sɔ:d/ (gươm), awe/ɔ:/(làm sợ hãi), owe/ou/(v), awl /ɔ:l/ (dùi của thợ giày),  
awn/ɔ:n/ (rõ ở đầu hạt thóc), awning /ɔ:niŋ/(tấm vải bạt để che), awry/ə'rai/ (xiên, mảo, lệch),.....

## **D. Cách phát âm “ed”:**

### **I. Cách phát âm đuôi “ed” của những động từ có quy tắc ở dạng quá khứ đơn:**

1. **“ed” /id/:** Nếu động từ có tận cùng bằng các âm /t/ hay /d/.

eg. needed, wanted, decided, started...

2. **'ed' /t/:** Nếu động từ có tận cùng bằng 8 âm sau:

/f/ (trong các chữ: f, fe, gh, ph),

/p/ (trong chữ p),

/k/ (trong chữ k),

/ks/ (trong chữ x),

/s/ (trong chữ s, ce),

/tʃ/ (trong chữ ch),

/ʃ/ (trong chữ sh),

/θ/ (trong chữ th)

Eg: chaffed/tʃæft/(đùa cho vui), chafed/tʃeift/ (xoa cho ấm lên), laughed, paragraphed, coughed...

Eg: liked, mixed, voiced, missed, watched, washed, hatched

3. **'ed' /d/:** các trường hợp cũn lại

played, planned, called, offered, bathed, borrowed...

### **II. Cách phát âm các tính từ tận cùng bằng ‘ed’:**

Hầu hết các tính từ được tạo thành từ các động từ thời cú cách phát âm đuôi “ed” giống như động từ tận cùng bằng “ed”. Tuy nhiên một số tính từ hoặc trạng từ cú tận cùng bằng ‘ed’, thời ‘ed’ được phát âm là /id/:

Eg: naked (a) trần trụi

wretched (a) khốn khổ

crooked (a) cong, oằn

ragged (a) nhàu, cũ

learned (a) uyên bác

deservedly (adv) xứng đáng

supposedly (adv) cho rằng

unmatched (adj) vô địch, không thể sánh kịp

crabbed (adv) khú tớn, khú nết

markedly (adv) một cách rừ ràng, đáng chú ý

allegedly(adv) cho rằng (được khẳng định mà không cần chứng minh)

rugged (a) gồ ghề, lởm chởm

**Note:** Từ '*aged*' được đọc thành /'eidʒɪd/ nếu đi trước danh từ, và /'eidʒd/ nếu đi sau danh từ hay động từ to be

eg: an aged /'eidʒɪd / man: một vị cao niên

They have one daughter aged /'eidʒd/ seven. (Họ có một con gái lờn bảy tuổi)

## CHƯƠNG II: STRESS

### **A. Giới thiệu về trọng âm**

‘Trọng âm là sự phát âm của một từ hoặc một âm tiết với nhiều lực hơn so với các từ hoặc các âm tiết xung quanh. Một từ hoặc âm tiết được nhấn trọng âm được phát âm bằng cách sử dụng nhiều khí từ phổi hơn’ (Richard, J. C *et al.* 1992:355).

Các âm tiết mang trọng âm được phát âm mạnh hơn các âm tiết không mang trọng âm (được phát âm nhẹ hơn hoặc ngắn hơn hoặc đôi khi được đọc rút gọn).

Ta dùng kí hiệu // đặt ở đâu âm tiết có trọng âm chính. Trong những từ nhiều âm tiết có trọng âm chính và trọng âm phụ và được biểu thị /,/.

Eg: father/'fɑ:ðə/, indication/,indi'keɪʃn/, representative/,repri'zentətɪv/,....

### **B. Một số quy tắc đánh trọng âm:**

**Trọng âm chỉ rơi vào những âm tiết mạnh (âm tiết chứa nguyên âm mạnh, nguyên âm đôi hoặc nguyên âm dài). Âm tiết yếu khụng nhận trọng ơm.**

**I/ Trọng ơm ở từ cú 2 ơm tiết:**

**1) Đa số động từ cú 2 âm tiết thờ ơm tiết thứ 2 nhận trọng ơm chính:**

Eg: es'cape, for'get, be'gin, ac'cept....

**Tuy nhiên cú một số động từ ngoại lệ:**

'promise, 'answer, 'enter, 'listen, 'offer, 'happen, 'open.

**2) Đa số danh từ và tính từ 2 âm tiết cú trọng âm chính rơi và âm tiết thứ nhất:**

Eg: 'butcher, 'standard, 'busy, 'handsome....

**Ngoại lệ:** ma'chine, mis'take, a'lone, a'ware,...

**3) Một số từ vừa là danh từ, vừa là động từ cú trọng âm chính không đôi:**

ad'vice/ ad'vise, 'visit, re'ply, tra'vel, 'promise, 'picture;

**4) Cũn lại đa số các từ cú 2 âm tiết cú cú 2 chức năng thờ trọng ơm thay đôi theo chức năng của từ:**

'record(noun)/ re'cord (verb), 'present(noun)/ pre'sent (verb), 'desert(noun)/ de'sert(verb)....

**II/ Những trường hợp khác**

**1) Các từ cú tận cùng bằng các hậu tố sau cú trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết đứng ngay trước hậu tố đó.**

**-tion:** pro'tection, compu'tation...

**-ial ; ially:** me'morial, in'dustrial, arti'ficially, e'ssentially...

**-sion:** de'cision, per'mission...      **Ngoại lệ:** 'television

**-itive:** com'petitive, 'sensitive...

**-logy:** e'cology, tech'nology...

**-graphy; -etry:** ge'o'graphy, trigo'nometry...

**-ity:** a'bility, ne'cessity...

**-ic; -ical:** ar'tistic, e'lectric, po'litical, 'practical...

**Ngoại lệ:** 'Arabic, a'rithmetic, 'Catholic, 'politics

**2) Cúc từ cú tận cùng bằng cú hậu tố sau cú trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết cách hậu tố đó 1 âm tiết.**

**-ate:** con'siderate, 'fortunate...

**-ary:** 'necessary, 'military...

**Ngoại lệ:** docu'mentary, ele'mentary, supple'mentary, extra'ordinary.

### 3) Những hậu tố sau thường được nhận trọng âm chính.

**-ee:** de'gree, refe'ree...

**Ngoại lệ:** com'mittee, 'coffee

**-eer:** mountai'ner, engi'neer...

**-ese:** Japa'nese, Chi'nese...

**-ain (chỉ áp dụng cho động từ):** re'main, con'tain...

**-aire:** questio'naire, millio'naire...

**-ique:** tech'nique, an'tique...

**-esque:** pictu'resque...

### 4) Một số tiền tố và hậu tố khi thêm vào không làm thay đổi trọng âm chính của từ đó.

#### a. Tiền tố:

\* **un-:** 'healthy → un'healthy, im'portant → unim'portant ...

\* **im-:** ma'ture → imma'ture, 'patient → im'patient...

\* **in- :** com'plete → incom'plete, sin'cere → insin'cere ...

\* **ir- :** 'relevant → ir'relevant, re'ligious → irre'ligious ...

\* **dis:** con'nect → discon'nect, 'courage → dis'courage ...

\* **non-:** 'smokers → non'smokers, 'violent → non'violent...

\* **en-:** 'courage → en'courage, 'vision → en'vision ...

\* **re-:** a'rrange → rea'rrange, 'married → re'married ...

\* **over-:** 'crowded → over'crowded, 'estimate → over'estimate ...

\* **under-:** de'veloped → underde'veloped, 'pay → under'pay ...

**Ngoại lệ:** 'understatement, 'undergrowth, 'underground, 'underpants

#### b. Hậu tố:

**-ful:** 'beauty → 'beautiful, 'wonder → 'wonderful ...

**-less:** /'thought → /'thoughtless, /'hope → /'hopeless ...

**-able:** /'comfort → /'comfortable, /'notice → /'noticeable ...

**-al:** /'season → /'seasonal, tra'dition → tra'ditional ...

**-ous:** /'danger → /'dangerous, /'poison → /'poisonous ...

**-ly:** /'similar → /'similarly, di'rect → di'rectly ...

**-er/ -or:** /'actor, /'worker, /'reader ...

**-ise/ -ize:** /'memorize, /'modernize, /'industrialize ...

**-ing:** be'gin → be'ginning, su'ggest → su'ggesting ...

**-en:** /'length → /'lengthen, /'strength → /'strengthen ...

**-ment:** en'joyment, a'musement, /'government ...

**-ness:** /'happiness, /'thoughtlessness ...

**-ship:** /'sportmanship, /'relationship, /'scholarship, ...

**-hood:** /'neighborhood, /'brotherhood ... strength

### 5) Trọng âm ở các từ chỉ số đếm:

thir'teen, 'thirty / four'teen, 'forty / fif'teen, 'fifty ....

Tuy nhiên mẫu trọng âm này có thể thay đổi khi từ chỉ số đếm xuất hiện ở trong câu.

Ví dụ: khi nó đứng trước danh từ thì trọng âm của nó là: 'nineteen people...

### 6) Trọng âm ở các từ ghép

**a. Hầu hết danh từ ghép và tính từ ghép có trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết đầu tiên.**

/dishwasher, /filmmaker, /typewriter, /praiseworthy, /waterproof, /lightning-fast ...

**Ngoại lệ:** duty-/free, snow -/white

**b. Tính từ ghép có từ đầu tiên là tính từ hoặc trạng từ thì trọng âm chính rơi vào từ thứ 2, tận cùng là động từ phân từ 2.**

**Eg:** well-/done, well-/informed, short-/sighted, bad-/tempered

**c. Các trạng từ và động từ ghép có trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2.**

up/stairs, down/stairs, down-/grade, ill-/treat, ...



## 7) Trọng âm của các động từ thành ngữ (Phrasal verbs):

a. Nếu cụm động từ thành ngữ có chức năng là một danh từ trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

Eg: 'setup (n): sự thu xếp                      'upset (n): sự quấy rầy  
'holdup (n): vụ cướp                      'lookout (n) người xem  
'checkout (n): việc thanh toán để rời (Khách sạn,..)  
etc.....

b. Nếu cụm động từ thành ngữ có chức năng là một động từ trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Eg: to set 'up: thu xếp                      to up 'set: làm thất vọng,  
to hold 'up: cầm, giữ                      to check 'out: trả phũng  
to look 'out: canh chừng  
etc...

## \* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

**Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word that has its underlined part pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. fascinate                      B. fashion                      C. fatten                      D. fatigue
2. A. balance                      B. bake                      C. brave                      D. station
3. A. fathon                      B. fatality                      C. bakery                      D. example
4. A. bracket                      B. calendar                      C. calcuation                      D. emphasis
5. A. ballet                      B. ball                      C. catwalk                      D. salty
6. A. bellow                      B. belong                      C. below                      D. belongings
7. A. ascend                      B. assemble                      C. arrest                      D. athlete
8. A. December                      B. decency                      C. clement                      D. beneath
9. A. benefit                      B. depend                      C. develop                      D. telephone
10. A. kitchen                      B. comedy                      C. comet                      D. defeat
11. A. complicate                      B. confident                      C. commission                      D. compile
12. A. circumstance                      B. etiquette                      C. ability                      D. cigarette

- |                          |                     |                       |                        |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 13. A. <u>decide</u>     | B. <u>thirteen</u>  | C. <u>circulation</u> | D. <u>circus</u>       |
| 14. A. <u>combine</u>    | B. <u>silent</u>    | C. <u>arise</u>       | D. <u>wind</u>         |
| 15. A. <u>expedition</u> | B. <u>pencil</u>    | C. <u>liberate</u>    | D. <u>consider</u>     |
| 16. A. <u>head</u>       | B. <u>feature</u>   | C. <u>theatre</u>     | D. <u>teacher</u>      |
| 17. A. <u>now</u>        | B. <u>show</u>      | C. <u>borrow</u>      | D. <u>slow</u>         |
| 18. A. <u>picture</u>    | B. <u>culture</u>   | C. <u>pure</u>        | D. <u>nature</u>       |
| 19. A. <u>new</u>        | B. <u>sew</u>       | C. <u>few</u>         | D. <u>nephew</u>       |
| 20. A. <u>thief</u>      | B. <u>piece</u>     | C. <u>tie</u>         | D. <u>niece</u>        |
| 21. A. <b>great</b>      | B. <b>ground</b>    | C. <b>August</b>      | D. <b>intelligence</b> |
| 22. A. <u>column</u>     | B. <u>known</u>     | C. <u>phone</u>       | D. <u>kind</u>         |
| 23. A. <b>bomb</b>       | B. <b>thumb</b>     | C. <b>lamb</b>        | D. <b>blue</b>         |
| 24. A. <u>university</u> | B. <u>unique</u>    | C. <u>undo</u>        | D. <u>unit</u>         |
| 25. A. <u>programs</u>   | B. <u>subjects</u>  | C. <u>individuals</u> | D. <u>celebrations</u> |
| 26. A. <u>ploughs</u>    | B. <u>laughs</u>    | C. <u>coughs</u>      | D. <u>paragraphs</u>   |
| 27. A. <b>reformed</b>   | B. <b>appointed</b> | C. <b>stay</b>        | D. <b>installed</b>    |
| 28. A. <b>supposed</b>   | B. <b>admired</b>   | C. <b>collected</b>   | D. <b>posed</b>        |
| 29. A. <u>verb</u>       | B. <u>here</u>      | C. <u>Deer</u>        | D. <u>engineer</u>     |
| 30. A. <u>loud</u>       | B. <u>amount</u>    | C. <u>found</u>       | D. <u>you</u>          |

**Exercise 2: Choose the word with the main stress placed differently from that of the others in each group.**

- |                  |                |                |               |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. mysterious | B. generous    | C. extensive   | D. pollution  |
| 2. A. exchange   | B. purpose     | C. casual      | D. fashion    |
| 3. A. efficiency | B. environment | C. communicate | D. reputation |
| 4. A. encourage  | B. pagoda      | C. material    | D. grocery    |
| 5. A. provide    | B. prevent     | C. cover       | D. receive    |
| 6. A. national   | B. engineer    | C. figure      | D. scientist  |

7. A. social                      B. electric                      C. contain                      D. important
8. A. money                      B. annual                      C. metal                      D. design
9. A. convenient                      B. dependent                      C. deposit                      D. different
10. A. provide                      B. combine                      C. service                      D. account
11. A follow                      B. apology                      C. experienced                      D. direct
12. A. adulthood                      B. January                      C. maximum                      D. appropriate
13. A. sociologist                      B. developmental                      C. contemporary                      D. contributing
14. A. appliances                      B. scenario                      C. interviewer                      D. responsible
15. A. interpret                      B. suspicious                      C. etiquettes                      D. dishonest
16. A. formality                      B. acquaintance                      C. regarded                      D. ircumstance
17. A. surprised                      B. secure                      C. contact                      D. suggest
18. A. associate                      B. superior                      C. equivalent                      D. European
19. A. disrespectful                      B. untrustworthy                      C. astonishment                      D. acceptable
20. A. disciple                      B. depending                      C. influence                      D. discover
21. A. collaborate                      B. university                      C. curriculum                      D. development
22. A. institution                      B. destination                      C. qualification                      D. sociology
23. A. employee                      B. successful                      C. volunteer                      D. linguistics
24. A. particular                      B. representative                      C. international                      D. diplomatic
25. A. qualified                      B. deposit                      C. submitted                      D. semester
26. A. appropriate                      B. authorities                      C. academic                      D. admission
27. A. junior                      B. acceptance                      C. applicant                      D. excellent
28. A. examination                      B. international                      C. documentary                      D. institution
29. A. success                      B. records                      C. admit                      D. result
30. A. appointment                      B. ambition                      C. applicant                      D. diploma
31. A. vacancy                      B. interview                      C. manager                      D. employer

- |                    |                 |                  |                |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 32. A. accountancy | B. enthusiasm   | C. certificate   | D. profitable  |
| 33. A. academic    | B. inaccurate   | C. managerial    | D. unexpected  |
| 34. A. asset       | B. council      | C. project       | D. advance     |
| 35. A. account     | B. retail       | C. outing        | D. venue       |
| 36. A. agenda      | B. dynamics     | C. manager       | D. deposit     |
| 37. A. subsequent  | B. immature     | C. practical     | D. personal    |
| 38. A. community   | B. entrepreneur | C. activity      | D. academy     |
| 39. A. rhetoric    | B. dynamic      | C. climatic      | D. phonetic    |
| 40. A. medieval    | B. malarial     | C. mediocre      | D. magnificent |
| 41. A. domestic    | B. dormitory    | C. dogmatic      | D. deliberate  |
| 42. A. redundant   | B. acquainted   | C. reluctant     | D. microscopic |
| 43. A. desert      | B. dessert      | C. centre        | D. circle      |
| 44. A. government  | B. expansion    | C. excitement    | D. fixation    |
| 45. A. environment | B. petroleum    | C. criterion     | D. temperature |
| 46. A. brushwood   | B. sandstorm    | C. effect        | D. farmland    |
| 47. A. animal      | B. mosquito     | C. banana        | D. Sahara      |
| 48. A. endangered  | B. destruction  | C. deforestation | D. extinction  |
| 49. A. environment | B. conservation | C. endangerment  | D. existence   |
| 50. A. vulnerable  | B. appropriate  | C. commercial    | D. inaccurate  |

### CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19

#### KỸ NĂNG ĐỌC (READING SKILLS)

##### A. CLOZE TESTS

A cloze test consists a text passage with some certain word removed (cloze text), test taker must replace the missing words from the given options. Usually students are given four choices. One choice is the best answer. The second is almost as good. The third is off the point. The fourth is the opposite of the correct answer.

- First, slowly read all the text **without** filling any of the gaps. Read it two or three times until you have a clear understanding of what the text is about.
- Then **only** complete the gaps you are absolutely sure of.
- Next try and find out what the missing words in the remaining gaps are. See which **part of speech** may fit in each gap (article?, pronoun?, noun?, adverb?, adjective?, preposition?, conjunction?, verb?) and pay special attention to the **grammar** around the words in each gap.

Many of the gaps may include the following:

- *preposition* following a noun, adjective or verb. (Example: good *at* languages)
- *prepositional phrase*. (Example: in spite *of*)
- *adverb*. (Example: He moved to London two years *ago*)
- *connector*. (Example: First, he arrives; *then* he sits down; finally, he leaves.)
- *conjunction*. (Example: *Although* he is five, he can speak five languages.)
- *auxiliary verb*. (Example: He *has* won 2 matches)
- an *article* or some other kind of determiner. (Example: I have *no* time)
- a *relative*. (Example: Bob, *who* I met two years ago, is my best friend)
- a *pronoun*, either subject or object. (Example: *it* is difficult to know)
- is there a *comparative* or *superlative* involved? (Example: she's taller *than* me)
- Some sentences may seem to be complete and contain gaps that appear to be unnecessary. If you find gaps like this, you will probably need the following:
  - *an adverb*. (Example: He is *always* late)
  - *a modal verb*. (Example: They *can* swim very well)
  - a word to change the *emphasis* of the sentence: She's good *enough* to be queen
  - The problems are *too* difficult
- A few gaps may demand a **vocabulary item** consistent with the topic of the text; or a word which is part of an idiomatic expression (example: *Good heavens!*); or a word which collocates with another one (example: *do a job*); or a word which is part of a phrasal verb (example: I was *held up* by traffic).

## EXERCISES

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word or phrase that best fits each of the blank:**

### **PASSAGE 1**

Clean freshwater resources are essential for drinking, bathing, cooking, irrigation, industry, and for plant and animal (1) \_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, the global supply of freshwater is (2) \_\_\_\_\_ unevenly. Chronic

water shortages (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in most of Africa and drought is common over much of the globe. The (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of most freshwater supplies - groundwater (water located below the soil surface), reservoirs, and rivers - are under severe and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ environmental stress because of overuse, water pollution, and ecosystem degradation. Over 95 percent of urban sewage in (6) \_\_\_\_\_ countries is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ untreated into surface waters such as rivers and harbors;

About 65 percent of the global freshwater supply is used in (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and 25 percent is used in industry. Freshwater (9) \_\_\_\_\_ therefore requires a reduction in wasteful practices like (10) \_\_\_\_\_ irrigation, reforms in agriculture and industry, and strict pollution controls worldwide.

- |                         |                        |                   |                       |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. survive           | B. survived            | C. surviving      | <b>D. survival</b>    |
| 2. A. delivered         | <b>B. distributed</b>  | C. provided       | D. given              |
| 3. <b>A. exist</b>      | B. lie                 | C. show           | D. litay              |
| 4. A. resources         | B. springs             | <b>C. sources</b> | D. starting           |
| 5. <b>A. increasing</b> | B. growing             | C. climbing       | D. ascending          |
| 6. A. growing           | B. miserable           | C. poverty        | <b>D. developing</b>  |
| 7. A. recharged         | <b>B. discharged</b>   | C. charged        | D. discharging        |
| 8. <b>A. farming</b>    | B. planting            | C. agriculture    | D. growing            |
| 9. A. reservation       | <b>B. conservation</b> | C. preservation   | D. retention          |
| 10. A. ineffective      | B. illogical           | C. irrational     | <b>D. inefficient</b> |

## PASSAGE 2

Some time ago, scientists began experiments to find out (1) \_\_\_\_\_ it would be possible to set up a "village" under the sea. A special room was built and lowered (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the water of Port Sudan in the Red Sea. For 29 days, five men lived (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a depth of 40 feet. At a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ lower level, another two divers stayed for a week in a smaller "house". On returning to the surface, the men said that they had experienced no difficulty in breathing and had (5) \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting scientific observations. The captain of the party, Commander Cousteau, spoke of the possibility of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the seabed. He said that some permanent stations were to be set up under the sea, and some undersea farms would provide food for the growing population of the world.

The divers in both "houses" spent most of their time (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the bottom of the sea. On four occasions, they went down to 360 feet and observed many extraordinary (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of the marine life, some of which had never been seen before. During their stay, Commander Cousteau and his divers reached a depth of 1,000 feet and witnessed a gathering of an immense (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of crabs which numbered, perhaps, hundreds of millions. They also found out that it was (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to move rapidly in the water in a special vessel known as a "diving saucer".

- |                   |                     |                  |                       |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. which       | B. what             | C. how           | <b>D. whether</b>     |
| 2. A. underneath  | <b>B. into</b>      | C. down          | D. below              |
| 3. A. in          | <b>B. at</b>        | C. on            | D. from               |
| 4. A. any         | B. more             | <b>C. much</b>   | D. some               |
| 5. <b>A. made</b> | B. exercised        | C. caught        | D. done               |
| 6. A. implanting  | B. transplanting    | C. growing       | <b>D. cultivating</b> |
| 7. A. inquiring   | <b>B. exploring</b> | C. imploring     | D. enquiring          |
| 8. A. systems     | <b>B. forms</b>     | C. breeds        | D. castes             |
| 9. A. pack        | B. herd             | <b>C. school</b> | D. flock              |
| 10. A. able       | <b>B. possible</b>  | C. hardly        | D. capable            |

## PASSAGE 3

Eight out of ten British schools require students to wear school uniforms. Wearing a uniform has been ... (1) ..... as part of British school tradition for a long time, and makes a good ... (2) ... on people. Some schools have used the idea of school uniform as a(n) (3) ..... to let the students ... (4) ... themselves by designing their uniform so they could (5) ..... a part in deciding what they would wear every day.

The UK government has just ... (6) ..... the results of a study which showed that many parents actually dread the beginning of the school year because they cannot (7) ... to buy their children school uniforms. This is because schools in many areas make arrangements with one local shop so that their uniforms can only be bought there, and this (8) ... the shop to increase the prices because it doesn't have any ... (9) ... The result of the survey is that pressure will now be put on schools to (10) ..... with the problem and make sure that uniforms can be bought at reasonable prices.

- |                   |                |                |               |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. regarded    | B. considered  | C. thought     | D. supposed   |
| 2. A. effect      | B. reaction    | C. recognition | D. impression |
| 3. A. opportunity | B. ability     | C. potential   | D. benefit    |
| 4. A. convey      | B. express     | C. produce     | D. identify   |
| 5. A. take        | B. make        | C. play        | D. turn       |
| 6. A. told        | B. discovered  | C. portrayed   | D. announced  |
| 7. A. participate | B. allow       | C. pay         | D. afford     |
| 8. A. suits       | B. lets        | C. enables     | D. manages    |
| 9. A. critic      | B. competition | C. consequence | D. risk       |
| 10. A. affect     | B. manage      | C. relate      | D. deal       |

**PASSAGE 4**

**THE HISTORY OF BEACH VOLLEYBALL.**

Beach volleyball is played by people around the world. For some, it is a serious sport. For others, it is simply an enjoyable... (1).... which helps them to.... (2)..... fit. It was probably first played in Hawaii in 1915.... (3)....., surfers played this game once in a.... (4)....., as they were waiting for the right kind of waves to go surfing. But it soon developed into a more serious game and matches started taking place.. (5)....

Later the game reached California and in 1920, people began playing beach volleyball there. They discovered it was a great way to work.. (6)... and get plenty of..... (7).... air at the same time. Another reason for the game's.. (8)..... was that it was very cheap. Soon, volleyball nets began appearing on beaches in California and interest in the sport.... (9)....

At first, there were six players on each side as in indoor volleyball. But one day in 1930, when only four people turned up for a match, they.. (10)... to play two on each side- which is how we play the game today.

- |                |            |           |          |
|----------------|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. A. activity | B. athlete | C. method | D. habit |
| 2. A. make     | B. do      | C. keep   | D. take  |

- |                        |                   |                      |                      |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 3. A. Luckily          | B. Particularly   | C. Properly          | <b>D. Apparently</b> |
| 4. A. time             | B. day            | <b>C. while</b>      | D. week              |
| <b>5. A. regularly</b> | B. successfully   | C. correctly         | D. probably          |
| 6. A. off              | B. up             | C. on                | <b>D. out</b>        |
| 7. A. clear            | <b>B. fresh</b>   | C. cool              | D. good              |
| 8. A. benefit          | B. attention      | <b>C. popularity</b> | D. fun               |
| 9. A. strengthened     | B. repeated       | C. improved          | <b>D. grew</b>       |
| 10. A. considered      | <b>B. decided</b> | C. included          | D. explained         |

### **PASSAGE 5**

English is the (1).....important in the world today. A very large (2)..... of people understand and use English in many (3)..... of the world.

Indeed English is a very useful language. If we (4).....English we can go to any place or country we like. We shall not find it hard to (5)..... people understand what we want to say.

English also helps us to learn all kinds of subjects. Hundreds of books are (6)..... in English everyday in many countries to teach people many useful things. (7)..... English language has therefore helped to spread ideas and knowledge to all the corners of the world. There is no subject that cannot be (8)..... in English.

As English is used so much everywhere in the world, it has helped to make the countries in the world more (9)..... The leaders of the world use English to understand one another. The English language has, therefore, helped to spread better understanding and friendship among countries of the world.

Lastly, a person who knows English is respected. It is for all these (10).....that I want to learn English

- |                        |                    |                  |                  |
|------------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. <b>A. most</b>      | B. mostly          | C. chiefly       | D. best          |
| 2. A. few              | B. deal            | <b>C. amount</b> | <b>D. number</b> |
| 3. <b>A. countries</b> | B. places          | C. sites         | D. scenes        |
| 4. A. realize          | B. say             | <b>C. speak</b>  | D. tell          |
| 5. A. get              | B. let             | C. persuade      | <b>D. make</b>   |
| 6. <b>A. published</b> | B. wrote           | C. print         | D. made          |
| 7. A. A                | B. An              | C. That          | <b>D. The</b>    |
| 8. A. recognized       | B. realized        | C. known         | <b>D. taught</b> |
| 9. A. friend           | <b>B. friendly</b> | C. friendship    | D. friendliness  |
| 10. <b>A. reasons</b>  | B. causes          | C. effects       | D. results       |



## **PASSAGE 6**

Nowadays people are more aware that the wildlife all over the world is in danger. Many (1)..... of animals are threatened, and could easily become extinct if we do not make an effort to(2).....

There are many reasons for this. In some cases, animals are (3).....for their fur or for other valuable parts of their bodies. Some birds, such as parrots, are caught (4)....., and sold as pets. For many animals and birds, the problem is that their habitat- the place where they live – is (5)..... More (6) ..... is used for farms, for houses or industry, and there are fewer open (7).....than there once were. Farmers use powerful chemicals to help them grow better (8)....., but these chemicals pollute the environment and (9).....wildlife. The most successful animal on earth- human being – will soon be the only ones (10)....., unless we can solve this problem.

- |                      |                        |                |                  |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. <b>A. species</b> | B. series              | C. kinds       | D. families      |
| 2. A. harm           | <b>B. protect</b>      | C. safe        | D. serve         |
| 3. A. extinct        | B. game                | C. chased      | <b>D. hunted</b> |
| 4. <b>A. alive</b>   | B. for life            | C. for living  | D. lively        |
| 5. A. exhausting     | <b>B. disappearing</b> | C. departing   | D. escaping      |
| 6. A. earth          | B. soil                | <b>C. land</b> | D. area          |
| 7. A air             | B. up                  | C. parts       | <b>D. spaces</b> |
| 8. <b>A. crops</b>   | B. products            | C. fields      | D. herbs         |
| 9. A. spoil          | <b>B. harm</b>         | C. wound       | D. wrong         |
| 10. A. survived      | B. over                | <b>C. left</b> | D. missing       |

## **PASSAGE 7**

Although women now (1)\_\_\_almost half of all workers in the US, nearly 80 percent of them are employed in low-paying clerical, sales, service, or factory jobs. Approximately a third of all women workers have clerical jobs, which pay(2)\_\_\_average \$12,000 or less. Partly as a result, women make only seventy-five cents for every dollar (3)\_\_\_by men. (4)\_\_\_\_, men routinely make more money even when education, experience, and responsibilities are (5)\_\_\_

The gap in male-female earning had great significance because more than 16 percent of US households are (6)\_\_\_by women. Low-paying jobs keep many of these households in poverty. Women's groups such as National Organization for Women have demanded that equal opportunities and equal pay (7)\_\_\_\_\_to women. According to women's (8)\_\_\_Maggie McAnany, "It is imperative that the government help to change the stiation (of employment for women). We cannot wait for the companies to (9)\_\_\_\_\_themselves. Change must come (10)\_\_\_\_\_the law. "

- |                 |                   |                    |                  |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. made of   | <b>B. make up</b> | C. take up         | D. take in       |
| 2. <b>A. on</b> | B. at             | C. in              | D. for           |
| 3. A. earns     | B. earning        | C. to earn         | <b>D. earned</b> |
| 4. A. Although  | B. Whatever       | <b>C. Moreover</b> | D. Contrary      |

- |                     |                   |                    |                    |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 5. A. equally       | B. equality       | <b>C. equal</b>    | D. equalizing      |
| 6. <b>A. headed</b> | B. hosted         | C. carried         | D. licensed        |
| 7. A. are giving    | B. are given      | C. is giving       | <b>D. be given</b> |
| 8. A. action        | B. activity       | <b>C. activist</b> | D. active          |
| 9. A. restore       | B. regain         | C. regard          | <b>D. reform</b>   |
| 10. A. for          | <b>B. through</b> | C. at              | D. along           |

### **PASSAGE 8**

If you are invited to someone's house for dinner in the United States, you should (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a gift, such as a bunch of flowers or a box of chocolates. If you give your host a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ gift, he/she may open it in front of you. Opening a present in front of the gift-giver is considered (3) \_\_\_\_\_. It shows that the host is excited about receiving the gift and wants to show his/her (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to you immediately. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the host doesn't like it, he/she will tell a "(6) \_\_\_\_\_ lie" and say how much they like the gift to prevent the guest from feeling bad. If your host asks you to arrive at a particular time, you should not arrive (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on time or earlier than the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ time, because this is considered to be potentially inconvenient and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ rude, as the host may not be (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |                           |                   |                     |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. take                | B give            | <b>C. bring</b>     | D. make           |
| 2. A. unwanted            | B valuable        | C. unpacked         | <b>D. wrapped</b> |
| 3. A. rude                | <b>B. polite</b>  | C. impolite         | D. funny          |
| 4. <b>A. appreciation</b> | B. admiration     | C. respect          | D. enjoyment      |
| 5. A. Since               | B. Only if        | <b>C. Even if</b>   | D. Whether        |
| 6. A. great               | B. obvious        | C. deliberate       | <b>D. white</b>   |
| 7. A. gradually           | <b>B. exactly</b> | C. perfectly        | D. recently       |
| 8. <b>A. expected</b>     | B. permitted      | C. waited           | D. wasted         |
| 9. A. however             | B. never          | <b>C. therefore</b> | D. consequently   |
| 10. A. willing            | <b>B. ready</b>   | C. welcome          | D. waiting        |

### **PASSAGE 9**

Interpreting the feelings of other people is not always easy, as we all know, and we (1)..... as much on what they seem to be telling us, as on the actual words they say. Facial (2)..... and tone of voice are obvious ways of showing our reaction to something, and it may well be that we (3).... express views that we are trying to hide. The art of being (4)..... ..lies in picking up these signals, realising what the other person is trying to say, and acting so that they are not embarrassed in any way. For example, we may understand that they are in fact (5)... .. to answer our question, and so we stop pressing them. Body movements in general may also indicate feelings, and interviewers often (6)..... ..particular attention to the way a candidate for a job walks into the room and sits down. However, it is not difficult to present the right kind of appearance while what many employers want to know relates to the candidate's character traits, and (7)... .. stability. This raises the awkward question of whether job candidates should be asked to complete psychological tests, and the further problem of whether such tests actually produce reliable results. For many people, being asked to take part in such a test would be an objectionable (8)..... .. into their private lives.

After all, a prospective employer would hardly ask a candidate to run a hundred metres, or expect his or her family doctor to provide (9)..... .... medical information. Quite apart from this problem, can such tests predict whether a person is likely to be a (10)..... .....employee or a valued colleague?

- |                     |               |                  |                  |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. estimate      | B. rely       | C. reckon        | D. trust         |
| 2. A. looks         | B. expression | C. image         | D. manner        |
| 3. A. unconsciously | B. rarely     | C. unaware       | D. cannot        |
| 4. A. good at       | B. humble     | C. tactful       | D. successful    |
| 5. A. reluctant     | B. used       | C. tending       | D. hesitant      |
| 6. A. set           | B. again      | C. in            | D. pay           |
| 7. A. similar       | B. physical   | C. psychological | D. relevant      |
| 8. A. invasion      | B. intrusion  | C. infringement  | D. interference  |
| 9. A. classified    | B. secretive  | C. reticent      | D. confidential  |
| 10. A. thorough     | B. particular | C. labourious    | D. conscientious |

### **PASSAGE 10**

Ask anyone over forty to make a comparison (1).....the past and the present and nine out of ten people will tell you that things have been getting (2)..... worse for as long as they can remember. Take the weather for example, which has been behaving rather strangely lately. Everyone remembers that in their childhood the summers were (3).....hotter, and that winter always included abundant falls of snow just when the school holidays had started. Of course, the food in those days was far superior too, as nothing was imported and everything was fresh. Unemployment was (4) ....., the pound really was worth something, and you could buy a sizeable house even if your means were (5)..... And above all, people were somehow better in those days, far more friendly, not inclined to crime or violence, and spent their free time making modern boats and tending their stamp collections (6)..... than gazing at the television screen for hours on end. As we know that this picture of the past (7).....cannot be true, and there are plenty of statistics dealing with health and prosperity which prove that it is not true, why is it that we all have a (8)..... to idealize the past? Is this simply nostalgia? Or is it rather that we need to believe in an image of the world which is (9) ..... the opposite of what we see around us? Whichever it is, at least it leaves us with a nagging feeling that the present could be better, and perhaps (10)..... us to be a little more critical about the way we live.

- |                |               |              |                 |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. with     | B. from       | C. between   | D. in           |
| 2. A. out      | B. so         | C. virtually | D. steadily     |
| 3. A. not only | B. at least   | C. rarely    | D. considerably |
| 4. A. petty    | B. negligible | C. miniature | D. trivial      |
| 5. A. mediocre | B. confined   | C. rationed  | D. limited      |

- |                     |                      |                    |                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. other         | <b>B. rather</b>     | C. usually         | D. different    |
| <b>7. A. simply</b> | B. hardly            | C. especially      | D. specifically |
| 8. A. habit         | B. custom            | <b>C. tendency</b> | D. practice     |
| <b>9. A. quite</b>  | B. widely            | C. utterly         | D. rather       |
| 10. A. reassures    | <b>B. encourages</b> | C. makes           | D. supports     |

## **B. READING COMPREHENSION**

### **STRATEGIES FOR THE READING COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS.**

- Skim the reading passage to determine the main idea and the overall organization of ideas in the passage.** You do not need to understand every detail in each passage to answer the questions correctly. It is therefore a waste of time to read the passage with the intent of understanding every single detail before you try to answer the questions.
- Look ahead at the questions to determine what types of questions you must answer.** Each type of questions is answered in a different way.
- Find the section of the passage that deals with each question.** The question type tells you exactly where to look in the passage to find correct answers.
  - *For main idea questions, look at the first line of each paragraph*
  - *For directly and indirectly answered detail questions, choose a key word in the question, and skim for that key word (or a related idea) in order in the passage.*
  - *For vocabulary questions, the question will tell you where the word is located in the passage.*
  - *For overall review questions, the answers are found anywhere in the passage.*
- Read the part of the passage that contains the answer carefully.** The answer will probably in the same sentence (or one sentence before or after) the key word or idea.
- Choose the best answer to each question from the four answer choices listed.** You can choose the best answer according to what is given in the appropriate section of the passage, eliminate definitely wrong answer, and mark your best guess on the answer sheet.  
Questions about the ideas of the passage

### **SKILL I: ANSWER MAIN IDEA QUESTIONS CORRECTLY**

<b>MAIN IDEA QUESTIONS</b>	
<b>HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION</b>	What is the <b>topic</b> of the passage?
	What is the <b>subject</b> of the passage?
	What is the <b>main idea</b> of the passage?
	What is the author's <b>main point</b> in the passage?

	<p>With what is the author <b>primarily concerned</b>?</p> <p>Which of the following would be the <b>best title</b>?</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answers to this type of question can generally be determined by looking at the first sentence of each paragraph.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Read the first line of each paragraph.</li> <li>2. Look for a common theme or idea in the first lines.</li> <li>3. Pass your eyes quickly over the rest of the passage to check that you have really found the topic sentence(s).</li> <li>4. Eliminate any definitely wrong answers and choose the best answer from the remaining choices.</li> </ol>

## SKILL 2: RECOGNIZE THE ORGANIZATION OF IDEAS

<b>ORGANIZATION OF IDEAS</b>	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>How is the information in the passage <b>organized</b>?</p> <p>How is the information in the second paragraph related to the information in the first paragraph?</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answer to this type of question can generally be determined by looking at the first sentence of the appropriate paragraphs
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Read the first line of each paragraph</li> <li>2. Look for words that show the relationship between the paragraphs</li> <li>3. Choose the answer that best expresses the relationship</li> </ol>

## SKILL 3: ANSWER STATED DETAIL QUESTIONS CORRECTLY

<b>STATED DETAIL QUESTIONS</b>	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p><b>According to</b> the passage...</p> <p>It is <b>stated</b> in the passage...</p> <p>The passage <b>indicates</b> that...</p> <p>Which of the following is <b>true..</b> ?</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answers to these questions are found in the passage.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose a key word in the question.</li> <li>2. Skim in the appropriate part of the passage for the key word or idea.</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Read the sentence that contains the key word or idea carefully.</li> <li>4. Eliminate the definitely wrong answers and choose the best answer from the remaining choices.</li> </ol>
--	--

#### SKILL 4: FIND “UNSTATED” DETAILS

<b>“UNSTATED” DETAIL QUESTIONS</b>	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>Which of the following is <b>not stated</b>...?</p> <p>Which of the following is <b>not mentioned</b>...?</p> <p>Which of the following is <b>not discussed</b>...?</p> <p>All of the following are true <b>except</b>...</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answers to these questions are found in order in the passage.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose a key word in the question.</li> <li>2. Scan the appropriate place in the passage for the key word (or related idea).</li> <li>3. Read the sentence that contains the key word or idea carefully.</li> <li>4. Look for the answers that are definitely true according to the passage. Eliminate those answers.</li> <li>5. Choose the answer that is not true or not discussed in the passage.</li> </ol>

#### SKILL 5: FIND PRONOUN REFERENTS

<b>PRONOUN REFERENTS</b>	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	The pronoun “...” in line X refers to which of the following?
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The line where the pronoun is located is given in the question. The noun that the pronoun refers to is generally found before the pronoun.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Locate the pronoun in the passage.</li> <li>2. Look before the pronoun for nouns that agree with the pronoun.</li> <li>3. Try each of the nouns in the context in place of the pronoun.</li> <li>4. Eliminate any definitely wrong answers and choose the best answer from the remaining choices.</li> </ol>

## SKILL 6- ANSWER IMPLIED DETAIL QUESTIONS CORRECTLY

IMPLIED DETAIL QUESTIONS	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>It is <b>implied</b> in the passage that .....</p> <p>It can be <b>inferred</b> from the passage that ....</p> <p>It is most <b>likely</b> that ....</p> <p>What <b>probably</b> happened .... ?</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answers to these questions are generally found in order in the passage.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose a key word in the question</li> <li>2. Scan the passage for the key word (or a related idea)</li> <li>3. Carefully read the sentence that contains the key word</li> <li>4. Look for an answer that could be true, according to that sentence</li> </ol>

## SKILL 7: ANSWER TRANSITION QUESTIONS CORRECTLY

TRANSITION QUESTIONS	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>The paragraph <b>preceding</b> the passage probably ...</p> <p>What is the most likely in the paragraph <b>following</b> the passage?</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answers can generally be found in the first line of the passage for a preceding question. The answer can generally be found in the last line for a following question.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Read the first line for a <i>preceding</i> question.</li> <li>2. Read the last line for a <i>following</i> question.</li> <li>3. Draw a conclusion about what comes before or after.</li> <li>4. Choose the answer that is reflected in the first or last line of the passage.</li> </ol>

## SKILL 8: FIND DEFINITIONS FROM STRUCTURAL CLUES

STRUCTURAL CLUES		
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>What is the <b>meaning</b> of “X” in line Y?</p> <p>The word “X” in line Y is <b>closest in meaning</b> to...</p> <p>The word “X” in line Y <b>could best to replaced</b> by...</p>	
TYPES OF CLUES	Punctuation	comma, parentheses, dashes
	Restatement	or, that is, in other words, i. e.

	Examples	such as, for example, e. g.
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	Information to help you determine what something means will generally be found the punctuation clue, the restatement clue, or the example clue.	
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Find the word in the passage.</li> <li>2. Locate any structural clues.</li> <li>3. Read the part of the passage after the structural clue carefully.</li> <li>4. Eliminate any definitely wrong answers and choose the best answer from the remaining choices.</li> </ol>	

### SKILL 9: DETERMINE MEANINGS FROM WORD PARTS

When you are asked to determine the meaning of a long word that you do not know in the reading section The following chart contains a few word parts that you will need to know.

A SHORT LIST OF WORD PARTS					
PART	MEANING	EXAMPLE	PART	MEANING	EXAMPLE
CONTRA	(against)	<i>contrast</i>	DIC	(say)	<i>dictate</i>
MAL	(bad)	<i>malcontent</i>	DOMIN	(master)	<i>dominant</i>
MIS	(error)	<i>mistake</i>	JUD	(judge)	<i>judgment</i>
SUB	(under)	<i>subway</i>	MOR	(death)	<i>mortal</i>
DEC	(ten)	<i>decade</i>	SPEC	(see)	<i>spectator</i>
MULTI	(many)	<i>multiple</i>	TERR	(earth)	<i>territory</i>
SOL	(one)	<i>solo</i>	VER	(turn)	<i>divert</i>
TRI	(three)	<i>triple</i>	VIV	(live)	<i>revive</i>

### SKILL 10: USE CONTEXT TO DETERMINE MEANINGS OF DIFFICULT WORDS

VOCABULARY QUESTIONS CONTAINING DIFFICULT WORDS	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>What is the <b>meaning</b> of “X” in line Y?</p> <p>The word “X” in line Y is <b>closest in meaning</b> to....</p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	Information to help you understand the meaning of an unknown word can often be found in the context surrounding the unknown word.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Find the word in the passage.</li> <li>2. Read the sentence that contains the word carefully.</li> <li>3. Look for context clues to help you understand the</li> </ol>



	<p>meaning.</p> <p>4. Choose the answer that the context indicates.</p>
--	---

**SKILL 11: USE CONTEXT TO DETERMINE MEANINGS OF SIMPLE WORDS**

VOCABULARY QUESTIONS CONTAINING SIMPLE WORDS	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>What is the <b>meaning</b> of “X” in line Y?</p> <p>The word “X” in line Y <b>could best to replaced by....</b></p>
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	Information to help you understand the secondary meaning of a simple word can often be found in the context surrounding the word.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Find the word in the passage.</li> <li>2. Read the sentence that contains the word carefully.</li> <li>3. Look for context clues to help you understand the meaning.</li> <li>4. Choose the answer that the context indicates.</li> </ol>

**SKILL 12: DETERMINE WHERE SPECIFIC INFORMATION IS FOUND**

QUESTIONS ABOUT WHERE IN THE PASSAGE	
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<b>Where</b> in the passage..... ?
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	The answer can be in any of the lines listed in the answers to the question.
HOW TO ANSWER THE QUESTION	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Choose a key word or idea in the question.</li> <li>2. Skim the appropriate part(s) of the passage looking for the key word or idea.</li> <li>3. Choose the answer that contains the key word or idea.</li> </ol>

**SKILL 13: DETERMINE THE TONE, PURPOSE, OR COURSE**

TONE, PURPOSE, OR COURSE		
HOW TO IDENTIFY THE QUESTION	<p>What is the <b>tone</b> of the passage?</p> <p>What is the author’s <b>purpose</b> in this passage?</p> <p>In which <b>course</b> would this reading be assigned</p>	
WHERE TO FIND THE ANSWER	tone	Look for clues throughout the passage that show if the author is showing some emotion rather than just pressing facts.
	purpose	Draw a conclusion about the purpose from the main idea and supporting ideas.
	course	Draw a conclusion about the course from the topic of the passage and the supporting ideas.
HOW TO ANSWER THE	Tone	1. Skim the passage looking for clues that the

QUESTION		author is showing some emotion. 2. Choose the answer that identifies the emotion.
	Purpose	1. Study the main idea in the topic sentence and the details used to support the main idea. 2. Draw a conclusion about the purpose.
	course	1. Study the main idea in the topic sentence and the details used to support the main idea. 2. Draw a conclusion about the course.

### EXERCISES

*Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions:*

#### **PASSAGE 1**

In the United States, presidential elections are held in years evenly divisible by four (1888, 1900, 1964, etc.). Since 1840, American presidents elected in years ending with zero have died in office, with one exception. William H. Harrison, the man who served the shortest term, died of pneumonia only several weeks after his **inauguration**.

Abraham Lincoln was one of four presidents who were **assassinated**. He was elected in 1860, and his untimely death came just five years later. James A. Garfield, a former Union army general from Ohio, was shot during his first year in office (1881) by a man to **whom** he wouldn't give a job. While in his second term of office (1901), William McKinley, another Ohioan, attended the Pan-American Exposition in Buffalo, New York. During the reception, he was assassinated while shaking hands with some of the guests. John F. Kennedy was assassinated in 1963 in Dallas only three years after his election.

Three years after his election in 1920, Warren G. Harding died in office. Although it was never proved, many believe he was poisoned. Franklin D. Roosevelt was elected four times (1932, 1936, 1940 and 1944), the only man to serve so long a term. He had **contracted** polio in 1921 and eventually died of the illness in 1945.

Ronald Reagan, who was elected in 1980 and reelected four years later, suffered an assassination attempt but did not succumb to the assassin's bullets. He was the first to break the long chain of unfortunate events. Will the candidate in the election of 2020 also be as lucky?

1. All of the following were election years EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. 1960                      B. 1930                      C. 1888                      D. 1824
2. Which president served the shortest term in office?  
A. Abraham Lincoln    B. Warren G. Harding    C. William McKinley    D. William H. Harrison
3. Which of the following is true?  
A. All presidents elected in years ending in zero have died in office.

B. Only presidents from Ohio have died in office.

C. Franklin D. Roosevelt completed four terms as president.

D. Four American presidents have been assassinated.

4. How many presidents elected in years ending in zero since 1840 have died in office?  
A. 7                                      B. 5                                      C. 4                                      D. 3
5. The word "**inauguration**" in the first paragraph means most nearly the same as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. election                                      B. acceptance speech  
C. swearing-in ceremony                      D. campaign
6. All of the following presidents were assassinated EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. John F. Kennedy                      B. Franklin D. Roosevelt  
C. Abraham Lincoln                      D. James A. Garfield
7. The word "**whom**" in the second paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Garfield                                      B. Garfield's assassin                      C. a Union army general D. McKinley
8. The word "**assassinated**" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. murdered                                      B. decorated                                      C. honored                                      D. sickened
9. In the third paragraph, "**contracted**" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. communicated about                      B. developed                                      C. agree about                                      D. notified
10. How long did Warren G. Harding work as a president?  
A. 2 years                                      B. 3 years                                      C. 4 years                                      D. 4 years

## PASSAGE 2

After inventing dynamite, Swedish-born Alfred Nobel became a very rich man. However, he **foresaw** its universally destructive powers too late. Nobel preferred not to be remembered as the inventor of dynamite, so in 1895, just two weeks before his death, he created a fund to be used for awarding prizes to people who had made **worthwhile** contributions to mankind. Originally there were five awards: literature, physics, chemistry, medicine, and peace. Economics was added in 1968, just sixty-seven years after the first awards ceremony. Nobel's original **legacy** of nine million dollars was invested, and the interest on this sum is used for the awards which vary from \$30,000 to \$125,000. Every year on December 10, the anniversary of Nobel's death, the awards (gold medal, illuminated diploma, and money) are presented to the winners. Sometimes politics plays an important role in the judges' decisions. Americans have won numerous science awards, but relatively few literature prizes. No awards were presented from 1940 to 1942 at the beginning of World War II. Some people have won two prizes, but this is rare; others have shared their prizes. No awards were presented from 1940 to 1942 at the beginning of World War II. Some people have won two prizes, but this is rare; others have shared their prizes.

1. The word "**foresaw**" in the first paragraph is nearest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. prevailed                                      B. postponed                                      C. prevented                                      D. predicted
2. The Nobel prize was established in order to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A recognize worthwhile contributions to humanity                      B. resolve political differences  
C. honor the inventor of dynamite                      D. spend money

3. In which area have Americans received the most awards?  
A. Literature                      B. Peace                      C. Economics                      D. Science
4. All of the following statements are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Awards vary in monetary value  
B. ceremonies are held on December 10 to commemorate Nobel's invention  
C. Politics plays an important role in selecting the winners  
D. A few individuals have won two awards
5. In how many fields are prizes bestowed?  
A. 2                      B. 5                      C. 6                      D. 10
6. It is implied that Nobel's profession was in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. chemistry                      B. medicine                      C. literature                      D. science
7. In the first paragraph, "**worthwhile**" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. economic                      B. prestigious                      C. trivial                      D. valuable
8. How much money did Nobel leave for the prizes?  
A. \$30,000                      B. \$125,000  
C. \$155,000                      D. from \$30,000 to \$125,000
9. What is the main idea of this passage?  
A. Alfred Nobel became very rich when he invented dynamite.  
B. Alfred Nobel created awards in six categories for contributions to humanity.  
C. Alfred Nobel left all of his money to science  
D. Alfred Nobel made a lasting contribution to humanity
10. The word "**legacy**" in the second paragraph means most nearly the same as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. legend                      B. bequest                      C. prize                      D. debt

### **PASSAGE 3**

For more than six million American children, coming home after school means coming back to **an empty house**. Some deal with the situation by watching TV. Some may hide. But all of them have something in common. They spend part of each day alone. They are called "**latchkey children**". They are children who look after themselves while their parents work. And their bad condition has become a subject of concern.

Lynette Long was once the principle of an elementary school. She said, "We had a school rule against wearing jewelry. A lot of kids had chains around their necks with keys attached. I was constantly telling them to put the keys inside the shirts. There were so many keys; it never came to my mind what they meant." Slowly, she learned that they were house keys.

She and her husband began talking to the children who had keys. They learned of the effect working couples and single parents were having on their children. Fear was the biggest problem faced by children at home alone. One in three latchkey children the Longs talked to reported being frightened. Many had nightmares and were worried about their own safety.

The most common way latchkey children deal with their fears is by hiding. They may hide in a shower stall, under a bed or in a closet. The second is TV. They often turn the volume up. It's hard to get statistics on latchkey children, the Long have learned. Most parents are slow to admit that they leave their children alone.

1. The phrase "an empty house" in the passage mostly means.....
  - A. a house with nothing inside
  - B. a house with no people inside
  - C. a house with too much space
  - D. a house with no furniture
2. One thing that the children in the passage share is that.....
  - A. They all watch TV.
  - B. They all wear jewelry
  - C. They spend part of each day alone
  - D. they are from single- parent families.
3. The phrase " latchkey children" in the passage means children who.....
  - A. look after themselves while their parents are not at home
  - B. close doors with keys and watch TV by themselves
  - C. are locked inside houses with latches and keys.
  - D. like to carry latches and keys with them everywhere
4. The main problem of latchkey children is that they.....
  - A. watch too much television during the day
  - B. are growing in numbers.
  - C. suffer a lot from being left alone.
  - D. are also found in middle- class families
5. What is the main idea of the first paragraph?
  - A. Bad condition of latchkey children.
  - B. Children's activities at home
  - C. How kids spend free time
  - D. Why kids hate going home
6. Why did a lot of kids have chains around their necks with keys attached?
  - A. Schools didn't allow them wear jewelry, so they wore keys instead.
  - B. They would use the keys to enter their houses when they came home
  - C. They were fully grown and had become independent.
  - D. They had to use the keys to open school doors.
7. What do latchkey children suffer most from when they are at home alone?
  - A. Fear
  - B. Tiredness
  - C. Loneliness
  - D. Boredom
8. Lynette Long learned to latchkey children's problems by....

- A. talking to them
  - B. visiting their homes
  - C. interviewing their parents
  - D. delivering naires
9. What is the most common way for latchkey children to deal with fears?
- A. Talking to the Longs
  - B. Hiding somewhere
  - C. Lying under a TV
  - D. Having a shower
10. It's difficult to find out the number of latchkey children because.....
- A. they hide themselves in shower stalls or under beds
  - B. they do not give information about themselves for safety reasons
  - C. there are too many of them in the whole country
  - D. most parents are reluctant to admit that they leave their children alone

**PASSAGE 4**

American Online is one of the big names on the Internet, and unlikely many other digital companies, it actually makes a profit. But the company which its rivals call the “Cyber- cockroach” was launched only in 1992. Before that **it** was a small firm called control Video Corporation, and it made video games. Then Steve Case, a former Pizza Hut marketing executive arrived and took the company online, innovative, fast moving, and user- friendly, American Online appeals to people who want to surf the Internet, but who do not have a lot of experience. For the same reason “ **teachies**”, people who think they are more expert with computers, look down on American Online and its users. Recently, American Online (or AOL, as it calls itself) joined with Time Warner- a multi- million- dollar movie and magazine company- to create a multimedia giant.

Now, AOL has begun to expand abroad. In many Europe countries, including the United Kingdom, it is hard to buy a computer magazine that does not have a free AOL introductory offer. The company also puts advertisements onto the television, and employs people to hand out its free introductory disks at places like train stations. As the Internet gets faster AOL is changing. With many homes getting high- speed connections through fiber optic cables or the new ADSL technology, the “Cyber- cockroach” will have to show that, like real cockroaches, it can survive in almost any environment.

1. What is the passage about?
  - A. A computer company
  - B. A software company
  - C. An Internet Company
  - D. a video company
2. The word “**it**” refers to.....
  - A. An American Online
  - B. Cyber- Cockroach
  - C. Control Video Corporation
  - D. Digital company
3. Who does Steve Case work for?
  - A. AOL
  - B. Pizza Huts
  - C. Control Video Corporation
  - D. None of these

4. How do “teachies” feel about American Online?
- A. They think it is a Cyber- cockroach.                      B. They think it is for expert  
C. They think it is a movie and magazine company.      D. They feel superior to its users.
5. American Online has the following characteristics EXCEPT.....
- A. innovative      B. fast moving      C. user- friendly                      D. experienced
6. People who use American Online are probably.....
- A. video game players                      B. “teachies”  
C. movie fans                                      D. people new to the Internet
7. American Online is an unusual digital company because.....
- A. it used to make video games                      B. it is innovative  
C. it makes money                                      D. it has joined with another company
8. Which marketing idea is not mentioned?
- A. Advertisements on the Internet.                      B. Advertisements on TV  
C. Free disks in journals                                      D. people giving disks away
9. What does the articles say about AOL’s future?
- A. It will do well                                      B. it will do badly  
C. It will face challenges                                      D. The article doesn’t say
10. This passage is about.....
- A. technology                                      B. a history of the Internet  
C. computer users                                      D. a successful business

## **PASSAGE 5**

In addition to providing energy, fats have other **functions** in the body. The fat-soluble vitamins, A, D, E, and K, are dissolved in fats, as their name implies. Good source of these vitamins have high oil or fat content, and the vitamins are **stored in** the body’s fatty tissues. In the diet, fats cause food to remain longer in the stomach, thus increasing the feeling of fullness for some time after a meal is eaten.

Fats add variety, taste and texture to foods, which accounts for the popularity of fried foods. Fatty deposits in body have an insulating and protective value. The curves of the human female body are due mostly to strategically located fat deposits. Whether a certain amount of fat in the diet is **essential** to human health is not definitely known. When rats are fed a fat-free diet, their growth eventually ceases, their skin becomes inflamed and scaly and their reproductive systems are damaged. Two fatty acids, linoleic and arachidonic acids, prevents these **abnormalities** and hence are called essential fatty acids. They also required by a number of other animals, but their roles in human beings are debatable. Most nutritionists consider linoleic fatty acid an essential nutrient for humans.

**Question 1:** *The passage probably appears in which of the following?*

A. A diet book

**B. A book on basic nutrition**

C. A cook book

D. A popular women's magazine

**Question 2:** *The word "functions" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.*

A. forms

B. needs

**C. jobs**

D. sources

**Question 3:** *All of the following vitamins are stored in the body's fatty tissues EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.*

A. vitamin A

B. vitamin D

**C. vitamin B**

D. vitamin E

**Question 4:** *The phrase "stored in" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.*

A. manufactured in

B. attached to

C. measured by

**D. accumulated in**

**Question 5:** *The author states that fats serve all of the following body functions EXCEPT to \_\_\_\_\_.*

**A. promote the feeling of fullness**

B. insulate and protect the body

C. provide energy

D. control weight gain.

**Question 6:** *The word "essential" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.*

**A. required for**

B. desired for

C. similar to

D. beneficial to

**Question 7:** *Which of the following is true for rats when they are fed a fat-free diet?*

**A. They stop growing**

B. They have more babies

C. They lose body hair

D. They require less care

**Question 8:** *Linoleic fatty acid is mentioned as \_\_\_\_\_.*

**A. an essential nutrient for humans**

B. more useful than arachidonic acid

C. prevent weight gain in rats

D. a nutrient found in most foods

**Question 9:** *The phrases "abnormalities" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.*

A. a condition caused by fried foods.

B. strategically located fat deposits

C. curves of the human female body

**D. end of growth, bad skin, and damaged reproductive systems.**

**Question 10:** *That humans should all have some fat in our diets is \_\_\_\_\_.*

A. a commonly held view

B. not yet a proven fact

C. only true for women

**D. proven to be true by experiments on rats**

## **PASSAGE 6**

### **COLORS AND EMOTIONS**

Colors are one of the most exciting experiences in life. I love them, and they are just as important to me as emotions are. Have you ever wondered how the two are so **intimately** related?

Color directly affects your emotions. Color both reflects the current state of your emotions, and is something that you can use to improve or change your emotions. The color that you choose to wear either reflects your current state of being, or reflects the color or emotion that you need.



The colors that you wear affect you much more than they affect the people around you. Of course **they** also affect anyone who looks at or sees you, but you are the one **saturated with** the color all day! I even choose items around me based on their color. In the morning, I choose my clothes based on the color or emotion that I need for the day. So you can consciously use color to control the emotions that you are exposed to, which can help you to feel better.

Colors, sound, and emotions are all vibrations. Emotions are literally energy in motion; they are meant to move and flow. This is the reason why real feelings are the fastest way to get your energy in motion. Also, flowing energy is exactly what creates healthy cells in your body. So, the fastest way to be healthy is to be open to your real feelings. Alternately, the fastest way to create disease is to inhibit your emotions.

**Question 1:** *What is the main idea of the passage?*

- A. Colorful clothes can change your mood.
- B. Emotions and colors are closely related to each other.**
- C. Colors can help you become healthy.
- D. Colors are one of the most exciting.

**Question 2:** *Which of the following can be affected by color?*

- A. Your need for thrills.
- B. Your friend's feeling
- C. Your appetite.
- D. Your mood.**

**Question 3:** *Who is more influenced by colors you wear?*

- A. The people around you are more influenced.
- B. Neither A nor C.
- C. You are more influenced.**
- D. Both A and C.

**Question 4:** *According to the passage, what do color, sound, and emotion all have in common?*

- A. They all affect the cells of the body.
- B. are all forms of motion.
- C. They are all related to health.
- D. None of the above**

**Question 5:** *According to this passage, what creates disease?*

- A. Wearing the color black
- B. Exposing yourself to bright colors
- C. Being open to your emotions
- D. Inhibiting your emotions**

**Question 6:** *The word "intimately" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to:*

- A. clearly
- B. closely**
- C. obviously
- D. simply

**Question 7:** *The word "they" in paragraph 3 refers to.....*

- A. emotions
- B. people
- C. colors**
- D. none of the above

**Question 8:** *Why does the author mention that color and emotions are both vibrations?*

- A. To show how color can affect energy levels in the body.**
- B. Because they both affect how we feel.
- C. To prove the relationship between emotions and color.
- D. Because vibrations make you healthy.

**Question 9:** *The phrase "saturated with" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to.....*

- A. bored with
- B. in need of
- C. covered with**
- D. lacking in

**Question 10:** *What is the purpose of the passage?*

- A. To persuade the reader that colors can influence emotions and give a person more energy.
- B. To show that colors are important for a healthy life.
- C. To give an objective account of how colors affect emotions.
- D. To prove the relationship between color and emotion.

## PASSAGE 7

May 7, 1840, was the birthday of one of the most famous Russian composers of the nineteenth century Peter Illich Tchaikovsky. The son of a mining inspector, Tchaikovsky studied [music](#) as a child and later studied composition at the St. Petersburg Conservatory.

His greatest period of **productivity** occurred between 1876 and 1890, during which time he **enjoyed the patronage** of Madame von Meck, a woman he never met, who gave him a living stipend of about \$1,000.00 a year. Madame von Meck later **terminated** her friendship with Tchaikovsky, as well as his living allowance, when she, herself, was facing financial difficulties. It was during the time of Madame von Meck's patronage, however, that Tchaikovsky created the music for which he is most famous, including the music for the ballets of [Swan Lake](#) and [The Sleeping Beauty](#). Tchaikovsky's music, well known for its rich melodic and sometimes melancholy passages, was one of the first that brought serious dramatic music to dance. Before this, little attention had been given to the music **behind** the dance. Tchaikovsky died on November 6, 1893, ostensibly of cholera, though there are now some scholars who argue that he committed suicide.

1. With what topic is the passage primarily concerned?
  - A. the life and music of Tchaikovsky
  - B. development of Tchaikovsky's music for ballets
  - C. Tchaikovsky's relationship with Madame Von Meck
  - D. the cause of Tchaikovsky's death
2. Tchaikovsky's father was most probably.....
  - A. a musician
  - B. a supervisor
  - C. a composer
  - D. a soldier
3. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word "productivity" in line 4?
  - A. fertility
  - B. maturity
  - C. affinity
  - D. creativity
4. In line 5, the phrase "enjoyed the patronage of" probably means.....
  - A. liked the company of
  - B. was mentally attached to
  - C. was financially dependent upon
  - D. solicited the advice of
5. Which of the following could best replace the word "terminated" in line 6?
  - A. discontinued
  - B. resolved
  - C. exploited
  - D. hated
6. According to the passage, all of the following describe Madame von Meck EXCEPT
  - A. She had economic troubles.
  - B. She enjoyed Tchaikovsky's music.
  - C. She was generous.
  - D. She was never introduced to Tchaikovsky.

7. According to the passage, for what is Tchaikovsky's music most well known?

- A. its repetitive and monotonous tones
- B. the ballet-like quality of the music
- C. the richness and melodic drama of the music
- D. its lively, capricious melodies

8. According to the passage, "Swan Lake" and "The Sleeping Beauty" are.....

- A. dances
- B. songs
- C. operas
- D. plays

9. Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage?

- A. Tchaikovsky's influence on ballet music
- B. Tchaikovsky's unhappiness leading to suicide
- C. the patronage of Madame von Meck
- D. Tchaikovsky's productivity in composing

10. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word "behind" as used in line 11?

- A. in back of
- B. supporting
- C. going beyond
- D. concealing

### **PASSAGE 8**

The peregrine falcon, a predatory bird **indigenous to** North America, was once in danger of extinction. In the 1960s, scientists discovered **byproducts** of the pesticide DDT in the birds' eggs, which caused them to be too soft to survive. The use of the pesticide had been **banned** in the United States, but the falcons were eating migratory birds from other places where DDT was still used. In order to increase the survival **rate**, scientists were raising the birds in laboratories and then releasing them into mountainous areas. This practice achieved only moderate success, however, because many of the birds raised in captivity could not survive in the wild.

There is now, however, a new alternative to **releases** in the wild. A falcon that has been given the name Scarlett chose to make her home on a ledge of the 33rd floor of a Baltimore, Maryland, office building rather than in the wild, and, to the surprise of the scientists, she has managed to live quite well in the city. Following this example, programs have been initiated that release birds like Scarlett into cities rather than into their natural wild habitat. These urban releases are becoming a common way to strengthen the species. Urban homes have several benefits for the birds that wild **spots** do not. First, there is an abundance of pigeons and small birds as food sources. The peregrine in the city is also protected from its main predator, the great horned owl. Urban release programs have been very successful in reestablishing the peregrine falcons along the East Coast. Although they are still an endangered species, their numbers increased from about 60 nesting pairs in 1975 to about 700 pairs in 1992. In another decade the species may flourish again, this time without human help.

1. What is the main topic of the passage?

- A. survival of peregrine falcons
- B. releases into the wild
- C. endangered species
- D. harmful effects of pesticides

2. In line 1, the phrase "indigenous to" could be best replaced by.....

- A. typical of
- B. protected by
- C. adapted to
- D. native to

3. The word “byproducts” in line 2 could best be replaced by which of the following?  
A. derivatives      B. proceeds      C. chemicals      D. elements
4. In line 3, the word “banned” could be best replaced by  
A. authorized      B. developed      C. disseminated      D. prohibited
5. Which of the following words is closest in meaning to the word “rate” as used in line 5?  
A. speed      B. percentage      C. continuation      D. behavior
6. Why were the peregrine falcons in danger?  
A. because of pesticides used by American farmers  
B. because they migrated to countries where their eggs could not survive  
C. because they ate birds from other countries where DDT was still used  
D. because they were prized by hunters and hunted to near extinction
7. The word “releases” as used in line 8 most probably means.....  
A. internment      B. regression  
C. distribution      D. possessions
8. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT a reason why a falcon might choose to live in a city?  
A. There are high places to nest.      B. There are other falcons nearby.  
C. There is a lack of predators.      D. There is abundant food.
9. As used in line 13, the word “spots” could best be replaced by.....  
A. places      B. dilemmas  
C. jungles      D. materials
10. According to the passage, where have the release programs been the most successful?  
A. in office buildings      B. on the East Coast  
C. in mountainous areas      D. in the wild

### **PASSAGE 9**

What geologists call the Basin and Range Province in the United States roughly coincides in its northern portions with the geographic province known as the Great Basin. The Great Basin is hemmed in on the west by the Sierra Nevada and on the east by the Rocky Mountains; it has no outlet to the sea. The **prevailing** winds in the Great Basin are from the west. Warm, moist air from the Pacific Ocean is forced upward as **it** crosses the Sierra Nevada. At the higher altitudes it cools and the moisture it carries is precipitated as rain or snow on the western slopes of the mountains. That which reaches the Basin is air wrung dry of moisture. What little water falls there as rain or snow, mostly in the winter months, evaporates on the broad, flat desert floors. It is, therefore, an environment in which organisms battle for survival. Along the rare watercourses, cottonwoods and willows eke out a sparse existence. In the upland ranges, pinon pines and junipers struggle to hold their own.

But the Great Basin has not always been so arid. Many of its dry, closed depressions were once

filled with water. Owens Valley, Panamint Valley, and Death Valley were once a string of interconnected lakes. The two largest of the ancient lakes of the Great Basin were Lake Lahontan and Lake Bonneville. The Great Salt Lake is all that remains of the latter, and Pyramid Lake is one of the last briny remnants of **the former**.

There seem to have been several periods within the last tens of thousands of years when water **accumulated** in these basins. The rise and fall of the lakes were undoubtedly linked to the advances and retreats of the great ice sheets that covered much of the northern part of the North American continent during those times. Climatic changes during the Ice ages sometimes brought cooler, wetter weather to midlatitude deserts worldwide, including those of the Great Basin. The broken valleys of the Great Basin provided ready receptacles for this moisture.

1. What is the geographical relationship between the Basin and Range Province and the Great Basin?  
A. The Great Basin is west of the Basin and Range Province.  
B. The Great Basin is larger than the Basin and Range Province.  
**C.** The Great Basin is in the northern part of the Basin and Range Province.  
D. The Great Basin is mountainous; the Basin and Range Province is flat desert.
2. According to the passage, what does the great Basin lack?  
A. Snow                      B. Dry air                      C. Winds from the west                      **D.** Access to the ocean
3. The word 'prevailing' in line 4 is closest in meaning to  
**A.** most frequent      B. occasional                      C. gentle                      D. most dangerous
4. It can be inferred that the climate in the Great Basin is dry because .....  
A. the weather patterns are so turbulent                      B. the altitude prevents precipitation  
C. the winds are not strong enough to carry moisture                      **D.** precipitation falls in the nearby mountains
5. The word 'it' in line 5 refers to .....  
A. Pacific Ocean      **B.** air                      C. west                      D. the Great Basin
6. Why does the author mention cottonwoods and willows in line 11?  
A. To demonstrate that certain trees require a lot of water  
**B.** To give examples of trees that are able to survive in a difficult environment  
C. To show the beauty of the landscape of the Great Basin  
D. To assert that there are more living organisms in the Great Basin than there used to be
7. Why does the author mention Owens Valley, Panamint Valley, and Death Valley in the second paragraph?  
A. To explain their geographical formation  
**B.** To give examples of depressions that once contained water  
C. To compare the characteristics of the valleys with the characteristics of the lakes  
D. To explain what the Great Basin is like today
8. The words 'the former' in line 15 refer to .....  
A. Lake Bonneville                      **B.** Lake Lahontan                      C. The Great Salt Lake                      D. Pyramid Lake
9. The word 'accumulated' in line 17 is closest in meaning to .....  
A. dried                      B. flooded                      **C.** collected                      D. evaporated
10. According to the passage, the Ice Ages often brought about .....  
A. desert formation                      B. warmer climates                      C. broken valleys                      **D.** wetter weather

## **PASSAGE 10**

The word *laser* was **coined** as an acronym for Light Amplification by the Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Ordinary light, from the Sun or a light bulb, is emitted spontaneously, when atoms or molecules get rid of excess energy by themselves, without any outside **intervention**. Stimulated emission is different

because it occurs when an atom or molecule holding onto excess energy has been stimulated to emit **it** as light.

Albert Einstein was the first to suggest the existence of stimulated emission in a paper published in 1917. However, for many years physicists thought that atoms and molecules always were much more likely to emit light spontaneously and that stimulated emission thus always would be much weaker. It was not until after the Second World War that physicists began trying to make stimulated emission dominate. They sought ways by which one atom or molecule could stimulate many other to emit light, amplifying it to much higher powers.

The first to succeed was Charles H. Townes, then at Columbia University in New York. Instead of working with light, however, he worked with microwaves, which have a much longer wavelength, and built a device he called a "maser" for Microwave Amplification by the Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Although he thought of the key idea in 1951, the first maser was not completed until a couple of years later. Before long, many other physicists were building masers and trying to discover how to produce stimulated emission at even shorter wavelength.

The key concepts **emerged** about 1957. Townes and Arthur Schawlow, then at Bell Telephone Laboratories, wrote a long paper **outlining** the conditions needed to amplify stimulated emission of visible light waves. At about the same time, similar ideas crystallized in the mind of Gordon Gould, then a 37-year-old graduate student at Columbia, who wrote them down in a series of notebooks. Townes and Schawlow published their ideas in a scientific journal, Physical Review Letter, but Gould filed a patent application. Three decades later, people still argue about who deserves the credit for the concept of the laser.

1. The word 'coin' in line 1 could be replaced by .....  
A. created                      B. mentioned                      C. understood                      D. discovered
2. The word 'intervention' in line 3 can best be replaced by .....  
A. need                      B. device                      C. influence                      D. source
3. The word 'it' in line 5 refers to .....  
A. light bulb                      B. energy                      C. molecule                      D. atom
4. Which of the following statements best describes a laser?  
A. A device for stimulating atoms and molecules to emit light  
B. An atom in a high-energy state  
C. A technique for destroying atoms or molecules  
D. An instrument for measuring light waves
5. Why was Towne's early work with stimulated emission done with microwaves?  
A. He was not concerned with light amplification  
B. It was easier to work with longer wavelengths.  
C. His partner Schawlow had already begun work on the laser.  
D. The laser had already been developed
6. In his research at Columbia University, Charles Townes worked with all of the following EXCEPT ....  
A. stimulated emission                      B. microwaves  
C. light amplification                      D. a maser
7. In approximately what year was the first maser built?  
A. 1917                      B. 1951                      C. 1953                      D. 1957
8. The word 'emerged' in line 18 is closest in meaning to .....  
A. increased                      B. concluded                      C. succeeded                      D. appeared
9. The word 'outlining' in line 19 is closest in meaning to .....  
A. assigning                      B. studying                      C. checking                      D. summarizing
10. Why do people still argue about who deserves the credit for the concept of the laser?  
A. The researchers' notebooks were lost.

- B. Several people were developing the idea at the same time.
- C. No one claimed credit for the development until recently.
- D. The work is still incomplete.

## CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20

### CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP (COMMUNICATION SKILL)

#### \* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT

Bài tập về chức năng giao tiếp bao gồm những mẫu đối thoại ngắn, thường là dạng hỏi và trả lời giữa hai đối tượng A và B. Mục đích của dạng bài tập này là chọn đúng phần khuyết để hoàn thành đoạn hội thoại ngắn này.

#### **I. Thu thập và xác định thông tin.**

##### **1. Câu hỏi Có-Không (Yes-No question)**

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các trợ động từ: am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, will, would, have, may, might, can, could...

Câu trả lời: bắt đầu bằng “Yes” hoặc “No” và đưa thêm thông tin.

Ta cũng có thể trả lời bằng:

- I think/ believe/ hope/ expect/ guess so. (Tôi nghĩ/ tin/ hy vọng/ mong/ đoán thế.)
- Sure/ Actually/ Of course/ Right... (Dĩ nhiên/ Chắc chắn rồi.)
- I don't think/ believe/ expect/ guess so. (Tôi không nghĩ/ tin/ mong/ cho rằng thế.)
- I hope/ believe/ guess/ suppose not. (Tôi hy vọng/ tin/ đoán/ cho là không.)
- I'm afraid not. (Tôi e rằng không.)

##### **2. Câu hỏi chọn lựa (Or questions)**

Câu hỏi: thường chứa các từ “or” và yêu cầu phải lựa chọn một phương án.

Câu trả lời: là câu chọn một trong hai sự lựa chọn được đưa ra trong câu hỏi. Ta không dùng từ “Yes” hoặc “No” để trả lời câu hỏi này.

Ví dụ: Are they Chinese or Japanese? – They're Japanese.

Pork or beef?- Beef, please/ I'd prefer beef.

##### **3. Câu hỏi có từ để hỏi (Wh-questions)**

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi như what, which, who, whose, where, when, why, how... để thu thập thông tin.

Câu trả lời: cần cung cấp thông tin nêu trong câu hỏi.

Ví dụ: What did he talk about?- His family.

What was the party like?- Oh, we had a good time.

Which of these pens is your?- The red one.

How often do you go to the cinema?- Every Sunday.

Why did he fail the exam?- Because he didn't prepare well for it.

#### **4. Câu hỏi đuôi (Tag questions)**

Câu hỏi: thường dùng để xác nhận thông tin với ngữ điệu xuống ở cuối câu hỏi.

Câu trả lời: cũng giống như câu hỏi Có-Không.

Ví dụ: Jane left early for the first train, didn't she?- Yes, she did.

Peter made a lot of mistakes again, didn't he?- Right, he did.

#### **5. Hỏi đường hoặc lời chỉ dẫn (asking for directions or instructions).**

Lời hỏi đường:

- Could you show me the way to... ? (Anh làm ơn chỉ đường đến....)

- Could you be so kind to show me how to get to... ? (Anh có thể vui lòng chỉ đường đến...)

- Is there a bank near here?/ Where's the nearest bank? (Ở đây có ngân hàng không?/ Ngân hàng gần nhất ở đâu vậy?)

Lời đáp:

- Turn left/ right. (Rẽ trái/ phải.)

- Go straight ahead for two blocks and then turn left. (Đi thẳng qua hai dãy nhà rồi rẽ trái.)

- Keep walking until you reach/ see... (Cứ đi thẳng đến khi anh đến/ thấy...)

- It's just around the corner. (Nó ở ngay ở góc đường.)

- It's a long way. You should take a taxi. (Một quãng đường dài đấy. Anh nên đón taxi.)

- Sorry, I'm new here/ I'm a stranger here myself. (Xin lỗi, tôi mới đến vùng này.)

- Sorry, I don't know this area very well. (Xin lỗi, tụi khụng rành khu vực này lắm.)

Lời xin được chỉ dẫn:

- Could you show me how to operate this machine? (Anh làm ơn chỉ cho tôi cách vận hành chiếc máy này.)

- Could you tell me how to... ? (Anh hãy chỉ cho tụi làm thế nào để.....)

- How does this machine work? Do you know? (Cái máy này hoạt động thế nào? Anh có biết không?)

Lời đáp:



- First,... Second,... Then,... Finally,... (Trước hết... Kế đến... Tiếp theo... Cuối cùng...)
- The first step is..., then... (Bước đầu tiên là..., rồi...)
- Remember to... (Hớ nhớ là...)
- Well, It's very simple. (À, đơn giản lắm.)

## II. Quan hệ xã giao

### 1. Chào hỏi và giới thiệu (greeting and introducing)

#### Chào hỏi:

- Good morning/ afternoon/ evening. (Chào.)
- Hi/ Hello. Have a good day. (Chào. Chúc anh một ngày tốt lành.)
- How are you?/ How have you been?/ How are the things?... (Anh dạo này thế nào?.)

#### Lời đáp câu hỏi chào:

- Good morning/ afternoon/ evening. (Chào.)
- Hi/ Hello. (Chào.)
- Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you. (Hân hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)
- Hi. I am Peter. Anh you? (Chào. Tui tên Peter. Cũn anh?)
- Have we met before? (Trước đây chúng ta đã gặp nhau chưa?)
- It's a lonely day, isn't it? (Hôm nay là một ngày đẹp trời, phải không anh?)

#### Giới thiệu:

- I would like to introduce you to... /... to you. (Tui muốn giới thiệu anh với... /... với anh.)
- I would like you to meet... (Tôi muốn anh được gặp gỡ với...)
- This is... (Đây là..)
- Have you two met before? (Trước đây hai anh đã gặp nhau chưa?)

#### Lời đáp câu giới thiệu:

- How do you do... ? (Hân hạnh được gặp anh)
- -Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you. (Hôn hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)

### 2. Lời mời (invitation)

#### Lời mời:

- Would you like to..... (Anh cú muốn..... ?)
- I would like to invite you to... (Tui muốn mời anh...)

- Do you feel like/ fancy having... ? (Anh có muốn...)

- Let me.... (Để tôi...)

#### Đồng ý lời mời:

- It is a great idea. (Í kiến quả tuyệt.)

- That sounds great/ fantastic/ wonderful/ cool/ fun. (Nghe có vẻ hay đấy.)

- Yes, I'd love to. (Vâng, tụi rất thích.)

- Why not? (Tại sao không nhỉ?)

- OK, let's do that. (Được, cứ như thế đi.)

#### Từ chối lời mời:

- No, thanks. (Không, cảm ơn.)

- I'm afraid I can't. (Tụi e rằng tụi không thể.)

- Sorry, but I have another plan. (Xin lỗi, nhưng tôi có kế hoạch khác rồi.)

- I'd love to but... (Tôi muốn lắm nhưng...)

- Some other time, perhaps. (Lần khác vậy nhá.)

### **3. Ra về và chào tạm biệt. (leaving and saying goodbye)**

#### Bỏ hiệu sử ra hiệu và chào tạm biệt:

- I'm afraid I have to be going now/ I have to leave now. (E rằng bây giờ tụi phải đi.)

- It's getting late so quickly. (Trời mau tối quá.)

- I had a great time/ evening. (Tụi rất vui/ cú một buổi tối rất tuyệt vời.)

- I really enjoyed the party and the talk with you. (Tụi thật sự thích buổi tiệc và trò chuyện với anh.)

- Thank you very much for a lovely evening. (Cảm ơn về buổi tối tuyệt vời.)

- Good bye/ Bye. (Tạm biệt.)

- Good night. (Tạm biệt.)

#### Lời đáp:

- I'm glad you had a good time. (Tôi rất vui là anh đó có thời gian vui vẻ.)

- I'm glad you like it. (Tụi rất vui là anh thích nó.)

- Thanks for coming. (Cảm ơn anh đó đến.)

- Let's meet again soon. (Hẹn sớm gặp lại nhá.)

- See you later. (Hẹn gặp lại.)

- Good bye/ Bye. (Tạm biệt.)

- Good night. (Tạm biệt.)
- Take care. (Hớy bảo trọng.)

#### **4. Khen ngợi và chýc mừng (complimenting and congratulating)**

##### Lời khen ngợi:

- You did a good job! Good job! (Anh làm tốt lắm.)
- What you did was wonderful/ desirable/ amazing. (Nhýng gỡ anh làm đýc thật tuyệt vời/ đáng ngưỡng mộ/ kinh ngạc.)
- You played the game so well. (Anh chơi trận đấu rất hay.)
- Congratulations! (Xin chýc mừng.)
- You look great/ fantastic in your new suit. (Anh trông thật tuyệt trong bộ đồ mới.)
- Your dress is very lovely. (Chiếc áo đầm của chị thật đáng yêu.)
- You have a great hairstyle! (Kiểu tóc của bạn thật tuyệt!)
- I wish I had such a nice house. (Ýc gỡ tụi cú ngýi nhà xinh xắn như thế này.)

##### Lời đáp:

- Thank you. I'm glad you like it. (Cảm ơn. Rất vui là anh thích nú.)
- You did so well, too. (Anh cũng làm rất tốt.)
- Your garden is fantastic too. (Ngôi vườn của anh cũng tuyệt vậy.)
- Thank you. I like yours too. (Cảm ơn. Tụi cũng thích...)

#### **5. Cảm ơn (thanking)**

##### Lời cảm ơn:

- Thank you very much for... (Cảm ơn rất nhiều về...)
- Thank you/ Thanks/ Many thanks. (Cảm ơn rất nhiều.)
- It was so kind/ nice/ good of you to invite us... (Anh thật tử tế/ tốt đó mời chýng tụi...)
- I am thankful/ grateful to your for... (Tôi rất biết ơn anh vờ....)

##### Lời đáp:

- You're welcome. (Anh luôn đýc chào mừng.)
- Never mind/ Not at all. (Khụng cú chi.)
- Don't mention it. / Forget it. (Cú gỡ đâu. Đừng nhắc nữa.)
- It's my pleasure (to help you). (Tôi rất vui đýc giúp anh.)

- I'm glad I could help. (Tôi rất vui là có thể giúp được anh.)
- It was the least we could do for you. (Chúng tôi đó cú thể làm được hơn thế nữa.)

## 6. Xin lỗi (apologizing)

### Lời xin lỗi:

- I'm terribly/ awfully sorry about that. (Tụi hết sức xin lỗi về điều đó.)
- I apologize to you for... (Tụi xin lỗi anh về...)
- It's totally my fault. (Đó hoàn toàn là lỗi của tụi.)
- I didn't mean that. Please accept my apology. (Tụi khụng cố ý làm thế. Xin hớy chấp nhận lời xin lỗi của tụi.)
- It will not happen again. I promise. (Tôi hứa là điều đó sẽ không xảy ra nữa.)
- I shouldn't have done that. (Lẽ ra tụi đó khụng làm thế.)
- Please let me know if there is anything I can do to compensate for it. (Hớy núii cho tụi biết là tụi cú thể làm gỡ để bù đắp lại điều đó.)

### Lời đáp:

- It doesn't matter. (Không sao đâu.)
- Don't worry about that. (Đừng lo.)
- Forget it/ No problem/ Never mind/ That's all right/ OK (Khụng sao.)
- You really don't have to apologize. (Thật ra anh không cần phải xin lỗi đâu.)
- OK. It's not your fault. (Được rồi. Đó không phải lỗi của anh.)

## 7. Sự cảm thụng (sympathy)

### Lời diễn đạt sự thông cảm:

- I'm sorry to hear that... (Tụi lấy làm tiếc khi biết rằng...)
- I feel sorry for you. (Tụi lấy làm tiếc cho anh.)
- I think I understand how you feel. (Tôi nghĩ tụi cú thể hiểu được cảm giác của anh thế nào.)
- You have to learn to accept it. (Anh phải học cách chấp nhận điều đó thôi.)

### Lời đáp:

- Thank you very much. (Cảm ơn rất nhiều.)
- It was very kind/ nice/ thoughtful/ caring/ considerate of you. (Anh thật là tốt/ tử tế/ sâu sắc/ chu đáo.)

## III. Yờu cầu và xin phấp.

### 1. Yờu cầu (making requests)

#### Lời yờu cầu:

- Can/ Could/ Will/ Would you please... ? (Anh làm ơn...)
- Would you mind+ V-ing... ? (Anh có phiền khụng nếu... ?)
- Would it be possible... ? (Liệu có thể...)
- I wonder if... (Tôi tự hỏi khụng biết... có được không.)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

- Sure/ Certainly/ Of course. (Dĩ nhiên là được.)
- No problem. (Không vấn đề gì.)
- I'm happy to. (Tôi sẵn lòng.)

Từ chối:

- I'm afraid I can't. I'm busy now/ I'm using it. (Tôi e rằng khụng thể. Bây giờ tôi đang bận/ tôi đang dùng nó.)
- I don't think it's possible. (Tôi cho là không thể được.)
- It's OK if I do it later? (Lát nữa có được không?)

**2. Xin phấp (asking for permission)**

Lời xin phấp:

- May/ Might/ Can/ Could I... ? (Xin phấp cho tôi... ?)
- Do you mind if I... ?/ Would you mind if I... ? (Anh có phiền khụng nếu tôi... ?)
- Is it OK if... ? (Liệu có ổn khụng nếu... ?)
- Anyone mind if... (Có ai phiền khụng nếu...)
- Do you think I can/ could... ? (Anh có nghĩ là tôi có thể... ?)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

- Sure/ Certainly/ Of course/ Ok. (Tất nhiên rồi.)
- Go ahead/ You can. (Cứ tự nhiên.)
- Do it! Don't ask. (Cứ làm đi! Đừng hỏi.)

Từ chối:

- I'm afraid you can't. (Tôi e rằng không được.)
- I don't think you can. (Tôi cho rằng không được.)
- No, you can't/ No, not now. (Khụng. Bõy giờ thì khụng.)

#### **IV. Than phiền hoặc chỉ trích.**

##### Lời than phiền hoặc chỉ trích:

- You should have asked for permission first. (Lẽ ra anh phải xin phép trước.)
- You shouldn't have done that. (Lẽ ra anh không nên làm điều đó.)
- Why didn't you listen to me? (Sao anh lại khụng chịu nghe tui nhỉ?)
- You're late again. (Anh lại đi trễ.)
- You damaged my mobile phone! (Anh lại làm hỏng chiếc điện thoại di động của tôi rồi!)
- No one but you did it. (Anh chứ không ai khác làm điều đó.)

##### Lời đáp:

- I'm terribly sorry. I didn't meant that. (Tui thành thật xin lỗi. Tui khụng cố ý làm vậy.)
- I'm sorry but I had no choice. (Xin lỗi nhưng tôi không cùn sự lựa chọn nào khỏc.)
- I'm sorry but the thing is... (Tôi xin lỗi nhưng chuyện là thế này...)
- Not me! (Khụng phải tui!)

#### **V. Bài tỏ quan điểm của người nói.**

##### **1. Đồng ý hoặc không đồng ý. (agreeing or disagreeing).**

##### Đồng ý:

- I (totally/ completely/ absolutely) agree with you. (Tui hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)
- Absolutely/ definitely. (Dĩ nhiên rồi.)
- Exactly! (Chớnh xỏc!)
- That's true. / That's it. (Đúng vậy.)
- You are right. There is no doubt it. (Anh nói đúng. Chẳng cùn nghi ngờ gỡ về điều đó nữa.)
- I can't agree with you more. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)
- That's just what I think. (Tui cũng nghĩ thế.)
- That's what I was going to say. (Tôi cũng định nói vậy.)

##### Không đồng ý hoặc đồng ý một phần:

- You could be right but I think... (Có thể anh đúng nhưng tôi nghĩ...)
- I may be wrong but... (Có thể tôi sai nhưng...)
- I see what you mean but I think... (Tui hiểu ý anh nhưng tôi nghĩ...)
- I just don't think it's right that... (Tôi không cho điều đó là đúng...)
- I don't quite agree because... (Tôi không hẳn đồng ý bởi vờ...)

- You're wrong there. (Anh sai rồi.)
- Personally, I think that... (Cỏ nhõn tụi thờ cho rằng...)

## 2. Hỏi và đưa ra ý kiến (asking for and expressing opinions.)

### Lời hỏi ý kiến:

- What do you think about... ? (Anh nghĩ gỡ về... ?)
- Tell me what you think about... (Hóy chi tụi biết anh nghĩ gỡ về...)
- What is your opinion about/ on... ? (Í kiến của anh về... là như thế nào?)
- How do you feel about... ? (Anh thấy thế nào về... ?)

### Lời đưa ra ý kiến:

- In my opinion,/ Personaly... (Theo tụi thờ...)
- I my view,... (Theo quan điểm của tụi,...)
- It seems to me that... (Đối với tụi có vẻ là...)
- As far as I can say... (Theo tụi được biết thờ...)
- I strongly/ firmly think/ believe/ feel that... (Tụi hoàn toàn nghĩ/ tin/ cảm thấy là...)
- I must say that... (Tụi phải nủi rằng...)

## 3. Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị (advising or making suggestions)

### Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị:

- If I were you, I would... (Nếu tụi là anh thờ tụi sẽ...)
- If I were in your situation/ shoes, I would.... (Nếu tụi ở trong hoàn cảnh của anh thờ tụi sẽ...)
- It's a good idea to... (... là một ý hay đấy.)
- You should/ had better... (Anh nờn...)
- It is advisable/ recommendable to... (Anh nờn...)
- I would recommend that... (Tụi khuyờn là...)
- Why don't you... ? (Sao anh khụng... ?)
- What about/ How about... ? (Cũn về... thờ sao?)
- Shall we... ?/ Let's... (Chỳng ta hóy...)

## 4. Lời cảnh báo (warning)

### Lời cảnh báo:

- You should/ had better... or/ if... not... (Anh nờn... nếu khụng thờ...)

- You should/had better... Otherwise,.... (Anh nờn... nếu khụng thờ...)

Vớ dụ: You should wear a safety helmet while riding or you'll get a fine.

You shouldn't smoke in here. Otherwise, you'll ruin the carpet.

Lời đáp:

- Thank you/ Thanks. (Cảm ơn.)

- I will do it. (Tụi sẽ làm thế.)

### 5. Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ (offering).

Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

- Can/ May I help you? (Để tôi giúp anh.)

- Let me help you. (Để tôi giúp anh.)

- How can I help you? (Tụi cú thể giỳp gỡ cho anh?)

- Would you like some help?/ Do you need some help? (Anh cú cần giỳp khụng?)

Chấp nhận lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

- Yes, please. (Võng)

- That is great. (Thật tuyệt.)

- That would be great/ fantastic. (Thật tuyệt.)

- It would be nice/ helpful/ fantastic/ wonderful if you could. (Rất tuyệt nếu anh cú thể làm vậy.)

- Thanks. That would be a great help. (Cảm ơn. Được anh giúp thờ tụi quỏ.)

- As long as you don't mind. (Được chứ nếu anh không phiền.)

Từ chối lời đề nghị:

- No, please. (Không, cảm ơn.)

- No. That's OK. (Không sao đâu.)

- Thanks, but I can manage. (Cảm ơn, nhưng tôi làm được.)

**Vớ dụ minh họa 1:** Chọn một phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- Mike: "Our living standards have been improved greatly." - Susan: "....."

A. Thank you for saying so.

B. Sure. I couldn't agree more.

C. No, it's nice to say so

D. Yes, it's nice of you to say so.

Hướng dẫn:

B: Đáp án đúng. Mike đưa ra ý kiến của mình (**expressing opinion**) về mức sống hiện tại (Living standards) và Susan đưa ra lời tán thành với Mike. (**expressing degrees of agreement**)



**Sure. I couldn't agree more.** (=I agree with you completely!) (Chắc chắn thế. Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)

A: "Thank you for saying so." được dùng để cảm ơn một lời khen.

C: "No" có nghĩa phủ định không dùng được với "it's nice to say so" (Bạn thật tốt khi nói như thế.)

D: "Yes, it's nice of you to say so" được dùng để đáp lại một lời khen.

**Ví dụ minh họa 2:** Chọn một phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- "Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?" - "....."

A. I don't agree. I'm afraid.

B. I feel very bored.

C. You're welcome.

D. That would be great.

Hướng dẫn: "Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?" (Anh có muốn đi đến sân vận động chiều nay không?) (Đây là câu đề nghị.)

D: Đáp án đúng. "That would be great." (Điều đó thật tuyệt.). Đây là lời đáp trước câu đề nghị.

A: Phương án sai. "I don't agree. I'm afraid." (Tôi e rằng tôi không đồng ý.). Câu này nêu sự không đồng ý, nhưng nếu người thứ hai không đồng ý với lời đề nghị thì người đó từ chối và nêu lý do.

B: Phương án sai. "I feel very bored." (Tôi cảm thấy chồn nản.). Câu này không liên hệ chặt chẽ với câu đề nghị.

C: Phương án sai. "You're welcome." (Rất vui được tiếp anh.)

**Ví dụ minh họa 3:** Chọn một phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!" - Mary: "....."

A. Yes, all right.

B. Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday.

C. Never mention it.

D. Thanks, but I'm afraid.

Hướng dẫn: Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!" Cindy: "Mary, kiểu tóc của chị tuyệt qua." Đây là lời khen ngợi và Mary đáp lại lời khen ngợi bằng cách cảm ơn.

B: Đáp án đúng. "Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday." (Cảm ơn Cindy. Hôm qua tôi nhờ người làm đầu lại.)

A: "Yes, all right." (Vâng, được rồi.). Đây là lời cho phấp ai làm gỡ.

C: "Never mention it." (Khụng cú chi.). Câu này dùng để đáp lại lời cảm ơn,

D: "Thanks, but I'm afraid." (Cảm ơn, nhưng tôi e không thể được.). Đây là lời từ chối một yêu cầu.

## **\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "Thank you for taking the time to come here in person." "....."  
**A. It's my pleasure.** B. I don't know what time that person comes.  
C. I'd love to come. What time? D. Do you have time for some gossip?
2. "I have a terrible headache." "....."  
A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's. B. Not very well. Thanks.  
**C. Maybe you should take a rest.** D. Not bad. I'm going to the doctor's.
3. "Do you want me to help you with those suitcases?" "....."  
A. Of course, not for me. B. No, I can't help you now.  
C. No, those aren't mine. **D. No, I can manage them myself.**
4. "What does it cost to get to Manchester?" "....."  
A. It's interesting to travel to Manchester. **B. It depends on how you go.**  
C. I always go by train. D. I don't like to go by train.
5. "....." "Yes. Do you have any shirts?"  
A. Could you do me a favour? B. Oh, dear. What a nice shirt!  
**C. May I help you?** D. White, please.
6. "What's the best place to eat lunch?" "....."  
A. I'll have soup, please.  
**B. There's a great restaurant at the corner of the street.**  
C. I usually eat lunch at twelve.  
D. Twelve would be convenient.
7. "Maybe you can take a vacation next month." "....."  
A. Nothing special. B. You're welcome.  
C. It's very expensive. **D. I don't think so. I'm teaching all summer.**
8. "What do you think of your new DVD player?" "....."  
**A. I love it.** B. My brother gave it to me.  
C. It was a gift from my brother. D. I always put it there.
9. "How long you been recently?" "....."  
A. It's too late now. **B. Pretty busy, I think.**  
C. By bus, I think. D. No, I'll not be busy.
10. "Do you need a knife and a fork?" "....."  
A. No, I'll just use a frying pan. **B. No, I'll just use chopsticks.**  
C. No, I'll just use a can opener. D. No, I'll use a cooker.

**Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "You're so patient with us." "....."  
**A. Thanks, that's nice of you to say so.** B. Thanks. Have a nice trip.  
C. I'm fine, thanks. D. I know. I have trouble controlling my temper.
2. "Can I try your new camera?" "....."  
A. I'm sorry I can't. Let's go now. B. Sure. I'd love to.  
**C. Sure. But please be careful with it.** D. I'm sorry. I'm home late.
3. "....." "Yes, about ten cigarettes a day."  
**A. Do you smoke?** B. What's the mater?  
C. Anything else? D. Well, you should stop smoking.
4. "How well do you play?" "....."  
A. Yes, I used to play tennis. B. I don't play very often.  
C. No, I don't play very well. **D. Pretty well, I think.**
5. "....." "No, nothing special."  
A. Did you watch the live show last weekend?  
**B. Did you do anything special last weekend?**  
C. Did you have a great time last weekend?  
D. Did you go anywhere last weekend?
6. "Didn't you go to the conference?" "....."

- A. No, I went there with my friends. B. That sounds nice, but I can't.  
 C. Don't worry. I'll go there. D. **I did, but I didn't stay long.**
7. "....." "No, thank you. That'll be all."  
 A. What would you like? B. It's very kind of you to help me.  
 C. **Would you like anything else?** D. What kind of food do you like?
8. "What was the last present that you received?" "....."  
 A. **fashion hat.** B. It depends on the situation.  
 C. Several times. D. I think it's OK.
9. "Let me drive you home." "....."  
 A. No problem. B. **Don't worry. I'm all right.**  
 C. I usually drive home at five. D. It's me.
10. "May I leave a message for Ms. Davis." "....."  
 A. I'm afraid she's not here at the moment.  
 B. No, she's not here now.  
 C. She's leaving a message to you now.  
 D. **Yes, I'll make sure she gets it.**

**Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "Your boss looks like the aggressive type." "....."  
 A. **Yes, he really wants to get ahead.** B. Yes, he's quite gentle.  
 C. Really? I've never seen him lie. D. Right. He's so quiet.
2. "How can this dress be so expensive?" "....."  
 A. Yes, it's the most expensive. B. What an expensive dress!  
 C. **You're paying for the brand.** D. That's a good idea.
3. "I get impatient when the teacher doesn't tell us the answers." "....."  
 A. **Yes, it's hard to think of the answers.** B. Yes, I wish she'd hurry up.  
 C. Yes, she should know the answers. D. Yes, she speaks too quickly.
4. "Did you play tennis last weekend?" "....."  
 A. It's my favourite sport. B. **I worked.**  
 C. Do you like it? D. Would you like to come with me?
5. "May I speak to the manager?" "....."  
 A. He always comes late. He is not very well. B. Thank you. Good bye.  
 C. **I'm afraid he's not in. Can I take a message?** D. I'm afraid not. He works very hard.
6. "Where's the view? The advertisement said this place has a great view of the sea."  
 "....."  
 A. It has good facilities. B. It's convenient to see it.  
 C. You can find it very convenient. D. **You can see it from the back.**
7. "Why did you turn the air conditioner on?" "....."  
 A. I think it's bad condition. B. I can't see anything.  
 C. **It's a little hot in here.** D. It's a good idea.
8. "There's a baseball game tonight." "....."  
 A. **Great. Let's go.** B. I'm not a real fan of hers.  
 C. Don't mention it. D. Thanks, I'd love to.
9. "....." Yes. I do. I like them a lot."  
 A. What do you think of tennis. B. **Do you like sport.**  
 C. Do you prefer tennis or badminton? D. How often you play tennis?
10. "....." "No, I'm not. I feel awful."  
 A. How are you? B. **Are you feeling OK?**  
 C. Is there anything wrong? D. What's the matter?

**Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "Where will you go on vacation?" "....."

- A. **Probably to the beach.**  
C. Probably I won't think of.
2. "....." "I think the vase is broken."  
A. Can I help you?  
C. What is it?
3. "What do you do for a living?" "....."  
A. I get a high salary, you know.  
C. **I work in a bank.**
4. "I wonder if you could do something for me." "....."  
A. **It depends on what it is.**  
C. No, thanks.
5. "Haven't you put an advertisement in the paper yet?" "....."  
A. I'm not sure. Really?  
C. I'm with you there  
B. **I will, the first thing in the afternoon.**  
D. I can get a paper for you right now.
6. "Have you noticed that the manager wears something green every day?" "....."  
A. I know. He's a good manager.  
C. **I know. He must like green.**  
B. Sure. He will do that.  
D. He'd rather do that.
7. "....." "No, I don't play the piano."  
A. What kind of music do you like?  
C. Do you earn a lot by playing the piano?  
B. **Do you play the piano.**  
D. What kind of music do you like?
8. "Excuse me. I'm your new neighbor. I just moved in." "....."  
A. **Sorry, I don't know.**  
C. I'm afraid not.  
B. Oh, I don't think so.  
D. Where to, sir?
9. "How about an evening riverboat tour?" "....."  
A. No, it's good to do so.  
B. Actually I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.  
C. No, I've never gone an evening riverboat tour.  
D. **Actually I've gone twice this week.**
10. "Can you come over after the show?" "....."  
A. **That would be nice.**  
C. Please, go ahead.  
B. No, I didn't.  
D. Why don't we go to the show?

**Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "I think the pants are a little big." "....."  
A. Are they big enough?  
C. **Yes, maybe a little.**  
B. You should get a bigger pair.  
D. Yes, they are not big at all.
2. "....." "Yes, it's OK. But could you clean your room first?"  
A. Would you like to go to Helen's party this weekend?  
B. **Can I go to Helen's party this weekend?**  
C. What time does Helen's party begin this weekend?  
D. I don't like the noise at parties.
3. "How late will the bank be open." "....."  
A. Its services are very good indeed.  
C. It is not very far.  
B. It is two blocks away.  
D. **It will be open until 6 pm.**
4. "Will the maths teacher give us a test this week?" "....."  
A. I doubt whether it's easy.  
C. I don't think he will come.  
B. Yes, the test was difficult.  
D. **No, he probably won't.**
5. "What does this thing do?" "....."  
A. I think it's a waste of money.  
C. **It peels potatoes.**  
B. It sure does.  
D. I can use it well.
6. "....." "Yes, I have a date."  
A. Do you have any plans for tonight.  
B. Can I have an appointment with Dr. Adams?  
C. What's the time, please.

**D. Do you have any plans tonight?**

7. "May I take my break, now?" "....."
- A. No, you didn't break it. B. I think I need five minutes.  
C. I'll be back in five minutes. **D. Yes, of course.**
8. "Do you support the proposal to build a new airport?" "....."
- A. No, not really.** B. No, I like it.  
C. No, I don't think you're right. D. Yes, I'm against it.
9. "Your job is pretty routine, then?" "....."
- A. Yes, sometimes it's a little boring.** B. Yes, it's really exciting.  
C. Yes, I love exciting work D. Yes, it's different every day.
10. "....." "Oh, but it's boring?"
- A. Don't you like the news? B. Would you prefer news to films?  
**C. I think you should watch the news.** D. You often watch the news, don't you?

**Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "I think the new resort will ruin the environment." "....."
- A. I'm afraid so.** B. Don't you think so?  
C. I agree. It sounds nice. D. Let's go there.
2. "....." "OK. Where shall we go?"
- A. Shall we go the jazz concert? B. Have you done the shopping?  
C. Oh, reading books and going shopping. **D. I want to go shopping.**
3. "Would you mind sending those flowers to Mr. Brown?" "....."
- A. Sure, I'll do it now.** B. I would if I were you.  
C. He wouldn't mind. D. No, I can handle it myself.
4. "I've got two tickets for the show." "....."
- A. Oh, anything else? B. Thanks. I can afford the tickets.  
**C. That's great. When is it?** D. Oh, let's go and get the tickets.
5. "Go two blocks and then you're there." "....."
- A. Excuse me. How can I get there? **B. OK, thanks.**  
C. No, thanks. D. I'm sorry I don't know.
6. "Would you like to order now?" "....."
- A. Yes, I like beef steak. **B. Yes, I'd like beef steak.**  
C. It's excellent. D. Yes, a table for five.
7. "....." "Oh, really? Why?"
- A. What do I do next?  
B. When do you have class again?  
C. You have a doctor's appointment at ten.  
**D. Our tomorrow's class has been canceled.**
8. "Hi, I'd like some information about driving lessons." "....."
- A. I'm afraid I can't drive. B. Sure, could I have your name and address?  
**C. From 9 am to 5 pm.** D. Sure, please do.
9. "I think golf is really great." "....."
- A. Do you? I think it's boring.** B. Don't you believe so?  
C. Neither do I. D. Almost every day.
10. "That was a boring book." "....."
- A. No, it's very boring. B. Yes, it was exciting.  
**C. It certainly was.** D. I think it will be good.

**Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. Guess what! I have just been invited to the manager's house for dinner. "....."

- A. What's that?  
C. Well done.
2. "So how are things at school, Tom?" "....."  
A. Well, I can't agree with you.  
**C. Oh, pretty good, actually.**  
B. It was not good at it.  
D. It's my pleasure.
3. "Do you fancy going to a movie this evening?" "....."  
A. I'm sorry. I don't know that,  
C. Not so bad. And you?  
B. Not at all, go ahead.  
**D. That would be nice.**
4. "We've been here before." "....."  
**A. Oh, have we?**  
C. How lovely!  
B. How nice!  
D. No, we didn't.
5. "Could I speak to Ann?" "....."  
A. This is Daisy speaking.  
C. Just a moment. I'm coming.  
B. Can I take a message?  
**D. I'm sorry, Ann's not in.**
6. "Well, it's been nice talking to you." "....."  
**A. Yes, nice to have met you too.**  
C. Nice to meet you, too.  
B. Oh, yes. I'm afraid so.  
D. Have you been here long?
7. "Did you hear the robbery the other day?" "....."  
A. Yes, it was great.  
C. Oh, no.  
**B. No, what happened?**  
D. Oh, sure. Thanks.
8. "I don't think we should exercise late at night." "....."  
**A. Neither do I.**  
C. I think so, too.  
B. So do I.  
D. I don't neither.
9. "Sorry, the manager is not here." "....."  
A. Can I take a message then?  
**C. Can I leave a message then?**  
B. Can I speak to the manager, please?  
D. Would you like to leave a message?
10. "It was very kind of you to help me out, Paul?" "....."  
A. I'm glad you like it.  
**C. That was the least I could do.**  
B. Thanks a million.  
D. You can say that again.

**Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. "I hear The Golden Bride is a very good film." "....."  
**A. Yes, it's very exciting.**  
C. Yes, it's boring.  
B. No, I don't hear that.  
D. No, I hear it, too.
2. "What would you like to do at the weekend?" "....."  
A. I like to do a lot.  
**C. I'd like to see a football match.**  
B. I can't stand it.  
D. I don't like the weekend.
3. "What's the matter with your son?" "....."  
A. He went to London two weeks ago.  
B. He's just graduated from university.  
**C. He's got a headache.**  
D. He did an experiment on a cure for the headache.
4. "What's the weather like in Vietnam now?" "....."  
**A. It's sunny and hot.**  
C. We have dry season and rainy season.  
B. It's summer now.  
D. It often rains in spring.
5. Customer: "....."  
Salesman: "It's over there, next to the tea and coffee."  
A. I'm sorry. I didn't buy the tea and coffee.  
B. Can you help me? I can't carry the tea and coffee.  
C. How much is a kilo of tea and coffee?  
**D. Excuse me, where's the tea and coffee?**
6. "Can you come down and help me with my shopping?" "....."  
A. What are you doing?  
C. Can't you buy me some stamps.  
**B. I am coming.**  
D. I am looking forward.



2. "I wonder if you could help me." "....."
- A. Don't mention it. B. Really? How nice.  
**C. I'll do my best. What's up?** D. No, what is it?
3. "You won the first prize, Jane." "....."
- A. You are very welcome. B. Congratulations!  
**C. You are kidding.** D. Well done.
4. "Didn't you go to the cinema last night?" "....."
- A. Yes, I lost the ticket. B. Yes, I stayed at home.  
**B. No, It was too cold to go out.** D. OK. That's a good idea.
5. "Well, I hope enjoyed your meal." "....."
- A. Oh, absolutely delicious.** B. Yes, that's right.  
C. No problem. D. Yes, it's very interesting.
6. "Do you have the time, please?" "....."
- A. I'd rather not. B. Sure. I have plenty of time.  
C. No, I haven't. I'm busy. **D. Sorry. I don't have a watch now.**
7. "Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight?" "....."
- A. No thanks. I'd better do it myself.  
**B. Thanks for asking. I just need an early night.**  
C. Why not? Staying at home is always what I want.  
D. Are there any good programmes on TV tonight?
8. "How long will it take to finish that report?" "....."
- A. It's about 10 pages long. B. I agree. It's very long.  
B. I'll report it to the manager. **D. I'll have it finished by next week.**
9. "What's Mary's new boyfriend like?" "....."
- A. He's from the next town. **B. He's intelligent and humorous.**  
C. She likes him a lot. D. He likes tennis and baseball.
10. "It is very kind of you to invite us to your party." "....."
- A. No, thanks. B. Good idea, thanks.  
C. OK. That's great. **D. It's my pleasure.**



# PHẦN II: CÁC ĐỀ LUYỆN THI

## PRACTICE TEST 1

**I, Identify the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others:**

1. A. introduce                      B. huge                      C. flute                      D. cute
2. A. kicked                      B. fixed                      C. pleased                      D. missed
3. A. mistakes                      B. heads                      C. dates                      D. hats
4. A. shower                      B. allowo                      C. bellowo                      D. downo
5. A. valentinee                      B. examinee                      C. determinee                      D. heroinee

**II, Choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the following sentences:**

6. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ home now.  
A. go                      B. went                      C. will go                      D. would go
7. By the end of next month, we \_\_\_\_\_ this assignment.  
A. will finish                      B. will be finishing                      C. will have finished                      D. have finished
8. Don't try too hard. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ off more than you can \_\_\_\_\_  
A. eat – swallow                      B. eat – chew                      C. bite – swallow                      D. bite - chew
9. There's no \_\_\_\_\_ in going to school if you are not willing to learn.  
A. reason                      B. point                      C. aim                      D. purpose
10. Their migration may be *halted* if fog, clouds, or rain hides the stars.  
A. postponed                      B. spoiled                      C. stopped                      D. endangered
11. "Can you wait while I run into the library?" "- Ok, \_\_\_\_\_ you hurry"  
A. so                      B. therefore                      C. unless                      D. as long as
12. The government should do more for \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
A. usual                      B. ordinary                      C. everyday                      D. typical
13. - You must be Jane's sister. Glad to meet you.  
+ \_\_\_\_\_  
A. I am, either                      B. So I am. I'm glad                      C. What do you do                      D. Me too
14. The sign says that all shoplifters will be \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. persecuted                      B. disproved                      C. prosecuted                      D. prohibited

15. - Goodbye, Susie!

+ \_\_\_\_\_!

- A. So so                      B. The same                      C. Yeah                      D. So long

16. Moving to a new town *brought about* many changes in his life.

- A. resulted in                      B. speeded up                      C. resulted from                      D. prevented

17. We \_\_\_\_\_ today and I got into trouble because I hadn't done it.

- A. had checked our homework                      B. had our homework checked  
C. were checked our homework                      D. have our homework checking

18. Flatboats *ferry* cars on the Great Lakes between the United States and Canada.

- A. transport                      B. pursue                      C. inspected                      D. detain

19. One \_\_\_\_\_ of public transport is its unreliability.

- A. benefit                      B. disadvantage                      C. harm                      D. drawback

20. Tornadoes left several Midwestern towns in a state of *chaos*.

- A. confusion                      B. crumb                      C. deterioration                      D. defect

21. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ is my neighbor.

- A. talks to the lady over there.                      B. is talking to the lady over there  
C. was talking to the lady over there                      D. talking to the lady over there

22. My daughter often says that she won't get married until she \_\_\_\_\_ 25 years old.

- A. is                      B. will be                      C. will have been                      D. has been

23. Everyone in both cars \_\_\_\_\_ injured in the accident last night, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. were/weren't they                      B. was/weren't they                      C. was/wasn't he?                      D. were/were they

24. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ us light, but it also gives us heat.

- A. the sun gives                      B. the sun has given                      C. has the sun given                      D. does the sun give

25. If you hadn't stayed up so late last night, you \_\_\_\_\_ sleepy now.

- A. wouldn't have felt                      B. wouldn't feel                      C. wouldn't fell                      D. wouldn't have fallen

26. Increasing \_\_\_\_\_ of fruit in the diet may help to reduce the risk of heart disease.

- A. the amount                      B. an amount                      C. the number                      D. a number

27. "Is that a new coat?" "Yes, what \_\_\_\_\_ it?"

- A. are you thinking of                      B. do you think of

C. is your idea about

D. did you think about

28. The room needs \_\_\_\_\_ for the wedding.

A. decorating

B. to decorate

C. decorate

D. be decorated

29. When the old school friends met, a lot of happy memories \_\_\_\_\_ back.

A. had brought

B. were brought

C. brought

D. had been brought

30. The price of fruit has increased recently, \_\_\_\_\_ the price of vegetables has gone down.

A. whereas

B. whether

C. when

D. otherwise

31. Man's use of colors \_\_\_\_\_ back to the time when men first used red and yellow clays to paint their bodies.

A. had dated

B. dating

C. dated

D. dates

32. They were fortunate \_\_\_\_\_ from the fire before the building collapsed.

A. to rescue

B. to have rescued

C. rescuing

D. to have been rescued

33. These days women are not expected to stay at home \_\_\_\_\_ their mothers did in the past.

A. such as

B. like

C. as if

D. as

34. The twins look so much alike that almost no one can \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.

A. tell – away

B. take – on

C. tell – apart

D. take – apart

35. - How lovely your pets are!

+ \_\_\_\_\_

A. Thank you, it's nice of you to say no

B. Really? They are

C. Can you say that again

D. I love them, too

**III, Read the passage and choose one word or phrase marked A, B, C or D that best fits each of the gaps:**

When you read something in a foreign language, you frequently come across words you do not (36)\_\_\_\_\_ understand. Sometimes you (37)\_\_\_\_\_ the meaning in a dictionary and sometimes you guess. The strategy you adopt depends very much upon the (38)\_\_\_\_\_ of accuracy you require and the time at your disposal.

If you are the sort of person who tends to turn to the dictionary frequently, it is (39)\_\_\_\_\_ remembering that every dictionary has its limitations. Each definition is only an approximation and one builds up an accurate picture of the meaning of a word only after meeting it in a (40)\_\_\_\_\_ of contexts. It is also important to recognize the special dangers of dictionaries that translate from English into your native language and vice versa. If you must use a dictionary, it is usually far safer to (41)\_\_\_\_\_ an English-English dictionary.

In most exams you are not permitted to use a dictionary. (42)\_\_\_\_\_ you are allowed to use one, it is very time-consuming to look up words, and time in exams is usually limited. You are, (43)\_\_\_\_\_, forced to guess the meaning of unfamiliar words.

When you come across unknown words in an exam text, it is very easy to panic. However, if you develop efficient techniques for guessing the meaning, you will (44)\_\_\_\_\_ a number of possible problems and help yourself to understand far more of the text than you at first thought likely.

Two strategies which may help you guess the meaning of a word are: using contextual clues, both within the sentence and outside, and making use of clues (45)\_\_\_\_\_ from the formation of the word.

- 36: A. wholly B. fully C. totally D. completely
- 37: A. inspect B. control C. check D. examine
- 38: A. extent B. level C. degree D. range
- 39: A. worth B. essential C. valuable D. vital
- 40: A. multiple B. variation C. variety D. diversity
- 41: A. survey B. consult C. refer D. inquire
- 42: A. In case B. Provided C. Although D. Even if
- 43: A. therefore B. so C. however D. so that
- 44: A. go over B. overcome C. get over D. surpass
- 45: A. coming B. extracted C. derived D. originated

**IV, Read the passage and choose the best answer:**

Since the world became industrialized, the number of animal species that have either become extinct or have neared extinction has increased. Bengal tigers, for instance, which once roamed the jungles in vast numbers, now number only about 2,300. By the year 2025, it is estimated that they will become extinct. What is alarming about the case of the Bengal tiger is that this extinction will have been caused almost entirely by *poachers* who, according to some sources, are not always interested in material gain but in personal gratification. *This* is an example of the *callousness* that is contributing to the problem of extinction. Animals such as the Bengal tiger, as well as other endangered species, are valuable parts of the world's ecosystem. International laws protecting these animals must be enacted to ensure their survival – and the survival of our planet. Countries around the world have begun to deal with the problem in various ways. Some countries, in an effort to circumvent the problem, have *allocated* large amounts of land to animals reserves. They then charge admission prices to help *defray* the costs of maintaining the parks, and they often must also depend on world organizations for support. This money enables them to invest in equipment and patrols to protect the animals. Another response to the increase in animal extinction is an *international boycott* of products made from endangered species. This has had some effect, but by itself it will not prevent animals from being hunted and killed.

46. What is the main topic of the passage?

- A. Endangered species B. Problems with industrialization
- C. The Bengal tiger D. International boycotts

47. The word “*poachers*” could be best replaced by which of the following?

- A. Concerned scientists B. Enterprising researchers

C. Illegal hunters

D. Trained hunters

48. The word “callousness” could be best replaced by which of the following?

A. incompetence

B. indirectness

C. insensitivity

D. independence

49. The previous passage is divided into two paragraphs in order to contrast:

A. A comparison and a contrast

B. A problem and a solution

C. A statement and an illustration

D. Specific and general information

50. What does the word “*this*” refer to in the passage?

A. Bengal tiger

B. Interest in material gain

C. Killing animals for personal satisfaction

D. The decrease in the Bengal tiger population

51. Where in the passage does the author discuss a cause of extinction?

A. Lines 4-6

B. Lines 7-9

C. Lines 10-16

D. Lines 1-3

52. Which of the following could best replace the word “*allocated*”?

A. set aside

B. combined

C. taken

D. organized

53. The word “*defray*” is closest in meaning to which of the following?

A. make a payment on

B. raise

C. lower

D. make an investment toward

54. What does the term “*international boycott*” refer to?

A. A global increase in animal survival

B. A refusal to buy animal products worldwide

C. Defraying the cost of maintaining national parks

D. Buying and selling of animal products overseas

55. Which of the following best describes the author’s attitude?

A. indifferent

B. forgiving

C. concerned

D. surprised

**V, Circle one option A, B, C or D that best rewrites each of the following sentences:**

56. The robbers made the bank manager hand over the money.

A. The bank manager was forced to hand over the money by the robbers.

B. The bank manager was allowed to hand over the money by the robbers.

C. The bank manager was made hand over the money by the robbers.

D. The robbers helped the bank manager to hand over the money.

57. "I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tom said to Janet.

- A. Tom suggested giving Janet the answer by the end of the week.
- B. Tom promised to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.
- C. Tom insisted on letting Janet know the answer by the end of the week.
- D. Tom offered to give Janet the answer by the end of the week.

58. He survived the operation thanks to the skillful surgeon.

- A. He survived because he was a skillful surgeon.
- B. Though the surgeon was skillful, he couldn't survived the operation
- C. There was no skillful surgeon, so he died.
- D. He wouldn't have survived the operation without the skillful surgeon.

59. People believe that 13 is an unlucky number.

- A. People are believed that 13 is an unlucky number.
- B. 13 are believed to be an unlucky number.
- C. It's believed that 13 is an unlucky number.
- D. It's believed 13 to be an unlucky number.

60. Much as he loved her, he couldn't forgive her for what she had done.

- A. He didn't forgive her for what she had done despite loving her very much.
- B. He loved her so much, that's why he forgave her for what she had done.
- C. He didn't forgive her for what she had done as he loved her very much.
- D. She loved him very much, so he forgave her for what she had done.

61. Le: "I can't understand how you missed the exit. "

Linh: "Well, it was so dark that \_\_\_\_\_."

- A. we could see hardly the road signs
- B. we could see the road signs hardly
- C. hardly could we see the road signs
- D. we could hardly see the road signs

62. "Sorry, Madam. Looking after the garden is not my duty. "

- A. He apologized for not looking after the garden.
- B. He not promised to look after the garden.
- C. He said that he was not responsible for looking after the garden.
- D. He asked if looking after the garden was his duty.

63. You/ should/ doctor/ see/ that cut.

- A. You should have a doctor seen to that cut.

B. You should get a doctor seen to that cut.

C. You should have a doctor see to that cut.

D. You should ask a doctor see to that cut.

64. I only called the police when I had tried everything else.

A. I didn't call the police because I had tried everything else.

B. I only called the police after I have tried everything else.

C. I only called the police as a last resort.

D. Because I had tried everything else, I called the police.

65. She/ urge/ her husband/ accept/ post.

A. She urged that her husband accept the post.

B. She urged her husband accept the post.

C. She urged her husband accepted the post.

D. She urged her husband should be accepted the post.

**VI, Read the passage and circle the best option A, B, C or D to complete the following questions or statements:**

The Sun today is a yellow dwarf star. It is fueled by thermonuclear reactions near its center that convert hydrogen to helium. The Sun has existed in its present state for about four billion six hundred million years and is thousands of times larger than the Earth. By studying other stars, astronomers can predict what the rest of the Sun's life will be like. About five billion years from now, the core of the Sun will shrink and become hotter. The surface temperature will fall. The higher temperature of the center will increase the rate of thermonuclear reactions. The outer regions of the Sun will expand approximately 35 million miles, about the distance to Mercury, which is the closest planet to the Sun. The Sun will then be a red giant star. Temperatures on the Earth will become too high for life to exist. Once the Sun has used up its thermonuclear energy as a red giant, it will begin to shrink. After it shrinks to the size of the Earth, it will become a white dwarf star. The Sun may throw off huge amounts of gases in violent eruptions called nova explosions as it changes from a red giant to a white dwarf. After billions of years as a white dwarf, the Sun will have used up all its fuel and will have lost its heat. Such a star is called a black dwarf. After the Sun has become a black dwarf, the Earth will be dark and cold. If any atmosphere remains there, it will have frozen over the Earth's surface.

66. It can be inferred from the passage that the Sun \_\_\_\_\_.

A. is approximately halfway through its life as a yellow dwarf

B. will continue to be a yellow dwarf for another 10 billion years

C. has been in existence for 10 billion years

D. is rapidly changing in size and brightness

67. What will probably be the first stage of change for the Sun to become a red giant?

- A. Its surface will become hotter and shrink.
- B. It will throw off huge amounts of gases.
- C. Its central part will grow smaller and hotter.
- D. Its core will cool off and use less fuel.

68. When the Sun becomes a red giant, what will the atmosphere be like on the Earth?

- A. It will be enveloped in the expanding surface of the sun.
- B. It will become too hot for life to exist.
- C. It will be almost destroyed by nova explosions.
- D. It will freeze and become solid.

69. When the Sun has used up its energy as a red giant, it will \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. get frozen
- B. cease to exist
- C. stop to expand
- D. become smaller

70. Large amounts of gases may be released from the Sun at the end of its life as a \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. black dwarf
- B. white dwarf
- C. red giant
- D. yellow dwarf

71. As a white dwarf, the Sun will be \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the same size as the planet Mercury
- B. around 35 million miles in diameter
- C. a cool and habitable planet
- D. thousands of times smaller than it is today

72. The Sun will become a black dwarf when \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the Sun moves nearer to the Earth
- B. it has used up all its fuel as a white dwarf
- C. the core of the Sun becomes hotter
- D. the outer regions of the Sun expand

73. The word "there" in the last sentence of paragraph 4 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the planet Mercury
- B. the core of a black dwarf
- C. our own planet
- D. the outer surface of the Sun

74. This passage is intended to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. describe the changes that the Sun will go through
- B. present a theory about red giant stars
- C. alert people to the dangers posed by the Sun
- D. discuss conditions on the Earth in the far future

75. The passage has probably been taken from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a scientific journal
- B. a news report
- C. a work of science fiction
- D. a scientific chronicle



**VII, Identify one underlined part that is incorrect in each of the following sentences by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D:**

76. Food prices have raised so rapidly in the past few months that some families have been

A            B    C

forced to alter their eating habits.

D

77. Many of the population in the rural areas is composed of manual labourers.

A    B    C    D

78. Educated in the UK, his abilities are widely recognized in the world of professionals.

A    B    C    D

79. Unlike many writings of her time, she was not preoccupied with morality.

A    B    C    D

80. Justice is often personified as a blindfolded woman to hold a pair of scales.

A    B    C    D

..... The end.....

KEY TO PRACTICE 1

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	C	21	D	41	B	61	D
2	C	22	A	42	D	62	C
3	B	23	B	43	A	63	C
4	C	24	D	44	B	64	C
5	A	25	B	45	C	65	A
6	B	26	A	46	A	66	A
7	C	27	B	47	C	67	C

8	D	28	A	48	C	68	B
9	B	29	B	49	B	69	D
10	C	30	A	50	C	70	C
11	D	31	D	51	A	71	D
12	B	32	D	52	A	72	B
13	D	33	D	53	A	73	C
14	C	34	C	54	B	74	A
15	D	35	A	55	C	75	A
16	A	36	B	56	A	76	A
17	B	37	C	57	B	77	A
18	A	38	C	58	D	78	B
19	B	39	A	59	C	79	A
20	A	40	C	60	A	80	C

## PRACTICE TEST 2

**Pick out the words whose underlined and bold part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. bound                      B. sound                      C. county                      D. poultry
2. A. examine                      B. determine                      C. valentine                      D. heroine

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.**

3. A. conference                      B. announcement                      C. arrival                      D. reception
4. A. argument                      B. define                      C. museum                      D. permanent
5. A. decision                      B. reference                      C. refusal                      D. important

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

6. My employer's..... of my work doesn't matter to me at all.  
                    A. opinion                      B. belief                      C. meaning                      D. expression
7. "Those students study a lot" " Yes,.....students are very serious. "  
                    A. almost of                      B. almost                      C. most of                      D. most
8. I love this painting of an old man. He has such a beautiful..... smile.

A. childlike      B. childish      C. childless      D. childhood

9. She applied for training as a pilot, but they turned her.....because of her poor eyesight.

A. down      B. up      C. over      D. back

10. She had no..... of selling the clock. It had belonged to her grandfather.

A. intention      B. meaning      C. interest      D. opinion

11. "Can you wait while I run into the library?" – "Ok,.....you hurry"

A. even though      B. when      C. as long as      D. unless

12. " I couldn't take the history class I wanted last semester. "

- " Why didn't you talk to your advisor? She.....able to help you get in. "

A. might have been      B. wasn't      C. might be      D. couldn't have been

13. Working as volunteer gives her a chance to develop her interpersonal skills, promote friendship, and.....her own talent.

A. discover      B. discovered      C. discovering      D. to discover

14. The tourist guide walked so..... that most of the party could not keep up with him

A. lively      B. quick      C. rapid      D. fast

15. The more you pull on it,..... it gets.

A. the tightest      B. the tighter      C. the more tightest      D. the most tightest

16. English is a.....easy language to learn.

A. compared      B. comparable      C. comparative      D. comparatively

17. The..... about travelling by train rather than by car is that you can sleep or read during of the journey.

A. enjoyable      B. enjoyed      C. enjoying      D. enjoyment

18. By the time you receive this letter, I.....for Japan.

A. will leave      B. will have left      C. could have left      D. have left

19. ...., but it also filters harmful sun ray.

A. The atmosphere gives us air to breathe.

B. Not only does the atmosphere give us air to breathe.

C. Not only the atmosphere gives us air to breathe.

D. The atmosphere which gives us air to breathe.

20. " Did you finally paint your house?" – " Yes, It should..... a long time ago. "

A. have done      B. be done      C. have been done      D. been done.

21. I wish you.....stop interrupting me whenever I speak.

- A. will                      B. did                      C. would                      D. might

22. I don't think he'll ever..... the shock of his wife's death.

- A. get through              B. get by                      C. get over                      D. get off

23. In the newspaper today, there.....a lot of news about the food.

- A. was                      B. were                      C. is                      D. are

24. They always kept on good.....with their next-door neighbors for the children's sake.

- A. will                      B. friendship                      C. terms                      D. relations.

25. He has always looked.....his elder brother.

- A. up to                      B. back on                      C. into                      D. up and down

26. " Would you mind closing the window?" - "....."

- A. Not at all. I'll close it now.      B. Yes, very soon      C. Yes,certainly      D. Yes,I would. Go ahead

27. " Excuse me, is anybody sitting here?" - "....."

- A. yes,I'm so glad.      B. No, thanks      C. Sorry, the seat is taken      D. Yes,yes,you can sit here

28. " Do you mind if I ask you one or two questions?" - "....."

- A. Not at all. Fire away.      B. That's quite all right      C. Why not      D. I'm sorry I have no idea

29. " More coffee? Anybody? - "....."

- A. I don't agree, I'm afraid.      B. Yes, I'd love to      C. Yes, please      D. It's right. I think

30. John: " Would you like to have a get-together with us next weekend?"

Mickey: "....."

- A. Yes, I'd love to      B. No, I wouldn't      C. Yes, let's      D. No, I won't

**Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase for each of the blanks from 31 to 40.**

If you are an environmentalist, plastic is a word you tend to say with a sneer or snarl. It has become a symbol of our wasteful, throw-away society. But there seems little doubt it is here to stay, and the truth is, of course, that plastic has brought enormous (31).....even environmental ones. It's not really the plastic themselves that are the environmental evil- it's the way the society chooses to use and (32) ..... them.

Almost all the 50 or so different kinds of modern plastic are made from oil, gas, or coal - non-renewable natural (33).....We (34)..... well over three million tones of the stuff in Britain each year and, sooner or later, most of it is thrown away. A high (35)..... of our annual consumption is in the form of packaging, and this (36)..... about seven percent by weight of our domestic refuse. Almost all of it could be replaced, but very little of it is, though the plastic recycling (37).....is growing fast.

The plastic themselves are extremely energy-rich- they have a higher calorific (38)..... than coal and one (39)..... of “recovery” strongly favoured by the plastic manufacturers is the (40).....of waste plastic into a fuel.

- |                  |                |             |                |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|
| 31. A. savings   | B. pleasures   | C. benefits | D. profits     |
| 32. A. abuse     | B. endanger    | C. store    | D. dispose     |
| 33. A. processes | B. resources   | C. products | D. fuels       |
| 34. A. import    | B. consign     | C. remove   | D. consume     |
| 35. A. amount    | B. proportion  | C. portion  | D. rate        |
| 36. A. makes     | B. carries     | C. takes    | D. constitutes |
| 37. A. industry  | B. manufacture | C. plant    | D. factory     |
| 38. A. demand    | B. effect      | C. value    | D. degree      |
| 39. A. medium    | B. method      | C. measure  | D. mechanics   |
| 40. A. melting   | B. conversion  | C. change   | D. replacement |

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underline part that needs correction in each of the following questions.**

41. Alike other forms of energy, natural gas may be used to heat homes, cook food, and

A B C

even run automobiles.

D

42. The earth is the only planet with a large number of oxygen in its atmosphere.

A B C D

43. A five-thousand- dollars reward was offered for the capture of the escaped criminals.

A B C D

44. In order to do a profit, the new leisure centre needs at least 2000 visitors a month.

A B C D

45. In very early times, people around the fire were entertained by storytellers with stories of

A B C

heroes' wonderful actions and victory.

D

**Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 46 to 55.**

Since the world has become industrialized, there has been an increase in the number of animal species that have either become extinct or have neared extinction. Bengal tigers, for instance, which once roamed the jungles in vast numbers, now number only about 2300 and by the year 2025, their population is estimated to be down to zero. What is alarming about the case of the Bengal tiger is that this extinction will have been caused almost entirely by poachers who, according to some sources, are not interested in material gain but in personal gratification. This is an example of the callousness that is part of what is causing the problem of extinction. Animals like the Bengal tiger, as well as other endangered species, are a valuable part of the world's ecosystem. International laws protecting these animals must be enacted to ensure their survival, and the survival of our planet.

Countries around the world have begun to deal with the problem in various ways. Some countries, in order to circumvent the problem, have allocated large amounts of land to animal reserves. They, then charge admission to help defray the costs of maintaining the parks, they often must also depend on world organizations for support. With the money they get, they can invest equipment and patrols to protect the animals. Another solution that is an attempt to stem the tide of animal extinction is an international boycott of products made from endangered species. This seems fairly effective, but will not by itself, prevent animals from being hunted and killed.

46. What is the main topic of the passage?
- A. the Bengal tiger    B. international boycott    C. endangered species    D. problem with industrialization
47. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word "alarming" in the first paragraph?
- A. dangerous                      B. serious                      C. gripping                      D. distressing
48. The word "callousness" in the first paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
- A. indirectness                      B. independence                      C. incompetence                      D. insensitivity
49. The above passage is divided into two paragraphs in order to contrast.....
- A. a problem and a solution                      B. a statement and an illustration
- C. a comparison and a contrast                      D. a specific and general information
50. What does the word "this" in the first paragraph refer to ?
- A. endangered species that are increasing                      B. Bengal tigers that are decreasing
- C. poachers who seek personal gratification                      D. sources that may not be accurate
51. Where in the passage does the author discuss a cause of extinction?
- A. Since the world..... down to zero.                      B. What is alarming.....personal gratification
- C. Countries around..... for support                      D. With the money..... endangered species
52. Which of the following could best replace the word "allocated" in the second paragraph?
- A. set aside                      B. combined                      C. organized                      D. taken off
53. The word "defray" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
- A. lower                      B. raise                      C. make a payment on                      D. make an investment toward

54. The author uses the phrase “stem the tide” in the second paragraph to mean.....

- A. touch                      B. stop                      C. tax                      D. save

55. Which of the following best describes the author’s attitude?

- A. forgiving                      B. concerned                      C. vindictive                      D. surprised

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.**

56. I was very tired. I sat in an armchair and fell asleep.

- A. felt sleepy                      B. dozed off                      C. slept                      D. went to sleep

57. The weather is horrible at the moment, isn’t it? I hope it clears up later.

- A. becomes brighter                      B. shines                      C. is not cloudy                      D. clean

58. There used to be a shop at the end of the street but it went out of business a year ago.

- A. closed up                      B. closed                      C. closed down                      D. closed into

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.**

59. Cancer is becoming one of the common diseases.

- A. usual                      B. rare                      C. ordinary                      D. universal

60. Digital watches that display time electronically are swiftly replacing analog watches.

- A. slowly                      B. eventually                      C. quickly                      D. rapidly

**Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70.**

Baseball has been dubbed “ America’s favorite sport”, and many fans contend that there is no greater thrill than watching a good pitcher throw the ball skillfully in a series of expertly delivered “fast” and “curve” balls. Two such pitches, the “rising fastball” and the “breaking curveball” are particularly exasperating to batters because these balls tend to veer in one direction or the other just as they reach home plate. The “rising fastball” zooms forward only to jump up and over the bat as batter swings. The “breaking curveball” curves toward home plate, but plunges downward unexpectedly at the last moment. Batters attempt to anticipate these pitches, and respond accordingly, while pitchers work at perfecting their “fast” and “curve” ball deliveries.

But according to studies conducted by a team of engineers and psychologists, the “rising fastball” and “breaking curveball” do not actually exist, they are merely optical illusions. The studies revealed that batters perceive the ball as approaching more slowly or falling more quickly than it actually is, and it is this misperception that produces the visual illusion. Batters tend to have difficulty tracking a ball continuously as it approaches and will briefly divert their to the spot where they think the ball will cross the plate. When

a batter has misjudged the speed or angle of a pitch, and shifts his or her gaze in this way, the ball will appear to suddenly rise or dip and the batter will often miss.

How will this finding affect “American favorite pastime”? No doubt some will vehemently reject the notion that the “rising fastball” and the “breaking curveball” are mere illusions. But for others, the findings may imbue the game with a new level of intrigue as batters attempt to respond to pitches that don’t exist.

61. What does this passage mainly discuss?

the difference between fastball and curveball.

American’s favorite pastime

Illusions about the movements of pitches ball

Perceptual problems among baseball players

62. Which of the following words could best replace the word “thrill” in the first paragraph?

- A. activity      B. excitement      C. remedy      D. issue

63. The word “exasperating” in the first paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?

- A. challenging      B. exhausting      C. exciting      D. frustrating

64. The word “zooms” in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?

- A. falls      B. rolls      C. speeds      D. bounces

65. Which of the following words could best replace the word “plunges” in the first paragraph?

- A. drops      B. withdraws      C. emerges      D. tips

66. According to the author, why is it difficult for the batter to hit the “rising fastball” and the “breaking curveball”?

- A. because the ball approaches too quickly
- B. because the ball veers just before reaching home plate
- C. because the batter misjudges the pitcher’s intention
- D. because the batter misjudges the speed and angle of the ball

67. What does the word “they” in the second paragraph refer to?

- A. the “rising fastball” and “breaking curveball”
- B. the engineers and psychologists
- C. the research studies
- D. the optical illusions

68. According to the passage, how is the illusion of the “rising fastball” and “breaking curveball” produced?

- A. by the pitcher’s delivery



B. by the batter's failing to track the ball accurately

C. by the speed and angle of the ball

D. by the studies of engineers and psychologists

69. Which of the following could best replace the word "vehemently" in the third paragraph?

A. certainly

B. impassively

C. socially

D. furiously

70. The word "imbue" in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?

A. fill

B. spoil

C. affect

D. change

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is CLOSEST in meaning to each of the following questions.**

71. "Leave my house now or I'll call the police!" shouted the lady to the man. "

A. The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house

B. The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn't leave her house.

C. The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn't leave her house.

D. The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.

72. "You should have finished the report by now." John told his secretary.

A. John reminded his secretary of finishing the report on time.

B. John approached his secretary for not having finished the report.

C. John said that his secretary had not finished the report on time

D. John scolded his secretary for not having finished the report

73. "I'm sorry, I was rude to you yesterday," I said to Tom.

A. I apologized of being rude to you yesterday

B. I apologized Tom for having been rude to him the day before.

C. I apologize for my rude to you yesterday

D. I apologize to you as I was rude to you yesterday

74. "You should learn English instead of any other language, Tom" said Tim.

A. Tim encouraged Tom learn English instead of any other language.

B. Tim encouraged Tom to learn English instead of any other language

C. Tim encouraged Tom learn any other language but English

D. Tim encouraged Tom learn any other language including English

75. The moon doesn't have the atmosphere, neither does the planet Mars.

- A. Neither the moon or the planet Mars has the atmosphere
- B. Either the moon nor the planet Mars has the atmosphere
- C. Neither the moon nor the planet Mars has the atmosphere
- D. Either the moon or the planet Mars has the atmosphere

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.**

76. I like Robinson Crusoe. He is the main character in a book by Daniel Defoe.

- A. I like Robinson Crusoe because he is the main character in a book by Daniel Defoe
- B. I like Robinson Crusoe, who is the main character in a book by Daniel Defoe
- C. I like Robinson Crusoe and who is the main character in a book by Daniel Defoe
- D. I like Robinson Crusoe because he is the main character in a book by Daniel Defoe

77. The children couldn't go swimming. The sea was too rough.

- A. The sea was too rough for the children to go swimming
- B. The children were not calm enough to swim in the sea.
- C. The sea was rough enough for the children to swim in
- D. The sea was too rough to the children's swimming

78. There are a lot of people. The people like to do things together.

- A. There are a lot of people whom like to do things together
- B. There are a lot of people who like to do things together
- C. There are a lot of people who like do things together
- D. There are a lot of people like to do things together

79. We didn't want to swim in the river. It looked very dirty

- A. We didn't want to swim in the river, where looked very dirty
- B. We didn't want to swim in the river, which looked very dirty
- C. We didn't want to swim in the river, in which looked very dirty
- D. We didn't want to swim in the river, that looked very dirty

80. Ngoc couldn't speak English. She decided to settle in Manchester.

- A. Despite of speaking no English, Ngoc decided to settle in Manchester
- B. Although no speaking English, Ngoc decided to settle in Manchester

C. In spite of her disability to speak English, Ngoc decided to settle in Manchester

D. Ngoc decided to settle in Manchester even she didn't speak English.

### KEY TO PRACTICE 2

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	D	21	C	41	A	61	C
2	C	22	C	42	B	62	B
3	A	23	C	43	B	63	D
4	C	24	C	44	A	64	C
5	B	25	A	45	D	65	A
6	A	26	A	46	C	66	D
7	D	27	C	47	D	67	A
8	A	28	B	48	D	68	B
9	B	29	C	49	A	69	D
10	A	30	A	50	C	70	A
11	C	31	C	51	B	71	B
12	A	32	A	52	A	72	D
13	A	33	B	53	C	73	B
14	D	34	A	54	B	74	B
15	B	35	B	55	B	75	C
16	D	36	D	56	B	76	B
17	D	37	A	57	A	77	A
18	B	38	C	58	C	78	B
19	B	39	B	59	B	79	B
20	C	40	B	60	A	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 3

Mark the letter A, B, C, D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. grapeses                      B. chairss                      C. hatss                      D. roofss
2. A. moon                      B. food                      C. good                      D. noodle
3. A. worked                      B. caused                      C. forced                      D. stopped

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

4. A. admiration                      B. enthusiast                      C. discriminate                      D. minority
5. A. explain                      B. involve                      C. purpose                      D. control

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. Mrs Thanh is bored with doing the \_\_\_\_\_ chores.  
a. homework                      b. household                      c. housework                      d. a & c
7. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ for you since yesterday.  
a. is looking                      b. has been looking                      c. looked                      d. was looking
8. Doctors do not always have good communication \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. things                      b. skills                      c. talent                      d. means
9. Yesterday was the day \_\_\_\_\_ they celebrated their 21st wedding anniversary.  
A. when                      B. which                      C. what                      D. then
10. I..... the sales manager now if I..... such a terrible mistake.  
A. will be / haven't made                      B. would be / had not made  
C. would be / didn't make                      D. would have been / had not made
11. I must take this watch to be repaired; It..... over 20 minutes a day.  
A. progresses                      B. accelerates                      C. gains                      D. increases
- 12..... high school, Nam attended a university in the city centre.  
A. To finish                      B. Having finished                      C. Having been finished                      D. To have finished
13. She built a high wall round her garden.....  
A. in order that her fruit not be stolen                      B. to enable people not taking her fruit  
C. so that her fruit would be stolen                      D. to prevent her fruit from being stolen

14. Learning English is not easy.

A. It is not easy to learning English.

B. It is easy learning English.

C. It is not easy to learn English.

D. It is not difficult to learn English.

5. He had his car..... this morning.

A. repair

B. to repair

C. repaired

D. repairing

16. It's raining outside, and Tom brought his umbrella with him..... he wouldn't get wet.

A. In order to

B. so as to

C. so that

D. in order

17. The water was so cold that the children could not swim in it.

A. The water was not warm enough for the children to swim in it.

B. The water was not warm enough for the children to swim in.

C. The water was not enough warm for the children to swim in.

D. The water was not warm enough for the children to swim in.

18. A/an ..... species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.

A. dangerous

B. endanger

C. endangered

D. endangerment

19. Only a few of the many species at risk of extinction actually make it to the lists and obtain legal.....

A. protect

B. protection

c. protective

d. protector

20. It is reported that humans are the main reason for most species' declines and habitat.....and degradation are the leading threats.

a. destroy

b. destructive

c. destructor

d. destruction

21..... speaking,I do not really like my present job.

a. Honest

b. Honesty

c. Honestly

d. Dishonest

22. I try to be friendly but it is hard to..... some of my colleagues.

a. get on with

b. watch out for

c. come up with

d. stand in for

23. The twins are so alike that it is difficult to.....

a. take them apart

b. tell them apart

c. bring them up

d. break them off

24. On the day I left, some of my friends..... at the airport.

a. showed me up

b. took me up

c. saw me off

d. got me through

25. If you need any support, you can rely on me to.....

A back you up

b. face you up

c. set you down

d. put you through

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is CLOSEST in meaning to the word / sentence given or to the underlined part in each of the following question:

26. Childbearing is the women's most wonderful role.

- a. bring up a child                      b. giving birth to a baby                      c. educating a child                      d. having no child

27. He had never experienced such discourtesy towards the president as it occurred at the annual meeting in May.

- a. politeness                      b. rudeness                      c. encouragement                      d. measurement

28. Ralph Nader was the most prominent leader of the U. S consumer protection movement.

- A. discriminating                      B. significant                      C. aggressive                      D. promiscuous

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the word / sentence given or to the underlined part in each of the following question

29. There is growing concern about the way man has destroyed the environment.

- A. ease                      B. attraction                      C. consideration                      D. speculation

30. Fruit and vegetables grew in abundance on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.

- A. excess                      B. sufficiency                      C. small quantity                      D. large quantity

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

31. Shop assistant: " ....."

Customer: " Yes, I want to send some flowers to my wife in Italy. "

- a. Do you like flowers                      b. What do you like                      c. Can you help me                      d. Can I help you

32. Student: " Have a nice weekend".

Teacher: " ....."

- a. You are the same                      b. The same to you                      c. so to you                      d. Will you?

33. Guest: " Would you mind if I smoke?"

Host: " ....."

- a. Never mind                      b. Yes, please don't                      c. Not at all                      d. Yes, please do

34. Barry: Were you involved in the accident?

Daniel: Yes, but I wasn't to .....for it.

- a. charge                      b. accuse                      c. blame                      d. apologize

35. "Excuse me, is anybody sitting here?" – "....."

- a. No, thanks                      b. Yes, I am so glad                      c. Sorry, the seat is taken                      d. Yes, yes. You can sit here

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase for each of the blanks.

Nearly 200 of the 1500 native plant species in Hawaii are at risk of going extinct in the near future because they have been (36) \_\_\_\_\_ to such low numbers. Approximately 90 percent of Hawaii's plants are found nowhere else in the world but they are (37) \_\_\_\_\_ by alien invasive species such as feral goats, pigs, rodents and (38) \_\_\_\_\_ plants.

The Hawaii Rare Plant Restoration Group is striving to (39) \_\_\_\_\_ the extinction of the 182 rare Hawaiian plants with fewer than 50 individuals remaining in the (40) \_\_\_\_\_. Since 1990, (41) \_\_\_\_\_ a result of their "Plant Extinction Prevention Program", sixteen species have been brought into (42) \_\_\_\_\_ and three species have been reintroduced. Invasive weeds have been removed in key areas and fencing put up in order to (43) \_\_\_\_\_ plants in the wild.

In the future the Hawaii Rare Plant Restoration Program aims (44) \_\_\_\_\_ collecting genetic material from the remaining plants in the wild for storage as a safety net for the future. They also aim to manage wild populations and where possible reintroduce species into (45) \_\_\_\_\_.

36. A. disappeared                      B. reduced                      C. increased                      D. developed

37. A. guarded                      B. invested                      C. conserved                      D. threatened

38. A. national                      B. native                      C. international                      D. non-native

39. A. prevent                      B. encourage                      C. stimulate                      D. influence

40. A. wild                      B. atmosphere                      C. hole                      D. sky

41. A. so                      B. due                      C. as                      D. but

42. A. contamination                      B. production                      C. cultivation                      D. generation

43. A. derive                      B. vary                      C. remain                      D. protect

44. A. at                      B. for                      C. with                      D. on

45. A. shelters                      B. reserves                      C. gardens                      D. halls

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

In the world today, particular in the two most industrialized areas, North America and Europe, recycling is the big news. People are talking about it, practicing it, and discovering new ways to be sensitive to the environment. Recycling means finding ways to use products a second time. The motto of the recycling movement is "Reduce, Reuse, Recycle".

The first step is to reduce garbage. In stores, a shopper has to buy products in blister packs, boxes and expensive plastic wrappings. A hamburger from a fast food restaurant comes in lots of packaging: usually paper, a box and a bag. All that packaging is wasted resources. People should try to buy things that are wrapped simply, and to reuse cups and utensils. Another way to reduce waste is to buy high-quality products. When low-quality appliances break, many customers throw them away and buy new ones - a loss

of more resources and more energy. For example, if a customer buys a high-quality appliance that can be easily repaired, the manufacturer receives an important message. In the same way, if a customer chooses a product with less packaging, that customer sends an important message to the manufacturers. To reduce garbage, the throw-away must stop.

The second step is to reuse. It is better to buy juices and soft drinks in returnable bottles. After customers empty the bottles, they return them to the stores. The manufacturers of the drinks collect bottles, wash them, and then fill them again. The energy that is necessary to make new bottles is saved. In some parts of the world, returning bottles for money is a common practice. In those places, the garbage dumps have relatively little glass and plastic from throw-away bottles.

The third step being environmentally sensitive is to recycle. Spent motor oil can be cleaned and used again. Aluminum cans are expensive to make. It takes the same amount of energy to make one aluminum can as it does to run a color TV set for three hours. When people collect and recycle aluminum (for new cans), they help save one of the world's precious resources.

46. Which area is considered one of the most industrialized?

- A. South America    B. Middle East    C. Europe    D. Asia

47. What does the word "sensitive" means?

- A. cautious    B. logical    C. responding    D. friendly

48. The word "motto" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. meaning    B. value    C. belief    D. reference

49. It is a waste when customers buy low-quality products because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they have to be repaired many times.    B. they will soon throw them away  
C. customers always change their idea    D. they are very cheap.

50. What is the topic of the passage?

- A. How to live sensitively to the environment.    B. How to reduce garbage disposal.  
C. What is involved in the recycling movement.    D. What people understand the term "recycle"

51. People can do the following to reduce waste EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. buy high-quality products    B. buy simply-wrapped things  
C. reuse cups    D. buy more hamburgers

52. What best describe the process of reuse?

- A. The bottles are filled again after being returned, collected and washed.  
B. The bottles are collected, washed, returned and filled again.  
C. The bottles are washed, returned filled again and collected.  
D. The bottles are collected, returned, filled again and washed.

53. The word "practice" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. training                      B. exercise                      C. deed                      D. belief

54. Garbage dumps in some areas have relatively little glass and plastic because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. people are ordered to return bottles                      B. returned bottles are few  
C. each returned bottle is paid                      D. few bottles are made of glass or plastic

55. What are the two things mentioned as examples of recycling?

- A. TV sets and aluminum cans.                      B. Hamburger wrappings and spent motor oil.  
C. Aluminum cans and plastic wrappings.                      D. Aluminum cans and spent motor oil.

*Read the following passage and mark the letter a, b, c or d on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

Because writing has become so important in our culture, we sometimes think of it as more real than speech. A little thought, however, will show why speech is primary and writing secondary to language. Human beings have been writing (as far as we can tell from surviving evidence) for at least 5000 years; but they have been talking for much longer, doubtless ever since there have been human beings.

When writing did develop, it was derived from and represented speech, although imperfectly. Even today there are spoken languages that have no written form. Furthermore, we all learn to talk well before we learn to write; any human child who is not severely handicapped physically or mentally will learn to talk; a normal human being cannot be prevented from doing so. On the other hand, it takes a special effort to learn to write. In the past many intelligent and useful members of society did not acquire the skill, and even today many who speak languages with writing systems never learn to read or write, while some who learn the rudiments of those skills do so only imperfectly.

To affirm the primacy of speech over writing is not, however, to disparage the latter. One advantage writing has over speech is that it is more permanent and makes possible the records that any civilization must have. Thus, if speaking makes us human, writing makes us civilized.

56. We sometimes think of writing as more real than speech because \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. people have been writing since there have been human beings  
b. human beings have been writing for at least 5000 years  
c. it has become very important in our culture  
d. writing is secondary to language

57. The author of the passage argues that \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. speech is more basic to language than writing  
b. all languages should have a written form  
c. writing has become too important in today's society  
d. everyone who learns to speak must learn to write

58. Normal human beings \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. learn to talk after learning to write
- c. learn to talk before learning to write

- b. learn to write after learning to talk
- d. learn to write and talk at the same time

59. According to the passage, writing \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. is represented perfectly by speech
- c. is imperfect, but less so than speech
- b. represents speech, but not perfectly
- d. developed from imperfect speech

60. Learning to write is \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. too difficult
- b. easy
- c. not easy
- d. very easy

61. In order to show that learning to write requires effort, the author gives the example of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. severely handicapped children
- c. people who speak many languages
- b. people who learn the rudiments of speech
- d. intelligent people who couldn't write

62. In the author's judgement, \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. writing is more real than speech
- b. writing has more advantages than speech
- c. speech is essential but writing has important benefits
- d. speech conveys ideas less accurately than writing does

63. According to the author, one mark of any civilized society is that it \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. affirms the primacy of writing over speech
- b. affirms the primacy of speech over writing
- c. keeps written records
- d. teaches its children to speak perfectly

64. Which of the following is NOT true?

- a. Speech is essential but writing has important benefits.
- b. Writing has become so important in our culture.
- c. It is easy to acquire the writing skill.
- d. Writing represents speech, but not perfectly.

65. The word "advantage" in the last paragraph most closely means \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. benefit
- b. skill
- c. rudiments
- d. domination

Mark the letter A, B, C, D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the questions from 66 to 70.

66. Everyone ought to know the basic steps that follow in case of an emergence.

A

B

C

D

67. We should have played much better than we do.

A

B

C

D

68. Sue's mother is a hairdresser, but Sue is not interested in becoming it.

A

B

C

D

69. It announced today that an enquiry would be held into the collapse of a high- rise apartment

A

B

C

block in Kuala Lumpur last week.

D

70. The effects of wind and water in rock surfaces can often cause erosion.

A

B

C

D

Mark the letter A, B, C, D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.

71. I did not come to your party due to the rain.

a. If it did not rained, I would come to your party.

b. It was the rain that prevented me from coming to your party.

c. Even though it rained, I came to your party.

d. Suppose it did not rain, I would come to your party.

72. They got success since they took my advice.

a. They took my advice, and failed.

b. If they did not take my advice, they would not get success.

c. But for taking my advice, they would not have got success.

d. My advice stopped them took my advice.

73. Unless you come on time, we will go without you.

a. Come on time or we will go without you.

b. Come on time, we will go without you.

c. Because of your punctuality, we will go without you.

d. Without your coming on time, we will go.

74. Thanks to her high grades at university, she is offered the position.

- a. If she had not got high grades at university, she would not be offered the position.
- b. It was her high grades at university which offer her the position.
- c. If she had not got high grades at university, she would not have been offered the position.
- d. Without her high grades at university, she is not offered the position.

75. I am very interesting in the book you lent me last week.

- a. The book is interesting enough for you to lent me last week.
- b. It was the interesting book which you lent me last week.
- c. The book which you lent me last week is too interesting to read.
- d. The book that you lent me last week interests me a lot.

76. Because they erected a barn, the cattle couldn't get out into the wheat field.

- A. They erected a barn, and as a result, the cattle couldn't get out into the wheat field.
- B. In order not to keep the cattle away from the wheat field, they erected a ban.
- C. They erected a barn so that the cattle would get into the wheat field.
- D. They erected a barn in case the cattle couldn't get out into the wheat field.

77. They couldn't climb up the mountain because of the storm.

- A. The storm made them impossible to climb up the mountain.
- B. The storm discouraged them from climbing up the mountain.
- C. Their climbing up the mountain was unable due to the storm.
- D. The storm made it not capable of climbing up the mountain.

78. Wealthy as they were, they were far from happy.

- A. They were not happy as they were wealthy.
- B. Although they were wealthy, they were not happy.
- C. They were as wealthy as they were happy.
- D. Even if they were wealthy, they were not happy.

79. The woman was too weak to lift the suitcase.

- A. The woman wasn't able to lift the suitcase, so she was very weak.
- B. The woman shouldn't have lifted the suitcase as she was weak.
- C. So weak was the woman that she couldn't lift the suitcase.
- D. The woman, though weak, could lift the suitcase.

80. "We're having a reunion this weekend. Why don't you come?" John said to us.

- A. John cordially invited us to a reunion this weekend.
- B. John didn't understand why we came to a reunion.

C. John simply asked us why we wouldn't come to a reunion.

D. John asked why we didn't come to reunion this weekend

KEY TO PRACTICE 3

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	C	41	C	61	D
2	C	22		42	C	62	C
3	B	23	B	43	D	63	C
4	A	24	C	44	A	64	C
5	C	25	A	45	B	65	A
6	B	26	B	46	C	66	B
7	B	27	B	47	D	67	D
8	B	28	B	48	C	68	D
9	A	29	A	49	B	69	A
10	B	30	C	50	A	70	B
11	C	31	D	51	D	71	B
12	B	32	B	52	A	72	C
13	C	33	A	53	C	73	A
14	C	34	C	54	C	74	A
15	C	35	C	55	D	75	D
16	C	36	B	56	C	76	A
17	B	37	D	57	A	77	A
18	C	38	D	58	C	78	B
19	B	39	A	59	B	79	B
20	D	40	A	60	C	80	A

**PRACTICE TEST 4**

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest

- 1: A. position                      B. consider                      C. visit                      D. president  
2: A. curriculum                      B. character                      C. careful                      D. cease

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose stress is different from that of the rest

- 3: A. collect                      B. relate                      C. origin                      D. preserve  
4: A. industrial                      B. recommend                      C. involvement                      D. community  
5: A. furniture                      B. instrument                      C. equipment                      D. production

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions

6: - John: "This dish is really nice!" - Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_ It's called yakitori, and it's made with chicken livers."

- A. It's my pleasure.    B. I'm glad you like it.    C. I guess you're right.    D. Sure, I'll be glad to.

7: - "Where have you been?" - "I was caught in the traffic, \_\_\_\_\_ I would have been here sooner."

- A. however                      B. although                      C. anyway                      D. otherwise

8: His father left New York. The doctor suggested he \_\_\_\_\_ there.

- A. not stayed                      B. won't stay                      C. not stay                      D. not to stay

9: We talked for hours of things and persons \_\_\_\_\_ we remembered in the school.

- A. which                      B. that                      C. who                      D. whom

10: Only when the ground is kept moist \_\_\_\_\_ germinate.

- A. grass seeds will    B. grass seeds does    C. does grass seeds    D. will grass seeds

11: - Nancy: "Excuse me. Is it the math class?" - Jenny: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Yes, they are your math teachers                      B. Yes, it is. And I'm your teacher

- C. Not really, he's the man over there                      D. No, he isn't here

12: The room was noisy and not very \_\_\_\_\_ for studying.

- A. suited                      B. fitted                      C. proper                      D. suitable

13: No one died in the accident, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. didn't they                      B. did he                      C. didn't he                      D. did they

14: \_\_\_\_\_ she entered the house than the phone started to ring.

- A. Hardly had                      B. No sooner had                      C. No longer had                      D. Scarcely had

15: He worked hard \_\_\_\_\_ everything would be ready by 5 o'clock.

A. because                      B. so that                      C. when                      D. until

16: The child hurt himself badly when he fell \_\_\_\_\_ the bedroom window.

A. out from                      B. out of                      C. down                      D. over

17: Tom: "What a lovely house you have!" - Jack: " \_\_\_\_\_ . "

A. I think so                      B. Of course                      C. Thank you                      D. You're welcome

18: Those books deal mainly \_\_\_\_\_ tropical plants.

A. with                      B. in                      C. for                      D. up

19: \_\_\_\_\_ Daisy didn't like to swim, she played on the beach with her sister.

A. Since                      B. After                      C. However                      D. When

20: My new glasses cost me \_\_\_\_\_ the last pair that I bought last month.

A. more than three times                      B. three times as much as  
C. more three times than                      D. as much three times as

21: The motorbike was badly smashed up but the rider escaped without any \_\_\_\_\_

A. injury                      B. wound                      C. destruction                      D. damage

22: I'm feeling sick. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much chocolate last night.

A. needn't to eat                      B. did not eat  
C. mustn't eat                      D. shouldn't have eaten

23: My girlfriend arrived after I \_\_\_\_\_ for her about half an hour.

A. was waiting                      B. had been waiting                      C. have been waiting                      D. have waited

24: By the end of this year, Tom \_\_\_\_\_ English for three years.

A. will be studying                      B. has studied                      C. will have studied                      D. has been studying

25: Mary: "Do you think it will rain?" - Jenny: "Oh! \_\_\_\_\_ . "

26: The rotten oranges should be \_\_\_\_\_ so as not to affect the others in the basket.

A. thrown out                      B. thrown over                      C. thrown back                      D. thrown in

27: Nowadays almost no one speaks Latin, \_\_\_\_\_ is the reason why it is called a dead language.

A. so                      B. that                      C. which                      D. what

28: If you \_\_\_\_\_ that job, would you have to move to another city.

A. offer                      B. offered                      C. are offered                      D. were offered

29: I applied for the job that I saw \_\_\_\_\_ in the paper.

A. advertised                      B. advertising                      C. being advertising                      D. be advertised

30: - "Oh no! I completely forgot we were supposed to pick Jenny up at the airport this morning. " - "She \_\_\_\_\_ there waiting for us. "

- A. needn't sit            B. might still sit            C. must still be sitting            D. should have sat

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions*

If there is a building which symbolizes a country, such as the Eiffel Tower for France and Sydney Opera House for Australia, then it has to be the Taj Mahal for India.

It was set up by Emperor Shah Jahan in 1653 in memory of his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. From the time they got married, they wouldn't be separated. She followed him to wars, advised him on affairs of state, and was loved by his people for her good work. But she died in 1631 during her childbirth. The emperor was heartbroken and had the Taj Mahal built as a sign of his love.

It took more than 20 years for the Taj Mahal to be built. Workers were brought in, not only from all over India, but from central Asia too. A total of 20,000 people worked on the building.

In 1657, Shah Jahan fell ill and in 1658 his son, Aurangzeb, imprisoned his father and seized power. Shah Jahan stayed in prison until his death in 1666. He was finally buried there with his wife, who he could never forget.

The Taj Mahal is definitely worth more than a single visit. As it is built with white marble stones, its character changes in different lights. It looks more beautiful at sunrise and sunset. At sunset, for example, the color of the Taj Mahal changes from white to yellow, then to pink. As the moon rises, it turns a silvery white.

To show respect to the Taj Mahal, tourists are asked to take off their shoes during their visit.

31: Which of the following about the Taj Mahal is not true?

- A. All workers building the Tai Mahal came from central Asia.  
B. As being told, it is a symbol of India.  
C. It took over 20 years to set up the Taj Mahal.  
D. The Taj Mahal was built with white marble stones.

32: Why did Emperpor Shah Jahan build the Taj Mahal?

- A. To show his great power.            B. To memorize his wife.  
C. To give his wife great honour.            D. To make more world wonders.

33: What does the underlined word "definitely" here probably mean?

- A. certainly            B. uncertainly            C. wrongly            D. doubtedly

34: Which of the following sentences is true?

- A. Shah Jahan lived a hard life in his last years.  
B. Shah Jahan lost his life just because of old age.  
C. Shah Jahan was not popular with his people at that time.



D. Shah Jahan treated his son badly when he was young.

35: Which of the following is true about the writer of the passage?

A. He doesn't think the Taj Mahal worth a visit.

B. He thinks the Taj Mahal is the grandest building in the world.

C. He thinks highly of the Taj Mahal.

D. He has never visited the Taj Mahal.

36: How long did it take them to build the Taj Mahal?

A. over 20 years      B. 20 years      C. less than 20 years      D. 20 months

37: What kind of stones is used to build the Taj Mahal?

A. yellow marble stones      B. red marble stones

C. marble stones      D. white marble stones

38: Where is the Taj Mahal situated?

A. in India      B. in Paris      C. in Australia      D. in Cambodia

39: How long did Emperor Shah Jahan stay in prison?

A. 7 years      B. 8 years      C. 10 years      D. 9 years

40: What should tourists do show respect to the Taj Mahal?

A. each person visits it at a time      B. put on their shoes during their visit.

C. take off their shoes during their visit.      D. take off their hats during their visit.

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word (s) for each of the blanks*

In the United it is not customary to telephone someone very early in the morning. If you telephone him early in the day, while he is shaving or having breakfast, the time of the (11) \_\_\_\_\_ shows that the matter is very important and requires immediate attention. The same meaning is (12) \_\_\_\_\_ to telephone call (13) \_\_\_\_\_ after 11:00 p. m. If someone receives a call during (14) \_\_\_\_\_ hours, he assumes it is a matter of life and death. The time chosen for the call communicates (15) \_\_\_\_\_ importance.

In social life, time plays a very important part. In the USA guests tend to feel they are not highly regarded if the invitation (16) \_\_\_\_\_ a dinner party is extended only three or four days before the party date. But it is not true in all countries. In other areas of the world, (17) \_\_\_\_\_ may be considered foolish to make an appointment too far in advance (18) \_\_\_\_\_ plans which are made for a date more than a week tend to be forgotten. The meaning of time differs in different parts of the world. (19) \_\_\_\_\_, misunderstandings arise between people from cultures that treat time (20) \_\_\_\_\_.

41:    A. talk      B. phone      C. call      D. conversation

42:    A. attached    B. taken      C. shown      D. drawn

43:    A. made      B. done      C. sent      D. dialed

- 44: A. sleep B. sleepy C. slept D. sleeping
- 45: A. the B. its C. it's D. it
- 46: A. for B. about C. of D. to
- 47: A. he B. that C. they D. it
- 48: A. though B. except C. even D. because
- 49: A. In contrast B. Thus C. Otherwise D. However
- 50: A. variously B. opposite C. alike D. differently

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correcting

51: Having punished twice this week, Kate feels ashamed of her bad behaviour.

A B C D

52: So extensive the lakes are that they are viewed as the largest bodies of fresh water in the world.

A B C D

53: Many disabled children cannot derive full enjoyment from toys make for non-disabled children.

A B C D

54: He has done a valuable contribution to the independence of the country.

A B C D

55: The air that surrounds our planet is both odourless, colourless, and invisible.

A B C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions

When the first white men came to America, they found vast amounts of natural resources of tremendous value. Forests covered a large part of the nation; later gas, oil and minerals were found in unbelievable amounts. There was a great abundance of very fertile soil. Forests, prairies, streams and rivers abounded with wildlife. So vast were these resources that it seemed that they could never be used up. So forests were destroyed to make way for farmland. Grass lands and prairies were plowed and harrowed. Minerals and oil were used in great quantities to supply a young industrial nation. Almost every river became the scene of factories, mills and power companies. Mammals and birds were slaughtered for food and sport.

Within a short time, the results were obvious. Floods caused millions of dollars worth of damage yearly. The very fertile soil was washed away or blown up in great clouds. The seemingly inexhaustible oil and minerals showed signs of depletion. Rivers were filled with silt from eroding farms and wastes from factories. Many of the rivers were made unfit for fish. Several species of birds disappeared, and some mammals seemed on the verge of going. Future timber shortages were predicted. In short, Americans soon became to realize that some sort of conservation program must be set up, if future as well as present Americans were to share in the resources that are the heritage of every American.

56: The title that best expresses the main theme or subject of this selection is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. The loss of topsoil
- B. The cause of timber shortage
- C. The story of America's natural resources
- D. What the first white men found in America

57: It seemed to the early American settlers that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. there was a shortage of minerals.
- B. fertile soil was scarce
- C. the natural resources were inexhaustible
- D. forests should not be cut

58: The use of America's natural resources by the early settlers was \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. careless
- B. predicted
- C. scientific
- D. unbelievable

59: Much of the fertile soil of America has \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. been covered by lakes
- B. been eroded by wind and water
- C. sunk deep into the earth
- D. become the scene of factories

60: According to the passage, the false sentence is that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they killed animals for food and sport.
- B. the early American settlers used a lot of minerals and oil.
- C. they plowed and harrowed grasslands and prairies.
- D. they grew different kinds of plants in prairies.

61: The word "abounded with" could best be replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. were plentiful of
- B. were abundant in
- C. were rich with
- D. were a lot of

62: The word "silt" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. dust
- B. soil
- C. land
- D. mud

63: One reason why many of our rivers are no longer suitable living places for fish is that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. too many fish have been caught
- B. floods have caused much damage
- C. a conservation program has been set up
- D. factories have dumped waste into the rivers

64: Some species of birds and mammals seemed \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to become extinct
- B. to be killed
- C. to be slaughtered
- D. to die

65: Americans soon came to realize that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. They should stop killing animals for food.
- B. They must establish a conservation program
- C. They shouldn't reclaim the land
- D. They must give up exploiting minerals

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is closest in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions**

66: Most of the school-leavers are sanguine about the idea of going to work and earning money.

- A. fearsome                      B. expected                      C. excited                      D. optimistic

67: The situation seems to be changing minute by minute.

- A. from time to time    B. time after time    C. again and again    D. very rapidly

68: It was great to see monkeys in their natural habitat.

- sky                      B. land                      C. forest                      D. home

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is opposite in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions**

69: Fruit and vegetables grew in abundance on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.

- A. sufficiency                      B. large quantity  
C. small quantity                      D. excess

70: There is growing concern about the way man has destroyed the environment.

- A. attraction                      B. consideration  
C. speculation                      D. ease

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions**

71: "Let's go to the cinema tonight," he suggested.

- A. He suggested that let's them to go to the cinema that night.  
B. He suggested them to go to the cinema that night.  
C. He suggested their going to the cinema that night.  
D. He suggested they went to the cinema that night.

72: I was surprised at how easy he was to talk to.

- A. He hadn't expected it was so easy to talk to me.  
B. I hadn't expected him to be such an easy person to talk to.  
C. I hadn't expected him be so easy to talk to.  
D. I hadn't expected talk to him would be so easy.

73: It is acknowledged that Vietnam had a complete control over SARS from a very early stage of the epidemic.

- A. Vietnam is acknowledged to have controlled SARS from a very early stage of the epidemic.

- B. Vietnam was acknowledged to have had a complete control over SARS from a very early stage of the epidemic.
- C. Vietnam is acknowledged to have completely controlled SARS from a very early stage of the epidemic.
- D. Vietnam is acknowledged to have made a complete control over SARS from a very early stage of the epidemic.

74: "Don't come home late, Jenny, it is dangerous!" her father said.

- A. Jenny's father advised her to come home early.
- B. Jenny's father told her not to come home late because it was dangerous.
- C. Jenny's father asked her against being home late because it may be dangerous.
- D. Jenny's father told her not to come home late and it was dangerous.

75: Sam is twenty-two years old, and his sister is eleven.

- A. He is two times as older as his sister.      B. His sister is twice as young as him.
- C. Sam is older than his sister two times.      D. He is twice as old as his sister.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the best way to complete each of the following questions

76: \_\_\_\_\_ daily promotes physical as well as emotional well-being in people of all age.

- A. Having exercised      B. For exercising
- C. Those who exercise      D. Exercising

77: It is a fact that \_\_\_\_\_ form of energy.

- A. electricity being the most useful      B. electricity is the most useful
- C. electricity the most useful      D. the most useful in electricity

78: When \_\_\_\_\_ is not known.

- A. was the wheel invented      B. the invention of the wheel
- C. the wheel was invented      D. it was invented the wheel

79: Especially important to many people \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. is legislation against pollution      B. it is legislation against pollution
- C. there is legislation against pollution      D. legislation against pollution is

80: Once known as the "Golden State" because of its gold mines, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. today in North Carolina few metallic minerals are mined
- B. there are few metallic minerals mined in North Carolina today
- C. few metallic minerals are mined in North Carolina today

KEY TO PRACTICE 4

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	A	41	C	61	B
2	D	22	D	42	A	62	D
3	C	23	B	43	A	63	D
4	B	24	C	44	D	64	A
5	C	25	C	45	B	65	B
6	B	26	A	46	D	66	D
7	D	27	C	47	D	67	D
8	C	28	D	48	D	68	D
9	B	29	A	49	B	69	C
10	D	30	C	50	D	70	D
11	B	31	A	51	A	71	C
12	D	32	B	52	A	72	B
13	D	33	A	53	D	73	C
14	B	34	A	54	A	74	B
15	B	35	C	55	B	75	D
16	B	36	A	56	C	76	D
17	C	37	D	57	C	77	B
18	A	38	A	58	A	78	C
19	A	39	B	59	B	79	A
20	B	40	C	60	D	80	D

**PRACTICE TEST 5**

*Choose the word that has the underlined part stressed differently from the rest:*

1. A. project      B. profit      C. protest      D. progress      2

2. A. satellite      B. astronaut      C. deliver      D. applicant      2  
 3. A. family      B. father      C. brother      D. believe      1

*Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.*

4. A. stopped      B. looked      C. needed      D. laughed      1  
 5. A. secret      B. season      C. serious      D. sugar      4

*Choose the best word or phrase to complete each of the following sentences.*

6. I did not get the job \_\_\_\_\_ 1

- A. in spite of I had some qualifications      B. despite I had some qualifications  
 C. although my qualifications      D. despite my qualification

7. The more books you read, \_\_\_\_\_ 1

- A. the knowledge more you get      B. the most knowledge you get  
 C. more and more knowledge you get      D. the more knowledge you get

8. "Why don't we go out for a drink?" 2

Indirect: Chris \_\_\_\_\_ for a drink.

- A. asked to go out      B. told us to go out  
 C. suggested going out      D. invited us to go out

9. \_\_\_\_\_ the door, he was very surprised at what he saw. 2

- A. Have opened      B. When opened      C. To opening      D. Opening

10. We don't feel \_\_\_\_\_ although we have walked three miles. 1

- A. tiring      B. tiredly      C. tired      D. tire

11. Please stop looking at me like that! It's very \_\_\_\_\_ to stare.

- A. courteous      B. polite      C. inconvenience      D. rude      2

12. By the end of next month, we \_\_\_\_\_ our English course. 1

- a. have completed      b. will be completed      c. will have completed      d. completed

13. It was \_\_\_\_\_ that everyone answered it correctly. 2

- A. so simple question      B. such a simple question  
 C. too simple question      D. a more simple question

14. We haven't had a holiday together \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. since several years      B. for several years ago      1  
 C. for several years      D. since a long time

15. \_\_\_\_\_, she wouldn't have failed the exam. 2

- A. If Lan studied hard                      B. Unless Lan had studied hard  
C. If Lan had studied hard                 D. If Lan studied hard

16. During the school year I'm not allowed \_\_\_\_\_ T. V until I have finished my homework.                      2

- A. watched                      B. watch                      C. to watch                      D. watches

17. It's essential that every student .....the exam before attending the course.                      3

- A. pass                      B. passes                      C. would pass                      D. passed

18. .... in the street yesterday was very friendly.                      1

- A. The police, who I saw                      B. The police I saw whom  
C. Who is the police I saw                      D. The police whom I saw

19. \_\_\_\_\_ if a war happened?                      1

- A. What you would do                      B. What would you do                      C. What will you do                      D. What will you do

20. A: This grammar test is the hardest one we've ever had this semester!                      3

B: .....but I think it's quite easy.

- A. I couldn't agree more.                      B. I understand what you're saying.  
C. You're right.                      D. I don't see in that way.

21. Deborah is going to take extra lessons to..... what she missed while she was away.                      4

- A. catch up on                      B. cut down on                      C. put up with                      D. take up with

22. I feel terrible, I didn't sleep \_\_\_\_\_ last night.                      4

- A. an eye                      B. a wink                      C. a jot                      D. an inch

23. Margaret: "Could you give me the salt, please?" Henry: " \_\_\_\_\_ "                      4

- A. I am, of course                      B. Yes, with pleasure                      C. I feel sorry                      D. Yes, I can

24. \_ "What are you going to buy in this store?"

\_ "Nothing, \_\_\_\_\_ want is too much expensive"                      2

- A. That I                      B. What I                      C. That what I                      D. What do I

25. I'm sorry I opened your handbag, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it for mine.                      4

- A. took                      B. confused                      C. recognized                      D. imagined

26. You will be surprised at how \_\_\_\_\_ Joe is in French after a year.                      1

- A. fluently                      B. fluent                      C. fluency                      D. influence

27. Politicians often \_\_\_\_\_not to raise taxes, especially before an election.                      2

- A. keep                      B. tell                      C. promise                      D. avoid



28. It was quite cold \_\_\_\_\_ it was very sunny. 2

A. although                      B. because                      C. so that                      D. as

29. There were two small rooms in the beach house, \_\_\_\_\_ served as a kitchen.

A. the smaller of them                      B. the smaller of which

C. the smallest of which                      D. smallest of that

30. I don't understand what this means. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it to me?

A. talk                      B. answer                      C. say                      D. explain 2

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.*

31. The more you practise your English, the fastest you will learn 1

A                      B                      C                      D

32. The last person leaving the room must turn off the lights 2

A                      B                      C                      D

33. In spite of the fact that he had been warned, he still got an electric shocked 2

A                      B                      C                      D

34. Different from they are, all advertisements are alike in one important way. 3

A                      B                      C                      D

35. Dresses, skirts, shoes, and the children's clothing is advertised at reduced prices this weekend. 3

A                      B                      C                      D

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

36. This woman has devoted her whole life to help others 3

A. dedicated                      B. appealed                      C. resulted                      D. appalled

37. "Please speak up a bit more, Jason. You're hardly loud enough to be heard from the back", the teacher said.

A. visible                      B. audible                      C. edible                      D. eligible 3

38. The choice of a particular career is influenced by a number of factors. 2

A. usefulness                      B. success                      C. desire                      D. selection

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.*

39. That afternoon at the railway station I was surprised and made happy by the unexpected arrival of Miss Margaret and her mother, from Oakland.

A. anticipated                      B. presumed                      C. supposed                      D. informed                      2

40. She decided to remain celibate and devote her life to helping the homeless and orphans.

A. married                      B. divorced                      C. separated                      D. single                      4

Choose the correct sentence which has the same meaning as the given one

41. Most people get fewer colds in the summer than in the winter.

A person is more likely to get a cold in the winter than in the summer.                      4

More people have summer colds than winter colds.

People get colder in the summer than in the winter.

The winter is much colder than the summer.

42. Nobody told us anything about the incident.                      3

- A. We were told anything about the accident.    B. We weren't told anything about the accident.  
C. Anything weren't told us about the accident. D. Anything were told to us about the accident.

43. I'll finish this job and then I'll phone you back.                      2

- A. I'll phone you back as soon I'll finish this job.  
B. I'll phone you back as soon I finished this job.  
C. I'll phone you back as soon I finish this job.  
D. I'll phone you back as soon I'm finished this job.

44. The heavy downpour brought their picnic to an abrupt end.                      4

- A. Their picnic didn't end in the heavy downpour.  
B. The heavy downpour ended when they brought me to their picnic.  
C. Their picnic ends abruptly because of the heavy downpour.  
D. They had to cut short their picnic because of the heavy downpour.

45. Jane hardly ever enjoys eating vegetables.                      2

- A. She enjoys eating vegetables.                      B. She is fond of eating vegetables.  
C. She almost never eats vegetables.                      D. She sells vegetables for living.

46. You drink too much coffee ; that's why you can't sleep.                      2

- A. If you didn't drink too much coffee, you could sleep.  
B. You couldn't sleep although you drank too much coffee.

C. If you hadn't drunk too much coffee, you could have slept.

D. If you don't drink too much coffee, you can sleep.

47. The hostess made every effort to see that her guests got the food and drinks they wanted.

The hostess was reluctant to offer her guests food and drinks. 4

The hostess tried hard to please her guests.

The guests refused the food and drinks prepared by the hostess.

Neither the guests nor the hostess had food or drinks.

48. I'm sorry that he won't accept the job he's been offered. 3

A. I wish he would accept the job he's been offered

B. I wish he had accept the job he's been offered

C. I wish he would have accepted the job he's been offered

D. I wish he will accept the job he's been offered

49.. The reforms will not succeed unless they are carefully planned. 4

A. The reforms will succeed unless they are not carefully planned.

B. The reforms will not succeed provided that they are carefully planned.

C. Careful planning is crucial to the success of the reforms.

D. The success of the reforms result in careful planning.

50. He acts as though nothing matters to him. 3

A. He acts when there's no matter for him. B. He acts although nothing matters to him.

C. He seems not to care about anything. D. Nothing matters to him when he acts.

Mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase to fill in the blank in the following passage.

People in many countries grow fresh water fish from eggs. They move the small fish into lakes and rivers. The fish live and (21) \_\_\_\_\_ there. People go (22) \_\_\_\_\_ in these lakes and rivers. They enjoy catching fish because fish is also good food. Now the Japanese grow salt water fish. Most of them are yellow tail fish. Workers grow the fish from eggs. Every time they feed the fish, they play (23) \_\_\_\_\_ of piano music. The fish (24) \_\_\_\_\_ that piano music means food. When the fish are small, the Japanese put them into the ocean near the land. The fish find some of their (25) \_\_\_\_\_ food. Workers also feed them. They play the same piano music. The fish (26) \_\_\_\_\_ know the music. They swim toward it and (27) \_\_\_\_\_ the food. In (28) \_\_\_\_\_ months the fish are large. The Japanese play the same music. The fish swim toward it and the workers (29) \_\_\_\_\_ them. The Japanese get about 15 percent of their seafood (30) \_\_\_\_\_ farms in the ocean.

51. A. bread B. born C. grow D. develop 2

52. A. enjoying B. fishing C. shopping D. catching 1

- |                 |              |            |            |   |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|------------|---|
| 53. A. songs    | B. films     | C. tapes   | D. lot     | 4 |
| 54. A. think    | B. recognize | C. realize | D. learn   | 2 |
| 55. A. own      | B. own's     | C. self    | D. self's  | 3 |
| 56. A. recently | B. mostly    | C. nearly  | D. already | 4 |
| 57. A. see      | B. find      | C. bite    | D. hold    | 3 |
| 58. A. few      | B. a few     | C. couple  | D. many    | 4 |
| 59. A. grasp    | B. catch     | C. seize   | D. hold    | 4 |
| 60. A. on       | B. of        | C. from    | D. in      | 4 |

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions

Carbohydrates, which are sugars, are an essential part of a healthy diet. They provide the main source of energy for the body, and they also function to flavor and sweeten foods. Carbohydrates range from simple sugars like glucose to complex sugars such as amylose and amylopectin. Nutritionists estimate that carbohydrates should make up about one-fourth to one-fifth of a person's diet. This translates to about 75-100 grams of carbohydrates per day.

A diet that is deficient in carbohydrates can have an adverse effect on a person's health. When the body lacks a sufficient amount of carbohydrates it must then use its protein supplies for energy, a process called gluconeogenesis. This, however, results in a lack of necessary protein, and further health difficulties may occur. A lack of carbohydrates can also lead to ketosis, a build-up of ketones in the body that causes fatigue, lethargy, and bad breath.

61. What is the main idea of this passage? 1  
 A. Carbohydrates are needed for good health. B. Carbohydrates prevent a build-up of proteins.  
 C. Carbohydrates can lead to ketosis. D. Carbohydrates are an expendable part of a good diet.
62. The word "range" as used in line 3 is closest in meaning to which of the following? 3  
 A. probe B. proceed C. hail D. extend
63. According to the passage, what do most nutritionists suggest? 2  
 A. Sufficient carbohydrates will prevent gluconeogenesis.  
 B. Carbohydrates are simple sugars called glucose.  
 C. Carbohydrates should make up about a quarter of a person's daily diet.  
 D. Carbohydrates should be eaten in very small quantities.
64. Which of the following do carbohydrates NOT do? 4  
 A. prevent ketosis B. cause gluconeogenesis  
 C. provide energy for the body D. flavor and sweeten food
65. Which of the following words could best replace "deficient" as used in line 6 ? 4  
 A. outstanding B. abundant C. insufficient D. unequal
66. What does the word "this" refer to in line 8 ? 3  
 A. using protein supplies for energy B. converting carbohydrates to energy  
 C. having a deficiency in carbohydrates D. having an insufficient amount of protein
67. According to the passage, which of the following does NOT describe carbohydrates? 3  
 A. a protein supply B. a necessity C. a range of sugars D. an energy source

68. The word “lack” in line 13 is most similar to which of the following? 1  
 A. plethora                      B. shortage                      C. derivation                      D. commission
69. Which of the following best describes the author's tone? 4  
 A. sensitive                      B. emotional                      C. informative                      D. regretful
70. Which of the following best describes the organization of this passage? 4  
 A. Cause and result                      B. Comparison and contrast  
 C. Specific to general                      D. Definition and example

**Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.**

In early civilizations, citizens were educated informally, usually within the family unit. Education meant simply learning to live. As civilizations became more complex, however, education became more formal, structured, and comprehensive. Initial efforts of the ancient Chinese and Greek societies concentrated solely on the education of males. The post-Babylonian Jews and Plato were exceptions to this pattern. Plato was apparently the first significant advocate of the equality of the sexes. Women, in his ideal state, would have the same rights and duties and the same educational opportunities as men. This aspect of Platonic philosophy, however, had little or no effect on education for many centuries, and the concept of a liberal education for men only, which had been espoused by Aristotle, prevailed.

In ancient Rome, the availability of an education was gradually extended to women, but they were taught separately from men. The early Christians and medieval Europeans continued this trend, and single-sex schools for the privileged classes prevailed through the Reformation period. Gradually, however, education for women on a separate but equal basis to that provided for men was becoming a clear responsibility of society. Martin Luther appealed for civil support of schools for all children. At the Council of Trent in the 16th century, the Roman Catholic Church encouraged the establishment of free primary schools for children of all classes. The concept of universal primary education, regardless of sex, had been born, but it was still in the realm of the single-sex school.

In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, co-education became a more widely applied principle of educational philosophy. In Britain, Germany, and the Soviet Union the education of boys and girls in the same classes became an accepted practice. Since World War II, Japan and the Scandinavian countries have also adopted relatively universal co-educational systems. The greatest negative reaction to co-education has been felt in the teaching systems of the Latin countries, where the sexes have usually been separated at both primary and secondary levels, according to local conditions.

A number of studies have indicated that girls seem to perform better overall and in science in particular in single-sex classes: during the adolescent years, pressure to conform to stereotypical female gender roles may disadvantage girls in traditionally male subjects, making them reluctant to volunteer for experimental work while taking part in lessons. In Britain, academic league tables point to high standards achieved in girls' schools. Some educationalists therefore suggest segregation of the sexes as a good thing, particularly in certain areas, and a number of schools are experimenting with the idea.

71. Ancient education generally focused its efforts on \_\_\_\_\_. 1  
 A. on male learners                      B. both sexes                      C. female learners                      D. young people only
72. Education in early times was mostly aimed at \_\_\_\_\_. 1  
 A. teaching skills                      B. learning to live  
 C. learning new lifestyles                      D. imparting survival skills
73. The first to support the equality of the sexes was \_\_\_\_\_. 2

A. the Chinese

B. the Greek

C. Plato

D. the Jews

74: The word "informally" in this context mostly refers to an education occurring \_\_\_\_\_. 3

A. in classrooms

B. outside the school

C. in a department

D. ability

75: When education first reached women, they were \_\_\_\_\_. 4

A. locked up in a place with men

B. isolated from normal life

C. deprived of opportunities

D. separated from men

76: When the concept of universal primary education was introduced, education \_\_\_\_\_. 4

A. was given free to all

B. was intended for all the sexes

C. focused on imparting skills

D. was intended to leave out female learners

77: The word "espouse" is contextually closest in meaning to "\_\_\_\_\_". 4

A. to introduce

B. to put off

C. to give

D. to induce

78: Co-ed was negatively responded to in \_\_\_\_\_. 3

A. Japan

B. the Scandinavian countries

C. South American countries

D. conservative countries

79: The word "tables" is closest in meaning to "\_\_\_\_\_". 4

A. shapes

B. meeting tables

C. personalities

D. figures

80: The word "segregation" may be understood as "\_\_\_\_\_". 4

A. grouping

B. mixture

C. separation

D. extraction

KEY TO PRACTICE 5

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	C	21	A	41	A	61	A
2	C	22	B	42	B	62	D
3	D	23	B	43	C	63	C
4	C	24	B	44	D	64	B
5	D	25	A	45	C	65	C
6	D	26	B	46	A	66	A
7	D	27	C	47	B	67	A
8	C	28	A	48	A	68	B
9	D	29	B	49	C	69	C
10	C	30	D	50	C	70	B
11	D	31	C	51	D	71	A

12	C	32	A	52	B	72	B
13	B	33	D	53	C	73	C
14	C	34	A	54	C	74	B
15	C	35	B	55	A	75	D
16	C	36	A	56	D	76	B
17	A	37	B	57	B	77	A
18	D	38	D	58	B	78	C
19	B	39	D	59	B	79	C
20	B	40	A	60	A	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 6

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently.**

Câu 1: A. knowledge      B. comfort      C. popular      D. college

Câu 2: A. orchestra      B. scholarship      C. chemistry      D. charity

Câu 3: A. announced      B. struggled      C. observed      D. repaired

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.**

Câu 4: A. understanding      B. anniversary      C. experience      D. celebration

Câu 5: A. invite      B. intimate      C. divorce      D. imagine

**Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

Câu 6: I didn't see anyone but I felt as though I \_\_\_\_\_.

A. have been watched      B. was being watched      C. being watched      D. am watched

Câu 7: This shirt is \_\_\_\_\_ that one.

A. much far expensive than      B. a bit less expensive  
C. not nearly as expensive as      D. as much expensive as

Câu 8: Mary is unhappy that she hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ for the next round in the tennis tournament.

A. qualifying      B. qualification      C. quality      D. qualified

Cõu 9: - "Would you like to join our volunteer group this summer?" - " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. I wouldn't. Thank you.                      B. Do you think I would?  
C. Yes, I'd love to. Thanks.                      D. Yes, you're a good friend.

Cõu 10: - "Today's my 20th birthday."                      - " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Have a good time!                      B. Take care!                      C. I don't understand.                      D. Many happy returns!

Cõu 11: I accidentally \_\_\_\_\_ Mike when I was crossing a street downtown yesterday.

- A. paid attention to                      B. kept an eye on                      C. caught sight of                      D. lost touch with

Cõu 12: The factory is said \_\_\_\_\_ in a fire two years ago.

- A. being destroyed                      B. to have been destroyed  
C. to destroy                      C. to have destroyed

Cõu 13: I \_\_\_\_\_ with my aunt when I am on holiday in Ho Chi Minh City next month.

- A. will have been staying                      B. will have stayed  
C. stay                      D. will be staying

Cõu 14: To solve this problem, it is advisable that a drastic measure \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to be adopted                      B. adopt                      C. be adopted                      D. is adopted

Cõu 15: \_\_\_\_\_ from Bill, all the students said they would go to the party.

- A. Except                      B. Only                      C. Apart                      D. Separate

Cõu 16: Had the drought not lowered, the reservoir of the ancient village \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. wouldn't be discovered                      B. wouldn't have been discovered  
C. can't have been discovered                      D. can't be discovered

Cõu 17: There's someone at the door. \_\_\_\_\_ them.

- A. I'm answering                      B. I answer                      C. I answered                      D. I'll answer

Cõu 18: I remember \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris when I was a very small child.

- A. to be taken                      B. to take                      C. being taken                      D. taking

Cõu 19: The party starts at 8 o'clock so I'll \_\_\_\_\_ at 7.45.

- A. look for you                      B. pick you up                      C. bring you along                      D. take you out

Cõu 20: \_\_\_\_\_ happened, I didn't want to lose Sarah's friendship.

- A. Whatever                      B. Wherever                      C. However                      D. Whenever

Cõu 21: I believe that everyone has had \_\_\_\_\_ experiences in their life.

- A. memorable                      B. observable                      C. acceptable                      D. reflexible



Cõu 22: At present we are \_\_\_\_\_ an anti-drug campaign.

- A. setting up                      B. carrying out              C. taking part in              D. joining with

Cõu 23: No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ the corner than the wheel came off.

- A. the van turned                      B. did the van turned      C. the van had turned      D. had the van turned

Cõu 24: They were fortunate \_\_\_\_\_ from the fire before the building collapsed.

- A. rescuing                      B. to have rescued              C. to rescue                      D. to have been rescued

Cõu 25: I remember \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris when I was a very small child.

- A. to be taken                      B. to take                      C. being taken                      D. taking

Cõu 26: The boys were taken \_\_\_\_\_ a fishing trip last weekend.

- A. in                      B. to                      C. on                      D. for

Cõu 27: We managed to \_\_\_\_\_ over \$4,000 through donations and other events.

- A. deposit                      B. donate                      C. raise                      D. exchange

Cõu 28: If you \_\_\_\_\_ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess now.

- A. had listened                      B. will listen                      C. listen                      D. listened

Cõu 29: The rapid growth of population led to an acute \_\_\_\_\_ of housing.

- A. shortfall                      B. shortcut                      C. shortcoming                      D. shortage

Cõu 30: Our school has managed to collect a lot of books to \_\_\_\_\_ to the children in a village school.

- A. publish                      B. distribute                      C. employ                      D. depart

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.*

Cõu 31: I clearly remember talking to him in a chance meeting last summer.

- A. unplanned                      B. deliberate                      C. accidental                      D. unintentional

Cõu 32: Fruit and vegetables grew in abundance on the island. The islanders even exported the surplus.

- A. large quantity                      B. *small quantity*                      C. excess                      D. sufficiency

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that is CLOSET in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Cõu 33: I had a glance at the article, but I haven't read it yet.

- A. close look                      B. quick look                      C. direct look                      D. furtive look

Cõu 34: These anniversaries mark the milestones of a happy and lasting relationship between married couples.

- A. signs                      B. achievements              C. landmarks              D. progresses

Cõu 35: Teachers have been asked to concentrate on literacy and numeracy.

- A. the ability to read and write                      B. basic skills in mathematics  
C. good knowledge of literature                      D. the ability to write books

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.*

Cõu 36: It is extremely important for an engineer to know to use a computer.

- A              B                      C                      D

Cõu 37: Despite modern medical technology, many diseases causing by viruses I are still not curable.

- A    B                      C              D

Cõu 38: Members of high school clubs learn to participation in teams through their involvement in

- A    B    C

community projects.

- D

Cõu 39: We have heard so many news about recent developments in computer technology.

- A              B                      C              D

Cõu 40: Fifteen hundred dollars a year were the per capita income in the United States in 1950.

- A    B              C    D

*Read the following passage carefully and then choose best option to fit each space. Identify your choice by circling letter A, B, C or D on the answer sheet.*

The reality of an interview is never as bad as your fears. For some (41) \_\_\_\_\_ people imagine the interviewer is going to jump on over tiny mistake they (42) \_\_\_\_\_. In truth, the interviewer is as keen for the meeting to go well as you are. It is what (43) \_\_\_\_\_ his or her job enjoyable.

The secret of a good interview is preparing for it. What you wear is always important as it creates the first impression. So (44) \_\_\_\_\_ neatly, but comfortably. Make (45) \_\_\_\_\_ that you can deal with anything you are (46) \_\_\_\_\_. Prepare for questions that are certain to come up, for example: Why do you become a nurse? What is the most important quality a good nurse should have? Apart from nursing, what other careers have you considered? What are your interest and hobbies?

Answer the questions fully and precisely. For instance, if one of your interests is reading, be prepared to (47) \_\_\_\_\_ about the sort of books you like. (48) \_\_\_\_\_, do not learn all answers off (49) \_\_\_\_\_ heart. He interviewer wants to meet a human being, not a robot. Remember, the interviewer is genuinely interested in you, so the more you relax and are yourself, the more (50) \_\_\_\_\_ you are succeed.

- Cõu 41: A. idea                      B. reason                      C. explanation                      D. excuse

- Cõu 42: A. perform                    B. do                    C. make                    D. have
- Cõu 43: A. does                    B. happens                    C. causes                    D. makes
- Cõu 44: A. have on                    B. wear                    C. put on                    D. dress
- Cõu 45: A. evident                    B. sure                    C. definite                    D. clear
- Cõu 46: A. asked                    B. enquired                    C. questioned                    D. requested
- Cõu 47: A. say                    B. talk                    C. discuss                    D. chat
- Cõu 48: A. Therefore                    B. Although                    C. Despite                    D. However
- Cõu 49: A. at                    B. by                    C. on                    D. in
- Cõu 50: A. easy                    B. possible                    C. likely                    D. probable

**Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.**

Perhaps it was his own lack of adequate schooling that inspired Horace Mann to work so hard for the important reforms in education that he accomplished. While he was still a boy, his father and older brother died, and he became responsible for supporting his family. Like most of the children in his town, he attended school only two or three months a year. Later, with the help of several teachers, he was able to study law and became a member of the Massachusetts bar, but he never forgot those early *struggles*.

While serving in Massachusetts legislature, he signed a historic education bill that set up a state board of education. Without *regret*, he gave up his successful legal practice and political career to become the first secretary of the board. There he exercised an enormous influence during the critical period of reconstruction that brought into existence the American graded elementary school as substitute for the older distinct school system. Under his leadership, the curriculum was restructured, the school year was increased to a minimum of six months, and *mandatory* schooling was extended to age sixteen. Other important reforms included the establishment of state normal schools for teacher training, institutes for in-service teacher education, and lyceums for adult education. He was also instrument in improving salaries for teachers and creating school libraries.

Mann’s ideas about school reform were developed and distributed in twelve annual reports to the state of Massachusetts that he wrote during his tenure as secretary of education. Considered quite radical at the time, the Massachusetts reforms later served as a model for the nation. Mann was recognized as the father of public education.

Cõu 51: Which of the following titles would best express the main topic of the passage ?

- A. The Father of American Public Education                    B. Philosophy of Education
- C. The Massachusetts State Board of Education.                    D. Politics of Educational Institutions

Cõu 52: Which of the following describes Horace Mann’s early life ?

- A. He attended school six months a year.                    B. He had to study alone, without help.
- C. He supported his family after his father died.                    D. He was an only child.

Cõu 53: The word “struggles” in line 5 could best be replaced by

A. valuable experiences      B. happy situations      C. influential people      D. difficult times

Cõu 54: The word “regret” in line 7 could best be replaced by

A. consideration      B. feeling sorry      C. limitation      D. acceptance

Cõu 55: What did Horace Mann advocate ?

A. The state board school system.      B. The district school system.

C. The substitute school system.      D. The graded school system.

Cõu 56: The word “mandatory” in line 11 is closest in meaning to

A. required      B. equal      C. excellent      D. basic

Cõu 57: How were Mann’s educational reforms distributed ?

A. In twelve annual reports to the state of Massachusetts

B. In reports that he wrote for national distribution.

C. In speeches that he made throughout the country.

D. In books that could be found in school libraries.

Cõu 58: The reforms that Horace Mann achieved were

A. not radical for the time.      B. used only by the state of Massachusetts

C. adopted by the nation as a model.      D. enforced by the Massachusetts bar.

Cõu 59: Among Mann’s school reforms, which of the following is NOT mentioned ?

A. Restructuring curriculum      B. Schools for teacher training

C. Lyceums for adult education      D. Creating museums

Cõu 60: Which of the following statements best represents Mann’s philosophy ?

A. Think in new way      B. Help others      C. Study very hard      D. Work hard

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

Probably the most famous film commenting on the twentieth-century technology is *Modern Times*, made in 1936. Charlie Chaplin was motivated to make the film by a reporter who, while interviewing him, happened to describe the working conditions in industrial Detroit. Chaplin was told that healthy young farm boys were lured to the city to work on automotive assembly lines. Within four or five years, these young men’s health was destroyed by the stress of work in the factories.

The film opens with a shot of a mass of sheep making their way down a crowded ramp.

Abruptly, the film shifts to a scene of factory workers jostling one another on their way to a factory. However, the rather bitter note of criticism in the implied comparison is not sustained. It is replaced by a gentle note of satire. Chaplin prefers to entertain rather than lecture.

Scenes of factory interiors account for only about one-third of *Modern Times*, but they contain some of the most pointed social commentary as well as the most comic situations. No one who has seen the film can ever forget Chaplin vainly trying to keep pace with the fast-moving conveyor belt, almost losing his mind in the process. Another popular scene involves an automatic feeding machine brought to the assembly line so that workers need not interrupt their labor to eat. The feeding machine malfunctions, hurling food at Chaplin, who is strapped in his position on the assembly line and cannot escape. This serves to illustrate people's utter helplessness in the face of machines that are meant to serve their basic needs.

Clearly, *Modern Times* has its faults, but it remains the best film treating technology within a social context. It does not offer a radical social message, but it does accurately reflect the sentiment of many who feel they are victims of an over-mechanised world.

Cõu 61: According to the passage, Chaplin got the idea for *Modern Times* from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a movie                      B. a conversation              C. a newspaper              D. fieldwork

Cõu 62: The young farm boys went to the city because they were \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. promised better accommodation              B. driven out of their sheep farm  
C. attracted by the prospect of a better life              D. forced to leave their sheep farm

Cõu 63: The phrase "jostling one another" in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. jogging side by side                                      B. pushing one another  
C. hurrying up together                                      D. running against each other

Cõu 64: According to the passage, the opening scene of the film is intended \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to reveal the situation of the factory workers              B. to introduce the main characters of the film  
C. to produce a tacit association                                      D. to give the setting for the entire plot later

Cõu 65: The word "vainly" in the fourth paragraph is closest in meaning to "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. recklessly                      B. carelessly                      C. hopelessly                      D. effortlessly

Cõu 66: The word "This" in the fourth paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the scene of an assembly line in operation  
B. the scene of the malfunction of the feeding machine  
C. the malfunction of the twentieth-century technology  
D. the situation of young workers in a factory

Cõu 67: According to the author, about two-thirds of *Modern Times* \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. entertains the audience most                                      B. is rather discouraging  
C. was shot outside a factory                                      D. is more critical than the rest

Cõu 68: The author refers to all of the following notions to describe *Modern Times* EXCEPT "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. satire                      B. entertainment                      C. criticism                      D. revolution

Cõu 69: Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?

- A. The working conditions in the car factories of the 1930s were very stressful.
- B. In *Modern Times*, the factory workers' basic needs are well met.
- C. The author does not consider *Modern Times* as a perfect film.
- D. *Modern Times* depicts the over-mechanised world from a social viewpoint.

Cõu 70: The passage was written to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. criticize the factory system of the 1930s
- B. explain Chaplin's style of acting
- C. review one of Chaplin's popular films
- D. discuss the disadvantages of technology

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following sentences.

Cõu 71: "You should have finished the report by now," John told his secretary.

- A. John reminded his secretary of finishing the report on time.
- B. John reproached his secretary for not having finished the report.
- C. John said that his secretary had not finished the report.
- D. John scolded his secretary for not having finished the report.

Cõu 72: There is absolutely no truth in that rumour.

- A. That rumour is absolutely true.
- B. That rumour is absolutely false.
- C. There is some absolutely true rumour.
- D. That rumour is true to some extent.

Cõu 73: Without skilful surgery he would not have survived the operation.

- A. Had it been for skilful surgery he would not have survived the operation.
- B. He wouldn't have survived the operation if he hadn't had skilful surgery.
- C. But for skilful surgery he would not have survived the operation.
- D. With skilful surgery he would have survived the operation.

Cõu 74: He is determined to continue working when he is 65.

- A. There is a determination of him to continue working when he is 65.
- B. Not until he is 65, he is determined to continue working.
- C. He has no intention of stopping working when he is 65.
- D. His determination to continue working only when he is 65.

Cõu 75: He started computer programming as soon as he left school.

- A. No sooner had he started computer programming than he left school.

- B. Hardly had he started computer programming when he left school.
- C. No sooner had he left school than he started computer programming.
- D. After he left school, he had started computer programming.

Câu 76: I regret going to his party last night.

- A. I didn't go to his party last night.
- B. I refused to go to his party last night.
- C. I wish I didn't go to his party last night.
- D. I wish I hadn't gone to his party last night.

Câu 77: We cut down many forests. The Earth becomes hot.

- A. The more forests we cut down, the hotter the Earth becomes.
- B. The more we cut down forests, the hotter the Earth becomes.
- C. The more forests we cut down, the Earth becomes hotter.
- D. The more we cut down forests, the Earth becomes hotter.

Câu 78: His car has just been stolen.

- A. He has just had his car stolen.
- B. He has his car stolen.
- C. He has got someone steal his car.
- D. He had had his car stolen.

Câu 79: "Don't be so disappointed, Bill. You can take the driving test again," said Helen.

- A. Helen told Bill not to be disappointed and not to take the driving test again.
- B. Helen told Bill to be disappointed because of the driving test again.
- C. Helen said Bill not to be disappointed in order to take the driving test again.
- D. Helen encouraged Bill to take the driving test again.

Câu 80: The film didn't come up to my expectations.

- A. The film was as good as I expected.
- B. I expected the film to end more abruptly.
- C. The film fell short of my expectations.
- D. I expected the film to be more boring.

KEY TO PRACTICE 6

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	A	41	B	61	B
2	D	22	B	42	C	62	C
3	A	23	D	43	D	63	B

4	C	24	D	44	D	64	C
5	B	25	C	45	B	65	C
6	B	26	C	46	A	66	B
7	C	27	C	47	B	67	C
8	D	28	A	48	D	68	D
9	C	29	D	49	B	69	B
10	D	30	B	50	C	70	C
11	C	31	B	51	A	71	B
12	B	32	B	52	C	72	B
13	D	33	B	53	D	73	B
14	C	34	C	54	B	74	C
15	C	35	A	55	D	75	C
16	B	36	D	56	A	76	D
17	D	37	B	57	A	77	A
18	C	38	B	58	C	78	A
19	B	39	B	59	D	79	D
20	A	40	B	60	B	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 7

I. Choose one word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.

1.     A. opene                    B. playe                    C. prove                    D. regarde
2.     A. cook                        B. fool                        C. moon                        D. tool
3.     A. eats                        B. gains                        C. signs                        D. sings
4.     A. study                        B. ready                        C. pupy                        D. occupy
5.     A. event                        B. lend                        C. even                        D. dentist

II. Choose one word whose stress pattern is different. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.

6.     A. reduction                    B. popular                    C. financial                    D. romantic
7.     A. discover                        B. difficult                    C. invention                    D. important



8. A. acceptance      B. explorer      C. possibly      D. refusal  
9. A. report      B. master      C. foreign      D. private  
10. A. automatic      B. conversation      C. disadvantage      D. reasonable

III. Choose from the four options given (marked A, B, C, and D) one best answer to complete each sentence by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.

11. You are going to come to the party \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. aren't you      B. do you      C. will you      D. won't you

12. The plane crashed into the bridge because it was flying too \_\_\_\_\_

- A. deep      B. shallow      C. low      D. narrow

13. Her parents were very \_\_\_\_\_ because she was out so late that night.

- A. responsible      B. Sorry      C. worried      D. overcome

14. From the hotel there is a good \_\_\_\_\_ of the mountains

- A. vision      B. view      C. sight      D. picture

15. Since he was a boy, one of his \_\_\_\_\_ has been stamp collecting

- A. hobbies      B. cares      C. sports      D. professions

16. Most people were no longer listening to his long \_\_\_\_\_ story

- A. irritable      B. boring      C. tiring      D. annoying

17. There 's someone at the door \_\_\_\_\_ it

- A. I'm answering      B. I answer      C. I'll answer      D. I answered

18. If I'm tired in the evening \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early

- A. I'd go      B. I'd have gone      C. I went      D. I'll go

19. if you require any more \_\_\_\_\_ about the holiday, please telephone us.

- A. description      B. information      C. news      D. fact

20. You will become ill \_\_\_\_\_ you stop working so hard

- A. until      B. when      C. unless      D. if

21. Oh, no ! My wallet has been \_\_\_\_\_

- A. robbed      B. picked      C. stolen      D. theft

22. We watched the cat \_\_\_\_\_ the tree.

- A. climbed      B. climb      C. had climbed      D. was climbing

23. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ stop interrupting me whenever I speak

A. will                      B. would                      C. did                      D. might

24. \_\_\_\_\_ the time you get to the theater, the play will have finished

A. Until                      B. In                      C. By                      D. on

25. He lost the race because he \_\_\_\_\_ petrol on the last lap

A. got out of                      B. ran out of                      C. made out of                      D. put out of

26. Is there a bank where I can \_\_\_\_\_ these pounds for dollars?

A. exchange                      B. turn                      C. alter                      D. arrange

27. Traveling to Paris \_\_\_\_\_ air is quicker than driving

A. by                      B. on                      C. over                      D. through

28. I think Sally is quite \_\_\_\_\_ her sister

A. as pretty                      B. as pretty than                      C. as pretty as                      D. prettier

29. Four people were seriously \_\_\_\_\_ in an accident on the motorway

A. injured                      B. damaged                      C. spoiled                      D. wounded

30. Would you be \_\_\_\_\_ to hold the door open?

A. too kind                      B. kind enough                      C. as kind                      D. so kind

31. I am not sure \_\_\_\_\_ the green coat is

A. who's                      B. who                      C. whose                      D. whom

32. It was \_\_\_\_\_ a simple question that everyone answered it correctly

A. so                      B. such                      C. much                      D. too

33. That lesson was much too difficult \_\_\_\_\_ understand

A. for me to                      B. me to                      C. for I to                      D. that

34. She warned me \_\_\_\_\_

A. to not do it                      B. not to do it                      C. I should do it                      D. about to do it

35. He completely \_\_\_\_\_ with what you said.

A. admitted                      B. agreed                      C. accepted                      D. argued

36. \_\_\_\_\_ he had no money for a bus, he had to walk all the way home.

A. for                      B. thus                      C. so                      D. as

37. The \_\_\_\_\_ were all invited to the school.

A. boys parents                      B. boys' parents'                      C. boys parents'                      D. boys' parents

38. It took him ages to \_\_\_\_\_ living in the new town.

A. used to                      B. accustomed                      C. get used to                      D. use to

39 \_\_\_\_\_ his advice, I would never have got a job

A. Except                      B. Apart from                      C. But for                      D. As for

40. The world Cup is a football \_\_\_\_\_ which is open to all countries.

A. participation                      B. involvement                      C. occasion                      D. competition

IV. Choose from the four underlined parts of each sentence (marked A, B, C, and D) one that needs correcting. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.

41. The reason why he's not feeling very well is simple – he's ate too much as usual.

A. he's not feeling                      B. is simple                      C. he's ate                      D. as usual

42. Mary found it hard to concentrate on her work because the noise.

A. it hard                      B. to concentrate                      C. work                      D. because the noise

43. Where I am living now is convenient for work because I don't have travel far.

A. Where I am                      B. is convenient                      C. for work because I don't                      D. have travel far

44. She washes her hair at least six time a week

A. washes her hair                      B. at least six                      C. time                      D. a week

45. I'll make some sandwiches before I'll leave for work.

A. I'll make                      B. some sandwiches before                      C. I'll leave                      D. for work

**IV. Read the following text then answer the questions that follow by circling its corresponding letter marked A, B, C, or D.**

In the world today, particularly in the two most industrialized areas, North America and Europe, recycling is big news. People are talking about it, practicing it, and discovering new ways to be *sensitive* to the environment. Recycling means finding ways to use products a second time. The *motto* of the recycling movement is "*Reduce, Reuse, Recycle*".

*The first step is to reduce garbage.* In stores, a shopper has to buy products in blister packs, boxes and expensive plastic wrappings. A hamburger from a fast food restaurant comes in lots of packaging: usually paper, a box, and a bag. All that packaging is wasted resources. People should try to buy things that are wrapped simply, and to reuse cups and utensils *đồ dùng, dụng cụ*. Another way to reduce waste is to buy high-quality products. When low quality appliances break, many customers throw them away and buy new ones - a loss of more resources and more energy. For example, if a customer buys a high-quality appliance that can be easily repaired, the manufacturer receives an important message. In the same way, if a customer chooses a product with less packaging, that customer sends an important message to the manufacturers. To reduce garbage, the throwaway must stop.

*The second step is to reuse.* It is better to buy juices and soft drinks in returnable bottles. After customers empty the bottles, they return them to the store. The manufacturers of the drinks collect the bottles, wash them, and then fill them again. The energy that is necessary to make new bottles is saved. In some parts of the world, returning bottles for money is a common *practice*. In those places, the garbage dumps have relatively little glass and plastic from throwaway bottles.

The third step is being environmentally sensitive is to recycle. Spent motor oil can be cleaned and used again. Aluminum cans are expensive to make. It takes the same amount of energy to make one aluminum can as it does to run a color TV set for three hours. When people collect and recycle aluminum (for new cans), they help save one of the world's precious resources.

46. What is the main topic of the passage?

- A. how to reduce garbage disposal
- B. what people often understand about the term 'recycle'
- C. what is involved in the recycling movement
- D. how to live sensitively to the environment.

47. Which is described as one of the most industrialized areas?

- A. Europe
- B. Asia
- C. Middle East
- D. South America

48. What does the word 'sensitive' in the phrase 'sensitive to the environment' mean?

- A. cautious
- B. logical
- C. friendly
- D. responding

49. People can do the following to reduce waste EXCEPT

- A. buy high-quality product
- B. buy simply-wrapped things
- C. reuse cups
- D. buy fewer hamburgers

50. Why is it a waste and customers buy low-quality products?

- A. Because people will soon throw them away.
- B. Because they have to be repaired many times.
- C. Because customers change their ideas all the time.
- D. Because they produce less energy.

51. What does it mean 'Customers can vote with their wallets'?

- A. they can choose the cheapest products
- B. they can cast a lot to praise a producer.
- C. they can ask people to choose products with less packaging
- D. they can tell the producers which products are good for environment by buying them.

52. The word 'motto' is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. meaning
- B. value
- C. belief
- D. reference

53. What best describes the process of reuse?

- A. The bottles are collected, washed, returned and filled again.
- B. The bottles are filled again after being returned, collected and washed.
- C. The bottles are washed, returned, filled again and collected.
- D. The bottles are collected, returned filled again and washed.

54. What are the two things mentioned as examples of recycling?

A. Aluminum cans and plastic wrappings. B. Hamburger wrappings and spent motor oil.

C. Aluminum cans and spent motor oil. D. TV sets and aluminum cans.

55. The word 'precious' is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_

A. natural

B. substantial

C. first

D. invaluable

**III. Choose from the four options given (marked A, B, C, and D) one best answer to complete each of the gaps below by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.**

Without transportation, our modern society could not (51) \_\_\_\_\_. We would have no metal, no coal and no oil nor would we have any (52) \_\_\_\_\_. Make from these materials (53) \_\_\_\_\_. We would have to spend most of our time (54) \_\_\_\_\_ food and food would be (55) \_\_\_\_\_ To the kinds that could grow in the climate and soil of our neighborhoods. Transportation also (56) \_\_\_\_\_ our lives in other ways. Transportation can speed a doctor to the (57) \_\_\_\_\_ Of a sick person, even if the patient lives on an isolated farm. It can take police to the (58) \_\_\_\_\_ of a crime within moments of being notified. Transportation (59) \_\_\_\_\_ teams of athletes to compete in national and international sports contests. In time of (60) \_\_\_\_\_ transportation can rush aid to person in areas stricken by floods, famines and earthquakes.

56. A. happen

B. exist

C. take place

D. establish

57. A. production

B. producers

C. productivity

D. product

58. A. Besides

B. However

C. Although

D. Even

59. A. buying

B. taking

C. raising

D. paying

60. A. related

B. limited

C. focused

D. connected

61. A. makes

B. influences

C. affects

D. effects

62. A. side

B. way

C. body

D. part

63. A. location

B. scene

C. place

D. site

64. A. brings

B. gets

C. fetches

D. enables

65. A. disasters

B. wars

C. accidents

D. problems

**III. Choose from the four options given (marked A, B, C, and D) one best answer to complete each sentence by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D.**

66. She always gets the right answer.

A. She never answers right

B. She is always right.

C. She never fails to get the right answer

D. She fails to get the right answer all the time.

67. I regret not booking the seats in advance

A. I wish I booked the seats in advance

B. I wish I have booked the seats in advance

C. If only I booked the seats in advance

D. If only I had booked the seats in advance.

68. The carpets were so expensive that we didn't buy them

- A. The carpets were such expensive for us to buy them  
 B. The carpets were too expensive for us to buy them  
 C. The carpets were too expensive for us to buy  
 D. The carpets were very expensive for us to buy
69. No one has seen Linda since the day of the party  
 A. Linda has not been seen since the day of the party      B. Linda is nowhere to be seen at the party  
 C. The party is going on without Linda      D. No one has seen Linda for ages
- 70 Sarah didn't attend the history lecture, and neither did George?  
 A. Sarah and George didn't go to the history lecture      B. Did George attend the history lecture with Sarah?  
 C. Did Sarah see George at the history lecture?      D. Either Sarah or George attended the history lecture.
71. I haven't got money, so I'm not going on holiday  
 A. Having no money made me go on holiday.      B. Not having money on my holiday got me down  
 C. If I have money, I'll go on holiday      D. If I had money, I would go on holiday.
72. The older he grew the more forgetful he became.  
 A. He grew older when he became more forgetful      B. He became more forgetful and older  
 C. As he grew older, he became more and more forgetful      D. He grew older and more and more forgetful
73. "John left here an hour ago," said Jane.  
 A. Jane told me that John had left there an hour before  
 B. Jane said John left there an hour before  
 C. Jane told John to have left there an hour before  
 D. Jane told me that John to leave there an hour before
74. "Why didn't you follow my advice?" he said  
 A. He asked me to follow his advice      B. He asked me not to follow his advice  
 C. He asked me why I did follow his advice      D. He asked me why I hadn't followed his advice
75. They had seen the man in a parking lot.  
 A. The man was seen in a parking lot      B. The man has been seen in a parking lot  
 C. The man were seen in a parking lot      D. The man had been seen in a parking lot.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is *CLOSEST* in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions from 13 to 15:

76: The most important thing is to keep yourself occupied.

A. busy                      B. comfortable                      C. free                      D. relaxed

77: My uncle, who is an accomplished guitarist, taught me how to play.

A. skilful                      B. famous                      C. perfect                      D. modest

78. Dr. Jones suggested that final examinations should be discontinued, an innovation I heartily support.

A. inner part                      B. test                      C. entrance                      D. change

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions from 11 to 12:

79: We offer a speedy and secure service of transferring money in less than 24 hours.

A. uninterested                      B. unsure                      C. open                      D. slow

80: The Red Cross is an international humanitarian agency dedicated to reducing the sufferings of wounded soldiers, civilians and prisoners of war.

A. happiness                      B. worry and sadness                      C. pain and sorrow                      D. loss

-----HẾT-----

KEY TO PRACTICE 7

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	D	21	C	41	C	61	C
2	A	22	B	42	D	62	A
3	A	23	B	43	D	63	B
4	D	24	C	44	C	64	D
5	C	25	B	45	C	65	A
6	B	26	A	46	C	66	C
7	B	27	A	47	A	67	D
8	C	28	C	48	C	68	C
9	A	29	A	49	D	69	A
10	D	30	B	50	A	70	A
11	A	31	C	51	D	71	D
12	C	32	B	52	C	72	C
13	C	33	A	53	B	73	A
14	B	34	B	54	D	74	D
15	A	35	B	55	D	75	D

16	B	36	D	56	B	76	A
17	C	37	D	57	D	77	A
18	D	38	C	58	A	78	D
19	B	39	C	59	C	79	B
20	C	40	D	60	B	80	A

### PRACTICE TEST 8

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She was \_\_\_\_\_ angry that she could not say a word.  
 A. so                      B. too much                      C. so many                      D. such
2. Susan, remember to apply this sun cream \_\_\_\_\_ two hours.  
 A. some                      B. several                      C. every                      D. each
3. There is a good film \_\_\_\_\_ TV tonight. Will you watch it?  
 A. at                      B. from                      C. on                      D. in
4. If Nam had studied harder, he..... the last entrance examination.  
 A. would have passed    B. will pass    C. would pass    D. passed
5. That cannot be a true story. He \_\_\_\_\_ it up.  
 A. can have made    B. must have made    C. would have made    D. should have made
6. Spain has won the championship, \_\_\_\_\_ is not surprising.  
 A. that                      B. how                      C. which                      D. what
7. Sarah: "Oh my God, I've missed my bus."  
 Christ: "\_\_\_\_\_. Another will come here in ten minutes."  
 A. I hope so                      B. Don't mention it    C. Don't worry                      D. Thank you
8. Instead of staying around the house all day, you should be out there looking\_\_\_\_\_ a job.  
 A. for                      B. after                      C. into                      D. at
9. \_\_\_\_\_ he was tired, he still watched the final match on TV.  
 A. However                      B. Though                      C. Because                      D. Despite



10. If I had more money, I..... a bigger house.

- A. bought                      B. will buy                      C. would have bought                      D. would buy

11. Ann: "Would you like some more tea?" → Daisy: "..... "

- A. Here you are                      B. It doesn't matter                      C. I'm OK                      D. Yes, please

12. How long ago \_\_\_\_\_ to learn French?

- A. have you started                      B. were you starting                      C. would you start                      D. did you start

13. The teacher said that I would be able to speak English fluently \_\_\_\_\_ six months.

- A. in                      B. by                      C. since                      D. till

14. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ my car than the alarm went off.

- A. the thief had touched                      B. had the thief touched  
C. touched the thief                      D. the thief touched

15. The police have begun an \_\_\_\_\_ into the accident which happened this afternoon.

- A. investigation                      B. investigatory                      C. investigate                      D. investigating

16. Nowadays, most students use \_\_\_\_\_ calculators in their studies and examinations.

- A. electrical                      B. electronic                      C. electricity                      D. electric

17. Peter: "Thanks a lot for your wonderful gift. " → Mary: "..... "

- A. I'm glad you enjoy it.                      B. I don't hope so.  
C. Me too                      D. You've got to be kidding.

18. This carpet really needs \_\_\_\_\_. Can you do it for me, son?

- A. being cleaned                      B. cleaned                      C. clean                      D. cleaning

19. Jack: "What's wrong with you?"                      Jill: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Thank you very much                      B. I'm having a slight headache  
C. No, I don't care                      D. Yes, I was tired yesterday

20. College students are becoming less dependent \_\_\_\_\_ their teachers.

- A. on                      B. with                      C. of                      D. to

21. I hope you will \_\_\_\_\_ notice of what I am going to tell you.

- A. gain                      B. keep                      C. get                      D. take

22. My teacher reminded me \_\_\_\_\_ my essay carefully before handing it in.

- A. checked                      B. checking                      C. to have checked                      D. to check

23. He gave \_\_\_\_\_ his job in order to go back to university.

A. up                      B. in                      C. away                      D. out

24. Mary: "Do you mind if I sit here?"    Laura: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. Don't mention it.                      B. My pleasure.                      C. No, not at all.                      D. Yes, why not?

25. Neither Tom nor his brothers \_\_\_\_\_ willing to help their mother with the housework.

A. are                      B. was                      C. has been                      D. is

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

26. \_\_\_\_\_, the less polluted the environment will be.

A. The more polluted landfills will be                      B. The more landfills are there  
C. The less landfills are polluted                      D. The fewer landfills we have

27. Switch off all the lights \_\_\_\_\_.

A. by the time you enter the room                      B. until you enter the room  
C. after you will leave the room                      D. before you leave the room

28. \_\_\_\_\_ that she does not want to stay any longer.

A. A little homesick does Beth feel                      B. Beth feels such homesick  
C. Homesick though Beth may feel                      D. So homesick does Beth feel

29. It is believed \_\_\_\_\_.

A. when Alice to become a talented ballet dancer  
B. how is Alice a talented ballet dancer  
C. why is Alice such a talented ballet dancer  
D. that Alice is a talented ballet dancer

30. I have two sisters, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. both of whom are nurses                      B. most of whom are nurses  
C. one of them are nurses                      D. most of them are nurses

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

31. A special exhibition of Indian art will be opened at the National Museum next month.

A. painting                      B. programme                      C. music                      D. show

32. Traffic began to flow normally again after the accident.

A. with the same speed                      B. in the usual or ordinary way

C. strangely and irregularly

D. repeatedly in different modes

33. Don't be concerned about your mother's illness; she'll recover soon.

A. surprised at

B. worried about

C. embarrassed at

D. angry with

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

34. His boss has had enough of his impudence, and doesn't want to hire him any more.

A. respect

B. rudeness

C. obedience

D. agreement

35. She was unhappy that she lost contact with a lot of her old friends when she went abroad to study.

A. made room for

B. lost control of

C. put in charge of

D. got in touch with

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 36 to 45.*

One of the factors contributing to the intense nature of twenty-first-century stress is our continual exposure to media – particularly to an overabundance of news. If you feel stressed out by the news, you are far from alone. Yet somehow many of us seem unable to prevent ourselves from tuning in to an extreme degree.

The further back we go in human history, the longer news took to travel from place to place, and the less news we had of distant people and lands altogether. The printing press obviously changed all that, as did every subsequent development in transportation and telecommunication.

When television came along, it proliferated like a population of rabbits. In 1950, there were 100,000 television sets in North American homes; one year later there were more than a million. Today, it's not unusual for a home to have three or more television sets, each with cable access to perhaps over a hundred channels. News is the subject of many of those channels, and on several of them it runs 24 hours a day.

What's more, after the traumatic events of September 11, 2001, live newscasts were paired with perennial text crawls across the bottom of the screen – so that viewers could stay abreast of every story all the time.

Needless to say, the news that is reported to us is not good news, but rather disturbing images and sound bytes alluding to disaster (natural and man-made), upheaval, crime, scandal, war, and the like.

Compounding the problem is that when actual breaking news is scarce, most broadcasts fill in with scare stories about things that possibly might threaten our health, safety, finances, relationships, waistline, hairline, or very existence in the future. This variety of story tends to treat with equal alarm a potentially lethal flu outbreak and the bogus claims of a wrinkle cream that over-promises smooth skin.

Are humans meant to be able to process so much trauma – not to mention so much overblown anticipation of potential trauma – at once? The human brain, remember, is programmed to slip into alarm mode when danger looms. Danger looms for someone, somewhere at every moment. Exposing ourselves to such input without respite and without perspective cannot be anything other than a source of chronic stress.

(Extracted from *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Beating Stress* by Arlene Matthews Uhl - Penguin Group 2006)

36. According to the passage, which of the following has contributed to the intense nature of twenty-first-century stress?
- A. The degree to which stress affects our life                      B. Our inability to control ourselves  
C. An overabundance of special news                                      D. Our continual exposure to the media
37. In the past, we had less news of distant people and lands because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. printing, transportation, and telecommunications were not developed  
B. means of communication and transportation were not yet invented  
C. most people lived in distant towns and villages  
D. the printing press changed the situation too slowly
38. The pronoun “them” in paragraph 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. TV channels                      B. TV news                      C. television sets                      D. cable access
39. The word “traumatic” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. fascinating                      B. upsetting                      C. exciting                      D. boring
40. According to the passage, when there is not enough actual breaking news, broadcasts \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. are full of dangerous diseases such as flu  
B. send out live newscasts paired with text across the screen  
C. are forced to publicise an alarming increase in crime  
D. send out frightening stories about potential dangers
41. As stated in the passage, a flu outbreak and the bogus claims of a wrinkle cream tend to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. be scarce breaking news                                      B. involve natural and man-made disasters  
C. be treated with equal alarm                                      D. be warmly welcomed by the public
42. Which of the following is NOT true, according to the passage?
- A. The only source of stress in our modern life is the media.  
B. Many TV channels supply the public with breaking news.  
C. Many people are under stress caused by the media.  
D. The news that is reported to us is not good news.
43. The word “slip” in paragraph 6 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. fail                      B. bring                      C. release                      D. fall
44. According to the passage, our continual exposure to bad news without perspective is obviously \_\_\_\_.
- A. the result of an overabundance of good news

- B. the result of human brain's switch to alarm mode
- C. a source of defects in human brain
- D. a source of chronic stress

45. What is probably the best title for this passage?

- A. Developments in Telecommunications
- B. The Media – A Major Cause of Stress
- C. More Modern Life – More Stress
- D. Effective Ways to Beat Stress

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase for each of the blanks from 46 to 55.*

The popular image of student life is of young people with few responsibilities enjoying themselves and (46)\_\_\_\_\_ very little work. This is often not true. Many older people now study at college or university, sometimes (47)\_\_\_\_\_ a part-time basis while having a job and looking after a family. These students are often (48)\_\_\_\_\_ motivated and work very hard.

Younger students are often thought to be lazy and careless about money but this (49)\_\_\_\_\_ is changing. In Britain reduced government support for higher education means that students can no longer rely on having their expenses (50)\_\_\_\_\_ for them. Formerly, students received a grant towards their living expenses. Now most can only get a loan (51)\_\_\_\_\_ has to be paid back. Since 1999 they have paid over £1 000 towards tuition (52)\_\_\_\_\_ and this amount will increase up to a maximum of £3 000. In the US students already (53)\_\_\_\_\_ pay for tuition and room and board. Many get a financial aid package which may (54)\_\_\_\_\_ grants, scholarships and loans. The fear of having large debts places (55)\_\_\_\_\_ pressure on students and many take part-time jobs during the term and work full-time in the vacations.

(Extracted from Oxford Guide to British and American Culture – Oxford Advanced Learner's Compass)

- |                   |             |                |                 |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 46. A. producing  | B. carrying | C. doing       | D. making       |
| 47. A. for        | B. with     | C. on          | D. at           |
| 48. A. highly     | B. mainly   | C. absolutely  | D. adequately   |
| 49. A. position   | B. state    | C. situation   | D. condition    |
| 50. A. paying     | B. paid     | C. pay         | D. to pay       |
| 51. A. whether    | B. what     | C. which       | D. who          |
| 52. A. money      | B. fees     | C. allowances  | D. charge       |
| 53. A. had better | B. should   | C. may         | D. have to      |
| 54. A. include    | B. consist  | C. compose     | D. belong       |
| 55. A. large      | B. generous | C. considerate | D. considerable |

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has the underlined*

part pronounced differently from the rest in each of the following questions.

56. A. plain                      B. certain                      C. faithful                      D. attain  
57. A. survived                      B. maintained                      C. started                      D. determined  
58. A. documentary                      B. population                      C. stimulate                      D. maximum

Pick out the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others in each group

59. A. impressive                      B. composition                      C. international                      D. competition  
60. A. instrument                      B. inflation                      C. regional                      D. satellite

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.

61. In spite of the heavy rain, all we enjoyed the excursion.

A                      B                      C                      D

62. It's the first time I saw this film.

A                      B                      C                      D

63. The children wish that they have more free time to play football.

A                                      B                      C                                      D

64. Opened the letter from her boyfriend, she felt extremely excited.

A                                      B                                      C                                      D

65. Wood is an excellent resource for heating homes, cooking food, and build houses.

A                                      B                                      C                                      D

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.

66. I have never used a more fascinating MP3 player than this one.

- A. This is the most fascinating MP3 player I have ever used.  
B. Like the other MP3 players, this one is fascinating to me.  
C. This MP3 player does not fascinate me much.  
D. I am very fascinated by the MP3 player I am using.

67. Barbara didn't wear the raincoat, so she got wet.

- A. If Barbara had worn the raincoat, she wouldn't get wet.  
B. If Barbara hadn't got wet, she would have worn the raincoat.  
C. If Barbara had worn the raincoat, she wouldn't have got wet.  
D. If Barbara wore the raincoat, she wouldn't get wet.

68. The question was so difficult that no one could answer it.

- A. The question was so difficult for anyone to answer.
- B. It was such a difficult question that no one could answer it.
- C. The question was too difficult for no one to answer.
- D. The question wasn't easy enough for no one to answer

69. I think it is more enjoyable to play a sport than to watch it on TV.

- A. In my view, playing a sport is as enjoyable as watching it on TV.
- B. As far as I know, more people watch a sport on TV than they play it.
- C. In my opinion, to play a sport is more enjoyable than to watch it on TV.
- D. I think watching a sport on TV is more enjoyable than playing it.

70. "May I see your passport, Mrs Scott?" said the customs officer.

- A. The customs officer asked to see Mrs Scott's passport.
- B. The customs officer suggested seeing Mrs Scott's passport.
- C. The customs officer asked Mrs Scott to see his passport.
- D. The customs officer promised to show Mrs Scott his passport.

*Read the following passage on climate change, and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 71 to 80.*

Experts in climatology and other scientists are becoming extremely concerned about the changes to our climate which are taking place. Admittedly, climate changes have occurred on our planet before. For example, there have been several ice ages or glacial periods.

These climatic changes, however, were different from the modern ones in that they occurred gradually and, as far as we know, naturally. The changes currently being monitored are said to be the result not of natural causes, but of human activity. Furthermore, the rate of change is becoming alarmingly rapid. The major problem is that the planet appears to be warming up. According to some experts, this warming process, known as global warming, is occurring at a rate unprecedented in the last 10,000 years. The implications for the planet are very serious. Rising global temperatures could give rise to such ecological disasters as extremely high increases in the incidence of flooding and of droughts. These in turn could have a harmful effect on agriculture. It is thought that this unusual warming of the Earth has been caused by so-called greenhouse gases, such as carbon dioxide, being emitted into the atmosphere by car engines and modern industrial processes, for example. Such gases not only add to the pollution of the atmosphere, but also create a greenhouse effect, by which the heat of the sun is trapped. This leads to the warming up of the planet. Politicians are also concerned about climate change and there are now regular summits on the subject, attended by representatives from around 180 of the world's industrialized countries. Of these summits, the most important took place in Kyoto in Japan in 1997. There it was agreed that the most industrialized countries would try to reduce the volume of greenhouse gas emissions and were given targets for this reduction of emissions.

It was also suggested that more forests should be planted to create so-called sinks to absorb greenhouse gases. At least part of the problem of rapid climate change has been caused by too drastic deforestation. Sadly, the targets are not being met. Even more sadly, global warnings about climate changes are often still being regarded as scaremongering.

(From Read and Understand 2 by Betty Kirkpatrick & Rebecca Mok - Learners Publishing Pte Ltd 2005)

71. According to the passage, in what way did the climate changes in the ice ages differ from the modern ones?

- A. They occurred naturally over a long period of time.
- B. They were fully monitored by humans.
- C. They were wholly the result of human activity.
- D. They were partly intended.

72. The word “alarmingly” in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. disapprovingly
- B. worryingly
- C. surprisingly
- D. disappointingly

73. According to the passage, agriculture could \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. give rise to many ecological disasters
- B. make the global warming more serious
- C. be indirectly affected by the global temperature rises
- D. be directly damaged by the rises in global temperature

74. Greenhouse gases cause the warming up of the Earth because they \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. are emitted by car engines
- B. trap heat from the sun
- C. do not add to atmosphere pollution
- D. are unusual gases

75. According to the passage, 1997 witnessed \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the largest number of summits on the subject of climate change
- B. the highest attendance by representatives from 180 industrialised countries
- C. the most important summit on climate change taking place in Kyoto, Japan
- D. widespread concern about climate change

76. It can be inferred from the passage that the countries which are mainly responsible for global warming are \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. developed countries
- B. the most industrialised countries
- C. countries with the warmest climate
- D. developing countries



77. The word “There” in paragraph 5 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. regular summits on climate change                      B. the 1997 summit in Kyoto, Japan  
C. the world’s industrialised countries                      D. the most industrialised countries

78. Which of the following is NOT true, according to the passage?

- A. The so-called sinks created by forests can absorb greenhouse gases.  
B. Politicians are among those who are concerned about climate change.  
C. The problem of rapid climate change has been caused mainly by deforestation.  
D. Carbon dioxide is one of the gases that may cause the so-called greenhouse effect.

79. The word “drastic” in paragraph 6 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. severe                      B. hard                      C. obvious                      D. widespread

80. What is probably the writer’s attitude toward global warming?

- A. Optimistic                      B. Neutral                      C. Positive                      D. Pessimistic

*The end*

KEY TO PRACTICE 8

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	A	21	D	41	C	61	C
2	C	22	D	42	A	62	C
3	C	23	A	43	D	63	B
4	A	24	C	44	D	64	A
5	B	25	A	45	B	65	D
6	C	26	D	46	C	66	A
7	C	27	D	47	C	67	C
8	A	28	D	48	A	68	B
9	B	29	D	49	C	69	C



Question 5: The letter to the Prime Minister needs\_\_\_\_\_.

Rewording                      B. to reword                      C. reword                      D. be reworded

Question 6: The speed of light is\_\_\_\_\_ the speed of sound.

A. faster                      B. much faster than                      C. the fastest                      D. as fast

Question 7: An earlier typewriter produced letters quickly and neatly, the typist,\_\_\_\_\_ couldn't see his work on this machine.

Therefore                      B. however                      C. yet                      D. although

Question 8: Not until late 1960s \_\_\_\_\_ on the Moon.

A. did Americans walk                      B. Americans walked  
C. when Americans walked                      D. when did Americans walked

Question 9: She couldn't decide \_\_\_\_\_ to dive \_\_\_\_\_ jump into water.

A. both/ or                      B. not only/ but also                      C. neither/ or                      D. whether/ or

Question 10: \_\_\_\_\_ he was kidnapped by the Iraqi guerrillas yesterday has been confirmed.

A. If                      B. That                      C. Unless                      D. What

Question 11: Many lists of "Wonders of the World" \_\_\_\_\_ during the Middle Ages.

A. are said to have existed                      B. said to be existed                      C. are said to existing                      D. said to exist

Question 12: The book would have been perfect\_\_\_\_\_ the ending.

Had it not been for                      B. It hadn't been for                      C. it had not been for                      D. hadn't it been for

Question 13: I heard that your father runs an\_\_\_\_\_ company.

industrial                      B. industrialized                      C. industry                      D. industrious

Question 14: Do you think English is a\_\_\_\_\_ easy language to learn?

Comparable                      B. comparably                      C. comparative                      D. comparatively

Question 15: Nowadays it is not easy to find a\_\_\_\_\_ job.

good-pay                      B. well-paid                      C. good-paid                      D. well-pay

Question 16: The judge \_\_\_\_\_ the truck driver for the accident.

charged                      B. sued                      C. accused                      D. blamed

Question 17: When he realized the police had spotted him, the man \_\_\_\_\_ the exit as quickly as possible.

A. made for                      B. made up                      C. made out                      D. made off

Question 18:: \_\_\_\_\_ of the financial crisis, all they could do was hold on and hope that things would improve.

A. In the end                      B. On the top                      C. At the height                      D. At the bottom

Question 19: The new manager laid down very strict rules as soon as he had \_\_\_\_\_ the position.

- A. taken up                      B. taken over                      C. taken off                      D. come over

Question 20: It is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ identical twins \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. speak/ over                      B. speak/ out                      C. tell/ apart                      D. tell/ on

Question 21: "Would you like to order now?"                      -"\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Yes, a table for five                      B. Yes, not now                      C. Yes, I like beef salad                      D. It's excellent

Question 22: "Wow! What a nice coat you are wearing!"                      -"\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Thanks. My mother bought it for me.                      B. Certainly. Do you like it, too?  
C. I like you to say that                      D. Yes, of course. It's expensive.

Question 23: "I'm sorry to be so difficult". - "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Yes, you're OK                      B. That's quite alright                      C. Thank you very much                      D. No, thank you

Question 24: "Enjoy your weekend, John." - "\_\_\_\_\_, Jane."

- A. Yes                      B. You too                      C. Me too                      D. you do

Question 25: "Thank you for your valuable assistance." - "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. It's my pleasure                      B. Nice meeting you                      C. It's quite OK                      D. No mentioning it

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions*

Question 26: He was asked to account for his presence at the scene of crime.

- A. explain                      B. complain                      C. exchange                      D. arrange

Question 27: The teacher gave some suggestions on what could come out for the examination.

- A. symptoms                      B. effects                      C. demonstrations                      D. hints

Question 28: Many plant and animal species will be in danger if we don't take any actions to protect them.

- A. at ease                      B. in advance                      C. on purpose                      D. at stake

Question 29: As a government official, Benjamin Franklin often traveled abroad.

- A. secretly                      B. overseas                      C. widely                      D. alone

Question 30: My mom is always bad-tempered when I leave my room untidy.

- A. easily annoyed or irritated                      B. very happy and satisfied  
C. talking too much                      D. feeling embarrassed

Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others in each group

Question 31: A. proficiency                      B. importance                      C. afternoon                      D. Canadian

Question 32: A. return                                      B. subscribe                      C. student                      D. attend

Question 33: A. economy                      B. phonetics                      C. geometry                      D. politics

*Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest*

Question 34: A. experiment                      B. precious                      C. respect                      D. definately

Question 35: A. language                      B. attraction                      C. aviation                      D. applicant

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions*

Smallpox was the first widespread disease to be eliminated by human intervention. In May, 1966, the World Health Organization (WHO), an agency of the United Nations was authorized to initiate a global campaign to eradicate smallpox. The goal was to eliminate the disease in one decade. At the time, the disease posed a serious threat to people in more than thirty nations. Because similar projects for malaria and yellow fever had failed, few believed that smallpox could actually be eradicated but eleven years after the initial organization of the campaign no cases were reported in the field.

The strategy was not only to provide mass vaccinations but also to isolate patients with active smallpox in order to contain the spread of the disease and to break the chain of human transmission. Rewards for reporting smallpox assisted in motivating the public to aid health workers. One by one each smallpox victim was sought out, removed from contact with others and treated. At the same time, the entire village where the victim had lived was vaccinated.

By April of 1978 WHO officials announced that they had isolated the last known case of the disease but health workers continued to search for new cases for additional years to be completely sure. In May, 1980, a formal statement was made to the global community. Today, smallpox is no longer a threat to humanity. Routine vaccinations have been stopped worldwide.

Question 36: *Which of the following is the best title for the passage?*

- A. Infectious Disease                                      B. The World Health Organization  
C. Smallpox Vaccination                                      D. The Eradication of smallpox

Question 37: *The word "threat" in bold in paragraph 1 could best be replaced by\_\_\_\_\_.*

- A. humiliation                                      B. danger                                      C. debate                                      D. bother

Question 38: *What was the goal of the campaign against smallpox?*

- A. to eliminate smallpox worldwide in ten years.  
B. to decrease the spread of smallpox worldwide.  
C. to provide mass vaccinations against smallpox worldwide.  
D. to initiate worldwide projects for smallpox, malaria and yellow fever at the same time

Question 39: *According to the passage, what was the strategy used to eliminate the smallpox?*

- A. Isolation of victims and mass vaccinations.                      B. Vaccinations of entire villages.

C. Treatment of individual victims.

D. Extensive reporting of outbreak.

Question 40: *The word “isolated” in bold in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_*

A. separated

B. attended

C. restored

D. located

Question 41: How was the public motivated to help the health workers?

A. by rewarding them for reporting cases

B. by isolating them from others

C. by educating them

D. by giving them vaccinations

Question 42: The word “they” in bold in the last paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_

A. cases

B. health workers

C. victims

D. officials

Question 43: Which statement does not refer to smallpox ?

A. The WHO mounted a worldwide campaign to eradicate the disease.

B. Previous projects had failed.

C. People are no longer vaccinated for it.

D. It was serious threat.

Question 44: It can be inferred that \_\_\_\_\_.

A. small victims no long die when they contract the disease

B. no new cases of smallpox have been reported this year

C. malaria and yellow fever have been eliminated

D. smallpox is not transmitted from one person to another

Question 45: When was the former announcement made that smallpox had been eradicated ?

A. 1978

B. 1966

C. 1980

D. 1976

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions

In 776 B. C., the first Olympic Games were held at the foot of Mount Olympus to honor the Greek’s chief god, Zeus. The warm climate for outdoor activities, the need for preparedness in war, and their lifestyle caused the Greeks to create competitive sports. Only the elite and military could participate at first, but later the games were opened to all free Greek males who had no criminal record. The Greeks emphasized physical fitness and strength in their education of youth. Therefore, contests in running, jumping, javelin throwing, boxing, and horse and chariot racing were held in individual cities, and the winners competed every four years at Mount Olympus. Winners were greatly honored by having olive wreaths placed on their heads and having poems sung about their deeds. Originally these contests were held as games of friendship and any wars in progress were halted to allow the games to take place. They also helped to strengthen bonds among competitors and the different cities presented.

The Greeks attached so much importance to the games that they calculated time in four-year cycles called “Olympiads”, dating from 776 B. C. The contest coincided with religious festivities and constituted an all-out effort on the part of participants to please the gods. Any who disobeyed the rules were dismissed and seriously punished. These athletes brought shame not only to themselves but also to the cities they represented.

Question 46: Which of the following is NOT true?

- A. Battles were interrupted to participate in the games.
- B. The games were held in Greece every four years.
- C. Winners placed olive wreaths on their own heads.
- D. Poems glorified the winners in songs.

Question 47: The word “elite” is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. brave
- B. intellectual
- C. aristocracy
- D. muscular

Question 48: Why were the Olympic Games held?

- A. To stop wars.
- B. To honor Zeus.
- C. To crown the best athletes.
- D. To sing songs about the athletes.

Question 49: Approximately how many years ago did these games originate?

- A. 800 years.
- B. 2,300 years.
- C. 1,200 years.
- D. 2,800 years.

Question 50: What conclusion can we draw about the ancient Greeks?

- A. They were very simple.
- B. They couldn't count so they used “Olympiads” for dates.
- C. They believed athletic events were important.
- D. They were pacifists.

Question 51: What is the main idea of this passage?

- A. The Greeks severely punished those who didn't participate in physical fitness programs.
- B. The Greeks had the games coincide with religious festivities so that they could go back to war when the games were over.
- C. The Greeks had always encouraged everyone to participate in the games.
- D. Physical fitness was an integral part of the life of ancient Greeks.

Question 52: The word “deeds” is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. documents
- B. accomplishments
- C. ancestors
- D. properties

Question 53: Which of the following was ultimately required of all athletes competing in the Olympics?

- A. They had to be very religious.
- B. They had to be Greek males with no criminal record.
- C. They must have completed military service.
- D. They had to attend special training sessions.

Question 54: The word “halted” means mostly nearly the same as \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. fixed
- B. started
- C. curtailed
- D. encouraged

Question 55: What is an “Olympiad”?

- A. The time between games.
- B. The time it took to finish a war.
- C. The time it took the athletes to train.
- D. The time it took to finish the games.

Choose the best answer for each blank in the passage

Earth Day is on April 22nd every year. Earth Day is a day to (56) .....to take care of our planet, Earth. We can take care of our planet by keeping it clean. We can keep Earth clean by (57) ..... the rule of "reduce, reuse, recycle". Reduce means use (58)..... We can reduce our use of resources like water or gasoline. Reuse means use again, rather than (59)..... things away. We can reuse many things, such as jars, plastic bags, and boxes. Recycle means make something (60) ..... from something old. We can keep Earth clean by recycling materials such as aluminum, paper, and plastic. If we (61) ..... these materials to a recycling center, they can be used again in a(n) (62)..... way. On Earth Day, we remind (63)..... and everyone on Earth that we must do these things. We must do these things every day, not just on Earth Day. We (64)..... all do our part, and we can make a (65)..... On April 2200, remind everyone you know that Earth Day is every day!

Question 56: A. miss            B. remember            C. imagine            D. memorize

Question 57: A. following    B. saying            C. understanding    D. breaking

Question 58: A. least            B. most            C. more            D. less

Question 59: A. discard            B. blow            C. throw            D. get

Question 60: A. beautiful    B. new            C. fashionable    D. complete

Question 61: A. leave            B. throw            C. take            D. move

Question 62: A. different    B. difficult            C. immediate            D. quick

Question 63: A. us            B. ourselves            C. ourself            D. ours

Question 64: A. ought            B. may            C. might            D. must

Question 65: A. day            B. world            C. difference            D. heart

Choose the sentence that is closest in meaning to the original one

Question 66: She asked Janet to repeat what she had said.

- A. “Please repeat what you said, Janet. ”, she said
- B. “Will you please repeat what Janet said?”, she asked.
- C. “Please repeat what Janet had said. ”, she asked.
- D. “Please repeat what you say, Janet. ”, she said.

Question 67: Jenny denied breaking the window.

- A. Jenny was determined not to break the window.
- B. Jenny refused to break the window.
- C. Jenny didn’t break the window.
- D. Jenny said that she hadn’t broken the window.

Question 68: I hardly know the truth about Jean’s success in the institute.

- A. Jean’s success in the institute was not to be known.
- B. It is difficult for Jean to be successful in the institute.



C. I do not know much about Jean's success in the institute.

D. Jean hardly become known and successful in the institute.

Question 69: After Louie had written his composition, he handed it to his teacher.

A. Handed the composition to his teacher, Louie wrote it.

B. Handing the composition, Louie had written his composition.

C. Writing the composition, Louie handed it to his teacher.

D. Having written his composition, Louie handed it to his teacher.

Question 70: It is certain that the suspect committed the crime.

A. The suspect might have committed the crime.

B. The suspect must have committed the crime.

C. Certain commitment of the crime was that of the suspect.

D. The suspect was certain to commit the crime.

Question 71: David drove so fast; it was very dangerous.

A. David drove so fast, then was very dangerous.      B. David drove so fast that was very dangerous.

C. David drove so fast and was very dangerous.      D. David drove so fast, which was very dangerous.

Question 72: People believed that the boys started the fire.

A. It is believed that the boys started the fire.      B. The boys were believed to have started the fire.

C. That the boys started the fire was believed.      D. It is believed that the fire was started by the boys.

Question 73: I had no problems at all during my trip to France.

A. My trip to France was not at all went as planned.

B. No problems were there during my trip to France at all.

C. Everything went according to plan during my trip to France.

D. No problems during my trip had I at all in France.

Question 74: He felt very tired. However, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

A. As the result of his tiredness, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

B. Feeling very tired, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

C. Tired as he might feel, he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

D. He felt so tired that he was determined to continue to climb up the mountain.

Question 75: She heard the news of the death of her mother. She fainted.

A. On hearing the news of her mother's death, she fainted.



D	A	B	D	A
B	D	D	B	B
B	C	C	D	A
C	B	D	B	C
A	C	D	C	C
B	A	C	C	B

## PRACTICE TEST 10

Choose the best answer.

Question 1. Two players \_\_\_ off the field during last Sunday match.

- a. were being sent      b. were sent      c. were sending      d. had been sent

Question 2. Don't \_\_\_ to conclusion; we don't yet know all the relevant facts.

- a. run      b. rush      c. jump      d. hurry

Question 3. "Would you like me to get you a taxi?" "\_\_\_."

- a. That would be delightful. Thanks.      b. Well, let's see  
c. Yes, please, if it's no bother.      d. Yes, I see.

Question 4. James: "What's the matter?"

Anne: "\_\_\_"

- a. Nothing.      b. Not at all.      c. That's all right.      d. It's no trouble.

Question 5. Psychologists have found that the number of social contacts we have \_\_\_ only reason for loneliness

- a. are not the      b. is not the      c. are not an      d. is not an

Question 6. \_\_\_ pack can have as big an impact on your holiday as your destination.

- a. How do you      b. How you      c. However you      d. How did you

Question 7. It is often said that knowledge is the \_\_\_ power, and I can not disagree with this.

- a. way to      b. key to      c. success of      d. aim at

Question 8. \_\_\_ the young woman was visibly very happy after the birth of her child.

- a. Despite tired      b. Though tired      c. Tired although she was      d. She was tired

Question 9. Jim's father agreed to buy him a new bike \_\_\_ he took lessons.

- a. in case      b. supposing that      c. as long as      d. unless

Question 10. \_\_\_ of the two restaurants provides facilities for the handicapped.

- a. Both      b. Neither      c. None      d. Not either

Question 11. Tom \_\_\_ things round the house, which is annoying.

- a. always leaves      b. has always left      c. Is always leaving      d. is leaving

Question 12. \_\_\_ had he finished his dinner when he realized he had forgotten his wallet.

- a. No sooner      b. Not until      c. No longer      d. Scarcely

Question 13. Only three of the students in my class are girls; \_\_\_ are all boys.

- a. others                      b. other students                      c. the others                      d. the other

Question 14. Laurence was born in Australia, but she has spent \_\_\_ of her life there.

- a. a little                      b. very little                      c. only a few                      d. a few

Question 15. You may find doing this job very \_\_\_. Try it!

- a. relaxed                      b. relaxing                      c. relax                      d. relaxation

Question 16. The concert didn't come \_\_\_ our expectations.

- a. up against                      b. up with                      c. up to                      d. round

Question 17. Any opposition to the rules is \_\_\_.

- a. tolerable                      b. tolerant                      c. intolerable                      d. intolerant

Question 18. So difficult \_\_\_ it to live in an English- speaking country that I was determined to learn English well.

- a. I felt                      b. did I feel                      c. I did feel                      d. I felt

Question 19. Please move the chairs \_\_\_ the aisle. They're \_\_\_ my way.

- a. out of – in                      b. under – of                      c. from – of                      d. away from – on

Question 20. \_\_\_ you feel thirsty, please help yourself to the drinks over there.

- a. Do                      b. Shall                      c. Should                      d. Would

Question 21. "Sorry, I'm late, Mike. " - " \_\_\_ "

- a. Well, it's worth a try.    b. Not on my account.    c. No, I wouldn't mind it at all.    d. That's all right.

Question 22. It's too late now that the holiday's over, but I wish we \_\_\_ somewhere else.

- a. went                      b. have gone                      c. were going                      d. had gone

Question 23. After visiting several areas, he realized that \_\_\_ hunger was not \_\_\_ only problem in that country.

- a. the – the                      b. the – a                      c. x – the                      d. x – x

Question 24. I would advise you \_\_\_ this young man despite his charming manner.

- a. to trust                      b. not trust                      c. not to trust                      d. don't trust

Question 25. As far as I know, as a student of English you must study regularly. The more you review \_\_\_

- a. the more meaningful the content will be                      b. the more the content will be meaningful  
c. the content will be meaningful                      d. the more meaning will be the content

*Find the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 26. The photochemical reactions transform the light into electrical impulses.

- a. conserve                      b. conflict                      c. converse                      d. convert

Question 27. You ought to send two hours as a minimum in the fresh air every day.

- a. at most                      b. at all                      c. at least                      d. at ease

Question 28. He seems to make the same mistake over and over again.

- a. for good                      b. in vain                      c. by the way                      d. repeatedly

*Find the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 29. Nancy concurred with her boss about the new direction the company was taking.

- a. disagreed                      b. agreed                      c. surrendered                      d. confessed

Question 30. "We strongly believe that he's innocent of the crime. We do not think that he did it. "

- a. clean                      b. guilty                      c. faultless                      d. crimeless

*Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.*

Question 31. a. hope                      b. stop                      c. slope                      d. cope

Question 32. a. conserve                      b. preserve                      c. reserve                      d. observe

Question 33. a. associate                      b. section                      c. can                      d. clean

*Choose the word which is stressed differently from the rest.*

Question 34. a. tremendous                      b. enormous                      c. serious                      d. describe

Question 35. a. technique                      b. absolute                      c. requirement                      d. accomplish

*Choose the underlined word or phrase in each sentence that needs correcting.*

Question 36. The effects of wind and water in rock surfaces can often cause erosion.

- a    b    c                      d

Question 37. Neither of the men arresting as terrorists would reveal information about his group

- a    b    c    d

Question 38. In order to do a profit the new leisure centre needs at least 2,000 visitors a month

- a                      b    c    d

Question 39. The police have been looking for a man of medium high for three days.

- a    b    c                      d

Question 40. Some people prefer classical music, because others prefer rock music.

- a    b    c                      d

*Read the passage and then decide which word (A, B, C or D) best fits each space.*

Everybody has heard about the Internet, but do you know what an “intranet” is? It is this: just as the Internet connects people around the world, intranets connect people within a (41) \_\_ company. In fact, intranets make use of the same software programs as the Internet to (42) \_\_ computers and people. This (43) \_\_ that you do not have to buy a lot of additional programs to set up an intranet service. If your intranet is working properly, it can link together a huge amount of (44) \_\_ which is stored in different places in the company. In this way, people can get the information they need, regardless (45) \_\_ where it comes from. A company intranet can, of course, be used for unimportant information like office memos and canteen menus. But an intranet should (46) \_\_ important information which people need to make decision about new products, costs and so on. The intranet is (47) \_\_ to share their information with other people. (48) \_\_, many departments don’t want to share their specialists knowledge with others. Another problem which often occurs is (49) \_\_ top managers like to use the intranet to “communicate down” rather than to “communicate across”. That is, they use the intranet to give orders, not to (50) \_\_ information between themselves and others working in the same organization.

- Question 41. a. large                      b. jointed                      c. single                      d. branch
- Question 42. a. contact                      b. introduce                      c. distinguish                      d. compare
- Question 43. a. is                      b. is said                      c. indicates                      d. means
- Question 44. a. parts                      b. information                      c. elements                      d. properties
- Question 45. a. on                      b. with                      c. of                      d. to
- Question 46. a. bring                      b. provide                      c. give                      d. take
- Question 47. a. likely                      b. willing                      c. going                      d. happened
- Question 48. a. Luckily                      b. Consequently                      c. Therefore                      d. Unfortunately
- Question 49. a. that                      b. which                      c. what                      d. it
- Question 50. a. change                      b. exchange                      c. transform                      d. transit

*Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.*

According to the best evidence gathered by space probes and astronomers, Mars is an inhospitable planet, more similar to Earth’s Moon than to Earth itself – a dry, stark, seemingly lifeless world. Mars’ air pressure is equal to Earth’s at an altitude of 100,000 feet. The air there is 95 percent carbon dioxide.

Mars has no ozone layer to screen out the sun’s lethal radiation. Daytime temperatures may reach above freezing, but because the planet is blanketed by the mere wisp of an atmosphere, the heat radiates back into space. Even at the equator, the temperature drops to -50C (-60F) at night. Today there is no liquid water, although valleys and channels on the surface show evidence of having been carved by running water. The polar ice caps are made of frozen water and carbon dioxide, and water may be frozen in the ground as permafrost.

Despite these difficult conditions, certain scientists believe that there is a possibility of transforming Mars into a more Earth-like planet. Nuclear reactors might be used to melt frozen gases and eventually build up the atmosphere. This in turn could create a “greenhouse effect” that would stop heat from radiating back into space. Liquid water could be thawed to form a polar ocean. Once enough ice has melted, suitable plants could be introduced to build up the level of oxygen in the atmosphere so that, in time, the planet would support animal life from Earth and even permanent human colonies. “This was

once thought to be so far in the future as to be irrelevant,” said Christopher McKay, a research scientist at NASA. “But now it’s starting to look practical. We could begin work in four or five decades. ”

The idea of “terra-forming” Mars, as enthusiasts call it, has its roots in science fiction. But as researchers develop a more profound understanding of how Earth’s ecology supports life, they have begun to see how it may be possible to create similar conditions on Mars. Don’t plan on homesteading on Mars any time soon, though. The process could take hundreds or even thousands of years to complete and the cost would be staggering.

Question 51. With which of the following is the passage primarily concerned?

- a. The possibility of changing the Martian environment.
- b. The challenge of interplanetary travel.
- c. The advantages of establishing colonies on Mars.
- d. The need to study the Martian ecology.

Question 52. The word “stark” in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to

- a. harsh
- b. unknown
- c. dark
- d. distant

Question 53. The word “there” in paragraph 2 refers to

- a. a point 100 miles above the Earth
- b. the Earth’s Moon
- c. Mars
- d. outer space

Question 54. Which of the following does the author NOT list as a characteristic of the planet Mars that would make colonization difficult?

- a. There is little liquid water.
- b. Daytime temperatures are dangerously high.
- c. The sun’s rays are deadly.
- d. Night time temperatures are extremely low.

Question 55. According to the passage, the Martian atmosphere today consists mainly of

- a. carbon dioxide
- b. oxygen
- c. ozone
- d. water vapour

Question 56. It can be inferred from the passage that the “greenhouse effect” mentioned in paragraph 3 is

- a. the direct result of nuclear reactions
- b. the cause of low temperatures on Mars.
- c. caused by the introduction of green plants.
- d. a possible means of warming Mars.

Question 57. The word “suitable” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to

- a. resistant
- b. altered
- c. appropriate
- d. native.

Question 58. According to Christopher McKay, the possibility of transforming Mars

- a. could only occur in science fiction stories.
- b. is completely impractical.
- c. will not begin for hundreds, even thousands of years.
- d. could be started in forty to fifty years

Question 59. The phrase “more profound” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to



- a. deeper                      b. more practical                      c. brighter                      d. more up-to-date

Question 60. According to the article, the basic knowledge needed to transform Mars comes from

- a. the science of astronomy                      b. a knowledge of Earth's ecology  
c. data from space probes                      d. science fiction stories

*Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.*

Greenland is the largest island in the world. It covers more than two million square kilometers. Imagine that a map of Greenland is on top of a map of Europe and Africa. Greenland would stretch from London to the middle of the Sahara Desert. Most of the island lies in the Arctic Circle, and a huge sheet of ice covers 85 percent of it.

The ice sheet is more than 1,500 meters thick, and it never melts. Probably only rock lies under this ice, but no one knows for sure. Along the coast, mountains rise from the sea. Huge pieces of ice, called glaciers, float in the sea between the mountains. Some of them are as tall as ten – storey buildings.

Because Greenland is so cold, it is not very green. There are a few low trees in the southwest, but no real forests. In the winter, snow covers everything. In the summer, very low plants cover the ground between the sea and the ice sheet.

The first people to live in Greenland were probably Eskimos who came from Canada about 3,000 years ago. Norwegian Vikings were the first Europeans to see the island. They came in 875, but they did not build towns and live there until 982. At the same time. Another group of Eskimos came to Greenland from Alaska. In 1261, the people in Greenland decided to join the country of Norway. Then, in 1380, Norway united with Denmark. This union ended in 1814, and Greenland stayed with Denmark. Today this huge island is part of the kingdom of Denmark. Greenland is about fifty times as large as Denmark, but Denmark has about ninety times as many people.

About 62,000 people live in Greenland. Most of them are part Eskimo and part Danish. They call themselves Greenlanders and speak Greenlandic language (which has many Danish words). Almost all of them live in towns and villages along the southwestern coast because that is the warmest part of the island. Life in Greenland is difficult because the weather is very cold. Temperatures average -29.5 degrees Celsius in January, -10 degrees Celsius in July. It is dark 24 hours a day in the winter, but in the summer the Sun shines all day and night. This is the time of the midnight Sun.

The island has very few natural resources. The people raise a few kinds of vegetables and sheep. The most important industry is fishing. In southwest Greenland there are many fish stations and processing plants where fish are cleaned, dried, salted, or frozen. Much of the processed fish is exported to other countries.

Life in Greenland is changing fast. For centuries, people there had no communication with the rest of the world. They had very traditional lives. Today Greenland is much more modern. Many changes are taking place, and some of them difficult for the Greenlanders. It is not easy to move from a traditional life to a modern life.

Today Greenland is important to the world because scientists study the weather there. They can tell when storms are developing over the North Atlantic Ocean. This weather information is important because the North Atlantic is a busy shipping area. Greenland welcomes scientists from many countries of the world. Together these scientists are making important discoveries about how the weather on our planet

is changing. Because of the work that scientists do in Greenland, people all over the world are learning more about the weather and the environment.

Question 61. Most of Greenland lies in...

- a. north of the Arctic Circle      b. Europe      c. Denmark      d. the Sahara Desert.

Question 62. The huge ice sheet covers.....

- a. almost all of the area of Greenland      b. more than two-thirds of Greenland  
c. from London to the northern part of the Sahara Desert.      d. Approximately 1.7 million square kilometers

Question 63. The ice sheet.....

- a. melts in the summer      b. is three kilometers thick  
c. is always there      d. has a few green plants under it

Question 64. What is the population of Denmark?

- a. 6.2 million  
b. About 5.6 million  
c. It is fifty times the population of Greenland  
d. Denmark has fifty times as many people as Norway does

Question 65. When did the Norwegian Vikings first settle in Greenland?

- a. In the ninth century.  
b. In the tenth century  
c. In 1261, when Greenland joined the country of Norway.  
d. 3000 years ago.

Question 66. Greenland .....

- a. is flat      b. has warm winter  
c. is rich in natural resources      d. has mountain near the sea.

Question 67. the first people to live in Greenland were....

- a. Danes      b. Norwegians      c. Eskimos      d. scientists

Question 68. When the union of Norway and Denmark ended, Greenland .....

- a. joined the country of Norway.      b. choose to stay with the kingdom of Denmark  
c. united with the Vikings      d. became independent.

Question 69. Greenland is important to the world because .....

- a. scientists study the weather there      b. a huge sheet of ice covers it

c. it is part of Denmark

d. It has many trees and natural resources

Question 70. Which of the following is true of the people of Greenland?

a. All of them are in favor of a more modern Greenland.

b. They still don't have much communication with the rest of the world.

c. All of them resist the changes that are taking place there.

d. Some of them find it difficult to adapt to modern life

*Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.*

Question 71. *An aspirin may help you feel better.*

a. Try to take an aspirin; it may help you feel better.

b. Try taking an aspirin; you'll feel better.

c. You will feel better after you take an aspirin.

d. You should try an aspirin when you feel better.

Question 72. *Tom couldn't say a word as he was so shocked at what he heard.*

a. Tom who was so shocked at what he heard couldn't say a word.

b. Tom was so shocked at what he heard to say a word.

c. Tom so shocked at what he heard couldn't say a word.

d. So shocked at what he heard, Tom couldn't say a word.

Question 73. *Paul fell ill, so he didn't attend the conference.*

a. Paul was supposed to have gone to the conference, but he fell ill.

b. Although Paul fell ill, he didn't attend the conference.

c. Because of he was ill, Paul didn't attend the conference.

d. Paul didn't attend the conference as a result of his ill.

Question 74. *The news surprised everyone in the family.*

a. Everyone was surprised by the news in the family.

b. The news made everyone surprised in the family.

c. The news made everyone in the family surprise.

d. Everyone in the family found the news surprising.

Question 75. *"You stole my best cassette, Bob!" said Willy.*

a. Willy accused Bob for having stolen his best cassette.

b. Willy accused Bob of having stolen his best cassette.

c. Willy accused Bob on having stolen his best cassette.

d. Willy accused Bob to have stolen his best cassette.

Choose A,B,C or D to complete the sentence.

Question 76 \_\_\_\_\_ did Jane accept the job.

a. Only because it was interesting work

b. The work was interesting

c. Only because it was interested work

d. Because it was interesting work

Question 77 Harry would certainly have attended the proceedings \_\_\_\_\_.

a. if he didn't get a flat tyre

b. had he not had a flat tyre

c. had the tyre not flattened itself

d. if the flat tyre didn't happen

Question 78. We'd better start early \_\_\_\_\_.

a. in case there is less traffic

b. so that there is a lot of traffic.

c. in order to avoid heavy traffic

d. therefore there is less traffic

Question 79. \_\_\_\_\_ learn foreign language very fast.

a. It is young children who

b. Young children that

c. It is young that people

d. It is young age that

Question 80. \_\_\_\_\_, Sir Isaac Newton described the law of gravitation.

a. Was a seventeenth-century scientist

b. Who was a seventeenth-century scientist

c. When was a seventeenth-century scientist

d. A seventeenth-century scientist

THE END.

KEYS TO PRACTICE TEST 10

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	D	41	C	61	A
2	C	22	D	42	A	62	D
3	C	23	C	43	D	63	C
4	A	24	C	44	B	64	B
5	B	25	A	45	C	65	A
6	B	26	D	46	B	66	D

7	B	27	C	47	B	67	C
8	B	28	D	48	D	68	B
9	C	29	A	49	A	69	A
10	B	30	B	50	B	70	D
11	D	31	B	51	A	71	B
12	D	32	A	52	A	72	D
13	C	33	A	53	C	73	A
14	B	34	C	54	B	74	D
15	B	35	B	55	A	75	B
16	C	36	B	56	D	76	A
17	C	37	B	57	C	77	B
18	B	38	A	58	D	78	C
19	A	39	C	59	A	79	A
20	C	40	C	60	B	80	D

### PRACTICE TEST 11

Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

1. a. firm                      b. term                      c. purpose                      d. familiar  
2. a. tongue                      b. young                      c. monkey                      d. tone

Choose the word which is stressed differently from the rest.

3. a. justify                      b. enquiry                      c. argument                      d. medicine  
4. a. particular                      b. distinction                      c. material                      d. specialize  
5. a. innocent                      b. criminal                      c. reaction                      d. specialist

Choose the best answer.

6. \_\_, which had been brought to Europe from China in the 15<sup>th</sup> century, helped seamen to navigate.  
a. The compass                      b. It is the compass                      c. With the compass                      d. That the compass  
7. I \_\_ my best suit ;everyone else was very casually dressed.

- a. needn't wear      b. needn't have worn      c. mustn't wear      d. mustn't have worn
8. Everyone thought he was asleep, but when they looked closely at him, he was \_\_\_  
 a. widely awake      b. wide-awake      c. wide open      d. full awake
9. Fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas produce carbon dioxide when \_\_\_.  
 a. are burned      b. they burned      c. burned      d. are they burned
10. Dinosaurs are thought to \_\_\_ millions of years ago.  
 a. die out      b. have died out      c. having died out      d. dying out
11. It costs about sixty dollars to have a tooth \_\_\_.  
 a. filling      b. to fill      c. filled      d. fill
12. The report would have been accepted \_\_\_ in checking its accuracy.  
 a. if more care      b. more care had been taken      c. had more care been taken      d. had taken more care
13. How do you speak the fraction 2/5?  
 a. two-five      b. two-fifths      c. second-fifths      d. two-fifth
14. Experiments \_\_\_ represent a giant step into the medicine of the future.  
 a. using gene therapy      b. they use      c. use gene therapy      d. gene therapy uses
15. I met \_\_\_ at Julia's birthday party.  
 a. some of Joe's friend      b. some of Joe friends      c. some friends of Joe      d. some of Joe's friends
16. \_\_\_ we drove the horses into the stable.  
 a. Aware that a tornado was brewing      b. Because a tornado brewing  
 c. Although a tornado was brewing      d. A tornado was brewing
17. \_\_\_ single person can be said to have invented the automobile.  
 a. There was not a      b. Nor a      c. Not one of      d. No
18. Tom had a lucky escape. He \_\_\_ killed.  
 a. could have been      b. must have been      c. should have been      d. had been
19. It was \_\_\_ he had gone to bed that he remembered he had some homework to do.  
 a. not until      b. only before      c. until      d. not after
20. I'd rather you \_\_\_ too much time surfing the Internet.  
 a. not spend      b. not to spend      c. didn't spend      d. don't spend
21. Marie Curie was the first woman \_\_\_ two Nobel prizes.  
 a. who awarded      b. to be awarded      c. awarding      d. that was awarding

22. The house was \_\_\_ badly damaged in the fire to be repaired.
- a. very                      b. extremely                      c. so                      d. too
23. Tony pretended \_\_\_ me when I waved to him.
- a. not seeing                      b. not to see                      c. not see                      d. to not see
24. \_\_\_ advised on what and how to prepare for the interview, he might have got the job.
- a. If he had                      b. Had he been                      c. Were he to be                      d. Unless he had been
25. By the time Sam got home from school, his brother \_\_\_ all the cake.
- a. had eaten                      b. has been eating                      c. was eating                      d. have eaten
26. I've got an idea! I \_\_\_ that tree trunk to make logs for the fire.
- a. am going to use                      b. am using                      c. will use                      d. am used to
27. The manager asked his secretary to put all the contracts in different folders and order all the bills \_\_\_ date.
- a. to                      b. up                      c. by                      d. in
28. The boundary between Canada and the United States has been unfortified for over one hundred years.
- a. border                      b. bride                      c. diplomatic relation                      d. water
29. "Is it very hot in summer here?" - " \_\_\_\_\_ "
- a. Yes, we have high rainfall.                      b. Well, it's too late for the weather forecast.
- c. I'm sorry. I missed the weather forecast.                      d. Well, it depends on rainfall.
30. \_\_\_ we've been having.
- a. What a dreadful weather                      b. What dreadful weather                      c. How dreadful is the weather                      d. How dreadful the weather
31. "Do you like rock music?" - " \_\_\_\_\_ "
- a. Not quite so                      b. It's not quite well                      c. That's understandable                      d. I am not interested in them
32. \_\_\_ water in this glass is not good.
- a. An                      b. A                      c. \_\_\_                      d. The
33. It is imperative that they arrive on time for the lecture.
- a. necessary                      b. suggested                      c. hoped                      d. intended
34. Don't make up your mind at once; \_\_\_ it over with your lawyer first.
- a. discuss                      b. debate                      c. argue                      d. talk
35. I don't like the look of the men \_\_\_ around outside my gate.
- a. going                      b. hanging                      c. wandering                      d. running





Lake Baikal, the world's largest lake, is located in southern Siberia, in Russia. It measures 395 miles of coastline. The lake's rocky basin consists of three depressions, which hold a total volume of 14,656 cubic miles of water, 20 percent of the freshwater in the world. The lake is also very deep, with its deepest point at over 1 mile and an average depth of 2,066 feet. Furthermore, scientists have determined that Lake Baikal is the oldest lake in the world. From sediment obtained by drilling deep down below the lake, researchers estimate it to be at least 25 million years old.

To scientists, Lake Baikal is of particular interest because of its unique and isolated ecosystem. More than 1,000 species of plants and animals found at Lake Baikal exist nowhere else on earth and some can be dated to prehistoric times. Among its unique fauna is the Baikal freshwater seal. This creature, which local people call *nerpa*, is the only mammal which inhabits the lake. Researchers speculate that these seals, which have been breeding at Lake Baikal for 22 million years, are the descendents of ocean-dwelling seals which migrated inland in search of food, when the lake was still connected to the sea. Another creature that is unique to this Siberian Lake is the *omu*, a fish, which is caught by local fisherman and is considered a great delicacy.

For centuries, the water in Lake Baikal was so clear that it was possible to see down to depths of 40 to 60 feet. First, the lake contained certain small zooplankton and small crustaceans that consumed waterweeds, bacteria, and other material that would otherwise cloud the water. Furthermore, the water in the lake consisted of rainwater and melted snow that flowed down from a mountain range in about 300 streams and through uninhabited forest. Finally, most of the watershed has a rocky surface, so the water flowing into the lake did not accumulate mud or organic matter and had little mineral or chemical content.

51. The word "which" in line 2 of the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_.

- a. three depressions    b. the lake    c. the rocky basin    d. the total water volume

52. All of the following is mentioned EXCEPT that \_\_\_

- a. Lake Baikal is the oldest lake in the world    b. Lake Baikal is the deepest lake in the world  
c. Lake Baikal is the world's largest lake    d. Lake Baikal is located in Russia

53. All of the following are true about Lake Baikal EXCEPT that \_\_\_

- a. it is near the sea    b. it has the biggest amount of freshwater in the world  
c. it is about 25 million years old    d. it has a great variety of fish

54. Scientists are particularly interested in Lake Baikal because \_\_\_

- a. its ecosystem is special    b. it has more species of plants than anywhere else  
c. it is isolated    d. the animals there are similar to elsewhere

55. Baikal fresh seal is \_\_\_

- a. has been breeding at the lake for 32 million years    b. a species of plant  
c. the only habitants of the lake Baikal    d. only found in the lake Baikal

56. Omu is mentioned in the passage as \_\_\_.

- a. descendents of ocean-dwelling seals    b. an animal unique to the lake

c. an animal migrating inland from the sea                      d. a local fisherman

57. The water of the lake Baikal is \_\_\_

a. transparent                      b. made of crystal                      c. toxic                      d. used to make crystal

58. According to the passage, there are \_\_\_ factors contributing to the clarity of the water in Lake Baikal.

a. 1                      b. 2                      c. 3                      d. 4

59. The word cloud in the final paragraph can be best replaced by \_\_\_

a. cold                      b. muddy                      c. clean                      d. dirty

60. The water in the lake is from all of the following EXCEPT \_\_\_

a. rainwater                      b. snow                      c. streams                      d. forests

Choose from A, B, C or D which shows the best way of building the sentence from the words or phrases given.

61. *I / regret / inform / you / your application / be / refused.*

a. I regret to inform you that your application has been refused.

b. I regret informing you that your application has been refused.

c. I regret to inform you that your application had been refused.

d. I regret to inform you that your application was refused.

62. *He / wondered / teaching methods / vary / considerably / not.*

a. He wondered teaching methods vary considerably or not.

b. He wondered whether teaching methods varies considerably or not.

c. He wondered whether teaching methods vary considerably not.

d. He wondered whether teaching methods vary considerably or not.

63. *I / advised / him / ask / bus conductor / tell / him / where / get off.*

a. I advise him to ask a bus conductor to tell him where he gets off.

b. I advised him to ask bus conductor to tell him where he gets off.

c. I advised him to ask the bus conductor to tell him where to get off.

d. I advised him to ask the bus conductor to tell about him where to get off.

64. *He / help / his friend / get / good marks / telling him / more careful.*

a. He helps his friend to get good marks telling him more careful.

b. He helps his friend getting good marks telling him more careful.

c. He helps his friend get good marks by telling him more careful.

d. He helps his friend get good marks by telling him to be more careful.

65. *Constant worries / his secret / be / reveal / take / heavy / toll / his health.*

a. Constant worries about his secret being revealed have taken a heavy toll on his health.

b. Constant worries by his secret is revealed to taken a heavy toll on his health.

c. Constant worries about his secret to revealed to taken a heavy toll on his health.

d. Constant worries about his secret being revealed has taken a heavy toll on his health.

Choose the sentence that has the same meaning with the given one.

66. *It was such a big meal that we couldn't finish it.*

a. The meal was too very big for us to finish.

b. The meal was too big for us to finish it.

c. The meal was too big for us to finish.

d. The meal was such big that we couldn't finish it.

67. *Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.*

a. Only by keeping calm you can pass your driving test.

b. As long as you don't get nervous, you won't fail your driving test.

c. What you simply needn't do to pass your driving test is to keep calm.

d. Just remain nervous, or you'll pass your driving test.

68. *They needn't have got up so early.*

a. They did not have to get up early so they did not. b. They needed to get up very early.

c. They got up early because they had to.

d. They didn't have to get up early but they did.

69. *Nothing has ever embarrassed me this much.*

a. I've never been embarrassed before.

b. I've never been so embarrassed before.

c. Many things have embarrassed me this much.

d. I have felt embarrassed this much many times.

70. *I'm sure it wasn't Mr Pike you saw because he is in London.*

a. It couldn't be Mr Pike you saw because he is in London.

b. It can't have been Mr Pike you saw because he is in London.

c. It mustn't have been Mr Pike you saw because he is in London.

d. It mightn't be Mr Pike you saw because he is in London.

Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Although noise, commonly defined as unwanted sound, is a widely recognized form of pollution, it is very difficult to measure because the discomfort experienced by different individuals is highly subjective and, therefore, variable. Exposure to lower levels of noise may be slightly irritating, whereas exposure to higher levels may actually cause hearing loss. Particularly in congested urban areas, the noise produced as

a by-product of our advancing technology causes physical and psychological harm, and detracts from the quality of life for those who are exposed to it.

Unlike the eyes, which can be covered by the eyelids against strong light, the ear has no lid, and is, therefore, always open and vulnerable; noise penetrates without protection. Noise causes effects that the hearer cannot control and to which the body never becomes accustomed. Loud noises instinctively signal danger to any organism with a hearing mechanism, including human beings. In response, heartbeat and respiration accelerate, blood vessels constrict, the skin pales, and muscles tense. In fact, there is a general increase in functioning brought about by the flow of adrenaline released in response to fear, and some of these responses persist even longer than the noise, occasionally as long as thirty minutes after the sound has ceased.

Because noise is unavoidable in a complex, industrial society, we are constantly responding in the same way that we would respond to danger. Recently, researchers have concluded that noise and our response may be more than an annoyance. It may be a serious threat to physical and psychological health and well-being, causing damage not only to the ear and brain but also to the heart and stomach. We have long known that hearing loss is America's number one nonfatal health problem, but now we are learning that some of us with heart disease and ulcers may be victims of noise as well. Fetuses exposed to noise tend to be overactive, they cry easily, and they are more sensitive to gastrointestinal problems after birth. In addition, the psychic effect of noise is very important. Nervousness, irritability, tension, and anxiety increase, affecting the quality of rest during sleep, and the efficiency of activities during waking hours, as well as the way that we interact with each other.

71. Which of the following is the author's main point?

- a. Noise may pose a serious threat to our physical and psychological health.
- b. Loud noises signal danger.
- c. Hearing loss is America's number one nonfatal health problem.
- d. The ear is not like the eye.

72. According to the passage, what is noise?

- a. Unwanted sound
- b. A by-product of technology
- c. Physical and psychological harm
- d. Congestion

73. Why is noise difficult to measure?

- a. It causes hearing loss
- b. All people do not respond to it in the same way
- c. It is unwanted
- d. People become accustomed to it

74. The word congested in paragraph 1 could best be replaced by

- a. hazardous
- b. crowded
- c. rushed
- d. polluted

75. It can be inferred from the passage that the eye

- a. responds to fear
- b. enjoys greater protection than the ear
- c. increases functions
- d. is damaged by noise

76. According to the passage, people respond to loud noise in the same way that they respond to
- a. annoyance            b. disease                            c. danger                            d. damage
77. The word accelerate in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to
- a. decrease            b. increase                            c. alter                            d. release
78. The word it in the first paragraph refers to
- a. the noise            b. the quality of life                            c. advancing technology            d. a by-product
79. With which of the following statements would the author most probably agree?
- a. Noise is not a serious problem today
- b. Noise is America's number one problem
- c. Noise is an unavoidable problem in an industrial society
- d. Noise is a complex problem
80. The phrase as well in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to
- a. after all            b. also                            c. instead                            d. regardless

The end.

KEY TO PRACTICE 11

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	D	21	B	41	B	61	A
2	D	22	D	42	A	62	D
3	B	23	B	43	B	63	C
4	D	24	B	44	D	64	D
5	C	25	A	45	A	65	A
6	A	26	C	46	D	66	C
7	B	27	C	47	A	67	B
8	B	28	A	48	B	68	D
9	C	29	D	49	C	69	B
10	B	30	B	50	C	70	B
11	C	31	A	51	A	71	A
12	C	32	D	52	B	72	A
13	B	33	A	53	D	73	B

14	A	34	D	54	A	74	B
15	D	35	B	55	D	75	B
16	A	36	D	56	B	76	C
17	D	37	A	57	A	77	B
18	A	38	A	58	C	78	A
19	A	39	C	59	D	79	C
20	C	40	B	60	D	80	B

### PRACTICE TEST 12

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.*

Question 1: A. sugar      B. stumble      C. cushion      D. btcher

Question 2: A. war      B. water      C. warm      D. bank

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.*

Question 3: A. distribute      B. infiltrate      C. dehydrate      D. persecute

Question 4: A. efficient      B. attendance      C. independence      D. librarian

Question 5: A. economics      B. consolidate      C. economise      D. imaginary

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Question 6: It is advisable that \_\_\_\_\_ a career objective at the start of his/her resume.

- A. every applicants write      B. an applicant writes  
 C. an applicant must be writing      D. every applicant write

Question 7: \_\_\_\_\_ with being so busy both at work and at home, she became increasingly tired and bad-tempered.

- A. How      B. Which      C. Where      D. What

Question 8: \_\_\_\_\_ they are not fully booked up, we can stay at the campsite on the island.

A. Unless                      B. Providing                      C. In case                      D. Whether

Question 9: The collision occurred about two miles \_\_\_\_\_ the Spanish coast and the rescue operation was mounted by helicopters of the Spanish coastguard.

A. out of                      B. off                      C. from                      D. of

Question 10: We need a meeting to clear \_\_\_\_\_ and get these issues down on paper.

A. the issues                      B. the air                      C. the earth                      D. the problem

Question 11: I suggest adopting Mark's proposal as it seems to be the \_\_\_\_\_ risky of the two.

A. least                      B. most                      C. less                      D. fewest

Question 12: The gangsters avoided arrest for several weeks because they \_\_\_\_\_ the state.

A. thought about leaving                      B. were thought to have left  
C. were thinking to leave                      D. were thought to be leaving

Question 13: I always wear a seat-belt \_\_\_\_\_ I have an accident.

A. in case                      B. if                      C. unless                      D. when

Question 14: \_\_\_\_\_ the newspapers have revealed so far can justify the action taken by the army.

A. Nothing as                      B. Nothing what                      C. Nothing that                      D. Nothing of that

Question 15: The two trains collided with \_\_\_\_\_ loud a crash that it woke everyone in the station hotel.

A. such                      B. very                      C. so                      D. too

Question 16: I do wish Mr. Swan \_\_\_\_\_ so aggressive in discussions. Every time we have a meeting, he tries to pick an argument with someone.

A. couldn't be                      B. isn't                      C. might not be                      D. weren't

Question 17: You'll become an alcoholic if you don't \_\_\_\_\_.

A. watch off                      B. watch over                      C. watch on                      D. watch out

Question 18: He kept shifting awkwardly from one foot to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. others                      B. the other                      C. other                      D. the others

Question 19: \_\_\_\_\_, I was still able to get to the top of the mountain.

A. Unfit as I was                      B. Much as I'm unfit  
C. Even though unfit                      D. while ever out of condition

Question 20: By next week, they \_\_\_\_\_ resurfacing the road.

A. will finish                      B. will have finished                      C. will be finishing                      D. are finishing

Question 21: Which shirt do you want? ~ I am not sure I can \_\_\_\_\_ a choice. I like all of them.

A. do                      B. make                      C. get                      D. take

Question 22: The professor instructed the students \_\_\_\_\_ the essay without preparing an outline first.

A. to no write              B. not to write              C. to not write              D. do not write

Question 23: In Michigan, \_\_\_\_\_ over 600 feet deep.

A. salt deposits                                      B. there are salt deposits  
C. where salt deposits are                      D. having salt deposits

Question 24: Scientists are predicting that the volcano might erupt so people have been \_\_\_\_\_ from the area.

A. evacuated              B. emigrated              C. exported              D. escaped

Question 25: They are \_\_\_\_\_ some fascinating research into the language of dolphins.

A. doing                      B. carrying                      C. solving                      D. making

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 26: New evidence proving Evans was innocent was uncovered at the eleventh hour.

A. just in time                                      B. too late  
C. at eleven o'clock                              D. at the eleventh hour of the day

Question 27: Now, for the time being, she is living with her father in Tijuana.

A. for the present              B. in the near future              C. up to now                      D. up to date

Question 28: She's always moaning. It really gets on my nerves.

A. stretches my nerves                              B. makes my nerve stressful  
C. annoys me                                      D. make me angry

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 29: Thousands of years ago the surface was barren desert.

A. unleveled              B. fertile                      C. marshy                      D. uncultivated

Question 30: The body was found hidden in dense undergrowth.

A. crowed              B. transparent                      C. dark                      D. sparse





poor cocoa. But whichever drink they were given, 88% of those with impaired blood flow at the start of the study saw improvements in blood flow and some \_\_\_\_\_ (40) tests, compared with 37% of people whose blood flow was normal at the beginning of the study. MRI scans in 24 participants found that people with impaired blood flow were also more likely to have tiny areas of brain \_\_\_\_\_ (41). The researchers said the lack of difference between the flavanol-rich and flavanol-poor cocoa could be because another component of the drink was having an \_\_\_\_\_ (42) or because only small \_\_\_\_\_ (43) were needed. Dr Simon Ridley, head of research at Alzheimer's Research UK, said this was a small study but that it added to a wealth \_\_\_\_\_ (44) evidence. "A cocoa-based treatment would likely be very popular, but it's too soon to draw any conclusions about its effects. One drawback of this study is the lack of a control group for comparison, and we can't tell whether the results would have been different if the participants drank no cocoa at all. ". But he added: "Poor vascular health is a known risk factor for dementia, and understanding more about the links between vascular problems and declining brain health could help the search for new treatments and \_\_\_\_\_ (45). "

- |                               |                    |                |                   |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Question 36: A. made          | B. improved        | C. rose        | D. supported      |
| Question 37: A. drawn         | B. jumped          | C. leapt       | D. made           |
| Question 38: A. however       | B. due to          | C. in spite of | D. in addition to |
| Question 39: A. that          | B. the researchers | C. those       | D. researchers    |
| Question 40: A. understanding | B. concern         | C. cognitive   | D. relating       |
| Question 41: A. damage        | B. tissue          | C. activity    | D. function       |
| Question 42: A. effects       | B. effect          | C. affects     | D. affect         |
| Question 43: A. quantity      | B. quality         | C. amounts     | D. numbers        |
| Question 44: A. of            | B. in              | C. on          | D. at             |
| Question 45: A. protection    | B. defence         | C. cure        | D. prevention     |

*Read the following passage on commuting and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

As Philadelphia grew from a small town into a city in the first half of the eighteenth century, it became an increasingly important marketing center for a vast and growing agricultural hinterland. Market days saw the crowded city even more crowded, as farmers from within a radius of 24 or more kilometers brought their sheep, cows, pigs, vegetables, cider, and other products for direct sale to the townspeople. The High Street Market was continuously enlarged throughout the period until 1736, when it reached from Front street to Third. By 1745 New Market was opened on Second Street between Pine and Cedar. The next year the Callowhill Market began operation. Along with market days, the institution of twice-yearly fairs persisted in Philadelphia even after similar trading days had been discontinued in other colonial cities. The fairs provided a means of bringing handmade goods from outlying places to would-be buyers in the city. Linens and stockings from Germantown, for example, were popular items.

Auctions were another popular form of occasional trade. Because of the competition, retail merchants opposed these as well as the fairs. Although governmental attempts to eradicate fairs and auctions were less than successful, the ordinary course of economic development was on the merchants' side, as increasing business specialization became the order of the day. Export merchants became differentiated from their importing counterparts, and specialty shops began to appear in addition to general stores selling a variety of goods.

One of the reasons Philadelphia's merchants generally prospered was because the surrounding area was undergoing tremendous economic and demographic growth. They did their business, after all, in the capital city of the province. Not only did they cater to the governor and his circle, but citizens from all over the colony came to the capital for legislative sessions of the assembly and council and meetings of the courts of justice.

Question 46: What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. Philadelphia's agriculture importance
- B. Philadelphia's development as a marketing center
- C. The administration of the city of Philadelphia
- D. The sale of imported goods in Philadelphia

Question 47: It can be inferred from the passage that new markets opened in Philadelphia because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. existing markets were unable to serve the growing population.
- B. farmers wanted markets that were closer to the farmers.
- C. they provided more modern facilities than older markets.
- D. the High Street Market was forced to close.

Question 48: The word "hinterland" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. region
- B. association
- C. produce
- D. tradition

Question 49: The word "it" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a radius
- B. the period
- C. the High Street Market
- D. the crowded city

Question 50: The word "persisted" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. declined
- B. started
- C. returned
- D. continued

Question 51: According to the passage, fairs in Philadelphia were held \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. as often as possible
- B. a couple of times a year
- C. on the same day as market days
- D. whenever the government allowed it

Question 52: It can be inferred that the author mentions "Linens and stockings" to show that they were items that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. retail merchants were not willing to sell
- B. were not available in the stores in Philadelphia
- C. were more popular in Germantown than in Philadelphia
- D. could easily be transported

Question 53: The word "eradicate" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. exploit
- B. organize
- C. operate
- D. eliminate

Question 54: What does the author mean by stating that "economic development was on the merchants' side"?

- A. Merchants had to work together to achieve economic independence.
- B. Merchants had a strong impact on economic expansion.
- C. Specialty shops near large markets were more likely to be economically successful.
- D. Economic forces allowed merchants to prosper.

Question 55: The word "undergoing" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. requesting
- B. including
- C. experiencing
- D. repeating

*Read the following passage on commuting and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

Nineteenth-century writers in the United States, whether they wrote novels, short stories, poems, or plays, were powerfully drawn to the railroad in its golden year. In fact, writers responded to the railroads as soon as the first were built in the 1830's. By the 1850's, the railroad was a major presence in the life of the nation. Writers such as Ralph Waldo Emerson and Henry David Thoreau saw the railroad both as a boon to democracy and as an object of suspicion. The railroad could be and was a despoiler of nature; furthermore, in its manifestation of speed and noise, it might be a despoiler of human nature as well. By the 1850's and 1860's, there was a great distrust among writer and intellectuals of the rapid industrialization of which the railroad was a leading force. Deeply philosophical historians such as Henry Adams lamented the role that the new frenzy for business was playing in eroding traditional values. A distrust of industry and business continued among writers throughout the rest of the nineteenth century and into the twentieth.

For the most part, the literature in which the railroad plays an important role belong to popular culture rather than to the realm of serious art. One thinks of melodramas, boys' books, thrillers, romances, and the like rather than novels of the first rank. In the railroads' prime years, between 1890 and 1920, there were a few individuals in the United States, most of them with solid railroading experience behind them, who

made a profession of writing about railroading-works offering the ambience of stations, yards, and locomotive cabs. These writers, who can genuinely be said to have created a genre, the "railroad novel. " are now mostly forgotten, their names having faded from memory. But anyone who takes the time to consult their fertile writings will still find a treasure trove of information about the place of the railroad in the life of the United States.

Question 56: With which of the following topics is the passage mainly concerned?

- A. The role of the railroad in the economy of the United States.
- B. Major nineteenth-century writers.
- C. The conflict between expanding industry and preserving nature.
- D. The railroad as a subject for literature.

Question 57: The word "it" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. manifestation
- B. nature
- C. railroad
- D. speed

Question 58: In the first paragraph, the author implies that writers' reactions to the development of railroads were \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. unchanging
- B. both positive and negative
- C. highly enthusiastic
- D. disinterested

Question 59: The word "lamented" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. analyzed
- B. complained about
- C. explained
- D. reflected on

Question 60: According to the passage, the railroad played a significant role in literature in all of the following kinds of books EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. romances
- B. important novels
- C. boys' books
- D. thrillers

Question 61: The phrase "first rank" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. highest quality
- B. earliest writers
- C. most difficult language
- D. largest category

Question 62: The word "them" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. novels
- B. individuals
- C. works
- D. years

Question 63: The author mentions all of the following as being true about the literature of railroads EXCEPT that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. quite a few of the books are still popular today.
- B. the books were well known during the railroads' prime years.
- C. many of the books were set in railroad stations and yards

D. many of its writers had experience working on railroads

Question 64: The words "faded from" are closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. disappeared from                      B. grew in  
C. remained in                              D. developed from

Question 65: What is the author's attitude toward the "railroad novels" and other books about railroads written between 1890 and 1920?

- A. They have as much literary importance as the books written by Emerson, Thoreau, and Adams.  
B. They contributed to the weakening of traditional values.  
C. They are good examples of the effects industry and business had on the literature of the United States.  
D. They are worth reading as sources of knowledge about the impact of railroads on life in the United States.

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.*

Question 66: (A) Until the 1840s, (B) practically the only pioneers who had (C) ventured to the western United States were trappers and (D) a little explorers.

Question 67: The progress (A) done in the (B) field of urban planning (C) over recent years has resulted in a different view taken of (D) downtown areas.

Question 68: He impressed (A) the audience (B) by the (C) profound of his (D) knowledge.

Question 69: (A) Among Thomas Jefferson's many (B) accomplishment was (C) his work (D) to establish the University of Virginia.

Question 70: (A) Sodium, usually a metal, and chlorine, usually a gas, (B) they react (C) to form the solid sodium chloride, or (D) table salt.

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best joins each of the following pairs of sentences in each of the questions.*

Question 71: *It was an interesting novel. I, therefore, stayed up all night to finish it.*

- A. So interesting was the novel that I stayed up all night to finish it.  
B. Unless it was an interesting novel, I would stay up all night to finish it.  
C. I stayed up all night to finish the novel, therefore, it was interesting.  
D. Though it was an interesting novel, I stayed up all night to finish it.

Question 72: *How lucky! You called me, because I tried to call you a few minutes ago and got a busy signal.*

- A. I was not lucky enough to call you a few minutes ago because I was busy.

- B. The busy signal prevented me from calling you a few minutes ago, so please call me back.
- C. You luckily called me, so I didn't have to call you for a few minutes because the signal was busy.
- D. Luckily, you called me in time, for I failed to call you a few minutes ago.

Question 73: *We stayed out all night. We wanted to watch a meteor storm.*

- A. We stayed out all night in order to watching a meteor storm.
- B. We stayed out all night because we had been able to watch a meteor storm.
- C. We stayed out all night in order for watching a meteor storm.
- D. We stayed out all night so that we could watch a meteor storm.

Question 74: *They are my two sisters. They aren't teachers like me.*

- A. Like me, neither of my two sisters aren't teachers.
- B. They are my two sisters, neither of whom are teachers like me.
- C. They are my two sisters both of those are teachers like me.
- D. They are my two sisters who neither are teachers like me.

Question 75: *Anne and Alex are very graceful dancers. Also, they have years of experience dancing together.*

- A. Not only are Anne and Alex very graceful dancers but they also have years of experience dancing together.
- B. Not only Anne and Alex are very graceful dancers and they also have years of experience dancing together.
- C. Not only Anne and Alex are very graceful dancers but they also have years of experience dancing together.
- D. Not only are Anne and Alex very graceful dancers but they also have years of experience dancing together as well.

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to the sentence given in each of the following questions.*

Question 76: *This supermarket sells products at prices suitable for people from all walks of life.*

- A. Those from the lower class, in particular, shop at this supermarket because of its reasonable prices.
- B. Only those who can't afford the prices elsewhere prefer to shop at this supermarket.
- C. The products sold at this supermarket are desired by people of all social classes.
- D. People from any social class can afford the prices at this supermarket.

Question 77: *As I didn't want to disappoint my parents, I agreed to go to medical school.*

- A. Not wanting to let down my parents, I agreed to go to medical school.
- B. To my disappointment, my parents made me go to medical school.
- C. My parents are no longer disappointed in me now that I have agreed to go to medical school.
- D. If I didn't agree to go to medical school, my parents would be disappointed.

Question 78: *Seeing that the bad weather had set in, we decided to find somewhere to spend the night.*

- A. The bad weather prevented us from driving any further.
- B. Because the climate was so severe, we were worried about what we'd do at night.
- C. Bad weather was approaching, so we started to look for a place to stay.
- D. We chose to find a place for the night once the bad weather had really begun.

Question 79: *It was a mistake for you to insult Mike.*

- A. You shouldn't have insulted Mike.
- B. You couldn't have insulted Mike.
- C. You wouldn't have insulted Mike.
- D. You mightn't have insulted Mike.

Question 80: *Of the people interviewed, all were in favour of the government's proposal.*

- A. Everyone who was interviewed thought that the government's proposal was a good idea.
- B. Only the people who weren't interviewed were against the government's proposal.
- C. No one was interviewed unless they thought the government's proposal was advantageous.
- D. They only interviewed people who were positive about the government's proposal.

----- THE END -----

KEY TO PRACTICE 12

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	B	41	A	61	A
2	D	22	B	42	B	62	B
3	D	23	B	43	C	63	A
4	C	24	A	44	A	64	A
5	A	25	A	45	D	65	D



6	D	26	A	46	B	66	D
7	D	27	A	47	A	67	A
8	B	28	C	48	A	68	C
9	B	29	B	49	C	69	B
10	B	30	D	50	D	70	B
11	C	31	C	51	B	71	A
12	B	32	C	52	B	72	D
13	A	33	A	53	D	73	D
14	C	34	C	54	D	74	B
15	C	35	B	55	C	75	A
16	D	36	B	56	D	76	D
17	D	37	A	57	C	77	A
18	B	38	B	58	B	78	D
19	A	39	C	59	B	79	A
20	B	40	C	60	B	80	A

### PRACTICE TEST 13

Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of others in each group.

Question 1: A. thumb      B. supply      C. fuungus      D. suppose

Question 2: A. oun      B. bone      C. goan      D. shone

Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from that of the others.

Question 3: A. circumstances      B. environment      C. advertisement      D. particular

Question 4: A. commitment      B. museum      C. position      D. recommend

Question 5: A. electric      B. contagious      C. periodic      D. suspicious

Choose the word or phrase -A, B, C or D- that best completes the sentence.

Question 6: His brother refuses to even listen to anyone else's point of view. He is very \_\_\_\_\_.



A. will start            B. starts            C. started            D. start

Question 18: Neither of them will be treated preferentially, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. will they            B. will them            C. won't them            D. won't they

Question 19: In bacteria and other organisms, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. it is the DNA that provides the genetic information

B. which is the DNA that provides the genes

C. the DNA providing the genetic information

D. the DNA that provides the genetic information

Question 20: By 2050, medical technology \_\_\_\_\_ many diseases.

A. will conquer            B. is conquering

C. has conquered            D. will have conquered

Question 21: In the United States \_\_\_\_\_ is the most concentrated is New Orleans.

A. French influence the city            B. the city where French influence

C. where the city influences French            D. where the city influences French

Question 22: Having read the passage three times, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. the main idea of it was not clear to me

B. it was difficult for me to understand

C. I still couldn't understand its main idea

D. it made me confused about its main idea

Question 23: Civil rights are the freedoms and rights \_\_\_\_\_ as a member of a community, state, or nation.

A. a person may have            B. may have a person who

C. and a person may have            D. may have a person

Question 24: Declared an endangered species in the United States, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. gathering the ginseng root almost to the point of extinction

B. people have gathered the ginseng root almost to the point of extinction

C. the ginseng root has been gathered almost to the point of extinction

D. the near extinction of the ginseng root is due to excessive gathering

Question 25: Ancient mountains have worn away by rain, wind, and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. for agents of erosion            B. to other agents of erosion

C. other agents of erosion

D. with agents of erosion

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is *CLOSEST* in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 26: As children we were very close, but as we grew up we just drifted apart.

A. not as childlike as before

B. not as sympathetic as before

C. not as serious as before

D. not as friendly as before

Question 27: During the recession, many small companies were eradicated.

A. wiped out

B. run on

C. set up

D. taken over

Question 28: The wind was beginning to pick up and we decided to come back home.

A. become stronger

B. blow

C. blow the leaves away

D. become heavy

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 29: My cousin tends to look on the bright side in any circumstance.

A. be confident

B. be pessimistic

C. be smart

D. be optimistic

Question 30: My first impression of her was her impassive face

A. emotional

B. fractious

C. respectful

D. solid

Choose the word or phrase -A, B, C or D- that best suitable for each of the following situation.

Question 31: "What do you think of football?" - "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. I am crazy about it

B. It's none of my business

C. Well, it's beyond my expectation

D. Of course, football players are excellent

Question 32: "I will write a letter for you." "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Let me post it

B. That will be fine

C. I haven't got it

D. It hasn't come yet

Question 33: "Be careful" "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Thank you

B. Yes, I am

C. What a pity!

D. I will

Question 34: "Would you like a pizza?" ~ "\_\_\_\_\_."

- No, I would like  
C. I wouldn't say no
- B. Yes, I'm full.  
D. I would say yes.

Question 35: "They left without us." ~ '\_\_\_\_\_.'

- A. You're welcome  
C. You don't say
- B. Quite  
D. Let's discuss about it

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase for each of the blanks.*

In an age when technology is developing faster than ever before, many people are being .... (36). .... to the idea of looking back into the past. One way they can do this is by investigating their own family history. They can try to find out more about where their family came from and what they did. This is now a fast-growing hobby, especial in countries with a .... (37). .... short history, like Australia and the United States.

It is one thing to spend some time .... (38). .... through a book on family history and to take the .... (39). .... to investigate your own family's past. It is .... (40). .... another to carry out the research work successfully. It is easy to set about it in a disorganized way and .... (41). .... yourself many problems which could have been .... (42). .... with a little forward planning.

If your own family stories tell you that you are connected with a famous character, whether hero or criminal, do not let this idea take over your research. Just .... (43). .... it as an interesting possibility. A simple system for collecting and storing your way. The most important thing, though, is to .... (44). .... started. Who knows what you .... (45). .... find?

- Question 36: A. attracted      B. brought      C. fetched      D. pushed
- Question 37: A. widely      B. mostly      C. greatly      D. fairly
- Question 38: A. living      B. seeing      C. going      D. moving
- Question 39: A. purpose      B. decision      C. idea      D. plan
- Question 40: A. even      B. quite      C. just      D. more
- Question 41: A. cause      B. build      C. produce      D. create
- Question 42: A. missed      B. escaped      C. lost      D. avoided
- Question 43: A. direct      B. contract      C. treat      D. control
- Question 44: A. get      B. be      C. appear      D. feel
- Question 45: A. should      B. ought      C. must      D. might

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

It takes a long time to raise a family of owlets, so the great horned owl begins early in the year. In January and February, or as late as March in the North, the male calls to the female with **a resonant hoot**. The female is larger than the male. She sometimes reaches a body length of twenty-two to twenty-four inches, with a wingspread up to fifty inches. To impress her, the male does a strange courtship dance. He bobs. He bows. He ruffles his feathers and hops around with an important air. He flutters from limb to limb and makes flying sorties into the air. Sometimes he returns with an offering of food. They share the repast, after which she joins the dance, hopping and bobbing about as though keeping time to the beat of an inner drum.

Owls are poor home builders. They prefer to nest in a large hollow in a tree or even to occupy the deserted nest of a hawk or crow. These structures are large and rough, built of sticks and bark and lined with leaves and feathers. Sometimes owls nest 20 on a rocky ledge, or even on the bare ground. The mother lays two or three round, dull white eggs. Then she stoically settles herself on the nest and spreads her feather skirts about her to protect her **precious charges** from snow and cold.

It is five weeks before the first downy white owlet pecks its way out of the shell. As the young birds feather out, they look like wise old men with their wide eyes and quizzical expressions. **They** clamor for food and keep the parents busy supplying mice, squirrels, rabbits, crayfish, and beetles. Later in the season baby crows are taken. Migrating songsters, waterfowl, and game birds all fall prey to the hungry family. It is nearly ten weeks before fledglings leave the nest to search for their own food. The parent birds **weary of** family life by November and drive the young owls away to establish hunting ranges of their own.

Question 46: It can be inferred from the passage that the courtship of great horned owls \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. takes place on the ground
- B. is an active process
- C. involves the male alone
- D. happens in the fall

Question 47: The phrase "precious charges" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the nest
- B. the eggs
- C. the hawks and crows
- D. other nesting owls

Question 48: The phrase "weary of" in line 19 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. become sad about
- B. tire of
- C. are attracted to
- D. support

Question 49: According to the passage, which of the following is the mother owl's job?

- A. To feed the young
- B. To sit on the nest
- C. To initiate the courtship ritual
- D. To build the nest

Question 50: According to the passage, great horned owls \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. are discriminate nest builders
- B. may inhabit a previously used nest
- C. need big nests for their numerous eggs
- D. build nests on tree limbs

Question 51: What can be inferred from the passage about the adult parents of the young great horned owls?

- A. They are lazy and careless about feeding the small owlets.
- B. They are sorry to see their young leave home.
- C. They probably don't see their young after November.
- D. They don't eat while they are feeding their young.

Question 52: According to the passage, young owlets eat everything EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. small mammals
- B. nuts and seeds
- C. insects
- D. other small birds

Question 53: What is the topic of this passage?

- A. Nest building of great horned owls.
- B. Habits of young great horned owls.
- C. Mating rituals of great horned owls.
- D. Raising a family of great horned owls.

Question 54: The word "they" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the prey
- B. the adult birds
- C. the young birds
- D. the wise old men

Question 55: The phrase "a resonant hoot" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a sound
- B. a movement
- C. an instrument
- D. an offering of food

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

Insects' lives are very short and they have many enemies, but they must survive long enough to breed and perpetuate their kind. The less insect-like they look, the better their chance of survival. To look "inedible" by resembling or imitating plants is a deception widely practiced by insects. Mammals rarely use this type of camouflage, but many fish and invertebrates do.

The stick caterpillar is well named. It is hardly distinguishable from a brown or green twig. This caterpillar is quite common and can be found almost anywhere in North America. It is also called "measuring worm" or "inchworm." It walks by arching its body, then stretching out and grasping the branch with its front feet then looping its body again to bring the hind feet forward. When danger threatens, the stick caterpillar stretches its body away from the branch at an angle and remains rigid and still, like a twig, until the danger has passed.

Walking sticks, or stick insects, do not have to assume a rigid, twig-like pose to find protection; they look like inedible twigs in any position. There are many kinds of walking sticks, ranging in size from the few inches of the North American variety to some tropical species that may be over a foot long. When at rest their front legs are stretched out. Heightening their camouflage. Some of the tropical species are adorned with spines or ridges. Imitating the thorny bushes or trees in which they live.

Leaves also seem to be a favorite object for insects to imitate. Many butterflies can suddenly disappear from view by folding their wings and sitting quietly among the foliage that they resemble.

Question 56: What is the main idea of the passage?

- A. How some insects imitates plants to survive.
- B. The feeding habits of insects.
- C. Insects that are threatened with extinction.
- D. Caterpillars that live in trees.

Question 57: Which of the following does the word "enemies" refer to?

- A. creatures that eat insects
- B. plants looking like insects
- C. extreme weather conditions
- D. insects looking like plants

Question 58: According to the passage, how does the stick caterpillar make itself look like a twig?

- A. By changing the color of its skin.
- B. By looping itself around a stick.
- C. By laying its body flat against a branch.
- D. By holding its body stiff and motionless.

Question 59: Which of the following is true of stick insects?

- A. They resemble their surroundings all the time.
- B. They make themselves look like other insects.
- C. They change color to make themselves in visible.
- D. They are camouflaged only when walking.

Question 60,

Which of the following are NOT mentioned in the passage as objects that are imitated as a means of protection?

- A. Flowers
- B. Thorns
- C. Leaves
- D. Stick

Question 61: In which paragraph does the author describe the way in which stick caterpillars move?

- A. Paragraph one
- B. Paragraph four
- C. Paragraph three
- D. Paragraph two

Question 62: Which of the following is the antonym of the word "inedible" in paragraph 3?

- A. moving
- B. beautiful
- C. eatable
- D. colourful

Question 63: According to the passage, which of the following is NOT True about the stick caterpillar?

- A. It is not popular in North America.
- B. The tropical stick caterpillars can have parts of their body looking like thorns.
- C. It changes its colour to avoid danger
- D. It can have different sizes.

Question 64: How can butterflies make themselves invisible?

- A. By hiding under the leaves.
- B. By disappearing from the view.



C. By folding wings and sitting still among the leaves with similar colours.

D. By flying among colourful flowers.

Question 65: Which of the following best paraphrases the sentence in italics? *The stick caterpillar is well named.*

A. The caterpillar is stuck to a popular name.

B. The caterpillar is named after a well known name.

C. The caterpillar has a good name.

D. The caterpillar is named just like the way it looks.

*Identify the words or phrases that need correcting.*

Question 66: It was her(A), Elizabeth I, not her father(B) King Henry, who led(C) England into(D) the Age of Empire.

Question 67: Bacteria are one of the most abundant(A) life forms(B) on Earth, growing on and inside another(C) living things, in every type of environment(D).

Question 68: Drying (A) food by means of(B) solar energy is an ancient process applying(C) wherever climatic conditions make it possible(D).

Question 69: Supposed that (A) you failed(B) your driving test(C), would you take(D) it again?

Question 70: Neither (A) Jane nor (B) Sarah explained me (C) why they were (D) so late.

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that expresses the best meaning formed by the given words*

Question 71: *way / protect / all the wildlife / must / find/ many species / in danger of extinction.*

A. **A way of protecting all the wildlife must be found as many species are in danger of extinction**

B. A way protects all the wildlife that are found among many species in danger of extinction.

C. A way to protect all the wildlife must find as many species are in danger of extinction.

D. A way is protected for all the wildlife, finding any species which are in danger of extinction.

Question 72: *Leave/ home/ first/ time/difficult/us/.*

A. The first home for leaving is always difficult time

B. The first difficult time is always for home leaving.

C. Home leaving is always difficult for the first time.

D. Leaving home for the first time is always difficult.

Question 73: *Excite/ exam result/ she/rush home/ tell/ family/ good news.*

A. To excite over the exam results, she rushed quickly home to tell her family the good news.

B. Excited over the exam results, she rushed home to tell her family the good news.

C. Exciting over the exam results, she rushed home to tell her family the good news.

D. Excited over the exam results, she rushed to home telling her family the good news.

Question 74: *How/ ungrateful/ you/ not/ greet/ former/ teacher/ meet/ him.*

- A. How ungrateful to you not to greet your former teacher when you met him.
- B. How ungrateful of you not to greet your former teacher when you met him.
- C. How ungrateful of you not to greet your former teacher to met him.
- D. How ungrateful you are not greet your former teacher when you met him.

Question 75: *pass/ she/ church/ work/ way/ everyday/ walk.*

- A. She walks to work past the church on her way everyday.
- B. She walks on her way past the church to work everyday.
- C. She walks the church on her past way to work everyday.
- D. She walks past the church on her way to work everyday.

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.*

Question 76: *He's been studying for so many years that he should have realized sooner that his grammar was incorrect.*

- A. The student would have known that his grammar was incorrect if he'd had more experience.
- B. The grammar wouldn't have been so problematic if the student had been aware of it sooner.
- C. He has been a student for so long that he could quickly tell when his grammar was incorrect.
- D. A student of his experience ought to have noticed his incorrect grammar earlier.

Question 77: *Jennifer hadn't expected the concert to be so good.*

- A. The concert was not good at all.
- B. The concert was worse than Jennifer had expected.
- C. Jennifer thought that the concert would be so good.
- D. The concert was better than Jennifer had expected.

Question 78: *She has offered me a job, but I am still sleeping on it.*

- A. I will get the job if I do not sleep on.
- B. I am still thinking whether to take the job she has offered or not.
- C. Given the job by her, I am so happy about it.
- D. After thinking carefully, she has offered me a job.

Question 79: *The number of tourists visiting this area rose last year.*

- A. Last year there was a rise number of tourists visiting this area last year.
- B. Last year there was the number of tourists visiting this area rose last year.

C. Last year there was rose in the number of tourists visiting this area.

D. Last year there was a rise in the number of tourist visiting this area.

Question 80: *What the politician was saying fell on deaf ears last night.*

A. No one listened to what the politician was saying last night because they had deaf ears

B. No one listened to what the politician was saying last night.

C. What the politician was saying deafened the listeners last night.

D. The politician fell deaf when he was speaking last night.

----- THE END -----

KEY TO PRACTICE 13

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	A	21	B	41	A	61	D
2	D	22	C	42	D	62	C
3	A	23	A	43	C	63	A
4	D	24	C	44	A	64	C
5	C	25	C	45	D	65	D
6	C	26	D	46	B	66	A
7	A	27	A	47	B	67	C
8	B	28	A	48	B	68	C
9	C	29	B	49	B	69	A
10	D	30	A	50	B	70	C
11	D	31	A	51	C	71	A
12	A	32	B	52	B	72	D
13	A	33	D	53	D	73	B
14	A	34		54	C	74	B
15	A	35		55	A	75	D
16	C	36	A	56	A	76	D
17	D	37	D	57	A	77	D
18	A	38	C	58	D	78	B

19	A	39	B	59	A	79	D
20	D	40	B	60	A	80	D

### PRACTICE TEST 14

*Identify the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.*

Question 1: A. good                      B. cool                      C. look                      D. wool

Question 2: A. misseded                      B. laughed                      C. stopped                      D. closed

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of the primary stress in each of the following questions.*

Question 3: A. environmental                      B. conservatively                      C. approximately                      D. considerable

Question 4: A. disappear                      B. arrangement                      C. opponent                      D. contractual

Question 5: A. respectable                      B. affectionate                      C. occasional                      D. kindergarten

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Question 6: Too many factories dispose \_\_\_\_\_ their waste by pumping it into rivers and the sea.

A. out                      B. of                      C. away                      D. off

Question 7: Research has shown that there is no difference at all between the brain of the average woman and \_\_\_\_\_ of the average man.

A. what                      B. which                      C. one                      D. that

Question 8: Unfortunately, your letter arrived after the final date for application. \_\_\_\_\_, we cannot consider you for the post.

A. As result                      B. That is because                      C. Consequently                      D. To this

Question 9: He ran \_\_\_\_\_ fast \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't catch him.

A. such/that                      B. very/that                      C. too/to                      D. so/that

Question 10: We took many pictures \_\_\_\_\_ the cloudy sky.

A. despite of                      B. even though                      C. despite                      D. because

Question 11: A number of students \_\_\_\_\_ volunteered to the job.

A. have                      B. has                      C. to have                      D. having

Question 12: Mike is playing chess. How long \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. did/play                      B. is/playing                      C. has/play                      D. has/been playing

Question 13: She's angry about..... to the farewell party last night.

- A. not having invited                      B. not to have invited  
C. not having been invited                      D. not to have been invited

Question 14: The last student \_\_\_\_ was John.

- A. for interviewed                      B. who was interviewed  
C. to be interviewed                      D. B and C are correct

Question 15: The \_\_\_\_\_north we go, the less likely we are to meet high temperatures.

- A. far                      B. furthest                      C. farther                      D. farthest

Question 16: I regret going to the cinema. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ there.

- A. didn't go                      B. haven't gone                      C. hadn't gone                      D. would not go

Question 17: The judge \_\_\_\_\_the pedestrian for the accident.

- A. blamed                      B. accused                      C. charged                      D. sued

Question 18: The sports event was \_\_\_\_\_and successfully organized.

- A. good preparation                      B. good job                      C. well-done                      D. well-prepared

Question 19: The \_\_\_\_\_polluted atmosphere in some industrial regions is called "smog".

- A. much                      B. largely                      C. fully                      D. heavily

Question 20: Scientists and engineers have invented devices to remove\_\_\_\_\_from industrial wastes.

- A. pollutions                      B. pollute                      C. polluting                      D. pollutants

Question 21: The child who was caught \_\_\_\_\_ was made to stand in the corner of the classroom.

- A. behaving                      B. misbehave                      C. misbehavior                      D. misbehaving

Question 22: After her illness, Lam had to work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ his classmates.

- A. catch sight of                      B. keep pace with                      C. get in touch with                      D. make allowance for

Question 23: Michael could hardly wait to \_\_\_\_\_his new motorbike.

- A. sit down                      B. turn back                      C. try out                      D. put on

Question 24: Although the patient's condition is serious, she seems to be out of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. place                      B. control                      C. danger                      D. order

Question 25: They are conducting a wide \_\_\_\_\_ of surveys throughout Vietnam.

- A. collection                      B. range                      C. selection                      D. group

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

Question 26: After five days on trial, the court found him innocent of the crime and he was released.

- A. guilty                      B. naive                      C. innovative                      D. benevolent

Question 27: Vietnam's admission to the World Trade Organisation (WTO) has promoted its trade relations with other countries.

- A. boosted                      B. expanded                      C. restricted                      D. balanced

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) *CLOSEST* in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

Question 28: The life boat was launched at once to rescue the four fishermen.

- A. quickly                      B. immediately                      C. carefully                      D. excitedly

Question 29: These were the people who advocated using force to stop school violence

- A. openly criticised                      B. publicly said                      C. publicly supported                      D. strongly condemned

Question 30: The President expressed his deep sorrow over the bombing deaths.

- A. sadness                      B. anxiety                      C. disappointment                      D. interest

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Question 31: -Teacher: "Jon, you've written a much better essay this time. "

- Jon: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Writing? Why?                      B. Thank you. It's really encouraging.  
C. You're welcome.                      D. What did you say? I'm so shy.

Question 32: -John: "Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?"

- Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. I don't agree. I'm afraid.                      B. I feel very bored.  
C. You're welcomed.                      D. That would be great.

Question 33: - Tom: "Make yourself at home. "

- Jane: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Not at all. Don't mention it.                      B. Thanks. Same to you.  
C. That's very nice. Thank you.                      D. Yes, can I help you?



- Question 43:      A. cautious              B. choice              C. approved              D. discriminating
- Question 44:      A. illustrate              B. extend              C. feature              D. possess
- Question 45:      A. revival              B. dimension              C. option              D. existence

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 46 to 55.

Herman Melville, an American author best known today for his novel *Moby Dick*, was actually more popular during his lifetime for some of his other works. He traveled extensively and used the knowledge gained during his travels as the basis for his early novels. In 1837, at the age of eighteen, Melville signed as a cabin boy on a merchant ship that was to sail from his Massachusetts home to Liverpool, England. His experiences on this trip served as a basis for the novel *Redburn* (1849). In 1841, Melville set out on a whaling ship headed for the South Seas. After jumping ship in Tahiti, he wandered around the islands of Tahiti and Moorea. This South Sea island sojourn was a backdrop to the novel *Omoo* (1847). After three years away from home, Melville joined up with a U. S. naval frigate that was returning to the eastern United States around Cape Horn. The novel *White Jacket* (1850) describes this lengthy voyage as a navy seaman.

With the publication of these early adventure novels, Melville developed a strong and loyal following among readers eager for his tales of exotic places and situations. However, in 1851, with the publication of *Moby Dick*, Melville's popularity started to diminish. *Moby Dick*, on one level the saga of the hunt for the great white whale, was also a heavily symbolic allegory of the heroic struggle of humanity against the universe. The public was not ready for Melville's literary metamorphosis from romantic adventure to philosophical symbolism. It is ironic that the novel that served to diminish Melville's popularity during his lifetime is the one for which he is best known today.

Question 46: The main subject of the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Melville's travels                                      B. the popularity of Melville's novels
- C. Melville's personal background                      D. *Moby Dick*

Question 47: According to the passage, Melville's early novels were \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. published while he was traveling              B. completely fictional
- C. all about his work on whaling ships              D. based on his travel experience

Question 48: In what year did Melville's book about his experiences as a cabin boy appear?

- A. 1837                      B. 1841                      C. 1847                      D. 1849

Question 49: The word "basis" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. background              B. message              C. bottom              D. dissertation

Question 50: The passage implies that Melville stayed in Tahiti because \_\_\_\_\_

- A. he had unofficially left his ship              B. he was on leave while his ship was in port
- C. he had finished his term of duty              D. he had received permission to take a vacation in Tahiti



Question 51: A "*frigate*" in paragraph 1 is probably \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. an office            B. a ship            C. a troop            D. a fishing boat

Question 52: How did the publication of *Moby Dick* affect Melville's popularity?

- A. His popularity increased immediately.    B. It had no effect on his popularity.  
C. It caused his popularity to decrease.    D. His popularity remained as strong as ever.

Question 53: According to the passage, *Moby Dick* is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a romantic adventure                      B. a single-faceted work  
C. a short story about a whale                D. symbolic of humanity fighting the universe

Question 54: The word "*metamorphosis*" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. circle            B. change            C. mysticism            D. descent

Question 55: The passage would most likely be assigned reading in a course on \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. nineteenth-century novels                B. American history  
C. oceanography                                D. modern American literature

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 56 to 65.*

A rather surprising geographical feature of Antarctica is that a huge freshwater lake, one of the world's largest and deepest, lies *hidden* there under four kilometers of ice. Now known as Lake Vostok, this huge body of water is located under the ice block that comprises Antarctica. The lake is able to exist in its unfrozen state beneath this block of ice because its waters are warmed by geothermal heat from the earth's core. The thick glacier above Lake Vostok actually insulates it from the *frigid* temperatures on the surface.

The lake was first discovered in the 1970s while a research team was conducting an aerial survey of the area. Radio waves from the survey equipment penetrated the ice and revealed a body of water of indeterminate size. It was not until much more recently that data collected by satellite made scientists aware of the tremendous size of the lake; the satellite-borne radar detected an extremely flat region where the ice remains level because it is floating on the water of the lake.

The discovery of such a huge freshwater lake trapped under Antarctica is of interest to the scientific community because of the potential that the lake contains ancient *microbes* that have survived for thousands upon thousands of years, unaffected by factors such as nuclear fallout and elevated ultraviolet light that have affected organisms in more exposed areas. The *downside* of the discovery, however, lies in the difficulty of conducting research on the lake in such a harsh climate and in the problems associated with obtaining uncontaminated samples from the lake without actually exposing the lake to contamination. Scientists are looking for possible ways to accomplish this.

Question 56: The word "*hidden*" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to

- A. undrinkable            B. untouched            C. unexploitable            D. undiscovered

Question 57: What is true of Lake Vostok?



A B C D

Question 67: A lot of people stop smoking because they are afraid their health will be affected and

A B C

early death.

D

68: The road used to be narrow in the past but now it has widened.

A B C D

69: She kept the children amusing for hours by telling them funny stories.

A B C D

70: It is time the government helped the unemploy to find some jobs.

A B C D

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

71: The cyclist \_\_\_\_\_ he crossed the main street.

- A. looked with caution after  
B. had looked with caution before  
C. was looked with caution when  
D. looks with caution when

72: The facilities of the older hospital are as good\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. or better than the new hospital  
B. as or better that the new hospital  
C. as or better than those of the new hospital  
D. as or better than the new hospital

73: A study has been done to determine how the recent change in government policies\_ \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. has affected the small business sector  
B. have affected the small business sector  
C. the small business sector was affected  
D. affecting the small business sector

Question 74: \_\_\_\_\_, we would be rich by now.

- A. If we invest in the telecommunications industry  
B. Unless we had investment in the telecommunications industry  
C. Had we invested in the telecommunications industry  
D. Did we invest in the telecommunications industry

Question 75: When the personnel director realized\_\_\_\_\_, he immediately added two more staff to the project.

- A. what a formidable task it was  
B. what it was a formidable task  
C. it was what a formidable task  
D. how formidable was it a task

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct and natural combination of each pair of sentences given.

Question 76: The student next to me kept chewing gum. That bothered me a lot.

- A. The student next to me kept chewing gum, that bothered me a lot.
- B. The student next to me kept chewing gum, which bothered me a lot.
- C. The student next to me kept chewing gum bothering me a lot.
- D. The student next to me kept chewing gum bothered me a lot.

Question 77: Transportation has been made much easier thanks to the invention of cars. However, cars are the greatest contributor of air pollution.

- A. The invention of cars has made transportation much easier, but cars are among the greatest contributors of air pollution.
- B. Although the invention of cars has made transportation much easier, people use cars to contribute to the pollution of air.
- C. Although the invention of cars has made transportation much easier, cars are the greatest contributor of air pollution.
- D. However easier the invention of cars has made transportation, it is cars that are among the greatest contributors of air pollution.

Question 78: He was suspected to have stolen credit cards. The police have investigated him for days.

- A. He has been investigated for days, suspected to have stolen credit cards.
- B. Suspecting to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.
- C. Having suspected to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.
- D. Suspected to have stolen credit cards, he has been investigated for days.

Question 79: The man wanted to get some fresh air in the room. He opened the window.

- A. The man wanted to get some fresh air in the room because he opened the window.
- B. The man opened the window in order to get some fresh air in the room.
- C. The man got some fresh air in the room, even though he opened the window.
- D. Having opened the window, the room could get some fresh air.

Question 80: The plan may be ingenious. It will never work in practice.

- A. Ingenious as it may be, the plan will never work in practice.
- B. Ingenious as may the plan, it will never work in practice.
- C. The plan may be too ingenious to work in practice.
- D. The plan is as impractical as it is ingenious.

\_\_\_\_\_ THE END \_\_\_\_\_

KEYS FOR PRACTICE 14

1	B	21	D	41	D	61	C
2	D	22	B	42	C	62	B
3	A	23	C	43	D	63	B
4	A	24	C	44	C	64	C
5	D	25	B	45	B	65	D
6	B	26	A	46	B	66	B
7	D	27	C	47	D	67	D
8	C	28	B	48	D	68	D
9	D	29	C	49	A	69	B
10	C	30	A	50	A	70	C
11	A	31	B	51	B	71	B
12	D	32	D	52	C	72	C
13	C	33	C	53	D	73	A
14	D	34	C	54	B	74	C
15	C	35	D	55	A	75	A
16	C	36	C	56	B	76	B
17	A	37	D	57	C	77	C
18	D	38	D	58	A	78	D
19	D	39	A	59	D	79	B
20	D	40	B	60	A	80	A

PRACTICE TEST 15

Pronunciation and stress

- |                       |                  |                        |                    |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. prohibit        | B. pollute       | C. protect             | D. cultivate       |
| 2. A. endanger        | B. geometry      | C. geography           | D. opposite        |
| 3. A. dismiss         | B. destroy       | C. relax               | D. invitation      |
| 4. A. <u>c</u> ountry | B. <u>c</u> over | C. e <u>c</u> onomical | D. <u>c</u> eiling |
| 5. A. <u>l</u> ose    | B. <u>ch</u> ose | C. <u>cl</u> ose       | D. <u>d</u> ose    |

Grammar and vocabulary

6. By the time the boss comes back from England, the work \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. will have been finishing    B. will be finishing    C. will have been finished    D. will be finished
7. She had changed so much that \_\_\_\_\_ anyone recognised her.
- A. almost                      B. not                      C. hardly                      D. some
8. Laura reminded her room mate..... her alarm clock for 6:00
- A. of setting                  B. to be set                  C. setting                      D. to set
9. Susan's doctor insists..... for a few days.
- A. that she rest                  B. that she is resting    C. her resting                  D. her to rest
10. Natural resources should be safeguarded and preserved \_\_\_\_\_ they can continue to be used and enjoyed.
- A. so as to                      B. since                      C. therefore                      D. so that
11. The number of learners \_\_\_\_\_ not large; therefore, a number of headphones \_\_\_\_\_ available to them in the lab.
- A. is - is                      B. are - are                      C. are - is                      D. is – are
- 12..... a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
- A. Having found                  B. found                      C. Finding                      D. we found
13. Hardly..... to the bus stop when the bus suddenly pulled away.
- A. had they got                  B. they had got                  C. did they get                  D. they got
14. I am wrong, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. am I                      B. are I                      C. are not I                      D. aren't I
15. People tend to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of shopping at Xmas time.
- A. make                      B. take                      C. do                      D. get
16. She'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ a hot beverage during a meal.
- A. me not to have                  B. me did not have                  C. I did not have                  D. I do not have
17. \_\_\_\_\_, Mozart was an accomplished composer while still a child.

- A. Whatever it seems remarkable how      B. No matter how seems it remarkable  
 C. No matter how it seems remarkable      D. No matter how remarkable it seems
18. I find it quite \_\_\_\_\_ to talk in front of a group of people.  
 A. embarrassing      B. embarrassed      C. embarrassedly      D. embarrassingly
19. \_\_\_\_\_ is increasing, which results from economic crisis.  
 A. Employment      B. Employ      C. Unemployed      D. Unemployment
20. When there are small children around, it is better to put breakable ornaments out of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. hold      B. hand      C. reach      D. place
21. He passed the National High School Graduation Exam with \_\_\_\_\_ colours.  
 A. true      B. red      C. bright      D. flying
22. The football match had to be \_\_\_\_\_ because of the bad weather.  
 A. put out      B. put off      C. put up      D. put away
23. I'm afraid a rise in salary is \_\_\_\_\_ just now.  
 A. out of sight      B. out of control      C. out of date      D. out of the question
24. Many of the pictures sent from outer space are presently on \_\_\_\_\_ in the public library.  
 A. duty      B. exchange      C. display      D. account
- 25..... everyone working here, I would like to thank you for your generous donation.  
 A. with regard to      B. On the whole      C. On behalf of      D. In view of

synonym

26. The most important thing is to keep yourself occupied.  
 A. busy      B. comfortable      C. relaxed      D. free
27. In rural Midwestern towns of the USA, the decisions that affect most residents are made at generalassemblies in schools and churches.  
 A. gatherings      B. public libraries      C. concerts      D. prayer services
28. My uncle, who is an accomplished guitarist, taught me how to play.  
 A. skillful      B. famous      C. perfect      D. modest

antonym

29. She is a very generous old woman. She has given most of her wealth to a charity organization.  
 A. attractive      B. kind      C. mean      D. hospitable
30. In England, the national examination is compulsory for all children at the age 16

- A. obliged                      B. optional                      C. caring                      D. free

31. Peter: "Are you ready, Mary? There's not much time left. "

Mary: "Yes, just a minute. \_\_\_\_\_!"

- A. No longer                      B. I won't finish                      C. I'd be OK                      D. I'm coming

32. Mark: "How long have you been here?" – Vera: "..... "

- A. About two and a half years                      B. I'm fine. How about you?  
C. I don't live very far from here.                      D. It took me two hours by bus.

33. "You look nice today. I like your new hairstyle" .....

- A. It's nice of you to say so                      B. shall I. Thanks  
C. Oh, well done                      D. I feel interesting to hear that

34. Maria: " I'm taking my end-of-term examination tomorrow. "                      Sarah: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Good luck"                      B. Good day                      C. Good time                      D. Good chance

35. Laura: "What a lovely house you have!"

Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Of course not, it's not costly                      B. Thank you. Hope you will drop in  
C. I think so                      D. No problem

### Reading 1

In the western customs (1) \_\_\_\_\_ hands is the customary form of greeting, but in China a nod of the head or (2) \_\_\_\_\_ bow is sufficient. Hugging and kissing when greeting are uncommon. Business cards are often (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and yours should be printed in your own language and in Chinese. Also, it is more respectful to present your card or a gift or -any other article using (4) \_\_\_\_\_ hands. The Chinese are (5) \_\_\_\_\_ applauders. You may be greeted with group clapping, even by small children. When a person is applauded in this practice it is the custom for that person to return the applause or a "thank you. " When walking in public places, direct eye (6) \_\_\_\_\_. and staring is uncommon in the larger cities, especially in those areas accustomed to foreign visitors. (7) \_\_\_\_\_, in smaller communities, visitors may be the subject of much curiosity and therefore you may notice some stares. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ speaking, the Chinese are not a touch-oriented society, especially true for visitors. So, avoid (9) \_\_\_\_\_ or any prolonged form of body contact. Public displays of affection are very rare. On the other hand, you may note people of the same sex walking hand-in-hand, which is simply a gesture of friendship. Do not worry about a bit of pushing and shoving in stores or when groups board public buses or trains. In this case, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ are neither offered or expected. The Chinese will stand much closer than Westerners.

36. a. taking                      b. shaking                      c. grasping                      d. hugging  
37. a. small                      b. bit                      c. slight                      d. light  
38. a. exchanged                      b. changed                      c. transferred                      d. converted



39. a. pair                      b. couple                      c. double                      d. both
40. a. enthusiast              b. enthusiastic              c. enthusiasm              d. enthusiastically
41. a. contact                  b. look                          c. stare                          d. watch
42. a. Moreover                b. Furthermore              c. However                      d. Whatever
43. a. Generally                b. Successfully              c. Fortunately                d. Expectedly
44. a. touch                      b. to touch                      c. touched                      d. touching
45. a. Contacts                 b. Apologies                 c. Gestures                      d. Saying goodbye

## Reading 2

Although most universities in the United States are on a semester system, which offers classes in the fall and spring, some schools observe a quarter system comprised of fall, winter, spring, and summer quarters. The academic year, September to June, is divided into three quarters of eleven weeks each beginning in September, January, and March: the summer quarter, June to August, is composed of shorter sessions of vary length.

There are several advantages and disadvantages to the quarter system. On the plus side, students who wish to complete their degrees in less than the customary four years may take advantage of the opportunity to study year round by enrolling in all four quarters. In addition, although most students begin their programs in the fall quarter, they may enter at the beginning of any other quarters. Finally, since the physical facilities are kept in operation year round, the resources are used effectively to serve the greatest number of students. But there are several disadvantages as well. Many faculty complain that eleven-week term is simply not enough for them to cover the material required by most college coursed. Students also find it difficult to complete the assignments in such a short period of time.

In order to combine the advantages of the quarter system with those of the semester system some colleges and universities have instituted a three-term trimester system. In fourteen weeks, faculty and students have more time to cover material and finish course requirements, but the additional term provides options for admission during the year and accelerates the degree programs for those students who wish to graduate early.

46. Which of the following would be the best title for this passage?

- A. Universities in the United States                      C. The Quarter System
- B. The Academic Year                                      D. The Semester System

47. A semester system.....

- A. has eleven-week sessions                              C. gives students the opportunity to study year round
- B. Isn't very popular in the United States              D. has two major sessions a year

48. How many terms are there in a quarter system?
- A. Four regular terms and one summer term      B. Three regular terms and one summer term  
 C. Two regular terms and two summer terms      D. One regular term and four summer terms
49. When is the academic year?
- A. September to August      B. June to August      C. August to June      D. September to June
50. The word “customary” in paragraph 2 could best be replaced by.....
- A. agreeable      B. traditional      C. length      D. limited
51. When may students begin studying in a school that uses a quarter system?
- A. September      B. Summer semester only  
 C. at the beginning of any quarter      D. at the beginning of the academic year
52. The word “them” in paragraph 2 refers to.....
- A. faculty      B. weeks      C. courses      D. material
53. The word “instituted” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to.....
- A. established      B. considered      C. recommended      D. attempted
54. Which of the following characteristics does NOT apply to trimesters?
- A. They allow students to graduate early      C. They are long enough to cover the course material  
 B. they provide more options for admission      D. they last eleven weeks
55. Where would this passage most probably be found?
- A. In a college catalog for a university in the United States  
 B. In a general guide to colleges and universities in the United States  
 C. In a American newspaper  
 D. In a dictionary published in the United States

### Reading 3

Colors are one of the most exciting experiences in life. I love them, and they are just as important to me as emotions are. Have you ever wondered how the two are so intimately related?

Color directly affects your emotions. Color both reflects the current state of your emotions, and is something that you can use to improve or change your emotions. The color that you choose to wear either reflects your current state of being, or reflects the color or emotion that you need.

The colors that you wear affect you much more than they affect the people around you. Of course they also affect anyone who comes in contact with you, but you are the one saturated with the color all day ! I even choose items around me based on their color. In the morning, I choose my clothes based on

the color or emotion that I need for the day. So you can consciously use color to control the emotions that you are exposed to, which can help you to feel better.

Color, sound, and emotions are all vibrations. Emotions are literally energy in motion; they are meant to move and flow. This is the reason that real feelings are the fastest way to get your energy in motion. Also, flowing energy is exactly what creates healthy cells in your body. So, the fastest way to be healthy is to be open to your real feelings. Alternately, the fastest way to create disease is to inhibit your emotions.

56. What is the main idea of the passage?

- A. Colorful clothes can change your mood
- B. Emotions and colors are closely related to each other.
- C. Colors can help you become healthy.
- D. Colors are one of the most exciting.

57. Which of the following can be affected by color?

- A. Your need for thrills
- B. your friend's feelings
- C. your appetite
- D. your mood

58. Who is more influenced by colors you wear?

- A. The people around you are more influenced
- B. neither A nor C
- C. You are more influenced
- D. Both A and C

59. According to the passage, what do color, sound, and emotion all have in common?

- A. They all affect the cells of the body
- B. They are all forms of motion
- C. They are all related to health
- D. none of the above

60. According to this passage, what creates disease?

- A. wearing the color black
- B. exposing yourself to bright colors
- C. being open to your emotions
- D. ignoring your emotions

61. The term "intimately" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to

- A. clearly
- B. closely
- C. obviously
- D. simply

62. The term "they" in paragraph 3 refers to

- A. emotions
- B. people
- C. colors
- D. none of the above

63. Why does the author mention that color and emotions are both vibrations?

- A. to show how color can affect energy levels in the body.
- B. Because they both affect how we feel.
- C. to prove the relationship between emotions and color.
- D. Because vibrations make you healthy.

64. The phrase "saturated with" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to

- A. bored with
- B. in need of
- C. covered with
- D. lacking in

65. What is the purpose of the passage?

- A. to persuade the reader that colors can influence emotions and give a person more energy



B. She asked him to apologize immediately because she was leaving

C. *She threatened to leave unless he apologized immediately*

D. She told him she was leaving if he apologized immediately

75. *He acts as though nothing matters to him*

A. He acts when there's no matter for him

B. he acts although nothing matters to him

C. *He seems not to care about anything*

D. Nothing matters to him when he acts

76. *If only you had told me the truth about the theft*

A. *You should have told me the truth about the theft*

B. Only if you had told me the truth about the theft

C. Had you told me the truth, there wouldn't have been the theft

D. You only told me the truth if there was a theft

77. *I can't stand it when people criticize me in public*

A. People can't criticize me in public

B. When people criticize me in public I don't stand there

C. I can't stand in public when people criticize me

D. *I hate being criticized in public*

78. *Friendly though he may seem, he's not to be trusted*

A. However he seems friendly, he's not to be trusted

B. *However friendly he seems, he's not to be trusted*

C. He may have friends, but he's not to be trusted

D. he's too friendly to be trusted

79. *Someone has run off with our ticket*

A. *Our tickets have been stolen*

B. Someone has run off to get out tickets

C. Our tickets has been picked up by someone

D. Someone has destroyed our tickets

80. *The woman was too weak to lift the suitcase.*

A. The woman wasn't able to lift the suitcase, so she was very weak.

B. The woman shouldn't have lifted the suitcase as she was weak.

C. So weak was the woman that she couldn't lift the suitcase.

D. The woman, though weak, could lift the suitcase.

KEY TO PRACTICE 15

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	D	21	D	41	A	61	B
2	D	22	B	42	C	62	C
3	D	23	D	43	A	63	A
4	D	24	C	44	D	64	C
5	A	25	C	45	B	65	A
6	C	26	A	46	B	66	A
7	C	27	A	47	D	67	A
8	D	28	A	48	B	68	A
9	A	29	C	49	D	69	C
10	D	30	B	50	B	70	A
11	D	31	D	51	C	71	C
12	A	32	A	52	A	72	C
13	A	33	A	53	A	73	A
14	D	34	A	54	D	74	C
15	C	35	B	55	B	75	C
16	C	36	B	56	B	76	A
17	D	37	C	57	D	77	D
18	A	38	A	58	C	78	B
19	D	39	D	59	D	79	A
20	C	40	B	60	D	80	C

Question 1: Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently

- A. considereded                      B. travelleded                      C. alloweded                      D. expresseded

Question 2: Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently

- A. roofs                                  B. leftovers                                  C. depths                                  D. tricks

Question 3: Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently

- A. uniform                                  B. universal                                  C. curriculum                                  D. university

Question 4: Choose the word that has the main stress put differently from that of the others.

- A. academic                                  B. physical                                  C. primary                                  D. chemistry

Question 5: Choose the word that has the main stress put differently from that of the others.

- A. apply    B. supply    C. deny    D. scary

Question 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest  
*He started playing the guitar when he was 5 years old.*

- A. He has been playing the guitar since he was 5 years old.  
B. He has played the guitar when he was 5 years old.  
C. He played the guitar since he was 5 years old.  
D. The guitar he played was 5 years ago.

Question 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest  
*"Remember to bring your books," he said.*

- A. He reminded me to bring my books.  
B. He warned me against bringing my books.  
C. He asked me if I remembered to bring my books.  
D. He said I remembered to bring my books.

Question 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest  
*Many people think Steve stole the money.*

- A. It was not Steve who stole the money.  
B. Steve is thought to have stolen the money.  
C. Many people think the money is stolen by Steve.  
D. The money is thought to be stolen by Steve.

Question 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest  
*"Why don't you ask the teacher for help?" Peter asked me.*

- A. Peter suggested that he should ask the teacher for help
- B. Peter advised me to ask the teacher for help.
- C. Peter recommended me not to ask the teacher for help.
- D. Peter told me the reason why I did not ask the teacher for help.

Question 10: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is*  
*The last time I saw her was three years ago.*

- A. I have often seen her for the last three years.
- B. I have not seen her for three years.
- C. I saw her three years ago and will never meet her again.
- D. About three years ago, I used to meet her.

Question 11: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best*  
*She / selected / just / has / been / to / take / part / in / the / competition*

- A. She just been has selected to take part in the competition.
- B. She just has been selected to take part in the competition.
- C. She has just been selected to take part in the competition.
- D. She has been just selected to take part in the competition.

Question 12: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best*  
*I / grateful / kindness / visit / your / farm / last summer holiday //*

- A. I'm grateful with your kindness when I visit your farm last summer holiday.
- B. I'm grateful to your being kind when I visit your farm last summer holiday.
- C. I'm grateful of your kind when I visited your farm last summer holiday.
- D. I'm grateful for your kindness when I visited your farm last summer holiday.

Question 13: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best*  
*I / study / a school / found / nineteen century.*

- A. I'm studying at a school which found in the nineteen century.
- B. I study at a school that founded in the nineteen century.
- C. I'm studying at a school which was founded in the nineteen century.
- D. I'm studying in a school which was found in nineteen century.

Question 14: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best*  
*The football / cancelled / was / why / match / yesterday?*



- A. Why the football match was cancelled yesterday?
- B. Why was yesterday the football match cancelled?
- C. Why was the football match cancelled yesterday?
- D. Yesterday why the football match was cancelled ?

Question 15: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best*  
*The storm/prevent/ us/ go/ school/ on time/ last week.*

- A. The storm prevented us from going to school on time last week.
- B. The storm prevented us going to school on time last week.
- C. The storm prevented us going to school on time last week.
- D. The storm prevent us to go to school on time last week.

Question 16: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

The theory of relativity \_\_\_\_\_ by Einstein, who was a famous physicist.

- A. is developed
- B. develops
- C. was developed
- D. developed

Question 17: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

The girl was used \_\_\_\_\_ birthday presents from her brothers.

- A. to receive
- B. to receiving
- C. to being received
- D. to be receiving

Question 18: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

I could hear voices but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ what they were saying.

- A. turn up
- B. bring about
- C. make out
- D. try out

Question 19: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ to help us when we were in difficulty?

- A. once offering
- B. to offer
- C. you offer
- D. being offered

Question 20: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

A holiday in America can be \_\_\_\_\_ cheap.

- A. surprisingly
- B. surprising
- C. surprised
- D. surprise

Question 21: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

The higher the content of carbon dioxide in the air is, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the more heat it retains
- B. the heat it retains more
- C. it retains the more heat
- D. more heat it retains

Question 22: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Having traveled to different parts of our country,\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. we are seeing a lot of interesting lifestyles and customs
- B. we have learned a lot about interesting lifestyles and customs
- C. much has been learned about interesting lifestyles and customs
- D. many interesting lifestyles and customs have been learned by us

Question 23: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

The government was finally \_\_\_\_\_ by a minor scandal.

- A. take on
- B. put back
- C. pulled down
- D. brought down

Question 24: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

There \_\_\_\_\_ a big increase in the market for mobile phones recently.

- A. has had
- B. has been
- C. is
- D. was

Question 25: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Peter asked me \_\_\_\_\_

- A. what time does the film start.
- B. what time the film starts.
- C. what time did the film start.
- D. what time the film started.

Question 26: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

A new school \_\_\_\_\_ in the area lately.

- A. was built
- B. has built
- C. was being built
- D. has been built

Question 27: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

A woman has to \_\_\_\_\_ more in marriage than men.

- A. sacrifice
- B. determine
- C. apologize
- D. admit

Question 28: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Gestures such as waving and handshaking are \_\_\_\_\_ forms of communication.

- A. direct
- B. non-verbal
- C. verbal
- D. regular

Question 29: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

If I \_\_\_\_\_ it was a formal party, I wouldn't have gone wearing jeans and a jumper.

- A. have known
- B. know
- C. had known
- D. knew

Question 30: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Michael's father, \_\_\_\_\_ is 65 years old, goes jogging in the park very morning.

- A. whose
- B. who
- C. that
- D. he

Question 31: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

After his death, she took the responsibility \_\_\_\_\_ running the company.

- A. up                                      B. on                                      C. for                                      D. into

Question 32: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

English is one of \_\_\_\_\_ subjects in Viet Nam.

- A. useful                                      B. educational                                      C. compulsory                                      D. national

Question 33: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

I \_\_\_\_\_ Tom since I \_\_\_\_\_ a little child.

- A. have known/ have been                                      B. have known/ was  
C. knew/ was                                      D. knew/ have been

Question 34: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

We have had our car..... so we need a lift.

- A. was stolen                                      B. to be stolen                                      C. stolen                                      D. have been stolen

Question 35: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

The..... year in Viet Nam runs from September to May and is divided into two terms.

- A. academic                                      B. academically                                      C. academical                                      D. academy

Question 36: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

When I came home, my father \_\_\_\_\_ a magazine.

- A. reads                                      B. has read                                      C. read                                      D. was reading

Question 37: *Choose the best answer for each blank.*

Mary was the last applicant \_\_\_\_\_ by that interviewer.

- A. to interview                                      B. to be interviewed                                      C. to be interviewing                                      D. to have interviewed

Question 38: *Choose the best answer that has the same meaning to the underlined word.*

Whenever problems come up, we discuss them frankly and find solutions quickly.

- A. happen                                      B. clean                                      C. encounter                                      D. arrive

Question 39: *Choose the best answer that has the same meaning to the underlined word(s).*

He paid a visit to Ha Long bay last week.

- A. protected                                      B. visited                                      C. decided                                      D. obliged

Question 40: *Choose the best answer that has the same meaning to the underlined word(s).*

He said that he \_\_\_\_\_ his bicycle.

- A. loses                      B. has lost                      C. will lose                      D. had lost

Question 41: *Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.*

It is suggested that smoking should to be banned in pubs, restaurants, and other public places

- A.                                      B.                                      C.                                      D.

Question 42: *Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.*

They asked me what did happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.

- A.                                      B.                                      C.                                      D.

Question 43: *Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.*

Last year my little brother got lost when we had gone shopping.

- A.                                      B.                                      C.                                      D.

Question 44: *Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs*

The students who they cheated in the examination had to leave the room.

- A.                                      B.                                      C.                                      D.

Question 45: *Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs*

I haven't come back to Hanoi for my brother last visited me.

- A.                                      B.                                      C.                                      D.

Question 46: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each*

Alice: Thank you for a lovely evening.    Carol: \_\_\_\_\_

- A. Don't mention it.                                      B. I'm glad you enjoyed it.  
C. Yes, I'd like that.                                      D. Yes, that would be very nice.

Question 47: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each*

Wendy: "Why don't we get together next week?" Cindy: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. I didn't have the time    B. Not again    C. That's a good idea    D. It'll take three hours

Question 48: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each*

Marie: "I've passed the final exam!" → Tony: "....."

- A. Sorry to hear that.                      B. Yes, that's right.    C. I hope not.                      D. Congratulation!

Question 49: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each*

Tom. "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary" -Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Thanks. That's a nice compliment                      B. I think so  
C. Why do you say so?    D. Sorry, I don't like it

Question 50: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each*

- Hung: "Thank you very much for a lovely party"

- Hoa: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Thanks                      B. You are welcome                      C. Cheers                      D. Have a good day

*Read the following passage taken from Microsoft Encarta and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word(s) for each of the blanks from 51 to 60.*

Some students at the Open University left school 20 years old. Others are younger but \_\_\_51\_\_\_ must be at least 21 years old. This is one example of how the Open University is \_\_\_52\_\_\_ from all other universities. Its students must either work full-time \_\_\_53\_\_\_ be at home all day, For instance mothers of families. They do not \_\_\_54\_\_\_ to pass any examinations before they are accepted as students. This is why the university is called 'open'. The university was started in \_\_\_55\_\_\_ to help a group of people who missed having a university education when they were young.

The first name for the Open University was 'The University of the \_\_\_56\_\_\_'. The idea was to teach 'on the air', in other words on radio and television. Most of the teaching is done like this. Radio and television \_\_\_57\_\_\_ brought the classroom into people's families. But this, on its own, is not \_\_\_58\_\_\_ for a university education. The Open University student also receives advice at one of 283 study centers in the country. 36 weeks of the year he has to send \_\_\_59\_\_\_ work to a 'tutor', the person who guides his studies. He must also spend 3 weeks every summer \_\_\_60\_\_\_ a full-time student. The tutors and students meet and study together, as in other universities. At the end, of the Open University's first year, the results were good. 3 out of every 4 students passed their examinations. If they do this every year, they will finish their studies in 4 or 5 years.

Question 51:

- A. all                      B. others                      C. the others                      D. another

Question 52:

- A. away                      B. different                      C. run                      D. developed

Question 53:

- A. and                      B. the                      C. neither                      D. or

Question 54:

- A. have                      B. want                      C. fail                      D. go

Question 55:

- A. way                      B. order                      C. reason                      D. time

Question 56:

- A. Air                      B. Radio                      C. Television                      D. Open

Question 57:

- A. are                      B. is                      C. have                      D. has

Question 58:

- A. good                      B. bad                      C. much                      D. enough

Question 59:

- A. writing                      B. written                      C. lost                      D. missing

Question 60:

- A. on                      B. for                      C. as                      D. to

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70

The countryside of Britain is well known for its beauty and many contrasts: its bare mountains and moorland, its lakes, rivers and woods, and its long, often wild coastline. Many of the most beautiful areas are national parks and are protected from development. When British people think of the countryside they think of farmland, as well as open spaces. They imagine cows or sheep in green fields enclosed by hedges or stone walls, and fields of wheat and barley. Most farmland is privately owned but is crossed by a network of public footpaths.

Many people associate the countryside with peace and relaxation. They spend their free time walking or cycling there, or go to the country for a picnic or a pub lunch. In summer people go to fruit farms and pick strawberries and other fruit. Only a few people who live in the country work on farms. Many commute to work in towns. Many others dream of living in the country, where they believe they would have a better and healthier lifestyle.

The countryside faces many threats. Some are associated with modern farming practices, and the use of chemicals harmful to plants and wildlife. Land is also needed for new houses. The green belt, an area of land around many cities, is under increasing pressure. Plans to build new roads are strongly opposed by organizations trying to protect the countryside. Protesters set up camps to prevent, or at least delay, the building work.

America has many areas of wild and beautiful scenery, and there are many areas, especially in the West in states like Montana and Wyoming, where few people live. In the New England states, such as Vermont and New Hampshire, it is common to see small farms surrounded by hills and green areas. In Ohio, Indiana, Illinois and other Midwestern states, fields of corn or wheat reach to the horizon and there are many miles between towns.

Only about 20% of Americans live outside cities and towns. Life may be difficult for people who live in the country. Services like hospitals and schools may be further away and going shopping can mean driving long distances. Some people even have to drive from their homes to the main road where their mail is left in a box. In spite of the disadvantages, many people who live in the country say that they like the safe, clean, attractive environment. But their children often move to a town or city as soon as they can.

As in Britain, Americans like to go out to the country at weekends. Some people go on camping or fishing trips, others go hiking in national parks.

Question 61: We can see from the passage that in the countryside of Britain \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it is difficult to travel from one farm to another
- B. only a few farms are publicly owned
- C. none of the areas faces the sea
- D. most beautiful areas are not well preserved

Question 62: The word “enclosed” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. embraced
- B. surrounded
- C. blocked
- D. rotated

Question 63:

Which of the following is NOT mentioned as an activity of relaxation in the countryside of Britain?

- A. Going swimming
- B. Going for a walk
- C. Riding a bicycle
- D. Picking fruit

Question 64: What does the word “they” in paragraph 2 refer to?

- A. Those who go to fruit farms in summer
- B. Those who go to the country for a picnic
- C. Those who commute to work in towns
- D. Those who dream of living in the country

Question 65: Which of the following threatens the countryside in Britain?

- A. Protests against the building work.
- B. Plants and wildlife.
- C. Modern farming practices
- D. The green belt around cities

Question 66: The phrase “associated with” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. separated from
- B. supported by
- C. related to
- D. referred to

Question 67: According to the passage, all of the following are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. all organizations strongly oppose plans for road construction
- B. the use of chemicals harms the environment of the countryside
- C. camps are set up by protesters to stop the construction work
- D. the green belt is under pressure because of the need for land

Question 68: The phrase “reach to the horizon” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. are varied
- B. are endless
- C. are horizontal
- D. are limited

Question 69: According to the passage, some Americans choose to live in the country because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they enjoy the safe, clean, attractive environment there
- B. hospitals, schools and shops are conveniently located there
- C. their children enjoy country life
- D. life there may be easier for them

Question 70: Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage?

- A. Both British and American people are thinking of moving to the countryside.

- B. Towns in some Midwestern states in the US are separated by long distances.
- C. Many British people think of the country as a place of peace and relaxation.
- D. The majority of American people live in cities and towns.

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 71 to 80

### MICKEY MANTLE

Mickey Mantle was one of the greatest baseball players of all time. He played for the New York Yankees in their years of glory. From the time Mantle began to play professionally in 1951 to his last year in 1968, baseball was the most popular game in the United States. For many people, Mantle symbolized the hope, prosperity, and confidence of America at that time.

Mantle was a fast and powerful player, a “switch-hitter” who could bat both right-handed and left-handed. He won game after game, one World Series championship after another, for his team. He was a wonderful athlete, but this alone cannot explain America’s fascination with him.

Perhaps it was because he was a handsome, red-haired country boy, the son of a poor miner from Oklahoma. His career, from the lead mines of the West to the heights of success and fame, was a fairy-tale version of the American dream. Or perhaps it was because America always loves a “natural”: a person who wins without seeming to try, whose talent appears to come from an inner grace. That was Mickey Mantle.

But like many celebrities, Mickey Mantle had a private life that was full of problems. He played without complaint despite constant pain from injuries. He lived to fulfill his father’s dreams and drank to forget his father’s early death.

It was a terrible addiction that finally destroyed his body. It gave him cirrhosis of the liver and accelerated the advance of liver cancer. Even when Mickey Mantle had turned away from his old life and warned young people not to follow his example, the destructive process could not be stopped. Despite a liver transplant operation that had all those who loved and admired him hoping for a recovery, Mickey Mantle died of cancer at the age of 63.

Question 71: What is the main idea of the passage?

- A. Mickey Mantle as the greatest baseball player of all time
- B. Mickey Mantle’s success and private life full of problems
- C. Mickey Mantle and his career as a baseball player
- D. Mickey Mantle and the history of baseball

Question 72: It can be inferred from paragraph 1 that Mantle \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. earned a lot of money from baseball
- B. played for New York Yankees all his life.
- C. introduced baseball into the US
- D. had to try hard to be a professional player.

Question 73: According to the passage, Mantle could \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. hit the ball to score from a long distance
- B. hit with the bat on either side of his body



C. bat better with his left hand than with his right hand      D. give the most powerful hit in his team

Question 74: The word “this” in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Mantle’s being a fast and powerful player.      B. Mantle’s being a wonderful athlete.  
C. Mantle’s being fascinated by many people.      D. Mantle’s being a “switch-hitter”.

Question 75: It can be inferred from the passage that for most Americans \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. success in Mantle’s career was difficult to believe  
B. success in Mantle’s career was unnatural  
C. Mantle had to be trained hard to become a good player  
D. Mantle had a lot of difficulty achieving fame and success

Question 76: The author uses the word “But” in paragraph 4 to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. give an argument in favor of Mantle’s success and fame  
B. give an example of the trouble in Mantle’s private life  
C. explain how Mantle got into trouble  
D. change the topic of the passage

Question 77: The word “fulfill” in paragraph 4 mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. achieve what is hoped for, wished for, or expected  
B. do something in the way that you have been told  
C. do what you have promised or agreed to do  
D. get closer to something that you are chasing

Question 78: The word “accelerated” in paragraph 5 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. worsened      B. bettered      C. delayed      D. quickened

Question 79: Question 79: We can see from paragraph 5 that after his father’s death, Mantle \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. played even better      B. forgot his father’s dream  
C. led a happier life      D. suffered a lot of pain

Question 80: Which of the following is mentioned as the main cause of the destruction of Mantle’s body?

- A. His loneliness      B. His way of life  
C. His liver transplant operation      D. His own dream

-----The end-----

KEY TO PRACTICE TEST 16

1. D	11. C	21. A	31. C	41. C	51. A	61. B	71. B
2. B	12. D	22. B	32. C	42. A	52. B	62. B	72. A
3. C	13. C	23. C	33. B	43. D	53. D	63. A	73. B
4. A	14. C	24. B	34. C	44. A	54. A	64. D	74. B
5. D	15. A	25. D	35. A	45. C	55. B	65. C	75. A
6. A	16. C	26. D	36. D	46. B	56. A	66. C	76. D
7. A	17. B	27. A	37. B	47. C	57. C	67. A	77. A
8. B	18. C	28. B	38. A	48. D	58. D	68. B	78. D
9. B	19. D	29. C	39. B	49. A	59. B	69. A	79. D
10. B	20. A	30. B	40. D	50. B	60. C	70. A	80. B

**PRACTICE TEST 17**

Mark the letter A,B,C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

Question 1:    A. eleven                      B. history                      C. nursery                      D. different

Question 2:    A. certain                      B. couple                      C. decide                      D. Equal

Question 3.    A. Canadian                      B. Vegetarian                      C. pedestrian                      D. incredible

Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

Question 4:    A. bookeded                      B. lookeded                      C. nakeded                      D. hookeded

Question 5:    A. hands                      B. parents                      C. chores                      D. boys

Mark the letter A,B,C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following question.

Question 6: If it \_\_\_\_\_ fine tomorrow, we'll go shopping.

A. was                      B. were                      C. will be                      D. is

Question 7: I said that I had met her \_\_\_\_\_.

A. yesterday                      B. the previous day                      C. the day                      D. the before day

Question 8: Put the raincoat on. It \_\_\_\_\_.

A. had rained                      B. will be raining                      C. is raining                      D. has rained

Question 9: At this time yesterday, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ in the room.

A. is dancing      B. was dancing      C. dances      D. Danced

Question 10: Who \_\_\_\_\_?

A. was this book written      B. wrote this book by  
C. was this book written by      D. this book was written by

Question 11: The mother told her son \_\_\_\_\_ so impolitely.

A. not behave      B. not behaving      C. did not behave      D. not to behave

Question 12: The \_\_\_\_\_ of this city has increased rapidly in the recent years.

A. number      B. population      C. crowd      D. total

Question 13: John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ interested in any kind of sports.

A. if I were      B. if were I      C. if was I      D. if I was

Question 14: Small children are often told that it is rude to point \_\_\_\_\_ other people.

A. on      B. with      C. at      D. for

Question 15: Each of you \_\_\_\_\_ a share in the work

A. have      B. having      C. has      D. going to have

Question 16: Your last job was a bank manager, \_\_\_\_\_ it?

A. doesn't      B. isn't      C. wasn't      D. didn't

Question 17: He is a \_\_\_\_\_ boy. He is often kind and helpful to every classmate.

A. frank      B. lovely      C. obedient      D. caring

Question 18: He went to work as a driver on the Italian front where he was \_\_\_\_\_ wounded.

A. bad      B. badly      C. worse      D. Badder

Question 19: "Would you mind turning down your stereo?" - "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. I'm really sorry! I 'm not paying attention      B. Oh! I'm sorry! I didn't realize that  
C. No. I don't      D. Yes, I do

Question 20: We would \_\_\_\_\_ lung cancer if people give up smoking.

A. finish      B. get rid of      C. kill      D. cancel

Question 21: "Hello, I'd like to speak to Mr. Green, please" - "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Sorry, can you say that again?      B. I'm sorry, I'll call again later  
C. I'm afraid I don't know      D. Let's wait

Question 22: It is \_\_\_\_\_ not to say "Thank you" when you are given something.

A. small      B. rude      C. slight      D. formal

Question 23: Mary: "That's a very nice skirt you are wearing." Julia: "....."

- A. That's nice      B. I like it      C. That's all right      D. I'm glad you like it

Question 24: Jim: "Do you agree that doing physical exercises can keep our body fit?" Laura: "You're right..."

- A. Of course not      C. That's very surprising  
B. I'm not with you there.      D. There's no doubt about that

Question 25: My responsibility is to wash dishes and \_\_\_\_\_ the garbage.

- A. take off      B. take out      C. take care of      D. take over

Question 26: It is in this house \_\_\_\_\_ he was born

- A. that      B. where      C. which      D. what

Question 27: Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ up?

- A. wash      B. washing      C. washed      D. to wash.

Question 28: I am not used \_\_\_\_\_ up early.

- A. get      B. to get      C. getting      D. to getting

Question 29: Paster, whose \_\_\_\_\_ of a cure for a rabies made him \_\_\_\_\_ was a French scientist.

- A. discover/ famous      B. discovery/ fame  
C. discovery/famous      D. discovered/ famous

Question 30: - Helen: "Congratulation ! You did great." - Jane : "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. It's my pleasure.      B. You're welcome.  
C. It's nice of you to say so. Thanks.      D. That's okay.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 31: The story told by the teacher amused children in the class.

- A. frightened      B. jolted      C. saddened      D. astonished

Question 32: Maria will take charge of the advertising for the play.

- A. spend time      B. be irresponsible for      C. account for      D. spend

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that has the CLOSEST meaning to replace the underlined part without changing the meaning of the sentence

Question 33: Hypertension is one of the most widespread and potential dangerous diseases

- A. colossal      B. popular      C. common      D. scattered

Question 34: The sales of drugs is controlled by law in most of countries

- A. permitted            B. restricted            C. illegal            D. binding

Question 35: Billy, come and give me a hand with cooking.

- A. prepared            B. be busy            C. attempt            D. help

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks.

Looking for an unforgettable way to celebrate that special occasion? Well, the (36)\_\_\_of options open today's youngster – or even “ oldster” for that matter, is a far cry from the traditional party or restaurant visit. No longer is it (37)\_\_\_sufficient to invite your friends round, buy some food and get a baker to produce a cake. No, today's birthday boy or girl is looking for something out of the ordinary, ranging from the (38)\_\_\_ expensive to the downright dangerous. Anything goes, as long as it is unusual and impressive.

Top of this year 's popular (39)\_\_\_are as follows: taking some friends rally driving, helicopter lessons, plane trip and parachuting, and hot air ballooning. Then there is always group bungee jumping or taking your buddies on a stomach – churning, while water rafting (40)\_\_\_down rapids.

The desire of adventurous celebration is not restricted to the (41)\_\_\_. I recently met an octogenarian who celebrated (42)\_\_\_the milestone of eighty by having a fly lesson.

Of course, if you have money the world is your oyster. A very rich relation of mine flew fifty of his friends to a Caribbean island to mark the passing of his half century. Unfortunately I was only a (43)\_\_\_relation.

Undoubtedly, the more traditional forms of celebration do continue to (44)\_\_\_the less extravagant or less adventurous among us. However, with my own half century looming on the horizon I would not say no to a weekend in Paris and a meal at the Eiffel Tower. I can (45)\_\_\_dream. Perhaps by the time I'm eighty I'll be able to afford it.

Question 36: A. scale            B. degree            C. range            D. variance

Question 37: A. hoped            B. decided            C. marked            D. considered

Question 38: A. perfectly            B. dearly            C. outrageously            D. explicitly

Question 39: A. experiments            B. extravagances.            C. exposures            D. expenses

Question 40: A. ride            B. travel            C. voyage            D. crossing

Question 41: A. adolescents            B. teenagers            C. youth            D. young

Question 42: A. attaining            B. arriving            C. reaching            D. getting

Question 43: A. distant            B. remote            C. faraway            D. slight

Question 44: A. pacify            B. satisfy            C. distract            D. absorb

Question 45: A. however            B. but            C. nevertheless            D. anyway

Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Baseball evolved from a number of different ball-and stick games (paddle ball, trap ball, one-old-cat, rounders, and town ball) originating in England. As early as the American Revolution. It was noted that troops played “baseball” in their free time. In 1845 Alexander Cartwright formalized the New York Knickerbockers’ version of the game: a diamond shaped infield, with bases ninety feet apart, three strikers – you’re – out, batter out on a caught ball, three outs per inning, a nine man team. “The New York Game” spread rapidly, replacing earlier localized forms. From its beginnings, baseball was seen as a way of satisfying the recreational needs of an increasingly urban – industrial society. At its *inception* it was it was played by and for gentlemen. A club might consists of 40 members. The president would appoint two captains who would choose teams from among the members. Games were played on Monday and Thursday afternoons, with the losers often providing a *lavish* evening’s entertainments for the winners

During the 1850- 70 period the game was changing, however, with increasing commercialism (charging admission), under – the – table payments to exceptional to players, and gambling on the outcome of games. By 1868 it was said that a club would have their regular professional ten, an amateur first - nine, and their” muffins “ (the gently *duffers* who once ran the game). Beginning with the first openly all – salaried team (Cincinnati’s Red Stocking Club) in 1869, the 1870- 1890 period saw the complete professionalization of baseball, including formation of the National Association of Professional baseball players in 1871. The National League of Professional Baseball Clubs was formed in 1876, run by business-minded invertors in joint-stock company clubs. The 1880s has been called Major League Baseball’s “Golden Age”. Profits soared, player’s salaries rose *somewhat*, a season of 84 games became one of 132, a weekly periodical “ The sporting News” came into being, wooden stadiums with double-deck stands replaced open fields, and the standard refreshment became hot dogs, soda pop and peanuts. In 1900 the Western League based in the growing cities of the Mid-west proclaimed *itself* the American League.

Question 46: What is the passage mainly about?

- A. the origin of baseball
- B. the commercialization of baseball
- C. the influence of the “New York Game” on baseball
- D. the development of baseball in the nineteenth century

Question 47: Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?

- A. the wealthy gentlemen who first played baseball, later needed to find another recreational opportunity if they did not want to mix with other or become a “muffin”
- B. hot dogs would not have become as popular as they did, without the professionalism and commercialism that develop in baseball
- C. the “New York “spread rapidly because it was better formalized
- D. business – minded investors were only interested in profits

Question 48: The word “ *inception*” in line 8 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. requirements
- B. beginning
- C. insistence
- D. rules

Question 49: The word “ *lavish* “ in line 11 is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. prolonged
- B. very generous
- C. grand
- D. extensive

Question 50: Which of the following is true of the way the game was played by wealthy gentlemen at its inception?

- A. a team might consist of 40 members
- B. the president would choose teams from among the members
- C. they didn't play on weekend
- D. they might be called "duffers" if they didn't make the first nine

Question 51: According to the second paragraph, all of the following are true except\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. commercialism became more prosperous
- B. the clubs are smaller
- C. outstanding players got extra income
- D. people gamed on the outcome of games

Question 52: Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a feature of the 1880s "Golden Age"?

- A. wooden stadiums replaced open fields
- B. a weekly periodical commenced
- C. *the National Association of Professional Baseball Players was formed*
- D. profits soared

Question 53: The word "somewhat" in line 21 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to a significant extent
- B. to a minor extent
- C. to not the same extent
- D. to some extent

Question 54: The word "itself" in line 24 refers to\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the Western League
- B. growing cities
- C. the Midwest
- D. the American League

Question 55: Where in the passage does the author first mention payments to players?

- A. lines 4-7
- B. lines 8-10
- C. lines 11-14
- D. 15- 18

Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

I was born in Newcastle, a city in the North East of England. Newcastle is on the bank of the River Tyne. It is quite big, with a population of about 200,000 people. There is a cathedral and a university. There are five bridges over the River Tyne, which link Newcastle to the next town, Gateshead, where there is one of the biggest shopping centers in the world. A few years ago, the main industries were shipbuilding and coalmining, but now the chemical and soap industries are important.

I moved to London ten years ago but I often return to Newcastle. I miss the people, who are very friendly, and I miss the beautiful countryside near the city, where there are so many hills and streams.

People who are born near the River Tyne have a special name. They are called “Geodies”. I am very pleased to be called a “Geodies”.

Question 56. The writer was born:

- A. in Newcastle near the North East of England
- B. in a town in the North East of England
- C. in a city near Newcastle
- D. in Newcastle, a city in the North East of England

Question 57. What is on the bank of the River Tyne

- A. North East of England
- B. Newcastle city
- C. A cathedral
- D. A university

Question 58. What is quite big?

- A. Newcastle city
- B. The river Tyne
- C. The next town, Gateshead
- D. the university

Question 59. Newcastle city has a population of.....

- A. 200,000 people
- B. less than 200,000 people
- C. more than 200,000 people
- D. about 200,000 people

Question 60. What link Newcastle to the next town?

- A. One bridge
- B. Gateshead
- C. Five bridges
- D. a shopping center

Question 61. Where there is one of the biggest shopping centers in the world?

- A. North East of England
- B. Newcastle
- C. River Tyne
- D. Gateshead

Question 62. What are the main industries in Newcastle now?

- A. shipbuilding
- B. coalmining
- C. soap industry
- D. chemical and soap industry

Question 63. Where does the writer lives now?

- A. Newcastle
- B. Gateshead
- C. North East of England
- D. London

Question 64. What does the writer miss?

- A. the people
- B. the beautiful countries
- C. the hills and the streams
- D. the people and the beautiful countries

Question 65. Who are called “Geodies”?

- A. people who are born in Newcastle
- B. people who are born in England
- C. people who are born near the River Tyne
- D. people who are born in London

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.



Question 66. When I was a little boy, I preferred playing volleyball to read books

A B C D

Question 67. Once a week, my mother have to work on a night shift at hospital.

A B C D

Question 68. His eel soup is the best one I have ever eat.

A B C D

Question 69: Automobile began to be equipped by built-in radios around 1930

A B C D

Question 70: The Oxford University Publisher has just published a new series of readers for students of English

A B C D

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.

Question 71. *They don't use this room very often.*

- A. This room is very often used. B. This room isn't very often used.  
C. This room is used not very often. D. This room isn't used very often.

Question 72. *Caroline asked me what time the meeting would end.*

- A. Caroline said, "what time will the meeting end?"  
B. Caroline said, "what time would the meeting end?"  
C. Caroline said, "what time the meeting will end?"  
D. Caroline said, "what time the meeting would end?"

Question 73. *I whispered as I didnt want anybody to hear our conversation.*

- A. So as not to hear our conversation I whispered.  
B. Since nobody wanted to hear our conversation I whispered.  
C. I lowered my voice in order that our conversation couldnt be heard.  
D. Because I whispered, nobody heard our conversation.

Question 74. *I haven't gone to the cinema for 10 years.*

- A. It's ten years I haven't gone to the cinema. B. It was ten years ago I went to the cinema.  
C. The last time I went to the cinema was 10 years. D. I last went to the cinema 10 years ago.

Question 75. "You'd better not lend Mark any more money, Elizabeth", said John.

- A. Johns tells Elizabeth that she would better not lend Mark any more money.

- B. Johns advised Elizabeth not to lend Mark any more money.
- C. Johns advised Elizabeth that she had better not lend Mark any more money.
- D. Johns said to Elizabeth that she would better lend Mark any money.

Question 76. *"You stole my best cassette, Bob!" said Willy.*

- A. Willy accused Bob for having stolen his best cassette.
- B. Willy accused Bob of having stolen his best cassette.
- C. Willy accused Bob on having stolen his best cassette.
- D. Willy accused Bob to have stolen his best cassette.

Question 77. *It is more than one hundred years since the birth of Charles Dicken, the famous Novelist.*

- A. It is more than one hundred years when Charles Dicken, the famous novelist, born.
- B. More than one hundred years ago, Charles Dicken, the famous born.
- C. Since Charles Dicken is a famous novelist, he was born more than a hundred years ago.
- D. Charles Dicken, the famous novelist, was born more than one hundred years ago.

Question 78. *Although she couldn't speak English, Ngo decided to settle in Manchester.*

- A. Despite of speaking no English, Ngo decided to settle in Manchester.
- B. Although no speaking English, Ngo decided to settle in Manchester.
- C. In spite of her disability to speak English, Ngo decided to settle in Manchester.
- D. Ngo decided to settle in Manchester even she did not speak English.

Question 79. *The bread is so stale that we can't eat it.*

- A. The bread such stale that we can't eat it.
- B. We can't eat the bread because of its stale.
- C. *The bread isn't fresh enough to be eaten.*
- D. The bread isn't enough fresh for us to eat.

Question 80: She has lost her appetite recently

- A. She hasn't had any food recently
- B. Her appetite has been very good
- C. She has gone off food recently
- D. She hasn't eaten a lot of food recently

KEY TO PRACTICE 17

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	A	21	A	41	D	61	D
2	C	22	B	42	C	62	D
3	B	23	D	43	A	63	A
4	C	24	D	44	B	64	A
5	B	25	B	45	B	65	C
6	D	26	B	46	D	66	D
7	B	27	B	47	C	67	B
8	C	28	D	48	B	68	D
9	B	29	D	49	B	69	B
10	C	30	C	50	C	70	D
11	D	31	A	51	C	71	D
12	B	32	B	52	C	72	A
13	D	33	C	53	D	73	C
14	C	34	B	54	A	74	D
15	C	35	D	55	C	75	B
16	C	36	C	56	D	76	B
17	D	37	D	57	B	77	D
18	B	38	C	58	A	78	C
19	B	39	B	59	D	79	C
20	B	40	A	60	C	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 18

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following groups.*

1. A. authority                      B. particular                      C. mathematics                      D. community
2. A. receive                      B. factor                      C. process                      D. proper
3. A. refusal                      B. decision                      C. politics                      D. possession
4. A. illegally                      B. contaminate                      C. rhinoceros                      D. apparatus
5. A. introduce                      B. committee                      C. interfere                      D. referee

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction.

6. My father used to giving me some good advice whenever I had a problem.

A. giving                      B. whenever                      C. a problem                      D. some good

7. The better you are at English, more chance you have to get a job with international organizations.

A. better                      B. more chance                      C. are at                      D. a job

8. The woman of whom the red car is parked in front of the bank is a famous pop star.

A. is park                      B. of whom                      C. a famous pop star                      D. front of

9. It was a six-hours journey; we were completely exhausted when we arrived.

A. a six-hours                      B. exhausted                      C. we arrived                      D. completely

10. Turn on the light, I was surprised at what I saw.

A. Turn on                      B. was                      C. what                      D. at

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the sentence that is CLOSEST in meaning to each of the following questions:

11. *You should wash your shirt right now before that stain dries.*

- A. Your shirt needs washing right now before that stain dries.
- B. Before that stain dry, don't wash your shirt right now.
- C. No sooner does the stain dry so you should wash the shirt before it dry.
- D. You should wash your shirt in order for the stain to dry right now.

12. *"No, I didn't tell Jim our plan," said Tom.*

- A. Tom denied to tell Jim their plan.
- B. Tom didn't agree to tell Jim their plan.
- C. Tom refused to tell Jim their plan.
- D. Tom denied having told Jim their plan.

13. *Thieves stole all her priceless jewels.*

- A. She was stolen all her priceless jewels.
- B. All her priceless jewels were stolen by thieves
- C. All her priceless jewels are stolen by thieves.
- D. She was robbed of all her priceless jewels.

14. *"Sorry madam, looking after the garden is not my duty. "*

- A. He promised to look after the garden.

B. He said that he was not responsible for looking after the garden.

C. He asked me if looking after the garden was his duty.

D. He apologized for not looking after the garden.

15. *You're not to blame for what happened.*

A. What happened is not your fault.

B. You're not accused for what happened.

C. We blame you for what happened.

D. You're responsible for what happened.

16. Unless someone has a key, we cannot get into the house.

A. If someone does not have a key, we can only get into the house.

B. We could not get into the house if someone had a key.

C. We can only get into the house if someone has a key.

D. If someone did not have a key, we could not get into the house.

17. She knows a lot more about it than I do.

A. I do not know as much about it as she does.

B. I know as much about it as she does.

C. I know much more about it than she does.

D. She does not know so much about it as I do.

18. We were all surprised when she suddenly came back.

A. All of us found it surprising that she suddenly came back.

B. She was surprised, coming back suddenly.

C. All of us were amazing to see her come back.

D. The fact that we were surprised made her come back.

19. She usually drinks a glass of milk before going to bed every night.

A. She gets accustomed to a glass of milk before going to bed every night.

B. She is used to drinking a glass of milk before going to bed every night.

C. She is used to going to bed before drinking a glass of milk every night.

D. She used to drink a glass of milk before going to bed every night.

20. Because she was irritated by her husband's lack of punctuality, she left him.

A. Being irritating by her husband's lack of punctuality, she left him.

B. Irritating with her husband's lack of punctuality, she left him.

C. She left her husband because of her irritation with his lack of punctuality

D. Irritated by her husband, she punctually left him.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is *OPPOSITE* in meaning to the underlined part:

21. Mr. Smith's new neighbors appear to be very friendly.

- A. mean      B. pleasant      C. hostile      D. easy-going

22. China has become the third country in the world which can independently carry out the manned space activities.

- A. put up      B. put in      C. put on      D. put off

. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word or phrase that is *CLOSEST* in meaning to the underlined part:

23. The sale of drugs is controlled by law in most countries.

- A. permitted      B. restricted      C. illegal      D. binding

24. We are very anxious about the result of the exam.

- A. careful      B. excited      C. careless      D. worried

25. I take my hat off to all those people who worked hard to get the contract.

- A. respect      B. discourage      C. detest      D. dislike

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions:

26. She won the award for \_\_\_\_\_ her whole life to looking after the poor.

- A. spending      B. paying      C. using      D. devoting

27. I .....very well with my roommate now; we never have any arguments

- A. go on      B. carry on      C. get on      D. put on

28. "No Parking. "      This sign means \_\_\_\_\_

- A. You are not allowed to park your car here.  
B. There's not enough space for parking here.  
C. You can't go to the park here.  
D. There is no park here.

29. Minh and Cuong were badly injured in the last match, so \_\_\_\_\_ can play in this match.

- A. either of them      B. none of them      C. both of them      D. neither of them

30. I ..... Much of you lately. We .....three months ago

- A. have't seen – last met                      B. didn't see –met  
 C. haven't seen – have met                    D. didn't see- have met

31. The climate of China is similar in many ways to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the United States                              B. that of the United States  
 C. which of the United States                D. this of the United States

32. Laura: "What a great hair cut, Maria!" Maria: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Thanks. It's very kind of you to do this.    B. It's my pleasure.  
 C. You think so? I think it's a bit too short.    D. Oh, yes. That's right.

33. There's plenty of time for you to \_\_\_\_\_ your mind. You needn't decide now.

- A. bear in                      B. keep in                      C. make up                      D. give up

34. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ girl with \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. clear-eye/ a black hair                      B. clear-eyes/ black hair  
 C. clear-eyed/ black hairs                      D. clear-eyed/ black hair

35. \_\_\_\_\_ did I realize that the burglar was still in the house.

- A. Only after                                      B. Only then  
 C. Under no circumstances                    D. Seldom

36. Twenty workers are reported..... in the explosion

- A. to injure                      B. to have injured                      C. to have been injured                      D. to be injure

37. Chemistry is my \_\_\_\_\_ subject at school.

- A. popular                      B. favourite                      C. wanted                      D. liking

38. Preparing for a job interview can be very \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. stressing                      B. stress                      C. stressful                      D. stressed

39. Don't worry. He'll do the job as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible.

- A. economically                      B. uneconomically                      C. economizing                      D. economic

40. The doctor said that he .....me in twenty minutes

- A. will see                      B. would see                      C. saw                      D. could see

41. - "Would you like to join our volunteer group this summer?" - " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. Yes, you're a good friend. B. Yes, I'd love to. Thanks. C. Do you think I would? D. I wouldn't. Thank you.

42. The window was so high up that \_\_\_\_\_ I could see was the sky.

- A. just                      B. all                      C. thus                      D. only
43. You are going to come to the party\_\_\_\_\_?
- A. will you                      B. aren't you                      C. do you                      D. won't you
44. - "Wow! What a nice coat you are wearing!" - "\_\_\_\_\_"
- A. I like you to say that.                      B. Certainly. Do you like it, too?
- C. Thanks. My mother bought it for me.                      D. Yes, of course. It's expensive.
45. He runs a business, \_\_\_\_\_ he proves to have managerial skills.
- A. otherwise                      B. despite                      C. however                      D. and
46. From the hotel there is a good \_\_\_\_\_ of the mountains.
- A. view                      B. vision                      C. sight                      D. picture
47. \_\_\_\_\_ entering the hall, he found everyone waiting for him.
- A. On                      B. During                      C. At                      D. With
48. Whenever he had an important decision to make, he \_\_\_\_\_ a cigar to calm his nerves.
- A. would light                      B. would have lit                      C. had lit                      D. would be lighting
49. My supervisor is angry with me. I didn't do all the work I \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
- A. must have done                      B. should have done                      C. need to have done                      D. may have done
50. He arrived late, \_\_\_\_\_ was annoying.
- A. what                      B. it                      C. that                      D. which

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 51 to 60.*

### ENVIRONMENTAL ACTIVISTS

Paul Watson is an environmental activist. He is a man who believes that he must do something, not just talk about doing something. Paul believes in protecting endangered animals, and he protects them in controversial ways. Some people think that Watson is a hero and admire him very much. Other people think that he is a criminal.

On July 16<sup>th</sup>, 1979, Paul Watson and his crew were on his ship, which is called the Sea Shepherd. Watson and the people who work on the Sea Shepherd were hunting on the Atlantic Ocean near Portugal. However, they had a strange prey; instead of hunting for animals, their prey was a ship, the Sierra. The Sea Shepherd found the Sierra, ran into it and sank it. As a result, the Sierra never returned to the sea. The Sea Shepherd, on the other hand, returned to its home in Canada. Paul Watson and his workers thought that they had been successful.

The Sierra had been a whaling ship, which had operated illegally. The captain and the crew of the Sierra did not obey any of the international laws that restrict whaling. Instead, they killed as many whales



as they could, quickly cut off the meat, and froze it. Later, they sold the whale meat in countries where it is eaten.

Paul Watson tried to persuade the international whaling commission to stop the Sierra. However, the commission did very little, and Paul became impatient. He decided to stop the Sierra and other whaling ships in any way that he could. He offered to pay \$25,000 to anyone who sank any illegal whaling ship, and he sank the Sierra. He acted because he believes that the whales must be protected. Still, he acted without the approval of the government; therefore, his actions were controversial.

Paul Watson is not the only environmental activist. Other men and women are also fighting to protect the Earth. Like Watson, they do not always have the approval of their governments, and like Watson, they have become impatient. Yet, because of their concern for the environment, they will act to protect it.

Question 51: According to the reading, an environmental activist is someone who \_\_\_\_

- A. runs into whaling ship
- B. does something to protect the Earth
- C. talks about protecting endangered species
- D. is a hero, like Paul Watson

Question 52: When something is controversial, \_\_\_\_

- A. everyone agrees with it
- B. everyone disagrees with it
- C. people have different ideas about it
- D. people protect it

Question 53: The members of a ship's crew are \_\_\_\_.

- A. the men and women who work on the ship
- B. the people who work on the airplanes
- C. all of the people on a ship, including the passengers
- D. the people who own the ship

Question 54: The main idea of paragraph one is that \_\_\_\_

- A. Paul Watson is a hero to some people
- B. activists are people who do something
- C. Paul Watson is a controversial environmental activist
- D. Paul Watson does not believe in talking

Question 55: The Sea Shepherd was hunting \_\_\_\_

- A. the Atlantic Ocean
- B. whales
- C. the Sierra
- D. Portugal

Question 56: The author implies that Paul Watson lives in \_\_\_\_

- A. Portugal
- B. a ship on the Atlantic
- C. the Sierra
- D. Canada

Question 57: The captain and the crew of the Sierra were acting illegally because \_\_\_\_.

- A. they were not obeying international laws
- B. they were whaling

- C. they were killing and selling whales                      D. All of the above are correct

Question 58: In paragraph 3 the phrase “and froze it” refers to \_\_\_\_.

- A. whale meat      B. the Sierra                      C. whales                      D. the Sierra crew

Question 59: The main idea of paragraph 3 is that \_\_\_\_.

- A. the Sierra sold whale meat in some countries  
B. the people on the Sierra didn't obey international laws.  
C. the people on the Sierra killed as many whales as they could.  
D. whaling is illegal according to international law.

Question 60: Watson ran into the Sierra because \_\_\_\_.

- A. he wanted to stop the ship's crew from whaling  
B. he was impatient with the government's actions  
C. he wanted to protect the whales from the whalers  
D. All of the above are correct

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70.*

It's often said that we learn things at the wrong time. University students frequently do the minimum of work because they're crazy about a good social life instead. Children often scream before their piano practice because it's so boring. They have to be given gold stars and medals to be persuaded to swim, or have to be bribed to take exams. But the story is different when you're older.

Over the years, I've done my share of adult learning. At 30, I went to a college and did courses in History and English. It was an amazing experience. For starters, I was paying, so there was no reason to be late – I was the one frowning and drumming my fingers if the tutor was late, not the other way round. Indeed, if I could persuade him to linger for an extra five minutes, it was a bonus, not a nuisance. I wasn't frightened to ask questions, and homework was a pleasure not a pain. When I passed an exam, I had passed it for me and me alone, not for my parents or my teachers. The satisfaction I got was entirely personal.

Some people fear going back to school because they worry that their brain has got rusty. But the joy is that, although some parts have rusted up, your brain has learnt all kinds of other things since you were young. It has learnt to think independently and flexibly and is much better at relating one thing to another. What you lose in the rust department, you gain in the maturity department.

In some ways, age is a positive plus. For instance, when you're older, you get less frustrated. Experience has told you that, if you're calm and simply do something carefully again and again, eventually you'll get the hang of it. The confidence you have in other areas – from being able to drive a car, perhaps – means that if you can't, say, build a chair instantly, you don't, like a child, want to destroy your first pathetic attempts. Maturity tells you that you will, with application, eventually get there.

I hated piano lessons at school, but I was good at music. And coming back to it, with a teacher who could explain why certain exercises were useful and with musical concepts that, at the age often, I could never grasp, was magical. Initially, I did feel a bit strange, thumping out a piece that I'd played for my school exams, with just as little comprehension of what the composer intended as I'd had all those years before. But soon, complex emotions that I never knew poured out from my fingers, and suddenly I could understand why practice makes perfect.

Question 61: It is implied in paragraph 1 that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. young learners are usually lazy in their class
- B. teachers should give young learners less homework
- C. young learners often lack a good motivation for learning
- D. parents should encourage young learners to study more

Question 62: The writer's main point in paragraph 2 is to show that as people grow up, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they cannot learn as well as younger learners
- B. they have a more positive attitude towards learning
- C. they tend to learn less as they are discouraged
- D. they get more impatient with their teachers

Question 63: The phrase "For starters" in paragraph 2 could best be replaced by "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. For beginners
- B. First and foremost
- C. At the starting point
- D. At the beginning

Question 64: While doing some adult learning courses at a college, the writer was surprised \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to have more time to learn
- B. to be able to learn more quickly
- C. to feel learning more enjoyable
- D. to get on better with the tutor

Question 65: In paragraph 3, the word "rusty" means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. not as good as it used to be through lack of practice
- B. impatient because of having nothing to do
- C. covered with rust and not as good as it used to be
- D. staying alive and becoming more active

Question 66: The phrase "get there" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. have the things you have long desired
- B. achieve your aim with hard work
- C. arrive at an intended place with difficulty
- D. receive a school or college degree

Question 67: All of the following are true about adult learning EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. experience in doing other things can help one's learning
- B. young people usually feel less patient than adults
- C. adults think more independently and flexibly than young people
- D. adult learners have fewer advantages than young learners

Question 68: It can be inferred from paragraph 4 that maturity is a positive plus in the learning process because adult learners \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. pay more attention to detail than younger learners
- B. have become more patient than younger learners
- C. are less worried about learning than younger learners
- D. are able to organize themselves better than younger learners

Question 69: It is implied in the last paragraph that when you learn later in life, you \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. should expect to take longer to learn than when you were younger
- B. find that you can recall a lot of things you learnt when younger
- C. can sometimes understand more than when you were younger
- D. are not able to concentrate as well as when you were younger

Question 70: What is the writer's main purpose in the passage?

- A. To show how fast adult learning is.
- B. To describe adult learning methods.
- C. To encourage adult learning.
- D. To explain reasons for learning.

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks from 71 to 80.*

Face-to-face conversation is two-way process: You speak to me, I reply to you and so on. Two-way (71)\_\_\_\_\_ depends on having a coding system that is understood by both (72)\_\_\_\_\_ and receiver, and an agreed convention about (73)\_\_\_\_\_ the beginning and end of the (74) \_\_\_\_\_. In speech, the coding system is the language like English or Spanish; the convention that one person speaks at a time may seem too obvious to (75)\_\_\_\_\_. In fact, the (76)\_\_\_\_\_ that people use in conversations and meetings are often non-verbal. For example, lowering the pitch of the voice may mean the end of a sentence; a sharp intake of breath may signal the desire to (77)\_\_\_\_\_, catching the chairman's (78)\_\_\_\_\_ may indicate the desire to speak in a formal setting like a (79)\_\_\_\_\_, a clenched fist may indicate anger. When these (80)\_\_\_\_\_ signals are not possible, more formal signals may be needed.

Question 71: A. interchange    B. exchange    C. correspondence    D. communication

Question 72: A. announcer    B. transmitter    C. messenger    D. sender

Question 73: A. signing    B. symbolizing    C. signalling    D. showing

Question 74: A. message    B. topic    C. idea    D. theme

- Question 75: A. judge      B. mention      C. recognize      D. notice
- Question 76: A. signals      B. symptoms      C. symbols      D. signs
- Question 77: A. interchange      B. interfere      C. interrupt      D. intercept
- Question 78: A. elbow      B. eye      C. shoulder      D. hand
- Question 79: A. chat      B. debate      C. broadcast      D. lecture
- Question 80: A. visual      B. auditory      C. verbal      D. sensory

#### KEYS TO PRACTICE 18

- 1C    2. A    3. C    4. D    5. B    6. A    7. B    8. B    9. A    10. A    11. A    12. D    13. B    14. B  
 15. A    16. C    17. A    18. A    19. B    20. C    21. C    22. D    23. A    24. D    25. A    26. D    27. C  
 28. A    29. D    30. A    31. B    32. A    33. C    34. D    35. A  
 36. C    37. B    38. C    39. A    40. B    41. B    42. B    43. B    44. C    45. D    46. A    47. A    48. A  
 49. B    50. D    51. B    52. C    53. A    54. C    55. C    56. D    57. D    58. A    59. B    60. D    61. C    62. B    63. B    64.  
 C    65. A    66. B    67. D    68. B    69. C    70. C    71. D    72. D    73. C    74. A    75. B    76. A    77. C    78. B    79. B  
 80. A

#### PRACTICE TEST 19

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- Question 1      A. salt      B. slope      C. water      D. short
- Question 2      A. school      B. ooze      C. raccoon      D. cooking

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has different stress from the rest.

- Question 3      A. polite      B. struggle      C. visual      D. physics
- Question 4      A. comprehend      B. religion      C. understand      D. engineer
- Question 5      A. suppose      B. attract      C. forecast      D. prefer

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer in each of the following questions.

Question 6. "Why wasn't your boyfriend at the party last night?"

"He \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture at Show Hall. I know he very much wanted to hear the speaker".

- A. should have attended      B. can have attend      C. was to attend      D. may have attended

Question 7. It was not until she had arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ remembered her appointment with the doctor.

A. that she                      B. and she                      C. she                      D. when she had

Question 8. By Christmas, I \_\_\_\_\_ for the BBC for five years.

A. was working                      B. would work                      C. have been working                      D. worked

Question 9. The order must be delivered by Tuesday; \_\_\_\_\_ we will have to look for another supplier

A. unless                      B. excepting                      C. maybe                      D. otherwise

Question 10. The \_\_\_\_\_ carefully you write, the fewer mistakes you will make.

A. much                      B. most                      C. more                      D. many

Question 11. They sat down to a \_\_\_\_\_ meal.

A. five-coursed                      B. five courses                      C. five-course                      D. five course's

Question 12. A species that faces \_\_\_\_\_ is one that may become severely endangered or even extinct.

A. exploit                      B. exploitation                      C. exploiter                      D. overexploitation

Question 13. We talked about \_\_\_\_\_ books. Charles had just finished \_\_\_\_\_ last volume of Proust.

A. the-the                      B. ~~the~~ - the                      C. ~~the~~ - ~~the~~                      D. the - a

Question 14. Only when we heard the good news of Patrick \_\_\_\_\_ relieved

A. we felt                      B. that we felt                      C. had we felt                      D. did we feel

Question 15. They didn't find \_\_\_\_\_ in a foreign country.

A. it easy to live                      B. it easy live                      C. it to live easy                      D. easy to live

Question 16. \_\_\_\_\_ about the company's future meant that few people wanted to invest money in it.

A. Certainly                      B. Uncertainly                      C. Uncertain                      D. Certain

Question 17. Hemingway used the experience and knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ during World War I as the material for his best-known novel For Whom the Bell Tolls

A gain                      B. gaining                      C. gained                      D. to gain

Question 18. I lost the keys to my house and had to climb in \_\_\_\_\_ the window.

A. by                      B. to                      C. through                      D. with

Question 19. There were a few small villages \_\_\_\_\_, but no major city for miles around.

A. on and off                      B. here and there                      C. back and forth                      D. up and down

Question 20. Her training in accountancy provided a sound \_\_\_\_\_ for work in the financial world.

A. footing                      B. base                      C. ground                      d. basis.

Question 21. If a match has extra time, a single goal decides the result – this is called a \_\_\_\_\_ goal.

A. gold                      B. golden                      C. silver                      D. bronze

Question 22. I'm not going to take the car to a garage because I think I can \_\_\_\_\_ it myself.

A. renew                      B. repair                      C. do up                      d. renovate

Question 23. When both parents went to prison, social workers took the children \_\_\_\_\_ care.

A. into                      B. for                      C. with                      D. to

Question 24. Some people don't like curry from India or Thailand; they say it's too \_\_\_\_\_ - but I love it.

A. sweet and sour              B. spicy and hot              C. hot and spicy              D. sour and sweet.

Question 25. I need an assistant – I'm up to my \_\_\_\_\_ with work.

A. my eyes                      B. my ears                      C. here                      D. All are correct.

Question 26. When Mr. Spendthrift ran out of money, he \_\_\_\_\_ his mother for help.

A. fell behind    B. fell back on    C. fell upon    D. fell in with

Question 27. We \_\_\_\_\_ a lovely three weeks holiday in the south of Spain last year

A. passed                      B. took                      C. did                      D. spent

Question 28. She \_\_\_\_\_ with her brother when he broke her favorite toy

A. got out                      B. fell in                      C. got on                      D. fell out

Question 29. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me the truth, I \_\_\_\_\_ - to help you.

A. When / can't be able                      C. Unless/ won't be able  
B. In case/ should be able                      D. If/ will be able.

Question 30. This is the man \_\_\_\_\_ paintings are being talked about.

A. whoever                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. whose

Question 31. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions

He had never experienced such discourtesy towards the president as it occurred at the annual meeting in May.

A. rudeness                      B. measurement                      C. encouragement                      D. politeness

Question 32. Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions

Whenever problems come up, we discuss them frankly and find solutions quickly.

A. clean                      B. happen                      C. arrive                      D. encounter

Question 33. Each time I sneezed, everyone said: " \_\_\_\_\_-you!"

- A. Cough                      B. Bless                      C. Cold                      D. Thank

Question 34. A: Will you come to our party tonight?

B: \_\_\_\_\_, but I'll have an important meeting.

- A. I'll come                      B. I'd like coming                      C. I'd love to                      D. I like it.

Question 35. "Excuse me, is anybody sitting here?" \_ " \_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Yes, I am so glad                      B. Yes, yes. You can sit here  
C. Sorry, the seat is taken                      D. No, thanks

Read the text below and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to decide which answer best fits each space from 36 to 45.

You have heard people say, "It makes my mouth water". They mean, of course, that the sight, taste, or smell of food (36) \_\_\_\_\_ the mouth to have something like water in it. This pleasant feeling is brought (37) \_\_\_\_\_ by thousands of tiny glands in your mouth. These glands

(38) \_\_\_\_\_ a liquid into your mouth when you are hungry and see, taste or smell good food. The liquid is called saliva. The glands are called the salivary glands.

In an older person these glands (39) \_\_\_\_\_ about a quart of saliva daily. The amount for children is a little (40) \_\_\_\_\_, depending upon the age.

The saliva is valuable in helping people digest their meals. It helps (41) \_\_\_\_\_ two ways. It contains (42) \_\_\_\_\_ having the power to destroy certain germs and to change starch into sugar. It also (43) \_\_\_\_\_ to keep the lining of the mouth and throat wet and to reduce the friction which chewing dry food could create. This liquid softens the food taken into the mouth, by getting it (44) \_\_\_\_\_. You can help your digestion if you chew your food well, keeping it in the mouth and chewing it long enough (45) \_\_\_\_\_ the saliva can reach all parts of it.

Question 36: A. makes                      B. causes                      C. encourages                      D. urges

Question 37: A. out                      B. give                      C. fill                      D. pour

Question 39: A. make                      B. create                      C. contain                      D. consist

Question 40: A. fewer                      B. less                      C. bit                      D. smaller

Question 41: A. with                      B. by                      C. in                      D. from

Question 42: A. elements                      B. mixtures                      C. matters                      D. substances

Question 43: A. serves                      B. tries                      C. tends                      D. acts

Question 44: A. tender                      B. soft                      C. moist                      D. wet

Question 45: A. so that                      B. as if                      C. when                      D. even if

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 46 to 55



Psychologists have debated a long time about whether a child's upbringing can give it the ability to do outstandingly well. Some think that it is impossible to develop genius and say that it is simply something a person is born with. *Others*, however, argue that the potential for great achievement can be developed. The truth lies somewhere between these two extremes.

It seems very obvious that being born with the right qualities from gifted parents will increase a child's ability to do well. However, this ability will be fully realized only with the right upbringing and opportunities. As one psychologist says, "To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel."

Scientists have recently assessed intelligence, achievement, and ability in 50 sets of identical twins that were separated shortly after birth and brought up by different parents. They found that achievement was based on intelligence, and later influenced by the child's environment.

One case involving very intelligent twins was quoted. One of the twins received a normal upbringing, and performed well. The other twin, however, was brought up by extremely supportive parents and given every possible opportunity to develop its abilities. That twin, though starting out with the same degree of intelligence as the other, performed even better.

This case reflects the general principle of intelligence and ability. The more *favorable* the environment, the more a child's intelligence and ability are developed. However, there is no link between intelligence and socioeconomic level of a child's family. In other words, it does not matter how poor or how rich a family is, as this does not affect the intelligence.

Gifted people cannot be created by supportive parents, but they can be developed by them. One professor of music said that outstanding musicians usually started two or three years earlier than ordinary performers, often because their parents had recognized their ability. These musicians then needed at least ten years' hard work and training in order to reach the level they were capable of attaining.

People who want to have very gifted children are given the following advice:

Marry an intelligent person.

Allow children to follow their own interests rather than the interests of the parents.

Start a child's education early but avoid pushing the child too hard.

Encourage children to play; for example, playing with musical instrument is essential for a child who wants to become an outstanding musician.

Question 46: When scientists studied intelligence and ability in twins, they found that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. ability depends both on intelligence and environment
- B. different twins generally have different levels of ability
- C. intelligence and development are irrelevant to ability
- D. ability depends mainly on intelligence and achievement

Question 47: Scientists chose twins for their study because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. each twin has the same environment as his/ her twin
- B. they have the same genetic background, usually with similar intelligence

- C. they have the same economic background and hence the same opportunities
- D. they are born into the same family, hence the same upbringing

Question 48: How were great musicians different from ordinary musicians in their development?

- A. They concentrated on music to the exclusion of other areas
- B. They were exceptionally intelligent and artistic
- C. Their ability was realized at an early stage and then nurtured
- D. They practice playing their instruments for many years

Question 49: The writer advises that gifted children should be allowed to follow \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. their own interests
- B. only their interests in musical instruments
- C. only their interests in computer games
- D. their parents' interests

Question 50: When encouraging their gifted children, parents should avoid \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. starting their education at an early age
- B. letting them play their own way
- C. permitting them to follow their own interests
- D. pushing their children too hard

Question 51: The remark: "*To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel.*" in the passage means that in order to become a genius, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. you need to have good health and good nourishment
- B. you should try to move quickly and efficiently.
- C. you must nourish your brain and train your muscles hard
- D. you need intelligence and you need to develop it

Question 52: The word "*favorable*" in the passage mostly mean \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. "helping somebody to be more intelligent compared to the other people"
- B. "good for someone and making him/ her likely to be successful"
- C. "of high quality or an acceptable standard"
- D. "under the control or in the power of somebody else"

Question 53: All of the following statements are true EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. educational development depends completely on economic well-being
- B. studying different twins is useful scientific procedure
- C. to become successful, a child need both native intelligence and development
- D. a child's intelligence is influenced by that of his/ her parents

Question 54: The upbringing of highly intelligent children requires \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. water-loving animals
- B. the coyote and the bobcat
- C. moist-skinned animals
- D. many large animals

Question 60: According to the passage, creatures in the desert \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. run and leap faster than those in the tangled forest
- B. run and leap more slowly than those in the tangled forest
- C. are more active during the day than those in the tangled forest
- D. are not as healthy as those anywhere else in the world

Question 61: The author mentions all the following as examples of the behavior of desert animals EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they sleep during the day
- B. they dig home underground
- C. they are noisy and aggressive
- D. they are watchful and quiet

Question 62: The word “emaciated” in the passage mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. “living or growing in natural conditions, not kept in a house or on a farm”
- B. “able to get what one wants in a clever way, especially by tricking or cheating”
- C. “large and strong, difficult to control or deal with ”
- D. “thin and weak because of lack of food and water”

Question 63: According to the passage, one characteristic of animals living in the desert is that

- A. they are smaller and fleeter than forest animals
- B. they are less healthy than animals living in other places
- C. they can hunt in temperature of 150 degrees
- D. they live in an accommodating environment

Question 64: The word “burrows” in the passage mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. “places where insects or other small creatures live and produce their young”
- B. “holes or tunnels in the ground made by animals for them to live in”
- C. “structures made of metal bars in which animals or birds are kept”
- D. “places where a particular type of animal or plant is normally found”

Question 65: We can infer from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. living things adjust to their environment
- B. water is the basis of desert life
- C. desert life is colorful and diverse
- D. healthy animals live longer lives

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to identify the underlined part that is not correct.

Question 66. Buying clothes are often a very time-consuming practice because those clothes

A B C

that a person likes are rarely the ones that fit him or her.

D

Question 67. The next important question we have to decide is when do we have to submit the

A B C D

proposal.

Question 68. A five-thousand-dollars reward was offered for the capture of the escaped criminal

A B C D

Question 69. My parents were always busy on the farming, so we didn't get the help with school work

A B C

any things like that that children get today

D

Question 70. The amount of books in the Library of Congress is more than 58 million volumes.

A B C D

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closet in meaning to each of the following questions.

Question 71. The box was too heavy for John to carry on his back.

- A. John didn't carry the box on his back due to its heavy.
- B. John was strong enough to carry the box on his back
- C. Because of the weight, John couldn't carry the box on his back.
- D. Despite of the box's weight, John carried it on his back.

Question 72. I can't find my shoes.

- A. My shoes can't have been found.
- B. If I could have my shoes found.
- C. I hope someone will know the place of my shoes.
- D. I wish I knew where my shoes were

Question 73: Tom told his girlfriend, "Let me tell him if you can't".

- A. Tom volunteered to tell him if his girlfriend couldn't.
- B. Tom advised his girlfriend to tell him if you couldn't.
- C. Tom suggested that I should tell him if his girlfriend couldn't.
- D. Tom asked his girlfriend to tell him if you couldn't.

Question 74: To be quite honest, I can't stand the taste of cigarettes.

- A. Honestly, cigarettes make me ill.
- B. In fact, I strongly dislike the taste of cigarettes.
- C. Frankly, the taste of cigarettes doesn't bother me.
- D. As a matter of fact, I prefer to be seated while smoking.

Question 75. The error on my taxes was made by my accountant.

- A. My tax accountant found the mistake that I make.
- B. I made an error because I did not have a tax accountant.
- C. Tax accountants always make errors.
- D. My accountant made a mistake.

Question 76. I wish I had gone there with her.

- A. I hadn't gone there with her which makes me feel bad.
- B. If only I went there with her.
- C. I regret not having gone there with her.
- D. If I had gone there with her, I wouldn't have felt bad now.

Choose one option A, B, C or D corresponding to the best sentence which is made up from the given words

Question 77: imagine/ who/ happen/ run into/ yesterday/ just.

- A. Just imagine who I happened to run into yesterday!
- B. Could you imagine who just happened to run into us yesterday?
- C. You imagine just who happened to run into us yesterday!
- D. Have you just imagined who happened to run into me yesterday?

Question 78: students/ deserve/ severe/ punish/ riotous behavior.

- A. The students deserve to be severely punishing for their riotous behavior.
- B. The students were deserved severe punishment for their riotous behavior.
- C. The students deserved to be severely punishment for their riotous behavior.
- D. The students deserved severe punishment for their riotous behavior.

Question 79: switches/ turn off/ leave/ workshop.

- A. All the switches must be turned off before leaving the workshop.
- B. All the switches have got to be turned off before we leave the workshop.

C. We should be turned off all the switches before we leave the workshop.

D. All the switches have to be turned off before leaving the workshop.

Question 80: It/ until/ father/ home/ children/ dinner.

A. It was not until when the father got home that the children had had dinner.

B. It was not until the father got home that the children had dinner.

C. It is not until the father gets home than the children had dinner.

D. It was until the father got home that the children have dinner.

..... THE END.....

KEY TO PRACTICE 19

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	A	41	C	61	C
2	D	22	B	42	D	62	D
3	A	23	A	43	A	63	A
4	B	24	C	44	D	64	B
5	C	25	D	45	A	65	A
6	D	26	B	46	A	66	A
7	A	27	D	47	B	67	C
8	C	28	D	48	C	68	B
9	D	29	C	49	A	69	A
10	C	30	D	50	D	70	A
11	C	31	D	51	D	71	C
12	D	32	B	52	B	72	D
13	B	33	B	53	A	73	A
14	D	34	C	54	A	74	B
15	A	35	C	55	D	75	D
16	C	36	B	56	C	76	C

17	C	37	C	57	B	77	A
18	C	38	D	58	B	78	D
19	B	39	A	59	D	79	B
20	D	40	B	60	A	80	B

### PRACTICE TEST 20

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has different stress from the rest.

Question 1: A. interrogate      B. efficiency      C. committee      D. entertain

Question 2: A. manufacture      B. apologize      C. diagnosis      D. preferential

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

Question 3: A. measure      B. decision      C. pressure      D. pleasure

Question 4: A. wicked      B. booked      C. laughed      D. glanced

Question 5: A. application      B. pharmaccy      C. photography      D. extracurricular

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer in each of the following questions.

Question 6: Mr. Hopkins is going to have his old family mansion \_\_\_\_\_. The building lost its glamour after his ancestors died several years ago.

A. recovered      B. resumed      C. restored      D. revived

Question 7: James had, \_\_\_\_\_, saved the manuscript of his first novel from the burning house.

A. lastly      B. at last      C. lately      D. at least

Question 8: Mr. Nixon refused to answer the questions on the \_\_\_\_\_ that the matter was confidential.

A. reasons      B. excuses      C. grounds      D. foundations

Question 9: Helium is not inflammable, \_\_\_\_\_ therefore safer than hydrogen.

A. that is      B. and is      C. but is      D. and it

Question 10: Is Jane getting married to Korean? - \_\_\_\_\_

A. I think      B. I think not      C. I don't think so      D. I don't think that

Question 11: "Is this sweater easy to care for?" – "Being made of cashmere, \_\_\_ only."

A. to be dry cleaned      B. you can dry clean it      C. being dry cleaned      D. it can be dry cleaned

Question 12: A: "A motorbike knocked Ted down."      B: "\_\_\_\_\_"



A. What is it now?    B. Poor Ted!    C. How terrific!    D. What a motorbike!

Question 13: A: "How's life?"    -B: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. Sure    B. Not too bad, but very busy    C. Very well, thank you    D. Pleased to meet you

Question 14: A: " \_\_\_\_\_ "    B: "Oh, It's great!"

A. How is the music of the film like ?    B. Would you like the music of the film?  
C. What do you like the music of the film ?    D. What do you think of the music of the film?

Question 15: It's a shame they didn't pick you, but it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ out the possibility that you might get a job in a different department.

A. cancel    B. strike    C. rule    D. draw

Question 16: He sat there with his arms \_\_\_\_\_ doing nothing, waiting for us.

A. flapped    B. folded    C. turned    D. twisted

Question 17: \_\_\_\_\_ that increasing numbers of compact-disc players will be bought by consumers in the years to come.

A. They are anticipated    B. In anticipation    C. Anticipating    D. It is anticipated

Question 18: He opened the letter without \_\_\_\_\_ to read the address on the envelope.

A. worrying    B. caring    C. fearing    D. bothering

Question 19: The widely- publicized demonstration did not after all \_\_\_\_\_

A. come off    B. go off    C. get on    D. break out

Question 20: The floor was so rotten that it almost \_\_\_\_\_ under his weight.

A. gave up    B. gave away    C. gave back    D. gave way

Question 21: You \_\_\_\_ out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught cold.

A. shouldn't have gone    B. haven't gone    C. hadn't gone    D. mustn't have gone

Question 22: On no account \_\_\_\_\_ in the office be used for personal materials.

A. the photocopy machines    B. the photocopy machines should  
C. should the photocopy machines    D. does the photocopy machines

Question 23: He works for UNESCO in a purely \_\_\_\_\_ role.

A. advisable    B. advising    C. advisory    D. advice

Question 24: They showed a total \_\_\_\_\_ for the local wildlife.

A. danger    B. ignorance    C. destruction    D. disregard

Question 25: Such ..... that we didn't want to go home.

A. a beautiful flower display    B. a beautiful flower display was

C. beautiful the flower display was                      D. was a beautiful flower display

Question 26: She is not a teenager any more. She looks quite \_\_\_\_\_ now.

A. grown-up                      B. grown through                      C. overgrown                      D. outgrown

Question 27: \_\_\_\_\_ in astronomy, the discovery of Uranus was by accident.

A. It was like many finds                      B. Like many finds                      C. Alike many finds                      D. Many alike finds

Question 28: My neighbor is driving me mad! It seems that \_\_\_\_\_ it is at night, \_\_\_\_\_ he plays his music!

A. the less / the more loud                      B. the less / less  
C. the more late / the more loudlier                      D. the later / the louder

Question 29: The chairman requested that \_\_\_\_\_.

A. The members studied more carefully the problem  
B. The problem was more carefully studied  
C. The members study the problem more carefully  
D. With more carefulness the problem could be studied

Question 30: \_\_\_\_\_, "Alice in the wonderland" appeals to many adult readers, too.

A. Though written for children                      B. It was written for children  
C. Though for children written                      D. Though it written for children.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 31: Biologists long regarded it as an example of adaptation by natural selection, but for physicists it bordered on the miraculous.

A. agility                      B. inflexibility                      C. adjustment                      D. flexibility

Question 32: The clubs meet on the last Thursday of every month in a dilapidated palace.

A. neglected                      B. regenerated                      C. furnished                      D. renovated

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 33: The aircraft carrier is indispensable in naval operations against sea or shore based enemies.

A. unique                      B. novel                      C. exotic                      D. vital

Question 34: The use of lasers in surgery has become relatively commonplace in recent years.

A. absolutely                      B. relevantly                      C. almost                      D. comparatively

Question 35: There were so many members of the political party who had gone against the leader that he resigned.



- Question 43: A. unhealthy    B. secure    C. safe    D. risky
- Question 44: A. created    B. demonstrated    C. proved    D. caused
- Question 45: A. by    B. on    C. through    D. about
- Question 46: A. While    B. Additionally    C. However    D. Though
- Question 47: A. Until    B. Provide    C. When    D. As
- Question 48: A. quantities    B. amounts    C. periods    D. intervals
- Question 49: A. fact    B. truth    C. way    D. opposite
- Question 50: A. with    B. that    C. whose    D. as

**Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 51 to 60.**

The development of genetically modified (GM) plants and animals had led to a huge global controversy. Opponents say that GM “Frankenfoods” are a threat to our well-being, and proponents say that the risks are minimal. There is one aspect of the war over GM *that* is often overlooked. Anyone who wears a cotton shirt these days is using a GM crop. Cotton is the only major non-food GM crop at present, but others are coming.

GM cotton plants that is not food has not stopped the most passionate GM opponents from objecting. If GM cotton is grown in a field next to fields of non-GM cotton, they argue, then how to keep genes from being transferred from field to field. This danger, however, is not as *compelling* to the public as possible health hazards in food, so there is no great fury over GM cotton.

GM cotton seeds produce higher yields, and they do without the need for pesticides. Planting of GM cotton has increased fivefold since 1997; three-quarter of cotton in America, and over half in China, is now GM. Farmers like it because it increases their profits.

Other options for non-food GM include new variety of flowers with different colors or scents, tougher grasses for lawns, and plants designed to soak up pollutants from the soil. The paper industry provides another example of potential for GM to help produce better and cheaper products. Paper is made from pulp, and pulp is generally made from trees. Researchers in New Zealand and Chile have been working on insect-resistant pines, and a Japanese firm has combined carrot genes with tree genes to make them grow better in poor soil.

Another interesting case is that of tobacco. It is not food crop, but it is consumed, and GM tobacco plants with both more and less nicotine have been created. The tobacco plant, however, is an ideal target for GM, since its genetics are very well understood and it produces a lot of leaves. The value of the drugs that could be produced by GM tobacco is so high, many farmers could *switch* from growing tobacco for cigarettes to growing it for medicine. Since medical cost is rising, consumers would also be happy to use drugs produced in bulk by GM tobacco.

Question 51: Why does the author mention a cotton shirt in paragraph 1?

- A. To show that cotton is one of the most popular materials for clothing.
- B. To give an example of a common GM product that is not a food.

C. To give an example of a controversy surrounding GM products.

D. To show that the risk of GM products are minimal.

Question 52: The word “that” in line 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. war                      B. aspect                      C. GM                      D. risk

Question 53: The word “compelling” in line 10 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. interesting                      B. annoying                      C. dangerous                      D. obvious

Question 54: Which country plants the most GM cotton mentioned in the passage?

- A. America                      B. Japan                      C. Chile                      D. China

Question 55: Which of the following is TRUE, according to the passage?

- A. GM cotton is less controversial than other GM products.  
B. There are several major non-food GM products at present.  
C. There have been no objection to GM cotton.  
D. GM cotton has no significant advantage over controversial cotton.

Question 56: Which options for non-food GM is NOT mentioned in the passage?

- A. flowers                      B. grass                      C. tobacco                      D. rubber

Question 57: According to the passage, why are researchers developing GM trees?

- A. To improve or make paper less expensive.  
B. To produce more fruit.  
C. To find a way to make paper without pulp.  
D. To replace trees cut down for paper.

Question 58: It can be inferred from the passage that GM tobacco \_\_\_\_\_

- A. is already in the market.  
B. produces drugs that are very expensive.  
C. makes cigarettes harmless to smokers.  
D. can have lower or higher levels of nicotine.

Question 59: What is the topic of the paragraph?

- A. Controversial GM products.                      B. The hazards of GM products.  
C. Non-food GM products.                      D. GM cotton and tobacco.

Question 60: The word ”switch” in the last paragraph can best be replaced by \_\_\_\_\_

- A. select                      B. plant                      C. change                      D. replace

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70.

Long ago prehistoric man began to domesticate a number of wild plants and animals for his own use. This not only provided more abundant food but also allowed more people to live on a smaller plot of ground. We tend to forget that all of our present-day pets, livestock, and food plants were taken from the wild and developed into the forms we know today.

As centuries passed and human cultures evolved and blossomed, humans began to organize their knowledge of nature into the broad field of natural history. One aspect of early natural history concerned the use of plants for drugs and medicine. The early herbalists sometimes overworked their imaginations in this respect. For example, it was widely believed that a plant or part of a plant that resembles an internal organ would cure ailments of that organ. Thus, an extract made from a heart-shaped leaf might be prescribed for a person suffering from heart problems.

Nevertheless, the overall contributions of these early observers provided the rudiments of our present knowledge of drugs and their uses.

Question 61: What does this passage mainly discuss?

- A. Cures from plants.
- B. The beginning of natural history.
- C. Prehistoric man.
- D. Early plants and animals.

Question 62: Domestication of plants and animals probably occurred because of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. need for more readily available food
- B. lack of wild animals and plants
- C. early mans power as a hunter
- D. the desire of prehistoric man to be nomadic

Question 63: The word "This" in the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. providing food for man
- B. man's domestication of plants and animals
- C. mans ability to live on a small plot of land
- D. the earliest condition of prehistoric man

Question 64: The word "blossomed" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. produced flowers
- B. changed
- C. learned
- D. flourished

Question 65: An herbalist is which of the following?

- A. A dreamer.
- B. An early historian.
- C. Someone who uses plants in medicine.
- D. A farmer.

Question 66: The phrase "in this respect" in the second paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the development of human culture
- B. the development of the field of natural history
- C. the use of plants for drugs and medicine
- D. the origin of knowledge of nature

Question 67: The word “extract” in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. design                      B. substance                      C. flavour                      D. ailment

Question 68: Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?

- A. The shape of a plant is indicative of its ability to cure ailments of a similarly shaped organ.  
B. There is little relation between a cure for illness and the physical shape of a plant.  
C. The work of early herbalists has nothing to do with present day medicine.  
D. Early herbalists were unimaginative.

Question 69: The word “rudiments” in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. beginnings                      B. history                      C. requirements                      D. proofs

Question 70: The passage would most likely lead to a more specific discussion in the field of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. zoology                      B. biology                      C. anatomy                      D. astrology

Choose one option A, B, C or D corresponding to the sentence which has the same meaning as the original one.

Question 71: *Peter is very different from what he used to be.*

- A. Peter has changed a lot.                      B. Peter changes a lot.  
C. Peter looks very different.                      D. Peter has been very different.

Question 72: *The accident wasn't her fault because her car was stationary at the time.*

- A. You can't blame her for not moving when the accident occurred.  
B. She wasn't responsible for the accident since it took place after she'd stopped.  
C. She was too slow at stopping the car in time to avoid the accident.  
D. As her car wasn't moving when the accident happened, she wasn't to blame for it.

Question 73: *In Japan, as in Turkey, it is unthinkable to enter a house wearing shoes.*

- A. The Japanese and the Turks are culturally very similar, an example of which is not wearing shoes inside.  
B. Nobody even considers going into a home with shoes on in Japan, and this custom is the same in Turkey.  
C. What the Turks appreciate about the Japanese is that, like them, they too don't like wearing shoes in the house.  
D. Japan and Turkey are exactly the same, even to the point that shoes are not worn in the house.

Question 74: *Taking photographs inside the museum is strictly forbidden.*

- A. We were only able to take photos of the museum's exterior.
- B. It's not advisable to try to bring a camera into the museum.
- C. People are not allowed to photograph the interior of the museum.
- D. No one has ever taken a photo inside the museum.

Question 75: *Of the people interviewed, all were in favour of the government proposal.*

- A. No one was interviewed unless they thought the government's proposal was advantageous.
- B. They only interviewed people who were positive about the government's proposal.
- C. Only the people who weren't interviewed were against the government's proposal.
- D. Everyone who was interviewed thought that the government's proposal was a good idea.

Question 76: *There had been prior warning of the flood; nevertheless, it came as a shock to the people living in remote villages.*

- A. Even though the flood had been predicted, inhabitants of isolated villages were taken by surprise by it.
- B. There had been warnings about the flood, so the people in isolated villages must not have been surprised by it.
- C. The flood had been predicted, so even those people living in isolated villages were prepared for it.
- D. The flood had been predicted, yet the people in isolated villages were struck before they received the warnings.

Question 77: *It isn't just that the level of education of this school is high, it's that it's also been consistent for years.*

- A. The level of education in this school, which is usually quite high, shows only slight variations from year to year.
- B. The standard of education is not high in this school, but at least all the students are at the same level.
- C. Not only are the standards of education good in this school, but it has maintained those standards over the years.
- D. It isn't fair to deny that this school is successful, as it has had the same high standards for many years now.

Question 78: *As opposed to being beneficial, too much sleep can actually lower a person's performance.*

- A. Sleeping a little more than necessary can greatly improve one's health.
- B. An excess of sleep may be worse for a person rather than better.
- C. People who are very active feel the benefit of rest more than those who aren't.
- D. If a person is really tired, it is better for him to sleep a little more than he really needs.

Question 79: *So far, thanks to the fine weather, the project has gone according to schedule.*



- A. There hasn't yet been any bad weather to cause a change in the project's schedule.
- B. Unless the weather turns in our favour, trying to keep to the schedule is far from being realistic.
- C. The plans could not have gone ahead so quickly if they hadn't been helped by good weather.
- D. The project can only proceed as scheduled if the climate permits.

Question 80: *I feel completely exhausted when I've listened to Marion for half-an-hour.*

- A. Half-an-hour listening to Marion leaves me feeling completely exhausted.
- B. It is completely exhausting after half-an-hour I listening to Marion.
- C. Feeling completely exhausted, I spent half-an-hour listening to Marion.
- D. When I've listened to Marion for half-an-hour, she feels exhausting completely.

KEY TO PRACTICE 20

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	D	21	A	41	B	61	D
2	B	22	C	42	A	62	A
3	C	23	C	43	C	63	B
4	A	24	D	44	C	64	D
5	A	25	D	45	B	65	C
6	C	26	A	46	C	66	C
7	D	27	B	47	A	67	B
8	C	28	D	48	C	68	B
9	B	29	C	49	D	69	A
10	C	30	A	50	C	70	B
11	D	31	C	51	B	71	A
12	B	32	D	52	B	72	D
13	B	33	D	53	A	73	B
14	D	34	D	54	A	74	C
15	C	35	D	55	B	75	D
16	B	36	A	56	D	76	A
17	D	37	A	57	A	77	C

18	B	38	A	58	D	78	B
19	A	39	B	59	C	79	A
20	D	40	D	60	C	80	A

### PRACTICE TEST 21

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

Câu 1: A. faces                      B. horses                      C. houses                      D. places

Câu 2: A. leisure                      B. measure                      C. pleasure                      D. failure

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

Câu 3: A. mysterious                      B. historical                      C. heritage                      D. particular

Câu 4: A. applicant                      B. category                      C. eventually                      D. shortcoming

Câu 5: A. inhabitant                      B. compulsory                      C. interview                      D. contribute

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Câu 6: They gave \_\_\_\_\_ an application form and asked us to fill it.

A. we each                      B. each of we                      C. each us                      D. us each

Câu 7: \_\_\_\_\_ improperly, the device doesn't work.

A. Installing                      B. Being installed                      C. Installed                      D. Having installed

Câu 8: I won't change my mind \_\_\_\_\_ what you say.

A. whether                      B. no matter                      C. because                      D. although

Câu 9: (Mrs. Brown to her neighbor): I'm very happy because my daughter, who is studying abroad, \_\_\_\_\_ me next weekend. She has just phoned me.

A. is going to visit                      B. will visit                      C. is visiting                      D. visits

Câu 10: The number of the people who \_\_\_\_\_ cars \_\_\_\_\_ increasing.

A. own/are                      B. owns/ are                      C. owns/is                      D. own/is

Câu 11: These \_\_\_\_\_ boots belong to Jim.

A. leather riding red                      B. red leather riding                      C. red riding leather                      D. leather red riding

Cõu 12: Consequently, 12-year-old Charles was sent to work in a factory.

“*Consequently*” means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Of course      B. As a result      C. In the end      D. Unfortunately

Cõu 13: \_\_\_\_\_ that I could hardly hear her.

- A. succeed      B. So quietly did she speak  
C. So quietly she speak      D. She spoke so quiet

Cõu 14: Scientists believe the first inhabitants of the Americans arrived by crossing the land bridge that connected Siberia and \_\_\_\_\_ more than 10,000 years ago.

- A. Alaska is now      B. what is now Alaska      C. is now Alaska      D. this is Alaska now

Cõu 15: Tuition fees in public schools are often \_\_\_\_\_ those in state schools.

- A. twice as higher as      B. twice as high as  
C. higher twice than      B. as high as twice

Cõu 16: In front of us \_\_\_\_\_ with a beard and blue eyes.

- A. is standing a big man      B. a big man is standing  
C. is a big man standing      D. stand a big man

Cõu 17: \_\_\_\_\_ today, we would put off the match till next Monday.

- A. Were it rained      B. Were it to rain      C. If it would rain      D. Had it rained.

Cõu 18: Employers are not allowed to discriminate against an applicant because of their social or financial \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. past      B. history      C. precedent      D. background

Cõu 19: His sister was full of \_\_\_\_\_ for the way in which he so quickly learned to drive a car.

- A. jealousy      B. surprise      C. admiration      D. pride

Cõu 20: It was very \_\_\_\_\_ of him to leave his little son alone at home.

- A. responsible      B. irresponsible      C. responsibility      D. irresponsible

Cõu 21: Money is the main cause of many \_\_\_\_\_ in his family.

- A. compliment      B. disputes      C. arguments      D. leftovers

Cõu 22: Doctors and nurses have to work \_\_\_\_\_ a night shift at least once a week.

- A. in      B. on      C. for      D. of

Cõu 23: It is a \_\_\_\_\_ ruler.

- A. two-feet-long      B. two-foot-long      C. two feet long      D. two long foot

Cõu 24: I was just walking across the street when I \_\_\_\_\_ someone I hadn't seen for years.

A. came off            B. came by            C. came across            D. came over

Cõu 25. While Tom is traveling around the world, he often..... enough local languages to get by.  
gets in            B. takes off            C. puts up            D. picks up

Cõu 26: A: "Shall we go out tonight?" B: \_\_\_\_\_"

A. You are welcome.            B. What a great idea!  
C. That's understandable.            D. No, we shan't.

Cõu 27: A: "May you have all the happiness in your marriage!" B: " \_\_\_\_\_"

A. That's a good idea.            B. Thanks. It is very kind of you to say so.  
C. I think so.            D. You are welcome.

Cõu 28: A: " Thanks for your help, Judy. " B: " \_\_\_\_\_. "

A. Never remind me    B. With all my heart    C. Wish you            D. It's my pleasure

Cõu 29. "Do you know that this house is haunted?"            "....."

Who was haunted?            C. Where on earth have you been?  
Yes I would. Go ahead.            D. Haunted? You are pulling my leg!

Cõu 30. "Why did you leave the dog outside last night?"            "....."

For a good answer

To fill in the gaps

I was not going to but I think it enjoyed it

Because our neighbor complained this morning.

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is closest in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Cõu 31. Crime frequently increases during periods of social upheaval

A. ruin            B. unrest            C. havoc            D. trends

Cõu 32. Around 150 B. C. the Greek astronomer Hipparchus developed a system to classify stars according to brightness.

A. shine            B. record            C. categorize            D. diversify

Cõu 33. I take my hat off to all those people who worked hard to get the contract.

A. congratulate            B. respect            C. welcome            D. encourage

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Cõu 34. The classroom was chaotic once the teacher left the room.

A. Confused            B. messy            C. Entertaining            D. orderly

Cõu 35. There are substantial differences between two spies

A. slight            B. amazing            C. considerable            D. difficult to explain

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blank.*

An American professor who studied the Mayas has come up with a new theory about the sudden end of their empire. (36)\_\_\_\_\_ to Professor Richard Hansen, an archaeologist at the University of California, the (37)\_\_\_\_\_ of the Mayan civilization in central American was (38)\_\_\_\_\_ about by the Mayans themselves.

Their object was to display their (39)\_\_\_\_\_ and power by making their buildings and decoration as beautiful as possible. This involved using large quantities of lime, which they put on the walls to make them smooth. (40)\_\_\_\_\_, the creation of lime is a process which requires intense heat, and they therefore had to cut down huge numbers of trees. This (41)\_\_\_\_\_ the quality of the soil, and it became almost impossible to farm.

Professor Hansen, who has just returned from an excavation in the El Mirador region of northern Guatemala, told a meeting of archaeologists in Philadelphia that the Mayas, having made this mistake in the 3<sup>rd</sup> century, repeated it 600 years later, at which time it proved fatal. Increasing food (42)\_\_\_\_\_ among the Mayas created a Central American equivalent of the Peloponnesian War which ravaged (43)\_\_\_\_\_ Greece. However, (44)\_\_\_\_\_ the Greek civil war, which only lasted for 27 years, the Mayas wars went on for many centuries and left many of their great cities and temples in (45)\_\_\_\_\_

Cõu 36. A. Respecting            B. Referring            C. Relating            D. According

Cõu 37. A. stop            B. crash            C. collapse            D. drop

Cõu 38. A. made            B. turned            C. came            D. brought

Cõu 39. A. wealth            B. cash            C. fortune            D. salary

Cõu 40. A. suddenly            B. Unfortunately            C. particularly            D. gradually

Cõu 41. A. influenced            B. poisoned            C. affected            D. effected

Cõu 42. A. failures            B. droughts            C. lack            D. shortages

Cõu 43. A. past            B. ancient            C. old            D. antique

Cõu 44. A. unless            B. apart            C. without            D. unlike

Cõu 45. A. spoils            B. ruins            C. injuries            D. damaged

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

With a GPS receiver, you need never be lost again. Whether you are driving in a new city or climbing a mountain path, you can use GPS (Global Positioning System) to find out exactly where you are. In recent years, the development of very small and inexpensive receivers has made possible all kinds of other uses. Many cars now come equipped with GPS receivers and computerized maps to show where you are. Parents or pet owners put receivers on their children or their dogs so they cannot be lost. However, what makes GPS so useful – the way it allows us to keep track of people and things – could also

make it dangerous if it is used for the wrong purposes. Some organizations that are concerned about rights to privacy have argued that there should be limits to who can use GPS and for what purpose. In the United States, several cases have been brought to court to question the right of the government or private companies to track people “without their knowledge”.

One important case came up in 2003 before the Supreme Court in the state of Washington. Under American laws protecting the right to privacy, the government or the police are not allowed to investigate a person’s private life if there is no evidence that he or she has committed a crime. In the Washington case, the police had wanted to learn more about the habits of a man they suspected, so they hid a GPS receiver in his car. Lawyers for the suspect argued that this was illegal because it went against his right to privacy. The Washington Supreme Court agreed. In their view, hiding a GPS receiver in a car was like putting an invisible police officer in the back seat. This was acceptable practice only if the police already had evidence that the suspect had been involved in a crime and if they had permission from a judge. Otherwise, it could not be used.

In 2005, another interesting case involving GPS was brought before the Supreme Court in Connecticut. This case involved a rental car company that decided to use GPS technology to prevent customers from driving their cars too fast. They hid GPS receivers in all their rental cars, which allowed them to know where each car was at any time. The receivers could also be used to calculate the speed at which a car moved from one place to another. If the car was driven faster than 80 miles per hour (120 km/hour), the driver was charged an extra \$150. Though the rental contract did mention GPS in very small print, customers were not told about it or about the extra charge. One customer who was charged \$450 for speeding three times became very angry and he decided to bring the rental company to court. In his view, the rental company had used GPS to spy on him illegally and the charges were unfair. The Connecticut Supreme Court agreed that this use of GPS was not acceptable and told the rental company to return the \$450. According to the judges, the rental company should have informed the driver about the existence of a GPS receiver in the car and about the speeding charge.

Cõu 46. The passage is written to.....

advertise GPS

describe the use of GPS and its controversial issues

explain how GPS works

describe the development of GPS

Cõu 48. GPS is used to locate.....

people

B. things

C. moving objects

D. A & B

Cõu 49. According to the passage, the wrong use of GPS is.....

expensive

B. dangerous

C. concerned

D. lost

Cõu 50. Some of organizations are concerned that the use of GPS in some cases may violate.....

privacy

B. limits

C. human rights

D. legal purpose

Cõu 51. The phrase “without their knowledge” means.....

they don’t have knowledge about it

they don't understand it

they are not informed of its existence

they are thankful to it

Cõu 52. The word "case" in the first line of the second paragraph refers to.....

a container                      B. a court case                      C. a pillow case                      D. a situation

Cõu 53. According to the passage, the word "privacy" can be used interchangeably with.....

public life    C. private life  
personal problems    D. criminal life

Cõu 54. According to the Washington Supreme Court, hiding a GPS receiver to investigate a person's habit without prior evidence that he had been involved in a crime is.....

useful                                      B. hard                                      C. acceptable                                      D. illegal

Cõu 55. The Connecticut Supreme Court thought that hiding a GPS receiver in the car without the customer's knowing it is.....

understandable                      B. informal                                      C. unfair                                      D. unacceptable

Cõu 56. The word "they" in line 4 of the last paragraph refers to.....

customers    C. police  
rental car company    D. the Supreme court Connecticut

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

The growth of cities, the construction of hundreds of new factories, and the spread of railroads in the United States before 1850 had increased the need for better illumination. But the lighting in American homes had improved very little over that of ancient times. Through the colonial period, homes were lit with tallow candles or with a lamp of the kind used in ancient Rome- a dish of fish oil or other animal or vegetable oil in which a twisted rag served as a wick. Some people used lard, but they had to heat charcoal underneath to keep it soft and burnable. The sperm whale provided superior burning oil, but this was expensive. In 1830 a new substance called "camphene" was patented, and it proved to be an expensive, had an unpleasant odor, and also was dangerously explosive.

Between 1830 and 1850 it seemed that the only hope for cheaper illumination in the United States was the wider use of gas. In the 1840s American gas manufacturers adopted improved British techniques for producing illuminating gas from coal. But the expense of piping gas to the consumer remained so high that until mid- century gas lighting was feasible only in urban areas, and only for public buildings for the wealthy. In 1854 a Canadian doctor, Abraham Gesner, patented a process for distilling a pitch like mineral found in New Brunswick and Nova Scotia that produced illuminating gas and an oil that he called "kerosene" (from "keros", the Greek word for wax, and "ene" because it resembled camphene). Kerosene, though cheaper than camphene, had an unpleasant odor, and Gesner never made his fortune from it. But Gesner had aroused a new hope for making illuminating oil from a product coming out of North American mines.

Cõu 57. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a reason why better lighting had become necessary by the mid- nineteenth century?

- A. development of railroads                      B. demand for better medical facilities  
C. increases in the number of new factories      D. growth of cities

Cõu 58. The phrase “served as” in line 5 is closest meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. differed from                      B. functioned as                      C. rested upon                      D. reacted to

Cõu 59. The word “this” in line 7 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. lard                      B. charcoal                      C. wick                      D. oil

Cõu 60. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a disadvantage of camphene?

- A. high cost                      B. bad smell                      C. potential to explode                      D. greasy texture

Cõu 61. What can be inferred about the illuminating gas described in the paragraph?

- A. It was first developed in the United States.  
B. It was not allowed to be used in public buildings.  
C. It was not widely available until mid- century.  
D. It had an unpleasant smell.

Cõu 62. The word “resembled” in line 16 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. was similar to                      B. cost the same as                      C. was made from                      D. sounded like

Cõu 63. According to the passage, what advantage did the kerosene patented by Gesner have over camphene?

- A. Kerosene had a more pleasant smell.                      B. Kerosene was less expensive.  
C. Kerosene burned more brightly.                      D. Kerosene was safer to use.

Cõu 64. The word “it” in line 17 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. fortune                      B. odor                      C. camphene                      D. kerosene

Cõu 65. Which of the following best describes the organization of the passage?

- A. a description of events in chronological order  
B. a comparison of two events  
C. an analysis of scientific findings  
D. the statement of a theory and possible explanations

Cõu 66. Where in the passage does the author mention the origin of a word?

- A. Lines 4-6                      B. Lines 7-8                      C. Lines 12-13                      D. Lines 13-16

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction



Cõu 67. A number of novelists submitted their manuscripts under pseudonyms to conceal the fact that  
A B C  
there were women.

D

Cõu 68. Although a doctor may be able to diagnose a problem perfectly, he still may not be able to  
A B C  
find a drug which the patient will respond.

D

Cõu 69. What happened in that city were a reaction from city workers, including firemen and  
A B C  
policemen who had been laid off from their jobs.

D

Cõu 70. It is essential that vitamins are supplied either by foods or by supplementary tablets for  
A B C  
normal growth to occur.

D

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.

Cõu 71. Her living conditions were difficult. However, she studied very well.

A. Difficult as her living conditions, she studied very well.

B. She studied very well thanks to the fact that she lived in difficult conditions.

C. She studied very well in spite of her difficult living conditions.

D. Although she lived in difficult conditions, but she studied very well.

Cõu 72. You won't be allowed in until your identity has been checked.

A. It is not until your identity has been checked will you be allowed in.

B. Not until your identity has been checked that you will be allowed in

C. You will be allowed in unless your identity has been checked.

D. Only when your identity has been checked will you be allowed in.

Cõu 73. You'd be welcome to join us if you changed your mind.

A. You didn't change your mind, so we weren't welcome to join you.

- B. If it were not for your mind, you had been welcome to join us.
- C. We are welcome to join you unless you change your mind.
- D. Were you to change your mind, you would be welcome to join us

Cõu 74. The thing that impressed me more than anything else was your generosity.

- A. Your generosity impressed me more than anything else.
- B. It is your generosity that I impressed more than anything else.
- C. All what I impressed more than anything else was your generosity.
- D. Your generosity makes me impressed more than anything else.

Cõu 75. She said “How pleasant! Jane comes to dinner with us”

- A. She said with joyfully that Jane came to dinner with us.
- B. She cried joyfully that Jane came to dinner with them.
- C. She was very delightedly that Jane came to dinner with them.
- D. She said that it is pleasant because Jane comes to dinner with them.

Cõu 76. He applied for the job abroad because he wanted to earn more money.

- A. With a view of earning more money, he applied for the job abroad.
- B. He applied for a job abroad in order to he could earn more money.
- C. So as to earn more money, he applies for a job abroad.
- D. To earn more money was the reason why he applied for a job abroad.

Cõu 77. I had an irresistible urge to buy the painting because it was very impressive.

- A. The painting was too impressive for me to buy it.
- B. It was so impressive a painting that I had an irresistible urge to buy it.
- C. So impressive was the painting that I had an irresistible urge to buy.
- D. It was such an impressive painting that I had an irresistible urge to buy.

Cõu 78. It is expected that tax increases will be announced in tomorrow’s budget.

- A. Tax increases are expected to be announced in tomorrow’s budget.
- B. They expected that tax will be increased in tomorrow’s budget.
- C. Tax increases is expected to announced in tomorrow’s budget.
- D. They expect that tax increases are announced in tomorrow’s budget

Cõu 79. The college was closed for a month. It was the the summer holidays.

- A. The college was closed for a month as a result of the summer holidays.

- B. The college was closed for a month as a result of that it was the summer holidays.
- C. The college was closed for a month owing the fact of the summer holidays.
- D. The college was closed for a month because the summer holidays.

Cõu 80. We hadn't been out all day. We decided to go to the cinema.

- A. As a result of that we hadn't been out all day, we decided to go to the cinema.
- B. Owing to the fact we hadn't been out all day, we decided to go to the cinema.
- C. Owing to the fact that we hadn't been out all day, we decided to go to the cinema.
- D. Because the fact we hadn't been out all day, we decided to go to the cinema.

### KEY TO PRACTICE 21

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	C	21	C	41	C	61	C
2	D	22	B	42	D	62	A
3	C	23	B	43	B	63	B
4	C	24	C	44	D	64	D
5	C	25	D	45	B	65	A
6	D	26	B	46	B	66	D
7	C	27	B	47	D	67	D
8	B	28	D	48	B	68	D
9	C	29	D	49	B	69	B
10	D	30	C	50	A	70	A
11	B	31	B	51	C	71	C
12	B	32	C	52	B	72	D
13	B	33	B	53	C	73	D
14	B	34	D	54	D	74	A
15	B	35	A	55	D	75	B
16	A	36	D	56	B	76	D

17	B	37	C	57	B	77	B
18	D	38	D	58	B	78	A
19	C	39	A	59	D	79	A
20	B	40	B	60	D	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 22

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions*

1. A. support                      B. satisfied                      C. concern                      D. religious
2. A. chemical                      B. comfortable                      C. resistant                      D. champion
3. A. effective                      B. impressive                      C. luxury                      D. foundation

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined sound that is pronounced differently from that of the other three words in each of the following questions*

4. A. expression                      B. assure                      C. success                      D. reassure
5. A. cheeky                      B. parachute                      C. chocolate                      D. chopstick

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions*

6. Over the last few months garages \_\_\_\_\_ the price of petrol three times.  
A. have risen                      B. have put up                      C. raised                      D. have gone up
7. I'm sorry, but the director \_\_\_\_\_ the office.  
A. already left                      B. has left                      C. had left                      D. is leaving
8. The children are so looking forward to the holiday, they can \_\_\_\_\_ wait.  
A. never                      B. hardly                      C. rarely                      D. seldom

9. He feels that his book may make people more aware \_\_\_\_\_ the role our emotions play in everyday life.
- A. of                      B. with                      C. about                      D. in
10. If it \_\_\_\_\_ their encouragement, he could have given it up.
- A. had been for              B. hadn't been              C. hadn't been for              D. would have been for
11. It is probably impossible for life to ever exist on Venus \_\_\_\_\_ its intense surface heat.
- A. because                      B. in spite of                      C. although                      D. because of
12. It's your own fault. You \_\_\_\_\_ them to go out on their own; they are still new here.
- A. mustn't have allowed              B. can't allow              C. shouldn't allow              D. shouldn't have allowed
13. \_\_\_\_\_, the young woman was visibly very happy after the birth of her child.
- A. Despite tired              B. Though tired              C. Tired although she was              D. She was tired
14. Before anyone steps on that stage, you \_\_\_\_\_ make sure it's secure.
- A. would better              B. had better              C. would rather              D. would prefer to
15. Part-time workers at the company are the first \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. that is laid off              B. who lay off              C. being laid off              D. to be laid off
16. A man in his forties often begins to think about \_\_\_\_\_ the world and not just about himself.
- A. making a contribution to              B. contribution              C. contributing              D. making contribution
17. Some learners of English have \_\_\_\_\_ ideas in writing.
- A. trouble expressing              B. difficult in expressing              C. problems with              D. difficulty to express
18. Corporations have been donating more and more to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the needy                      B. the need                      C. the needy people              D. the needed
19. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.
- A. run                      B. rush                      C. jump                      D. hurry
20. I wasn't properly dressed for the party and felt \_\_\_\_\_ about my appearance
- A. embarrass                      B. embarrassment                      C. embarrassing                      D. embarrassed
21. The criminal was sentenced to death because of \_\_\_\_\_ of his crime
- A. the severity                      B. the complexity                      C. a punishment                      D. the importance
22. It was so foggy that the drivers couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic signs
- A. make out                      B. break out                      C. keep out                      D. take out
23. The Smiths are not very responsible parents, they don't \_\_\_\_\_ their children very well.
- A. take care                      B. take after                      C. look after                      D. look for

24. Peter and Julie had to \_\_\_\_\_ their farewell party until next weekend because of the awful weather.  
A. put off                      B. pick up                      C. put aside                      D. cancel
25. What my grandfather said 10 years ago about my future career \_\_\_\_\_ to be true.  
A. turned down to      B. turning in to              C. turned out to              D. turned up
26. "Could I speak to Alex, please?" - " \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. This is Joe speaking                      B. Can I take a message?  
C. Just a moment. I'm coming                      D. I'm sorry, Alex is not in
27. "It was very kind of you to help me out, John" - " \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. You can say that again                      B. I'm glad you like it  
C. That was the least I could do                      D. Thanks a million
28. Tom: "Have you decided when you'll leave?"      Jerry: "Not exactly, but I think the sooner, \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. the better                      B. is better                      C. is the better                      D. the best
29. - " \_\_\_\_\_"                      - "Unfortunately, I didn't"  
A. Did you forget to lock the door this morning?      B. Can you pick me up from the airport?  
C. Did you install any anti-virus software?                      D. Have you bought any anti-virus software?
30. - "Would you mind closing the window?"                      - " \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. Yes, certainly      B. yes, I would do. Go ahead      C. Not at all. I will close it now                      D. Yes, very soon

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

31. New York is a very unusual city  
A. common                      B. nice                      C. good                      D. famous
32. French people wanted to show their friendship with American people  
A. enmity                      B. antagonism                      C. disloyalty                      D. detachment

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

33. We offer a very competitive rate for parcels of under 15kg.  
A. effective                      B. emulative                      C. adjective                      D. active
34. Every woman who has enough criteria can join the beauty contest irrespective of their background.  
A. regardless of                      B. must have gone                      C. was                      D. can have gone

35. The abominable custom of women sacrificing themselves with the pyres of their dead husbands was abolished during the reign of William Bentinck.

- A. social                      B. sacred                      C. disgusting                      D. moral

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks from 36 to 45.*

British parents are always complaining that their children spend too much time glued to the telly and not enough time on other activities \_\_\_(36)\_\_\_ sports and reading. A survey recently \_\_\_(37)\_\_\_ on people's viewing habits does not disprove this. It shows that young people in Britain spend on average 23 hours a week in front of the television \_\_\_(38)\_\_\_ works out at over hours everyday.

\_\_\_(39)\_\_\_ is surprising, however, is the fact that the average adult watches even more: an incredible 28 hours a week. We \_\_\_(40)\_\_\_ to have become a nation of addicts. Just about every household in the country has a television and over half have two or more. According to the survey, people nowadays don't just watch television sitting in their living-rooms, they watch it in the kitchen and in bed \_\_\_(41)\_\_\_

The Education Minister said a few weeks ago that Britain's pupils \_\_\_(42)\_\_\_ spend more time reading. Unfortunately, parents are not setting a good example: adults do \_\_\_(43)\_\_\_ reading than young people. In fact, reading is at the \_\_\_(44)\_\_\_ of their list of favoring pastimes. They would \_\_\_(45)\_\_\_ listen to the radio, go to the cinema or hire a video to watch on their televisions at home

36. A. such                      B. like                      C. as                      D. alike
37. A. investigate                      B. researched                      C. carried                      D. carried out
38. A. that                      B. which                      C. this                      D. it
39. A. What                      B. It                      C. The thing                      D. This
40. A. seem                      B. ought                      C. used                      D. would like
41. A. in addition                      B. as well                      C. more                      D. moreover
42. A. might                      B. could                      C. should                      D. would
43. A. more                      B. less                      C. little                      D. fewer
44. A. tail                      B. top                      C. beginning                      D. bottom
45. A. better                      B. rather                      C. prefer                      D. like

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the questions from 46 to 55*

Life on mars: Does it exist?

In 1976, two American spacecraft landed on Mars in order to search for signs of life. The tests that the Viking landers performed had negative results. However, scientists still have questions about our close neighbour in space. They want to investigate further into the possibility of life on Mars.

Scientists' interest in the Red Planet is based on an assumption. They believe that 4.5 billion years ago, Mars and Earth began their existence under similar conditions. During the first billion years, liquid water – in contrast to ice – was abundant on the surface of Mars. This is an indication that Mars was much

warmer at that time. Mars also had a thicker atmosphere of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>). Many scientists think it is possible that life began under these favourable conditions. After all, Earth had the same conditions during its first billion years, when life arose. At some point in time, Earth developed an atmosphere which is rich in oxygen and an ozone layer. Ozone (O<sub>3</sub>) is a form of oxygen. The ozone layer protects the Earth from harmful ultraviolet light from the sun. While life not only began on Earth, it also survived and became more complex. In contrast, Mars lost its thick atmosphere of carbon dioxide. Ultraviolet radiation intensified. The planet eventually grew colder and its water froze...)

Scientists believe there are other areas on Mars that are similar to specific places on Earth which support life. For example, an area in Antarctica, southern Victoria Land, which is not covered by ice, resembles an area on Mars. In its dry valleys, the temperature in southern Victoria Land averages below zero, yet biologists found simple life forms (microorganisms) in rocks and frozen lakes. Perhaps this is also true of places on Mars.

Scientists want another investigation of Mars. They want to search for fossils, the ancient remains of life. If life ever existed on Mars, future missions may find records of it under sand or in the ice.

Even if future missions discover no evidence of past or present life on Mars, the new missions may clarify our understanding of how life begins. Scientists will better understand the conditions that are necessary for the survival of life – on Earth or in the universe. They will look for the answers to other intriguing questions. How is the Earth different from Mars? How can we explain the development of life here on our planet and not on Mars, our close neighbor? Are we alone in the universe?

46. What is the main idea of the passage?

- A. Two spacecraft looked for evidence of life on Mars, but they were unsuccessful
- B. Scientists are interested in the possibility that there is or was life on Mars.
- C. Mars is quite similar to Earth but there is no form of life on it.
- D. Scientists are interested in how Mars is different from the Earth.

47. The phrase “our close neighbour in space” refers to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. the Viking spacecraft
- B. the Sun
- C. Mars
- D. people living on Mars

48. Which of the following statements is true?

- A. Mars is much older than Earth
- B. The Earth is much older than Mars
- C. Mars and the Earth are the same age
- D. Mars was much warmer than Earth during the first billion years

49. According to paragraph 2, what form does the water on Mars have today?

- A. liquid
- B. solid
- C. gas
- D. we don't know

50. What do CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>3</sub> in paragraph present?

- A. chemical symbols
- B. abbreviations
- C. amount of gases
- D. the elements of the atmosphere

51. According to paragraph 4, what are fossils?



- A. a source of fuel  
B. a part of natural resources  
C. the ancient remains of life  
D. the ancient remains of Martians

52. What is the purpose of the dash (--) as used in the last paragraph?

- A. to add extra information  
B. to give a definition  
C. to give an explanation or example  
D. to connect two sentences

53. In the beginning, Earth and Mars were similar in that \_\_\_\_\_

- A. liquid water was abundant on their surface  
B. their atmosphere was rich in oxygen  
C. simple forms of life arose on both planets  
D. they both lost their thick atmosphere of carbon dioxide

54. Which of the following is true?

- A. American spacecraft discovered life on Mars in 1976.  
B. Scientists do not want to investigate life on Mars any more  
C. Scientists believe there is liquid water on Mars now  
D. Scientists believe they may find ancient remains of life on Mars under sand or ice.

55. According to the passage, in the future scientists want to look for \_\_\_\_\_

- A. evidence of past and present life on Mars  
B. the conditions necessary for the survival of life on Mars  
C. the explanation for the development of life on Earth but not on Mars  
D. the answers to the environment problems

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the questions from 56 to 65*

Dissociative identity disorder is a psychological condition in which a person's identity dissociates, or fragments, thereby creating distinct independent identities within one individual. Each separate personality can be distinguished from the other personalities in a number of ways, including posture, manner of moving, tone and pitch of voice, gestures, facial expressions and use of language. A person suffering from dissociative identity disorder may have a large number of independent personalities or perhaps only two or three.

Two stories of actual women suffering from dissociative identity disorder have been extensively recounted in books and films that are familiar to the public. One of them is the story of a woman with 22 separate personalities known as Eve. In the 1950s, a book by Corbett Thigpen and a motion picture starring Joanne Woodward, each of which was titled *The three faces of Eve*, presented her story; the title referred to three faces, when the woman known as Eve actually experienced 22 different personalities, because only 3 of the personalities could exist at one time. Two decades later, Carolyn Sizemore, Eve's 22<sup>nd</sup> personality, wrote about her experiences in a book entitled *I'm Eve*. The second well-known story of a woman suffering from dissociative identity disorder is the story of Sybil, a woman whose 16 distinct personalities emerged over a period of 40 years. A book describing Sybil's experiences was written by

Flora Rreta Schreiber and was published in 1973; a motion picture based on the book and starring Sally Field followed.

56. It is NOT stated in paragraph 1 that someone suffering from dissociative identity disorder has \_\_\_\_\_

- A. a psychological condition
- B. a fragmented identity
- C. a number of independent identities
- D. some violent and some nonviolent identities

57. It is indicated in paragraph 1 that distinct personalities can differ in all of the following ways except \_\_\_\_\_

- A. manner of dressing
- B. manner of moving
- C. manner of speaking
- D. manner of gesturing

58. The word recounted in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. told about
- B. counted again
- C. explained clearly
- D. illustrated

59. The word them in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_

- A. the two women suffering from dissociative identity disorder
- B. the two stories of actual women suffering from dissociative identity disorder
- C. a book and a film about the women
- D. the personalities that the two women have

60. It is indicated in paragraph 2 that it is NOT true that Eve \_\_\_\_\_

- A. suffered from dissociative identity disorder
- B. starred in the movie about her life
- C. had 22 distinct personalities
- D. had only 3 distinct personalities at any one time

61. It is NOT stated in paragraph 1 that *The three Faces of Eve* \_\_\_\_\_

- A. was based on the life of a real girl
- B. was the title of a book
- C. was the title of a movie
- D. was made into a movie in 1950

62. All of the following are mentioned in paragraph 2 about Carolyn Sizemore EXCEPT that she \_\_\_\_\_

- A. wrote *I'm Eve*
- B. was one of Eve's personalities
- C. wrote the book in the 1970s
- D. was familiar with all 22 personalities

63. According to paragraph 2, it is NOT true that Sybil \_\_\_\_\_

- A. was a real person
- B. suffered from dissociative identity disorder
- C. developed all her personalities over 16 years
- D. developed 16 distinctive personalities over a long period of time

64. It is NOT indicated in paragraph 2 that the book describing Sybil's experiences\_\_\_\_\_

- A. took 40 years to write
- B. was written by Flora Rheta Schreiber
- C. appeared in the 1970s
- D. was made into a movie

65. Which of the following is true about Eve and Sybil?

- A. One of them wrote a book about their own experiences during one of their many personalities
- B. *I'm Eve* is a book written about Sybil's story
- C. All the books about Eve's and Sybil's stories were made into films
- D. They were the only two women who suffered from dissociative identity disorder

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions*

66. Neither of the men arresting as terrorists would reveal information about his group

- A
- B
- C
- D

67. If they took their language lessons seriously, they would be able to communicate with the locals now

- A
- B
- C
- D

68.. Science with its invention and discoveries have revolutionized man's life

- A
- B
- C
- D

69. If someone feels faint, you should have him lied flat, keep his head low, make you him breathe deeply.

- A
- B
- C
- D

70. Not until I was on my way to the airport that I realized I had left my passport at home

- A
- B
- C
- D

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions*

71. The plane couldn't take off because of the heavy rain.

- A. The heavy rain prevented the plane from landing
- B. It is impossible for the plane to take off in the heavy rain.
- C. The heavy rain made impossible for the plane to take off
- D. The heavy rain stopped the plane from taking off

72. As he earned more money, Mike bought more clothes.

- A. When Mike earned a lot of money, he bought more and more clothes.
- B. The more money Mike earned, the better clothes he bought.
- C. The most money Mike earned, the most clothes he bought.

D. The more money Mike earned, the more clothes he bought.

73.. “Why don’t you reply to the offer of the Microsoft cooperation right now?” said Joanne to her husband.

A. Joanne ordered her husband to accept the offer of the Microsoft cooperation right away.

B. Joanne suggested to her husband that he should respond to the offer of the Microsoft cooperation without delay.

C. Joanne complained about her husband because he didn’t reply to the offer of the Microsoft cooperation early.

D. Joanne wondered why her husband responded to the offer of the Microsoft cooperation so late.

74.. The driver survived the car crash because he was wearing a seatbelt when the accident happened

A. The accident occurred because the driver was trying to wear the seat belt while driving

B. When the car crashed, the driver was going to wear the seatbelt.

C. The driver would not have survived if he hadn’t worn the seatbelt.

D. The driver didn’t wear the seatbelt until the accident happened

75. “If I were you, I would try to finish the pre- lab report before carrying out the experiment” said the professor to his research student.

A. The professor advised his student to try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.

B. The professor complained that his student didn’t finish the pre-lab report before carrying out the experiment.

C. The professor told his student that he wished he could finish the pre-lab report before carrying out his experiment.

D. The professor regretted that his student didn’t try to finish the pre-lab report before carrying out his experiment.

76. If I had known about their wedding plan earlier, I would have been able to make time to attend the reception party.

A. I knew their wedding would be planned earlier so I made some time to attend the reception party

B. I wish I had known their wedding plan sooner so that I could arrange time to attend the reception party.

C. I don’t know their wedding plan earlier so I can’t make time to attend their reception party.

D. When I knew their wedding party, it was too late to attend the reception party.

77. Neither Sherwin nor we like the Green brothers.

A. The Green brothers like neither us nor Sherwin.

B. The Greens don’t like Sherwin and us.

C. We like the Green brothers but Sherwin doesn’t

D. Sherwin and we all dislike the Green brothers.

78. When they arrived at the railway station, the train had left.

A. They got the railway station while the train was leaving

B. The train left earlier than scheduled

C. They were late for the train

D. The train left as soon as they got to the station

79. I have painted my bedroom wall three times, but I can still see the old color underneath.

A. The original color of my bedroom wall is still visible despite 3 times of painting.

B. Can you see the first color of the bedroom wall after I painted it the third time?

C. The original color of my bedroom wall is invisible after I painted it the third time.

D. Three times of painting makes my bedroom wall come back to its color underneath

80. They have been trying to sell their house before, but no one is interested.

A. They don't want to sell the house any more

B. No one in the family is interested in buying and selling houses.

C. No one wants to buy their house

D. No one in the family really wanted to sell the house

#### KEYS TO PRACTICE 22

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	A	41	B	61	D
2	C	22	A	42	C	62	D
3	C	23	C	43	B	63	C
4	C	24	A	44	D	64	A
5	B	25	C	45	B	65	A
6	B	26	D	46	B	66	B
7	B	27	C	47	C	67	A
8	B	28	A	48	C	68	B
9	A	29	C	49	B	69	C
10	C	30	C	50	A	70	C
11	D	31	A	51	C	71	D

12	D	32	A	52	A	72	D
13	B	33	B	53	A	73	B
14	B	34	A	54	D	74	C
15	D	35	C	55	C	75	A
16	A	36	B	56	D	76	B
17	A	37	D	57	A	77	D
18	A	38	B	58	A	78	C
19	C	39	A	59	B	79	A
20	D	40	A	60	B	80	C

### PRACTICE TEST 23

*Blacken the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the other three in each question.*

Question 1: A. tables      B. books      C. roots      D. roofs

Question 2: A. stopped      B. packed      C. parked      D. wicked

Question 3: A. teacher      B. chore      C. children      D. school

*Blacken the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word with the main stress different from that of the other three words in each question.*

Question 4: A. whenever      B. family      C. obedient      D. solution

Question 5: A. attractiveness      B. generation      C. traditional      D. American

*Blacken the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Question 6: I \_\_\_\_\_ there once a long time ago and \_\_\_\_\_ back since.

- A. went/have not been      B. go/am not  
C. have gone/was      D. was going/had not been

Question 7: The students \_\_\_\_\_ by Mrs. Monty. However, this week they \_\_\_\_\_ by Mr. Tanzer.

- A. have usually been taught / have been teaching  
B. usually teach / are teaching  
C. are usually taught / are being taught  
D. were usually teaching / are teaching

Question 8: Tim looks so frightened and upset. He \_\_\_\_\_ something terrible.

- A. must experience            B. can have experienced  
C. should have experienced    D. must have experienced

Question 9: Thousand of antibiotics \_\_\_\_\_, but only about thirty are in common use today.

- A. are developing            B. have been developed  
C. have been developing    D. have developed

Question 10: Most children enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ with their parents and siblings.

- A. play            B. to play            C. playing            D. played

Question 11: Doctors are supposed to \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility for humman life.

- A. take            B. do            C. rush            D. join

Question 12: Many young people have objected to \_\_\_\_\_ marriage, which is decided by the parents of the bride and groom.

- A. agreed            B. shared            C. sacrificed            D. contractual

Question 13: Are you sure you can do it on \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. yourself            B. secret            C. your own            D. date

Question 14: He spent \_\_\_\_\_ dollars on food and drinks.

- A. very a few    B. only a few    C. only a little    D. only few

Question 15: It's essential that every student \_\_\_\_\_ the exam before attending the course.

- A. passes            B. pass            C. would pass    D. passed

Question 16: Most of the computers in the laboratory are \_\_\_\_\_ now.

- A. out of work            B. out of order            C. out of function            D. out of working

Question 17: \_\_\_\_\_ she was watering the flowers, it began to rain.

- A. Besause            B. While            C. For            D. Since

Question 18: His bad behaviour was put ..... his upbringing.

- A. with            B. down to            C. up            D. off

Question 19: Mary always takes great care..... her children.

- A. for            B. to            C. of            D. with

Question 20: From the hotel there is a good \_\_\_\_\_ of the mountain.

- A. picture            B. sight            C. view            D. vision

Question 21: This is the first time I..... Japanese food.

A. am eating    B. had eaten    C. ate            D. have eaten

Question 22: Not until a monkey is several years old \_\_\_\_\_ to exhibit signs of independence from its mother.

A. is it begin            B. and begin            C. does it begin            D. it begins

Question 23: \_\_\_\_\_ was caused by breathing impure air over was once a common belief.

A. Why malaria            B. That malaria            C. The reason malaria            D. Malaria

Question 24: I am very ..... for what I said to her yesterday.

A. regretted            B. regretful            C. regrettable            D. regretting

Question 25: Frized for centuries for their beauty, roses are probably the world's..... plants.

A. cultivated ornamental most widely            B. ornamental widely cultivated most  
C. most widely cultivated ornamental            D. widely ornamental most cultivated

Question 26: "Are you free this coming Sunday?" " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. I think so. Why?    B. Yes, I can            C. Yes, I will            D. No, thank you

Question 27: "Would you like some more tea?" " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. It doesn't matter    B. I'm OK            C. Yes, please            D. Here you are

Question 28: "Hello, I'd like to speak to Mr. Green, please. " " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. I'm sorry. I'll call again later.            B. I'm afraid I don't know  
C. Sorry. Can you take the message?            D. Sorry. Can you say that again?

Question 29: "Anything else?" " \_\_\_\_\_ "

A. No, it isn't            B. Right now            C. Not at all.            D. Not today, thanks

Question 30: " Thank you very much for the wonderful gift. " – " ....."

A. Oh, no            B. Congratulations    C. Good luck            D. You are welcome

*Blacken the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 31: Billy, come and give me a hand with cooking

A. attempt            B. help            C. prepared            D. be busy

Question 32: Unless I miss my guess, your computer needs a new hard drive.

A. you are my guess            B. I break the soft drive  
C. I make a mistake            D. you lack money

Question 33: Relaxation therapy teaches one not to fret over small problems.



- A. worry about      B. look for      C. get involved in      D. get angry about

*Blacken the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 34: He's up to his ears in work and can't possible see you now.

- A. fully occupied with      B. concerned with      C. very interested in      D. not involved with

Question 35: As he is new to the job I would ask you to keep an eye on her for the time being.

- A. look at      B. consider      C. check      D. observe

*Read the following passage and blacken the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks in the following question.*

Cultural diversity can be such a cool thing. I grew up in a predominantly white private school, (36) \_\_\_\_\_ teaching in a place that is extremely diverse has been a joy. I can stand in the hall and (37) \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish, Russian, Polish, Korean, Mandarin, Hindu, etc. the list can go on and on. What we need to be careful of is not to make (38) \_\_\_\_\_ a big deal out of cultural diversity. I think that when we place too much (39) \_\_\_\_\_ on the diversity it can become a polarizing act. Many students are very aware (40) \_\_\_\_\_ their differences, and most just don't care.

I think that cultural diversity is something that needs (41) \_\_\_\_\_ addressed by teachers in the schools as something that is positive. Often in rural areas there is not a lot of cultural diversity. (42) \_\_\_\_\_ a result, when a student is from a different culture there is a question of what do I do to (43) \_\_\_\_\_ their learning needs. It is important before a teacher can teach diverse population they need to (44) \_\_\_\_\_ that they are also multicultural. In addition, how much of a role will these beliefs (45) \_\_\_\_\_ within the education on the child.

Question 36: A. however      B. therefore      C. but      D. so

Question 37: A. see      B. look      C. listen      D. hear

Question 38: A. such      B. too      C. so      D. much

Question 39: A. stress      B. emphasis      C. concern      D. focus

Question 40: A. of      B. at      C. about      D. on

Question 41: A. be      B. being      C. are      D. to be

Question 42: A. Like      B. As      C. With      D. More

Question 43: A. push      B. rise      C. comment      D. support

Question 44: A. recognize      B. receive      C. observe      D. expect

Question 45: A. make      B. do      C. create      D. play

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

The organisation that today is known as the Bank of America did start out in America, but under quite a different name. Italian American A. P. Giannini established this bank on October 17 1904, in a renovated saloon in San Francisco’s Italian community of North Beach under the name Bank of Italy, with immigrants and first – time bank customers comprising the majority of his first customers. During its development, Giannini’s bank survived major crises in the form of a natural disaster and a major economic upheaval that not all other banks were able to overcome.

One major test for Giannini’s bank occurred on April 18,1906, when a massive earthquake struck San Francisco, followed by a raging fire that destroyed much of the city. Giannini obtained two wagons and teams of horses, filled the wagons with the bank’s reserves, mostly in the form of gold, covered the reserves with crates of oranges, and escaped from the chaos of the city with his clients’ funds protected. In the aftermath of the disaster, Giannini’s bank was the first to resume operations. Unable to install the bank in a proper office setting, Giannini opened up shop on the Washington Street Wharf on a makeshift desk created from boards and barrels.

In the period following the 1906 fire, the Bank of Italy continued to prosper and expand. By 1918 there were twenty –four branches of the Bank of Italy, and by 1928 Giannini had acquired numerous other banks, including a Bank of America located in New York City. In 1930 he consolidated all the branches of the Bank of Italy, the Bank of America in New York City, and another bank of America that had formed in California into the Bank of America National Trust and Savings Association.

A second major crisis for the bank occurred during the Great Depression of the 1930s. Although Giannini had already retired prior to the darkest days of Depression, he became incensed when his successor began selling off banks during the bad economic times. Giannini resumed leadership of the bank at the age of sixty-two. Under Giannini’s leadership, the bank weathered the storm of the Depression and subsequently moved into a phase of overseas development.

Question 46: According to the passage, Giannini.....

- A. worked in a bank in Italy
- B. set up the Bank of America prior to setting up the Bank of Italy
- C. opened the Bank of America in 1904
- D. later changed the name of the Bank of Italy

Question47: Where did Giannini open his first bank?

- A. In what used to be a bar
- B. On Washington Street wharf
- C. In New York City
- D. On a makeshift desk

Question 48: According to the passage, which of the following is NOT true about the San Francisco earthquake?

- A It happened in 1906
- B. It occurred in the aftermath of a fire
- C. It caused problems for Giannini’s bank
- D. It was a tremendous earthquake

Question49: The word “ raging” replaced by....

- A. feeble
- B. intense
- C. localized
- D. angered

Question 50: It can be inferred from the passage that Giannini used crates of oranges after the earthquake

- A. to hide the gold  
B. to provide nourishment for his customers  
C. to protect the gold from the fire  
D. to fill up the wagons

Question 51: The word “ chaos” is closest in meaning to

- A. overdevelopment    B. legal system    C. total confusion    D. extreme heat

Question 52: The word “ consolidated” is closest in meaning to

- A. sold    B. hardened    C. moved    D. merged

Question 53: The expression “ weathered the storm” could best be replaced by

- A. blew its stack at    B. found a cure for  
C. survived the ordeal of    D. rained on the parade of

Question 54: How is the information in the passage presented?

- A. Classifications with examples    B. In chronological order  
C. A cause followed by an effect    D. In order of importance

Question 55: The paragraph following the passage most likely discusses

- A. bank failures during the Great Depression  
B. the international development of the Bank of America  
C. a third major crisis of the Bank of America  
D. how Giannini spent his retirement

*Read the following passage and blacken the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to the following questions.*

In the American colonies there was little money. England did not supply the colonies with coins and did not allow the colonies to make their own coins, except for the Massachusetts Bay Colony, which received permission for a short period in 1652 to make several kinds of silver coins. England wanted to keep money out of America as a means of controlling trade: America was forced to trade only with England if it did not have the money to buy products from other countries. The result during this pre-revolutionary period was that the colonists used various goods in place of money: beaver pelts, Indian wampum, and tobacco leaves were all commonly used substitutes for money. The colonists also made use of any foreign coins they could obtain. Dutch, Spanish, French, and English coins were all in use in the American colonies.

During the Revolutionary War, funds were needed to finance the world, so each of the individual states and the Continental Congress issued paper money. So much of this paper money was printed that by the end of the war, almost no one would accept it. As a result, trade in goods and the use of foreign coins still flourished during this period.

By the time the Revolutionary War had been won by the American colonists, the monetary system was in a state of total disarray. To remedy this situation, the new Constitution of the United States, approved in

1789, allowed Congress to issue money. The individual states could no longer have their own money supply. A few years later, the Coinage Act of 1792 made the dollar the official currency of the United States and put the country on a bimetallic standard. In this bimetallic system, both gold and silver were legal money, and the rate of exchange of silver to gold was fixed by the government at sixteen to one.

Question 56: The passage mainly discusses

- A. the effect of the Revolution on American money.
- B. American money from past to present.
- C. the American monetary system of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.
- D. the English monetary policies in colonial America.

Question 57: The passage indicates that during the colonial period, money was

- A. used extensively for trade.
- B. scarce.
- C. supplied by England.
- D. coined by colonists.

Question 58: The Massachusetts Bay Colony was allowed to make coins

- A. for a short time during one year.
- B. throughout the seventeenth century.
- C. continuously from the inception of the colonies.
- D. from 1652 until the Revolutionary War.

Question 59: The expression “a means of” in paragraph 1 could be best replaced by.

- A. a result of
- B. a method of
- C. a punishment for
- D. an example of

Question 60: Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage as a substitute for money during the colonial period?

- A. Wampum
- B. Cotton
- C. Beaver furs
- D. Tobacco

Question 61: The pronoun “it” in paragraph 2 refers to which of the following

- A. The Continental Congress
- B. Trade in goods
- C. The War
- D. Paper money

Question 62: It is implied in the passage that at the end of the Revolutionary War, a paper dollar was worth

- A. exactly one dollar
- B. just over one dollar
- C. just under one dollar
- D. almost nothing

Question 63: The word “remedy” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to

- A. resolve
- B. medicate
- C. renew
- D. understand

Question 64: How was the monetary system arranged in the Constitution?

- A. The US officially went on a bimetallic monetary system.
- B. The dollar was made official currency of the US.
- C. Only the US Congress could issue money.



D. Tom doesn't know every thing but he wants to appear he does.

Question 73: *Jim is my best friend. I borrowed his car yesterday.*

A. Jim, whose car I borrowed yesterday, is my best friend.

B. Jim, whose car I borrowed yesterday is my best friend.

C. Jim, who is my best friend, borrowed my car yesterday.

D. Jim, whose car I lent yesterday, is my best friend.

Question 74: *Tim is likely to fail if he takes the exam without studying.*

A. Tim will fail if he takes the exam without studying.

B. It's probable that Tim will fail the exam if he doesn't study.

C. It's certain that Tim will pass the exam if he studies.

D. It's certain that Tim will fail because he doesn't studies.

Question75: *At this time tomorrow, hopefully, I'll be relaxing at home rather than working this hard.*

A. Tomorrow, rather than relaxing at home as I'd hoped to do, I'll be working quite hard.

B. I hope that, instead of working so hard at this time tomorrow, I'll be at home resting.

C. I'm planning to relax at home tomorrow, instead of working so hard.

D. Resting at home is something I hope to be doing at this time tomorrow, but I'll probably be working quite hard instead.

Question 76: *I've been here for two hours, and I'm still waiting.*

A. I'm still waiting here in two hours.

B. I was still here waiting two hours.

C. I still waited here tow hours ago.

D. I've been waiting here for two hours.

Question77: *In spite of doing well in the contest, Jane didn't win.*

A. Jane did well in the contest, but she didn't win so.

B. Jane did well in the contest. However, she didn't win.

C. Jane did well in the contest. Therefore, she didn't win.

D. Jane didn't win because she did well in the contest.

Question 78: *"Where were you last night, Mr. Jenkins?" he said.*

A. He asked Mr. Jenkins where was he last night.

B. He wanted to know where Mr. Jenkins was the night before.

C. He wanted to know where Mr. Jenkins had been the following night.

D. He asked Mr. Jenkins where he had been the previous night

Question 79: *I think you should revise for the exam.*

A. If I were you, I would revise for the exam.

B. If I am you, I will revise for the exam.

C. If I would be you, I revised for the exam.

D. If I will be you, I revise for the exam.

Question 80: *No sooner had gold been discovered in California than thousands of people set out for the west coast of North America.*

A. It was not soon after the time that gold had been uncovered in California that thousands of people departed for North America's west coast.

B. The west coast of North America became the destination of thousands of people the moment that gold was found in California.

C. Thousands of people had already begun their journey to the west coast of North America by the time gold was found in California.

D. Thousands of people were heading for California on the west coast of North America when the news of the discovery of gold there reached them.

### KEY TO PRACTICE 23

1. A	11. A	21. D	31. B	41. D	51. C	61. D	71. B
2. D	12. D	22. C	32. C	42. B	52. D	62. D	72. D
3. D	13. C	23. B	33. A	43. D	53. C	63. A	73. A
4. B	14. B	24. B	34. A	44. A	54. B	64. C	74. B
5. B	15. B	25. C	35. D	45. D	55. B	65. C	75. B
6. A	16. B	26. A	36. D	46. D	56. C	66. A	76. D
7. C	17. B	27. C	37. D	47. A	57. B	67. C	77. B
8. D	18. B	28. D	38. A	48. B	58. A	68. C	78. D
9. B	19. C	29. D	39. B	49. B	59. B	69. A	79. A
10. C	20. C	30. D	40. A	50. A	60. B	70. B	80. B

### PRACTICE TEST 24

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

Question 1: A. flood                      B. good                      C. foot                      D. look

Question 2: A. handicapped                      B. advantaged                      C. organized                      D. raised

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions from 6 to 10.

Question 3: A. particular                      B. accidental                      C. outnumber                      D. analysis

Question 4: A. librarian                      B. experiment                      C. historical                      D. entertain

Question 5: A. intention                      B. business                      C. endangered                      D. extinction

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions from 21 to 50.

Question 6: Are there enough apples for us to have one.....?

A. self                      B. individually                      C. every                      D. each

Question 7: If I had another \$25,00 a year, I would consider myself.....

A. well-made                      B. well- deserved                      C. well-done                      D. well-off

Question 8: This car was the most expensive purchase I have ever.....

A. done                      B. taken                      C. made                      D. bought

Question 9: Of the two boys overthere, Tom is .....

A. the best                      B. better                      C. more hard-working                      D. the more hard-working

Question 10: The concert didn't come..... our expectations.

A. up with                      B. up against                      C. round                      D. up to

Question 11: The gymnasium facilities of this public school..... of the finest private school in the county.

A. second after those                      B. first except for that  
C. second only to those                      D. second place from that

Question 12: This is Henry, \_\_\_\_ works for your father.

A. that                      B. whom                      C. A & B are correct                      D. who

Question 13: The baby can't even walk,.....run

A. little more                      B. more less                      C. much less                      D. much more

Question 14: He always did well at school.....having his early education disrupted by illness.

A. even though.                      B. on account of                      C. in addition to                      D. in spite of



Question 15: The assistant director recommended that Kenichi.....to the New York office.

- A. transferring      B. to transfer      C. be transferred      D. is transferred

Question 16: Don't put Graham in charge of arranging the theatre trip; he is too.....

- A. inorganized      B. organized      C. disorganized      D. unorganized

Question 17: Out ..... from its tiny cage.

- A. does the bird fly      B. fly the bird      C. did the bird fly      D. flew the bird

Question 18: As.....in Greek and Roman mythology, harpies were frightful monsters that were half woman and half bird.

- A. description      B. described      C. describing      D. to describe

Question 19: The quantum theory states....., such as light, is given off and absorbed in tiny definite units called quanta or photons.

- A. energy that      B. that energy      C. it is energy      D. that it is energy

Question 20: Armed terrorists are reported to have..... the Embassy.

- A. taken to      B. taken over      C. taken into      D. taken up

Question 21: Corporations have been donating more and more to.....

- A. the needy      B. the need      C. the needy people      D. the needed

Question 22: No one is indifferent to praise,..... ?

- A. is one      B. isn't one      C. are they      D. is he

Question 23: During the Precambrian period, the Earth's crust formed, and life..... in the seas.

- A. the first to appeared      B. first appeared      C. the first appearance      D. appearing first

Question 24: ..... to occur in the Earth's crust, push pull and shake waves..... simultaneously.

- A. If a break/ would be generated      B. If broken/ would generate  
C. A break was / would have been generated      D. Were a break/ would be generated

Question 25: ..... of precious gems is determined by their hardness, color and brilliance.

- A. It is valuable      B. It is the value      C. The value      D. The valuable

Question 26: " There aren't many people here yet, are there?" "..... "

- A. Yes, I think so      B. No, but it's still early  
C. Yes, not many yet      D. No, there are

Question 27: " Want me to turn up the heater?" "....."

- A. No, go right ahead      B. It's my pleasure

C. Thanks, I'll be right back

D. Please don't. It's quite warm here

Question 28: "I wonder if you could help me?" "....."

A. I'll do my best. What's the problem?

B. Don't mention it

C. No, what is it?

D. Really? How nice

Question 29: "Would you like to have noodles, spaghetti or something different?" "....."

A. Anything will do

B. Yes, please

C. Never mind

D. I am afraid not

Question 30: "....."

"Yes, there is plenty of room"

A. What is the new wardrobe like?

B. How much is the new wardrobe?

C. It's a big wardrobe, isn't it?

D. How big is the new wardrobe

*Blacken the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 31: I prefer to talk to people face to face rather than to talk on the phone

A. looking at them

B. facing them

C. in person

D. seeing them

Question 32: Many movies receive disparaging reviews from film experts and yet become extremely successful.

A. lengthy

B. uninteresting

C. authoritative

D. negative

Question 33: She simply took it for granted that the check was good and did not ask him any questions about it.

A. looked it over

B. accepted it without investigation

C. objected to it

D. permitted it

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*

Question 34: He is one of the most discourteous bosses I have ever worked with.

A. polite

B. rude

C. impolite

D. unpleasant

Question 35: Thousands are going starving because of the failure of this year's harvest.

A. rich

B. poor

C. full

D. hungry

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A,B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

The number of hungry people in the world is rising geometrically even though food production has (36) \_\_\_ considerably. The basic problem, that (37) \_\_\_ countries have (38) \_\_\_ and developing countries too little food, looks easy to resolve – the developed countries simply need to trade surpluses with countries that need them.

But the (39) \_\_\_ is not that simple. The developing countries (40) \_\_\_ purchasing power and a country's food imports are directly (41) \_\_\_ to its ability to pay. A country's (42) \_\_\_ to pay depends on the number of productive jobs in the country that generate goods and services that can be traded. Developing countries are essentially (43) \_\_\_ and present trends show they will remain so. Agriculture accounts for 35 to 40 percent of the gross domestic product and employs between 60 and 80 percent of the work force in developing countries.

Because it is so important, these countries must look to their own food production to 44) \_\_\_ their poverty. Increased food production would lead to growth of higher personal income which, in turn, would lead to growth of national (45) \_\_\_. This wealth can then be used to increase food imports to provide a better diet and thus improve the health of the total community.

- Question 36: A. hopped            B. augmented            C. enlarged            D. increased
- Question 37: A. rural            B. southern            C. rich            D. industrialized
- Question 38: A. too much            B. abundant            C. too many            D. much
- Question 39: A. resolution            B. solution            C. reply            D. solving
- Question 40: A. want            B. lack            C. need            D. miss
- Question 41: A. linked            B. attached            C. chained            D. joined
- Question 42: A. chance            B. willingness            C. ability            D. need
- Question 43: A. industrial            B. fish-producing            C. rural            D. urban
- Question 44: A. overcome            B. deny            C. fix            D. solve
- Question 45: A. riches            B. money            C. prestige            D. wealth

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Scientists do not yet thoroughly understand just how the body of an individual becomes sensitive to a substance that is harmless or even wholesome for the average person. Milk, wheat, and egg, for example, rank among the most healthful and widely used foods. Yet these foods can cause persons sensitive to them to suffer greatly. At first, the body of the individual is not harmed by coming into contact with the substance. After a varying interval of time, usually longer than a few weeks, the body becomes sensitive to it, and an allergy has begun to develop. Sometimes it's hard to figure out if you have a food allergy, since it can show up so many different ways. Your symptoms could be caused by many other problems. You may have rashes, hives, joint pains mimicking arthritis, headaches, irritability, or depression. The most common food allergies are to milk, eggs, seafood, wheat, nuts, seeds, chocolate, oranges, and tomatoes. Many of these allergies will not develop if these foods are not fed to an infant until her or his intestines mature at around seven months. Breast milk also tends to be protective. Migraines can be set off by foods containing tyramine, phenethylamine, monosodium glutamate, or sodium nitrate. Common foods which contain these are chocolate, aged cheeses, sour cream, red wine, pickled herring, chicken livers, avocados, ripe bananas, cured meats, many Oriental and prepared foods (read the labels!). Some people have been successful in treating their migraines with supplements of B-vitamins, particularly B6 and niacin. Children who are hyperactive may benefit from eliminating food additives, especially

colorings, and foods high in salicylates from their diets. A few of these are almonds, green peppers, peaches, tea, grapes. This is the diet made popular by Benjamin Feingold, who has written the book "Why your Child is Hyperactive". Other researchers have had mixed results when testing whether the diet is effective.

Question 46: The topic of this passage is

- A. reactions to foods
- B. infants and allergies
- C. food and nutrition
- D. a good diet

Question 47: According to the passage, the difficulty in diagnosing allergies to foods is due to

- A. lack of a proper treatment plan
- B. the similarity of symptoms of the allergy to other problems
- C. the use of prepared formula to feed babies
- D. the vast number of different foods we eat

Question 48: The word "symptoms" is closest in meaning to

- A. diagnosis
- B. diet
- C. prescriptions
- D. indications

Question 49: The phrase "set off" is closest in meaning to

- A. identified
- B. relieved
- C. avoided
- D. triggered

Question 50: What can be inferred about babies from this passage?

- A. They should have a carefully restricted diet as infants.
- B. They gain little benefit from being breast fed.
- C. They can eat almost anything.
- D. They may become hyperactive if fed solid food too early.

Question 51: The word "hyperactive" is closest in meaning to

- A. unusually low activity
- B. excited
- C. overly active
- D. inquisitive

Question 52: The author states that the reason that infants need to avoid certain foods related to allergies has to do with the infant's \_\_\_\_\_

- A. lack of teeth
- B. underdeveloped intestinal tract
- C. inability to swallow solid foods
- D. poor metabolism

Question 53: The word "these" refers to:

- A. food colorings
- B. food additives
- C. unnutritious foods .
- D. foods high in salicylates

Question 54: Which of the following was a suggested treatment for migraines in the passage?

- A. Avoiding all Oriental foods
- B. Using Vitamin B in addition to a good diet
- C. Getting plenty of sodium nitrate
- D. Eating more ripe bananas

Question 55: According to the article the Feingold diet is NOT

- A. verified by researchers as being consistently effective
- B. available in book form

beneficial for hyperactive children

designed to eliminate foods containing certain food additives

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Niagara Falls, one of the most famous North American natural wonders, has long been a popular tourist destination. Tourists today flock to see the two falls that actually constitute Niagara Falls: the 173-foot Horseshoe Fall on the Canadian side of the Niagara River in the Canadian province of Ontario and the 182-foot high American Falls on the U. S. side of the river in the state of New York. Approximately 85 percent of the water that goes over the falls actually goes over Horseshoe Falls, with the rest going over American Falls.

Most visitors come between April and October, and it is quite a popular activity to take a steamer out onto the river and right up to the base of the falls for a close-up view. It is also possible to get a spectacular view of the falls from the strategic locations along the Niagara River, such as Prospect Point or Table Rock, or from one of the four observation towers which have heights up to 500 feet.

Tourists have been visiting Niagara Falls in large numbers since the 1800s; annual visitation now averages above 10 million visitors per year. Because of concern that all these tourists would inadvertently destroy the natural beauty of this scenic wonder, the state of New York in 1885 created Niagara Falls Park in order to protect the land surrounding American Falls. A year later Canada created Queen Victoria Park on the Canadian side of the Niagara, around Horseshoe Falls. With the area surrounding the falls under the jurisdiction of government agencies, appropriate steps could be taken to preserve the pristine beauty of the area.

Question 56. What is the major point that the author is making in this passage?

- A. Niagara Falls can be viewed from either the American side or the Canadian side.
- B. A trip to the United States isn't complete without a visit to Niagara Falls.
- C. Niagara Falls has had an interesting history.
- D. It has been necessary to protect Niagara Falls from the many tourists who go there.

Question 57. The word "flock" in the first paragraph could best be replaced by

- A. come by plane
- B. come in large numbers
- C. come out of boredom
- D. come without knowing what they will see

Question 58. According to the passage, what which of the following best describes Niagara Falls?

- A. Niagara Falls consists of two rivers, one Canadian and the other American-
- B. American Falls is considerably higher than Horseshoe Falls.
- C. The Niagara River has two falls, one in Canada and one in the United States.
- D. Although the Niagara River flows through the United States and Canada, the falls are only in the United States.

Question 59. A "steamer" in the second paragraph is probably

- A. a bus
- B. a boat
- C. a walkway
- D. a park

Question 60. The expression "right up" in the second paragraph could best be replaced by

- A. turn to the right
- B. follow correct procedures
- C. travel upstream
- D. all the way up

Question 61. The passage implies that tourists prefer to

- A. visit Niagara Falls during warmer weather
- B. see the falls from a great distance
- C. take a ride over the falls
- D. come to Niagara Falls for a winter vacation

Question 62. According to the passage, why was Niagara park created?

- A. To encourage tourists to visit Niagara Falls
- B. To show off the natural beauty of Niagara Falls
- C. To protect the area around Niagara Falls-
- D. To force Canada to open Queen Victoria Park

Question 63. The word "Jurisdiction" in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to

- A. view
- B. assistance
- C. taxation
- D. control

Question 64. The word "pristine" in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to

- A. pure and natural
- B. highly developed
- C. well-regulated
- D. overused

Question 65. The paragraph following the passage most probably discusses?

- A. additional ways to observe the falls

B. steps taken by government agencies to protect the falls

C. a detailed description of the division of the falls between the United States and Canada

D. further problems that are destroying the area around the falls

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction*

Question 66: Almost medical doctors have had some training in psychology and psychiatry

A B C D

Question 67: Alike many finds in astrology, the discovery of Uranus was by accident.

A B C D

Question 68: When radio programs became popular, approximately around 1925, many people

A B C

stopped attending movies.

D

Question 69: The residence of Greenville, Texas hold an annual Cotton Jubilee to remember

A B

the crop that caused their city to prosper.

C D

Question 70: Commercial airliners do not fly in the vicinity of volcanic eruptions because even

A

a small amount of volcanic ash can damage its engines.

B C D

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.*

Question 71: *You can rely on Pat to give you any help you may need.*

A. If you need help of any kind, be sure to let Pat know.

B. Let Pat know if you need any help with this.

C. Pat is the one to ask if you find you require any assistance.

D. Should you require any assistance, you can count on Pat for it.

Question 72: *Domestic violence is a touchy topic.*

We are not interested in the topic of domestic violence

Domestic violence is not our concern.

We should not touch the topic of domestic violence.

D. The topic of domestic violence is quite sensitive.

Question 73: *I couldn't help admiring the way he managed to finish the programme even after such a bad fall.*

A. In spite of the fall, he should have finished the programme and we could have admired him for that.

B. It was really a very bad fall, but somehow he was still able to finish the programme and I had to admire him for that.

C. The way he finished the programme was certainly admirable, as the fall had shaken him up badly.

D. I really admire the way he got up after the fall and completed the programme.

Question 74: *I just can't understand why so few people are interested in this camping holiday.*

A. I find it surprising that there aren't fewer people interested in such a camping holiday.

B. Hardly anyone wants to go on this camping holiday, which I find strange.

C. It's hardly surprising that so few people are interested in this camping holiday.

D. To my surprise almost no one was interested in such a camping holiday.

Question 75: *Mary felt quite certain that her sister would stand by her, but in the end she didn't.*

A. Mary had hoped that her sister would come to her aid, but she never did.

B. Mary didn't expect her own sister to let her down like that.

C. Mary was confident that she would have her sister's support, but as it turned out she let her down.

D. It came as a terrible shock to Mary when her own sister turned against her like that.

*Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Question 76: \_\_\_\_\_, United would have lost the match yesterday.

A. If it hadn't been for their goalkeeper

B. If their goalkeeper didn't play so well

C. Hadn't their goalkeeper played so well

D. Were their goalkeeper not to play so well

Question 77: \_\_\_\_\_, but he often gives me a hand with the housework.

A. However busy my husband is at work

B. No matter how busy is my husband at work

C. My husband is very busy at work

D. Although my husband is very busy at work

Question 78: \_\_\_\_\_ that I tore up the letter.

A. I was so annoying

B. I was such an annoyed

C. So was I annoyed

D. Such was my annoyance



Question 79: \_\_\_\_\_ for running a red light, Jane decided it was not in her best interest to argue since she was not wearing her seat belt.

- A. The police stopped her  
 B. When stopping by the police  
 C. Having been stopped by the police  
 D. Being stopped by the police

Question 80: \_\_\_\_\_ in the atmosphere is the temperature falling below freezing.

- A. Frost is produced  
 B. What is frost produced  
 C. What produces frost  
 D. Frost

### KEY TO PRACTICE TEST 24

1. A	11. C	21. A	31. C	41. A	51. C	61. A	71. D
2. A	12. B	22. C	32. D	42. C	52. B	62. C	72. D
3. B	13. C	23. B	33. B	43. C	53. D	63. D	73. B
4. D	14. D	24. D	34. A	44. A	54. B	64. A	74. B
5. B	15. C	25. C	35. C	45. D	55. A	65. B	75. C
6. D	16. C	26. B	36. D	46. A	56. D	66. A	76. A
7. D	17. D	27. D	37. D	47. B	57. B	67. A	77. C
8. C	18. B	28. A	38. A	48. D	58. C	68. C	78. D
9. D	19. B	29. A	39. B	49. D	59. B	69. A	79. C
10. D	20. B	30. C	40. B	50. A	60. D	70. D	80. C

### PRACTICE TEST 25

*Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest in each group*

Question 1: A. chemists      B. laughs      C. days      D. books

Question 2: A. blessed      B. demolished      C. wretched      D. played

*Choose one word whose stress pattern is different from other words in the group (circle A, B, C or D)*

Question 3: A. promote      B. diverse      C. language      D. combine

Question 4: A. improve      B. justice      C. adopt      D. admit

Question 5: A. understand      B. geography      C. engineer      D. disappearance

*Choose from the four options given (circle A, B, C or D) one best answer to complete each sentence.*

Question 6: Most doctors and nurses have to work on a \_\_\_\_\_ once or twice a week at the hospital.

- A. solution            B. special dishes            C. household chores            D. night shift

Question 7: This is the first time we \_\_\_\_\_ this kind of food in this restaurant.

- A. had eaten            B. ate            C. eat            D. have eaten

Question 8: The boy waved his hands to his mother, who was standing at the school gate, to \_\_\_\_\_ her attention.

- A. tempt            B. attract            C. pull            D. follow

Question 9: You are old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ for what you have done.

- A. responsible            B. responsibility            C. responsibly            D. irresponsible

Question 10: Small children are often told that it is rude to point \_\_\_\_\_ other people.

- A. to            B. for            C. on            D. at

Question 11: She told me she \_\_\_\_\_ her mother for ages.

- A. hasn't met            B. didn't meet            C. hadn't met            D. wouldn't meet

Question 12: Peter: "You look great in this new dress."            Barbara: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. With pleasure            B. Not at all  
C. I am glad you like it            D. Do not say anything about it

Question 13: "\_\_\_\_\_ " "No, Thank you, that'll be all. "

- A. What would you like?            B. It's very kind of you to help me.  
C. Would you like anything else?            D. what kind of food do you like?

Question 14: Our teacher often said, "Who knows the answer? \_\_\_\_\_ your hand. "

- A. Raise            B. Lift            C. Heighten            D. Rise

Question 15: Ann \_\_\_\_\_ and left.

- A. said goodbye to me            B. says goodbye to me  
C. tell me goodbye            D. told me goodbye

Question 16: The \_\_\_\_\_ to success is to be ready from the start.

- A. key            B. demand            C. agreement            D. response

Question 17: My father phoned me to say that he would come \_\_\_\_\_ home late.

- A. a            B. i            C. the            D. an

Question 18: Our parents \_\_\_\_\_ hands to give us a nice house and a happy home.

- A. join            B. shake            C. share            D. give

Question 19: Emily said that her teacher \_\_\_\_\_ to London \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. would go / the next day                      B. will go / tomorrow  
C. had gone / the next day                      D. went / tomorrow

Question 20: John is \_\_\_\_\_ only child in his family so his parents love him a lot.

- A. a                      B. no article                      C. an                      D. the

Question 21: In the 19th century, it \_\_\_\_\_ two or three months to cross North America by covered wagon.

- A. had taken                      B. had taken                      C. took                      D. was taking

Question 22: "Can I try your new camera?" " \_\_\_\_\_".

- A. I'm sorry. I'm home late.                      B. I'm sorry, I can't. Let's go now.  
C. Sure. I'd love to it.                      D. Sure. But please careful with it.

Question 23: The lights \_\_\_\_\_ out because we \_\_\_\_\_ the electricity bill.

- A. have gone / did not pay                      B. will go / did not paid  
C. go / would not pay                      D. went / had not paid

Question 24: Jack asked me \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. where do you come from?                      B. where I had come from  
C. where I came from                      D. where did I come from?

Question 25: The Americans are \_\_\_\_\_ than the Indians and the Chinese with physical attractiveness when choosing a wife or a husband.

- A. much more concerned                      B. more concerning  
C. much concerned                      D. concerned

Question 26: My mother used to be a woman of great \_\_\_\_\_, but now she gets old and looks pale.

- A. beautify                      B. beautiful                      C. beautifully                      D. beauty

Question 27: John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ in English.

- A. what that word means                      B. what did this word mean  
C. what does this word mean                      D. what that word meant

Question 28: Sometimes she does not agree \_\_\_\_\_ her husband about child rearing but they soon find the solutions.

- A. for                      B. with                      C. of                      D. on

Question 29: A woman can never have a happy married life without \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.

- A. demanding                      B. agreeing                      C. trusting                      D. determining

Question 30: He isn't used to \_\_\_\_\_ with sticks.

- A. eating                      B. eat                              C. ate                              D. eats

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is CLOSEST in meaning to the sentence given in each of the following questions.

Question 31: Many of us have ambivalent feelings about our politicians, admiring but also distrusting them.

- A. mixed                      B. critical                              C. approving                              D. indifferent

Question 32: She got up late and rushed to the bus stop.

- A. went leisurely              B. came into                              C. dropped by                              D. went quickly

Question 33: The reason why Aurora is dressed to the nines is because she's got a date tonight.

- A. dressed too casually for the occasion                              B. dressed in a size nine  
C. dressed up and looking great    D. dressed in a plain-looking suit

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

Question 34: The story told by the teacher amused children in the class.

- A. frightened                      B. saddened                              C. jolted                              D. astonished

Question 35: Polluted water and increased water temperatures have driven many species to the verge of extinction

- A. enriched                      B. contaminated                              C. purified                              D. strengthened

Choose the sentence which has the closest meaning to the sentence given (circle the letter A, B, C or D)

Question 36: *We are a very close-knit family.*

- A. Members of our family are never close to each other.  
B. Members of our family have a very close relationship with each other.  
C. Members of our family need each other.  
D. Members of our family need to help each other

Question 37: *" You broke my computer, Lan" Nam said.*

- A. Lan told Nam he broke his computer.  
B. Nam accused Lan of breaking his computer.  
C. Lan told Nam that he had broken her computer.  
D. Nam said that Lan broke her computer.

Question 38: *" Don't worry about your problem" she told me.*

- A. She wanted me not to worry about her problem.
- B. She told me not to worry about your problem.
- C. She advised me not to worry about my problem
- D. She advised me not to worry about her problem.

Question 39: *They haven't signed the contract yet.*

- A. The contract wouldn't be signed.                      B. The contract hasn't been signed.
- C. The contract isn't signed.                              D. The contract wasn't signed.

Question 40: *They have been working in this factory since 2004.*

- A. They had been working in this factory before 2004.
- B. They have started working in this factory since 2004.
- C. They were working in this factory in 2004.
- D. They started working in this factory in 2004.

Question 41: *John used to write home once a week when he was abroad.*

- A. John doesn't now write home once a week any longer.
- B. John enjoyed writing home every week when he was abroad.
- C. John never forgot to write a weekly letter home when he was abroad.
- D. When he was abroad he remembered to write home every week.

Question 42: *His friends never forgave his betrayal.*

- A. His betrayal was never forgiven by his friends.
- B. His betrayal were never forgiven by his friends.
- C. His betrayal was never forgave by his friends
- D. His betrayal never forgave by his friends.

Question 43: *My father is tired of seeing any violent films.*

- A. My father hasn't seen a violent film.
- B. My father has enjoyed all the violent films he has ever seen.
- C. My father is worried about missing the next violent film.
- D. My father never wants to see another violent film.

Question 44: *Mr. Brown bought this car five years ago.*

- A. It is five years ago since Mr. Brown bought this car.
- B. Mr. Brown started to buy this car five years ago.

C. Mr. Brown has had this car for five years.

D. It has been five years when Mr. Brown bought this car.

Question 45: *Eight years ago we started writing to each other.*

A. We wrote to each other eight years ago.

B. We have rarely written to each other for eight years.

C. Eight years is a long time for us to write to each other.

D. We have been writing to each other for eight years.

*Circle A, B, C or D to find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence*

Question 46: Marriage is a life-long journey together, which is not simply a boat you

A

B

C

get on together and getting off when it does not work out.

D

Question 47: Tom was very tired because he runs for an hour.

A

B

C

D

Question 48: Would you like a few salt in your vegetables?

A

B

C

D

Question 49: I finish my book before my next birthday.

A

B

C

D

Question 50: The car whose quality is very good has been used a long time ago.

A

B

C

D

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 51 to 60.*

It is very difficult to succeed in the music business; nine out of ten bands that release a first record fail to produce a second. Surviving in the music industry requires luck and patience, but most of all it requires an intricate knowledge of how a record company functions. The process begins when a representative of a company's Artist and Repertoire (A &R) department visits bars and night clubs, scouting for young, talented bands. After the representative identifies a promising band, he or she will work to negotiate a contract with that band. The signing of this recording contract is a slow process. A company will spend a long time investigating the band itself as well as current trends in popular music. During this period, it is important that a band reciprocate with an investigation of its own, learning as much as possible about the record company and making personal connections within the different departments that will handle their recordings. Once a band has signed the contract and, has finished recording an album, the Publicity and Promotions department takes over. This department decides



D. the cost of recording an album is very expensive.

Question 58: The phrase 'this period' refers to.....

A. waiting for the signing of a recording contract

B. scouting for young, talented bands

C. waiting to represent the A & R department

D. preparing to have the second album

Question 59: Which of the following words is most similar in meaning to 'handle'?

A. touch

B. control

C. manipulate

D. protect

Question 60: Which of the following statements best expresses the main idea of the passage?

A. Nine out of ten bands fail to produce a second record.

B. It is important for a band to have an intricate knowledge of how a recording company functions.

C. Making personal connections will help the band in the final decisions about the promotion of their album.

D. The main factors in a band's success are luck and patience.

*Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks from 61 to 70.*

Packet sugar from the supermarket is extracted from (61) \_\_\_\_\_ sugar cane or sugar beet. These (62) \_\_\_\_\_ are mixed with hot water, which dissolves their natural sugar. Sugar is also found in fruit some of which, such as dates and grapes, (63) \_\_\_\_\_ very high amounts of sugar. To be a little more (64) \_\_\_\_\_, sugar should be called sucrose. Sucrose is made up of two substances, glucose, which (65) \_\_\_\_\_ for instant energy, and fructose, which lasts longer as a source of energy. The sugar in fruit is mainly fructose. So when we eat fruit, we (66) \_\_\_\_\_ quite large amounts of natural sugar. Some scientists believe that too much sugar (67) \_\_\_\_\_ in sweets, cakes, and biscuits. It is said to be generally bad for the health, although nothing (68) \_\_\_\_\_ so far. However, it (69) \_\_\_\_\_ that sugar causes tooth decay. As one expert said that "If other foods damaged our body as much as sugar (70) \_\_\_\_\_ our teeth, they would be banned immediately. "

Question 61: A. both

B. some

C. either

D. mainly

Question 62: A. productions

B. products

C. producers

D. producing

Question 63: A. contain

B. are containing

C. are contained

D. contains

Question 64: A. scientists

B. scientific

C. Science

D. non-science

Question 65: A. used

B. are using

C. use

D. is used

Question 66: A. are also eaten

B. have been eaten

C. also eat

D. will be eaten

Question 67: A. is eaten

B. eats

C. has eaten

D. will eat



- Question 68: A. is proving                      B. has proved                      C. has been proved                      D. were proved
- Question 69: A. knows                      B. has known                      C. is knowing                      D. is known
- Question 70: A. damages                      B. did                      C. decayed                      D. effect

*Read the passage below and choose the best answers that follow.*

Millions of people are using cell phones today. In many places, it is actually considered unusual not to use one. In many countries, cell phones are very popular with young people. They find that the phones are more than a means of communication - having a mobile phone shows that they are cool and connected.

The explosion in mobile phone use around the world has made some health professionals worried. Some doctors are concerned that in the future many people may suffer health problems from the use of mobile phones. In England, there has been a serious debate about this issue. Mobile phone companies are worried about the negative publicity of such ideas. They say that there is no proof that mobile phones are bad for your health.

On the other hand, medical studies have shown changes in the brain cells of some people who use mobile phones. Signs of change in the tissues of the brain and head can be detected with modern scanning equipment. In one case, a traveling salesman had to retire at young age because of serious memory loss. He couldn't remember even simple tasks. He would often forget the name of his own son. This man used to talk on his mobile phone for about six hours a day, every day of his working week, for a couple of years. His family doctor blamed his mobile phone use, but his employer's doctor didn't agree.

What is it that makes mobile phones potentially harmful? The answer is radiation. High-tech machines can detect very small amounts of radiation from mobile phones. Mobile phone companies agree that there is some radiation, but they say the amount is too small to worry about.

As the discussion about their safety continues, it appears that it's best to use mobile phones less often. Use your regular phone if you want to talk for a long time. Use your mobile phone only when you really need it. Mobile phones can be very useful and convenient, especially in emergencies. In the future, mobile phones may have a warning label that says they are bad for your health. So for now, it's wise not to use your mobile phone too often.

*Question 71: According to the passage, cell phones are especially popular with young people because.....*

- A. they are indispensable in everyday communications.
- B. they make them look more stylish.
- C. they keep the users alert all the time.
- D. they cannot be replaced by regular phones.

*Question 72: The word "means" in the passage most closely means.....*

- A. "meanings"                      B. "expression"                      C. "transmission"                      D. "method"

*Question 73: Doctors have tentatively concluded that cell phones may.....*

- A. cause some mental malfunction
- B. change their users' social behaviours.
- C. change their users' temperament.
- D. damage their users' emotions.

Question 74: "Negative publicity" in the passage most likely means.....

- A. poor ideas about the effects of cell phones.
- B. widespread opinion about bad effects of cell phones.
- C. information on the lethal effects of cell phones.
- D. the negative public use of cell phones.

Question 75: The changes possibly caused by the cell phones are mainly concerned with.....

- A. the smallest units of the brain.
- B. the resident memory.
- C. the mobility of the mind and the body.
- D. the arteries of the brain.

Question 76: The man mentioned in the passage, who used his cell phone too often,.....

- A. had a problem with memory.
- B. abandoned his family.
- C. suffered serious loss of mental ability.
- D. could no longer think lucidly.

Question 77: The word "potentially" in the passage most closely means.....

- A. "certainly"
- B. "obviously"
- C. "privately"
- D. "possibly"

Question 78: According to the passage, what makes mobile phones potentially harmful is.....

- A. their radiant light.
- B. their raiding power.
- C. their power of attraction.
- D. their invisible rays.

Question 79: According to the writer, people should.....

- A. only use mobile phones in urgent cases.
- B. keep off mobile phones regularly.
- C. never use mobile phones in all cases.
- D. only use mobile phones in medical emergencies.

Question 80: The most suitable title for the passage could be.....

- A. "Mobile Phones: A Must of Our Time"
- B. "Technological Innovations and Their Price".
- C. "The Way Mobile Phones Work".
- D. "The Reasons Why Mobile Phones Are Popular".

#### KEYS TO PRACTICE TEST 25

- 1C    2D    3C    4B    5B    6D    7D    8B    9B    10D
- 11C   12C   13C   14A   15A   16A   17B   18A   19A   20D
- 21C   22D   23D   24B   25A   26D   27D   28B   29C   30A

31A 32D 33C 34B 35C 36B 37B 38C 39B 40D  
 41A 42A 43D 44C 45D 46D 47C 48C 49A 50D  
 51A 52A 53B 54C 55D 56A 57C 58A 59B 60B  
 61C 62B 63A 64B 65D 66C 67A 68C 69D 70A  
 71B 72D 73A 74B 75A 76A 77D 78D 79A 80B

### PRACTICE TEST 26

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word that has its underlined part pronounced differently from that of the other words.

Question 1: A. dine                      B. determine                      C. undermine                      D. mine

Question 2: A. peach                      B. heaven                      C. tease                      D. feasible

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

Question 3: A. imagine                      B. enormous                      C. permission                      D. possible

Question 4: A. under                      B. toward                      C. above                      D. behind

Question 5: A. mysteriously                      B. originally                      C. necessarily                      D. elaborately

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct one to complete each of the following sentences.

Question 6: When he heard the joke, he burst into loud \_\_\_\_\_.

A. amusement                      B. laughter                      C. smile                      D. laughing

Question 7: The boss \_\_\_\_\_ to his secretary using the office phone for personal calls.

A. disagrees                      B. objects                      C. criticizes                      D. disapproves.

Question 8: Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ the captain of the team when he had to face the problems.

A. had he been appointed                      B. was he being appointed

C. did he appoint                      D. was he appointing

Question 9: \_\_\_\_\_ Columbus was one of \_\_\_\_\_ first people to cross \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic.

A. \_ / the / \_                      B. The / the / the                      C. \_ / the / an                      D. \_ / the / the

Question 10: By 2050, medical technology \_\_\_\_\_ many diseases.

A. has conquered                      B. will conquer

C. will have conquered                      D. is conquering

Question 11: Neither of them will be treated preferentially, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. won't they                      B. will they                      C. won't them                      D. will them

Question 12: The Red List is a special book that provides names of \_\_\_\_\_ animals.

A. vulnerable and endangered                      B. vulnerable and dangerous  
C. endangered and hunted                      D. extinct and killed

Question 13: The \_\_\_\_\_ of the pagoda in the water was very clear and beautiful.

A. sight                      B. mirror                      C. reflection                      D. shadow

Question 14: During the starvation, we used to keep a \_\_\_\_\_ of dried food in the factory.

A. conserve                      B. substitute                      C. reserve                      D. preserve

Question 15: As I won't be able to attend the meeting, I'd like you to sign \_\_\_\_\_.

A. on my account                      B. on my name                      C. on my place                      D. on my behalf

Question 16: "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!" – "\_\_\_\_\_."

A. Thank you very much. I'm afraid                      B. Thank you for your compliment  
C. You are telling lie                      D. I don't like your saying

Question 17: Tony is so \_\_\_\_\_ that his friends tend to tell him all their problems.

A. confidential                      B. critical                      C. optimistic                      D. sympathetic

Question 18: "Hello, I'd like to speak with Mrs Smith." – "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Sure                      B. Who are you  
C. Hang on, please, I will put you through                      D. Of course you can

Question 19: A university education is of course important but it is essential that all employees undergo a period of intensive \_\_\_\_\_.

A. preparation                      B. learning                      C. training                      D. concentration

Question 20: Anne: "Make yourself at home"                      John: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Not at all. Don't mention it.                      B. Yes, Can I help you?  
C. That's very kind. Thank you                      D. Thanks! Same to you.

Question 21: The member of the Red Cross were dedicated their whole life to \_\_\_\_\_ the suffering of human beings.

A. reducing                      B. reductive                      C. reduction                      D. reduce

Question 22: Now that they have read it in \_\_\_\_\_, They believe me.

A. white and black                      B. black and white                      C. red and blue                      D. blue and red

Question 23: It is \_\_\_\_\_ that I can't put it down.

A. so interesting a book                      B. so interesting book

C. such interesting book

D. too interesting book

Question 24: They thought they could deceive me but they were wrong, I could \_\_\_\_\_.

A. see them off

B. see off them

C. see through them

D. see them through

Question 25: I couldn't believe that they were brothers. They were as different as \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Mars and Jupiter

B. chalk and cheese

C. dogs and cats

D. milk from honey

Question 26: The rumors go that Jason will be arrested. He is said \_\_\_\_\_ a bloody robbery.

A. to have taken part in

B. to have joined in

C. to join in

D. to take part in

Question 27: My tooth is painful. I must go to see the dentist and get it \_\_\_\_\_.

A. pull out

B. pulled out

C. to pull out

D. pulling out

Question 28: Please move along to make \_\_\_\_\_ the new computer.

A. seat for

B. room for

C. a room for

D. place for

Question 29: They are accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ up late at weekends.

A. with getting

B. to get

C. by getting

D. to getting

Question 30: \_\_\_\_\_ of all these changes in the society is that women have more freedom.

As a result

B. A result

C. The results

D. The result

Question 31: He says a full time teacher doesn't earn \_\_\_\_\_ a part - time salesman.

A. As many as

B. as more than

C. as much as

D. as more as

Question 32: They \_\_\_\_\_ for more than five miles but they didn't stop to rest.

A. were walking

B. have walked

C. had been walking

D. have been walking

Question 33: \_\_\_\_\_ things about learning is communicating with people from around the world.

A. One best

B. one of best

C. The best

D. One of the best

Question 34: \_\_\_\_\_ they are tropical birds, parrots can live in temperate or even cold climates.

A. Despite

B. Even though

C. Nevertheless

D. Because

Question 35: \_\_\_\_\_, the results couldn't be better.

A. No matter what he tried hard

B. No matter how hard he tried

C. Although very hard he tried

D. Despite how hard he tried

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is *CLOSEST* in meaning to the sentence given in each of the following questions.

Question 36: According to a journalist's report, there was a heavy loss of lives in the disaster.

It is reported that there was a heavy loss of lives in the disaster.

There reported to have a heavy loss of lives in the disaster.

A journalist reports that the lives were lost heavily in the disaster.

A heavy loss of lives is reported to be in the disaster.

Question 37: When did you start playing chess?

A. How long have you started playing chess?

B. Since when have you been playing chess?

C. How long did you start playing chess?

D. How long ago have you played chess?

Question 38: Apparently the car did not sustain some damage.

The car seems to have sustained some damage

The car appears not to have sustained any damage.

It looks as if the car did not sustain any apparent damage.

It is apparent that the damage to the car was not sustainable.

Question 39: If I were you, I would take a rest.

I think you should take a rest

B. You would better take a rest

C. Why didn't you take a rest?

D. Let's take a rest, shall we?

Question 40: Neil Armstrong stepped on the moon first.

Neil Armstrong was the first step on the moon.

It was Neil Armstrong who stepping on the moon first.

Neil Armstrong was the first to step on the moon.

Neil Armstrong was the first stepping on the moon.

Choose the word or phrase that is *CLOSEST* in meaning to the underlined word or phrase.

Question 41: As a government official, Benjamin Franklin often traveled abroad.

widely

B. secretly

C. alone

D. overseas

Question 42: American poet James Merrily received critical acclaim for his work entitled Jim's Book.

advice

B. disapproval

C. praise

D. attention

Question 43: A revolution in women's fashion during the second half of the twentieth century made trousers acceptable for almost all activities.

A. available            B. permissible            C. attractive            D. ideal

Question 44: No fan, electric or otherwise, actually cools the air.

truly                    B. haphazardly            C. persistently            D. continuously

Question 45: The climate of Chicago is subject to abrupt changes of weather.

sudden                    B. extreme                    C. adverse                    D. disruptive

*Circle A, B, C or D to find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence.*

Question 46: New laws (A) should be introduced (B) to reduce the number (C) of traffic in the city center(D).

Laws                    B. be introduced            C. number                    D. city center

Question 47: Since (A) fireworks are dangerous(B), many countries have laws preventing (C) business to sell (D) them.

Since                    B. are dangerous            C. preventing                    D. to sell

Question 48: A majority (A) students in this (B) university are (C) from overseas(D).

A majority                    B. in this                    C. are                    D. overseas

Question 49: You should (A) stop to smoke (B) because it is (C) very harmful for (D) your health.

Should                    B. to smoke                    C. it is                    D. for

Question 50: One of (A) the students who are being (B) considered for the (C) scholarship are (D) from this university.

One of                    B. are being                    C. for the                    D. are

*Read the passage below and choose one correct answer (A, B, C or D) to each question.*

Traditionally in America, helping the poor was a matter for private charities or local government. Arriving immigrants depended mainly on predecessors from their homeland to help them start a new life. In the late 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries, several European nations instituted public-welfare programs. But such a movement was slow to take hold in the United States because the rapid pace of industrialization and the ready availability of farmland seemed to confirm the belief that anyone who was willing to work could find a job.

Most of the programs started during the Depression era were temporary relief measures, but one of the programs – Social Security – has become an American institution. Paid for by deduction from the paychecks of working people, Social Security ensures that retired persons receive a modest monthly income and also provides unemployment insurance, disability insurance, and other assistance to those who need it. Social Security payments to retired persons can start at age 62, but many wait until age 65, when the payments are slightly higher. Recently, there has been concern that the Social Security fund may not have enough money to fulfill its obligations in the 21<sup>st</sup> century, when the population of elderly Americans

is expected to increase dramatically. Policy makers have proposed various ways to make up the anticipated deficit, but a long-term solution is still being debated.

In the years since Roosevelt, other American presidents have established assistance programs. These include Medical and Medicare; food stamps, certificates that people can use to purchase food; and public housing which is built at federal expense and made available to persons with low incomes.

Needy Americans can also turn to sources other than government for help. A broad spectrum of private charities and voluntary organizations is available. Volunteerism is on the rise in the United States, especially among retired persons. It is estimated that almost 50 percent of Americans over age 18 do volunteer work, and nearly 75 percent of U. S. households contribute money to charity.

Question 51: New immigrants to the U. S. could seek help from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the U. S. government agencies
- B. volunteer organizations
- C. the people who came earlier
- D. only charity organizations

Question 52: Public-welfare programs were unable to take firm root in the U. S. due to the fast growth of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. population
- B. urbanization
- C. modernization
- D. industrialization

Question 53: The word “instituted” in the first paragraph mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. enforced
- B. introduced
- C. carried out
- D. studied

Question 54: The Social Security program has become possible thanks to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. people’s willingness to work
- B. enforcement laws
- C. deductions from wages
- D. donations from companies

Question 55: Most of the public assistance programs \_\_\_\_\_ after the severe economic crisis.

- A. did not become institutionalized
- B. did not work in institutions
- C. were introduced into institutions
- D. functioned fruitfully in institutions

Question 56: That Social Security payments will be a burden comes from the concern that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the program discourages working people
- B. younger people do not want to work
- C. elderly people ask for more money
- D. the number of elderly people is growing

Question 57: Persons with low incomes can access public housing through \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. state spending
- B. federal expenditure
- C. low rents
- D. donations



Question 58: Americans with low incomes can seek help from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. government agencies
- B. federal government
- C. non- government agencies
- D. state government

Question 59: Public assistance has become more and more popular due to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. people's growing commitment to charity
- B. taxpayers's increasing commitment pay
- C. young people's volunteerism
- D. volunteer organizations

Question 60: The passage mainly discusses \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. immigration into America
- B. public assistance in America
- C. funding agencies in America
- D. ways of fund-raising in America

*Read the text and then decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space.*

Women nowadays have more (61) \_\_\_\_\_ than those in the past. For example, our great grandmothers were not allowed to go to school or to work to earn their own living. (62) \_\_\_\_\_, they had to depend on their husbands financially. Modern women, on the contrary, can get good education, have their own careers, and (63) \_\_\_\_\_ their interests. They can even take good positions in politics if they are competent (64) \_\_\_\_\_ it. However, women living in our modern society have their (65) \_\_\_\_\_, too. Today's women work harder than their great grandmothers so that they can gain the (66) \_\_\_\_\_ between working life and family life. Many people predict that by 2032, most (67) \_\_\_\_\_ positions at work will be taken by women. Then, it is possible that women will have more (68) \_\_\_\_\_ life because, (69) \_\_\_\_\_ in a very modern society, the women can't (70) \_\_\_\_\_ their role in the family.

Question 61: A. advances    B. advantages    C. benefits    D. conveniences

Question 62: A. Therefore    B. However    C. As a result    D. Although

Question 63: A. pursue    B. support    C. promote    D. stimulate

Question 64: A. to    B. at    C. with    D. of

Question 65: A. obstacles    B. disputes    C. profits    D. problems

Question 66: A. equality    B. stable    C. balance    D. steadiness

Question 67: A. senior    B. junior    C. inferior    D. superior

Question 68: A. sheltered    B. healthy    C. strenuous    D. active

Question 69: A. though    B. even    C. ever    D. never

Question 70: A. perform    B. adopt    C. fulfill    D. neglect

*Read the following passage, and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.*

There are desert plants which survive the dry season in the *form* of inactive seeds. There are also desert insects which survive as inactive larvae or pupae. In addition, difficult as it is to believe, there are desert fish which can survive through years of drought in the form of inactive eggs. *These* are shrimps that live in the Mojave Desert, an intensely dry region in the southwest of the United States where shade temperatures of over 50°C are often recorded.

The eggs are in the size and have the appearance of grains of sand. When sufficient spring rain falls to form a lake, once every two to five years, these eggs hatch. Then the water soon *swarms* with millions of tiny shrimps about a millimeter long which feed on microscopic plant and animal organisms which grow in the temporary desert lake. Within a week, the shrimps grow from their original 1 millimeter to a length of about 1 centimeters.

Throughout the time that the shrimps are rapidly maturing, the water in the lake equally rapidly evaporates. Therefore, it is *a race against time*. By the twelfth day, when they are about 3 centimeters long, hundreds of tiny eggs form on the underbodies of the females. Usually, by this time, all that remains of the lake is a large, muddy patch of wet soil. On the thirteenth day and the next, during the final hours of their brief lives, the females lay their eggs in the mud. Then, having ensured that their species will survive, the shrimps die as the last of the water evaporates.

If sufficient rain falls the following year to form another lake, the eggs hatch, and once again cycle of growth, adulthood, egg-laying, and death is rapidly passed through. If there is insufficient rain to form a lake, the eggs lie *dormant* for a year, or even longer if necessary. Occasionally, perhaps twice in a hundred years, sufficient rain falls to form a deep lake that lasts a month or more. In this case, the species passes through two cycles of growth, egg-laying and death. Thus the species multiplies considerably, which further ensures its survival.

Question 71: What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. The effects of drought in the desert
- B. The lifespan of fish eggs in desert conditions
- C. The survival of insects in a desert climate
- D. The importance of deep lakes in the desert

Question 72: The word “form” in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. style
- B. shape
- C. nature
- D. design

Question 73: From the passage, it can be inferred that the Mojave Desert is unusual because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it is hit even in the shade
- B. rain rarely falls there
- C. it shelters inactive life
- D. very little survives there

Question 74: The author compares inactive eggs to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. shrimps
- B. sand
- C. larvae
- D. seeds

Question 75: The word “These” in the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. plans
- B. eggs
- C. insects
- D. fish

Question 76: According to passage, the eggs originate \_\_\_\_\_.

A. in the sand      B. on the female      C. in the mud      D. in the lake

Question 77: The word “swarms” in the second paragraph could best be replaced by \_\_\_\_\_.

A. abounds      B. grows      C. crowd      D. supports

Question 78: According to passage, approximately how long does a shrimps live?

A. 1 week      B. 12 days      C. 13 days      D. 14 days plus

Question 79: The word “dormant” in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. dead      B. asleep      C. passive      D. empty

Question 80: What does the author mean by the phrase “a race against time” in the second paragraph?

- A. The shrimps are in intense competition to reproduce.
- B. The shrimps must reproduce before the waters recede.
- C. The shrimps do not have enough time to reproduce.
- D. Death occurs before the shrimps can reproduce.

#### KEYS TO PRACTICE TEST 26

1B	2B	3D	4A	5C	6B	7B	8A	9D	10C
11B	12A	13C	14C	15D	16B	17D	18C	19C	20B
21A	22B	23A	24D	25B	26A	27B	28B	29D	30D
31C	32C	33D	34B	35B	36A	37B	38B	39A	40C
41D	42C	43B	44A	45A	46D	47D	48A	49B	50D
51C	52D	53B	54C	55A	56D	57B	58C	59A	60B
61B	62C	63A	64B	65D	66C	67A	68C	69B	70D
71B	72A	73C	74B	75D	76B	77A	78C	79C	80B

#### PRACTICE TEST 27

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of the primary stress in each of the following questions.

Question 1: A. conventional      B. preservative      C. reliable      D. intellectual

Question 2: A. environment      B. superstition      C. technology      D. predominance

Question 3: A. computer      B. customer      C. property      D. energy

Question 4: A. decisive      B. popular      C. impatient      D. observant

Question 5: A. occur                      B. struggle                      C. enlarge                      D. survive

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

Question 6: I could hear voices but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ what they were saying.

- A. bring about              B. turn up                      C. make out                      D. try out

Question 7: \_\_\_\_\_ he got top marks at high school, he never went to university.

- A. Nevertheless              B. Despite                      C. Although                      D. Meanwhile

Question 8: Applications \_\_\_\_\_ in after 30<sup>th</sup> April will not be considered.

- A. send                      B. sent                      C. which sent                      D. that is sent

Question 9: Sammy had worked in England for a year \_\_\_\_\_ moving to Scotland.

- A. until                      B. once                      C. before                      D. while

Question 10: The girl was used \_\_\_\_\_ birthday presents from her brothers.

- A. to being received      B. to receiving                      C. to be receiving                      D. to receive

Question 11: \_\_\_\_\_ always gives me real pleasure.

- A. While arranging flowers                      B. Arranging flowers  
C. The flowers are arranged                      D. I arrange flowers

Question 12: The theory of relativity \_\_\_\_\_ by Einstein, who was a famous physicist.

- A. was developed              B. developed                      C. is developed                      D. develops

Question 13: \_\_\_\_\_ was the tea that we couldn't drink it.

- A. So strong                      B. No longer                      C. How strong                      D. Hardly ever

Question 14: Kay: "I wouldn't do that if I were you."

John: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Wouldn't you? Why?                      B. It's out of the question.  
C. Would you, really?                      D. I'd rather you didn't.

Question 15: The higher the content of carbon dioxide in the air is, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the more heat it retains                      B. the heat it retains more  
C. it retains the more heat                      D. more heat it retains

Question 16: Be sure not to rely too \_\_\_\_\_ on your mother tongue when you are learning a foreign language.

- A. heavily                      B. numerously                      C. severely                      D. abundantly

Question 17: Mary: "The hat's so beautiful. Thanks. "

Tony: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. The same to you!      B. Great idea!      C. Lucky you!      D. I'm glad you like it.

Question 18: In our team, no person \_\_\_\_\_ John could finish this tough task in such a short time.

- A. including      B. other than      C. outside      D. rather than

Question 19: "It's about time you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework, Mary. "

- A. will do      B. do      C. must do      D. did

Question 20: \_\_\_\_\_ a few more minutes, we could have finished the task.

- A. If we had      B. Unless we had      C. If we have      D. If we had had

Question 21: Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ to help us when we were in difficulty?

- A. once offering      B. to offer      C. being offered      D. you offer

Question 22: Lucy: "You look really nice in that red sweater!"

Sue: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. How dare you?      B. I'm afraid so.      C. Thank you.      D. Don't mention it.

Question 23: Communities in remote areas are extremely \_\_\_\_\_ to famine if crops fail.

- A. vulnerable      B. disappointed      C. defenseless      D. helpless

Question 24: Tom hasn't completed the work yet and Maria hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. neither      B. either      C. also      D. too

Question 25: We could have caught the last train, but we \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes late.

- A. would be      B. have been      C. are      D. were

Question 26: The superstar, accompanied by the other members of the band, \_\_\_\_\_ to visit our school next week.

- A. are going      B. has had      C. are      D. is going

Question 27: We received a call from the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ charge of our course.

- A. to      B. in      C. at      D. on

Question 28: In my apartment there are two rooms, \_\_\_\_\_ is used as the living-room.

- A. the largest one      B. the large one      C. the largest of which      D. the larger of which

Question 29: Mrs. Chau has managed the department \_\_\_\_\_ that she'll be promoted next month.

- A. very successful      B. so successfully      C. too successful      D. too successfully

Question 30: We hoped \_\_\_\_\_ they would come and give us new lectures.

A. what

B. that

C. which

D. when

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.

Question 31: Now many people who shop at a health food store instead of a local supermarket are much more likely to find a healthy, sugar-free beverage.

- A. harmful to health    B. full of preservatives    C. beneficial to health    D. convenient to prepare

Question 32: Thanks to the invention of the microscope, biologists can now gain insights into the nature of the human cell.

- A. far-sighted views    B. spectacular sightings    C. in-depth studies    D. deep understanding

Question 33: Dozens of applicants showed up for the vacant position, but only a handful of them were shortlisted for the interview.

- A. small number    B. class    C. small amount    D. hand

Question 34: Even though the mountain was very steep and the climb was hazardous, several adventurous tourists managed to reach the top.

- A. bringing excitement    B. resulting in depression  
C. costing a lot of money    D. causing a lot of risks

Question 35: Just like hearing infants who start first with simple syllable babbling, then put more syllables together to sound like real sentences and questions, deaf babies follow the same pattern.

- A. obedient to parents    B. physically abnormal    C. hard of hearing    D. able to hear

**Đọc bài văn, chọn đáp án điền vào chỗ trống:**

Many of the things we do (26)..... on receiving information from other people. Catching a train, making a phone call and going to the cinema all involve information (27)..... stored, processed and communicated. In the past this information had to be kept on paper (28)....., for example, books, newspapers and timetables. Now more and more information is put (29)..... computers.

Computers play a role in our everyday lives, sometimes without us even realising it. (30) .... the use of computers in both shops and offices. Big shops have to deal with very large (31)..... of information. They have to make sure that there are enough goods on the shelves for customers to buy, they need to be able to reorder before (32)..... run out. A lot of office work in the past involved information on paper. Once it had been dealt with by people, the paper was (33)..... for future reference. This way of working was never (34)..... easy or fast. A computer system is much more (35).....

36. A. to depend    B. depending    C. depended    D. depend  
37. A. that has    B. has    C. is    D. that is  
38. A. in the case of    B. in the form of    C. in preparation for    D. in search of  
39. A. on    B. in    C. by    D. with

40. A. To be considered      B. To consider      C. Consider      D. Be considered
41. A. amount      B. number      C. numbers      D. amounts
42. A. stocks      B. items      C. purchases      D. cargoes
43. A. thrown away      B. torn off      C. put aside      D. recycled
44. A. particularized      B. particular      C. particularly      D. particularity
45. A. effective      B. skillful      C. capable      D. formal

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 16 to 25.

The ability to conduct electricity is one of the key properties of a metal. Other solid materials such as silicon can conduct electricity but only effectively at certain temperatures. Also, some substances such as salt (sodium chloride) can conduct when molten or when dissolved in water. The ability of metals to conduct electricity is due to how their atoms bond together. In order to bond together the metal atoms lose at least one of their outermost electrons. This leaves the metal atoms with a positive charge and they are now strictly ions. The lost electrons are free to move in what is known as a sea of electrons. Since the electrons are negatively charged they attract the ions and this is what keeps the structure together.

An electric current is a flow of charge and since the electrons in the sea of electrons are free to move they can be made to flow in one direction when a source of electrical energy such as a battery is connected to the metal. Hence we have an electric current flowing through the wire, and this is what makes metals such good conductors of electricity. The only other common solid conducting material that pencil users are likely to encounter is graphite (what the 'lead' of a pencil is made from). Graphite is a form of carbon and again the carbon atoms bond in such a way that there is a sea of electrons that can be made to flow as an electric current. Likewise, if we have an ionic substance like salt we can make the electrically charged ions flow to create a current but only when those ions are free to move, either when the substance is a liquid or dissolved in water. In its solid state an ionic substance like salt cannot conduct electricity as its charged ions cannot flow.

Electrical insulators are substances that cannot conduct electricity well either, because they contain no charged particles or any charged particles they might contain do not flow easily. Water itself is a poor conductor of electricity as it does not contain a significant amount of fully charged particles (the ends of a water molecule are partly charged but overall the molecule is neutral). However, most water we encounter does contain dissolved charged particles, so it will be more conductive than pure water. Many of the problems that occur when touching electrical devices with wet hands result from the ever-present salt that is left on our skin through perspiration and it dissolves in the water to make it more conductive.

Question 46: Electrical conductivity is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. completely impossible for silicon
- B. one of the key properties of most solid materials
- C. impossible for any substance when it is dissolved in water
- D. one of the most important properties of metals

Question 47: According to the passage, a metal can conduct electricity due to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the absence of free electrons
- B. the loss of one electron in the core of its atoms
- C. the way its atoms bond together
- D. its atoms with a positive charge

Question 48: The word “outermost” in paragraph 1 mostly means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. nearest to the inside
- B. furthest from the inside
- C. the heaviest
- D. the lightest

Question 49: The atoms of a metal can bond together because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. electrons can flow in a single direction
- B. the lost electrons cannot move freely in the sea of electrons
- C. they lose all of their electrons
- D. negatively charged electrons attract positive ions

Question 50: Salt in its solid state is not able to conduct electricity because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it has free electrons
- B. its charged ions are not free to move
- C. its charged ions can flow easily
- D. it cannot create any charged ions

Question 51: The word “they” in paragraph 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. electrical insulators
- B. electric currents
- C. charged particles
- D. charged ions

Question 52: Water is a poor conductor because it contains \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. only a small amount of fully charged particles
- B. only a positive electric charge
- C. no positive or negative electric charge
- D. only a negative electric charge

Question 53: We can have problems when touching electrical devices with wet hands because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the water dissolves the salt on our skin and becomes more conductive
- B. the water contains too many neutral molecules
- C. the water containing no charged particles makes it more conductive
- D. the water itself is a good conductor of electricity



Question 54: Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?

- A. Salt can conduct electricity when it is molten or dissolved.
- B. Some materials are more conductive than others.
- C. Graphite is a common solid substance that can conduct electricity.
- D. Pure water is much more conductive than most water we encounter every day.

Question 55: Which of the following could best serve as the title of the passage?

- A. Electrical Devices
- B. Electrical Energy
- C. Electrical Insulators
- D. Electrical Conductivity

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70.

A radio telescope is a radio receiver that "sees" radio waves. Unlike a normal telescope, which sees light, a radio telescope is used primarily in the area of astronomy because it can detect radio waves that are emitted by celestial objects. Such objects in space, also called radio objects, can be things such as hot gas, electrons, and wavelengths given off by different atoms and molecules.

The first radio telescope was invented by Grote Reber in 1937. He was an American who graduated with a degree in engineering. He went on to work as an amateur radio operator and later decided to try to build his own radio telescope in his backyard. Reber's first two radio receivers failed to pick up any signals from outer space, but in 1938, his third radio telescope successfully picked up radio waves from space.

A radio telescope consists of a large parabolic-shaped dish antenna or a combination of two or more. The significance of the parabolic shape allows for the incoming radio waves to be concentrated on one focal point, allowing the signals to be picked up as strongly as possible. A larger dish means that more signals can be received and focalized.

In the late 1950s and early 1960s, the largest radio telescope of the time was invented with a seventy-six-meter telescope although larger telescopes have been made since then. The largest current radio telescope in the world is the RATAN-600 in Russia, whose diameter is 576 meters. It has provided valuable feedback of the sun's radio wavelengths and atmosphere. The largest radio telescope in Europe is a 100-meter diameter telescope in Germany, and the largest radio telescope in the United States is the Big Ear in the state of Ohio. The largest array of telescopes is the Giant Metrewave Radio Telescope in India.

Radio telescopes have provided scientists with valuable information about our universe. One of the most important functions of radio telescopes is their ability to allow scientists to track different space probes, the unmanned space missions in outer space. Radio telescopes allow for the travel of space probes into places like the surface of Mars that are too dangerous for men to explore. Without radio wave technology, scientists would not know much of what inhabits the universe nor would they be able to see it. Radio waves are our eyes and ears in outer space.

Question 56: According to the passage, a radio telescope enables the detection of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. creatures that inhabit celestial objects
- B. shapes and sizes of celestial objects
- C. normal light of celestial objects
- D. radio waves sent out by celestial objects

Question 57:

According to paragraph 2, all of the following are true about Grote Reber EXCEPT that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. he was an inventor
- B. he was an amateur radio operator
- C. he was an engineer
- D. he was an astronomer

Question 58: Grote Reber's idea to develop a radio telescope was not successful until \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. he picked up signals from outer space
- B. he graduated from an engineering school
- C. he experimented on the third one
- D. he first built one in his backyard

Question 59: The verb "pick up" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. send
- B. lift
- C. receive
- D. select

Question 60: According to the passage, which of the following statements is TRUE?

- A. A larger dish antenna helps a radio telescope produce better results.
- B. The Big Ear in the United States produces the largest array of telescopes.
- C. The pattern of radio waves received by radio telescopes is significant.
- D. The largest radio telescope of all time is the one with a seventy-six-meter diameter.

Question 61: The word "current" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. existing
- B. moving
- C. electricity flow
- D. water movement

Question 62: The word "they" in paragraph 5 refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. places
- B. radio waves
- C. scientists
- D. eyes and ears

Question 63: Radio waves are scientists' eyes and ears in outer space because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they can recognize who dominates the universe
- B. they help to track only manned space missions in space
- C. they allow them to travel to such dangerous places as Mars
- D. they can help them understand more about the universe

Question 64: The focus of discussion in the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. radio waves
- B. radio telescopes
- C. radio operators
- D. atoms and molecules

Question 65: Originally, this passage was probably published in \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a business journal
- B. a fashion magazine
- C. a scientific journal
- D. a book on environment

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

Question 66: These exercises look easy, but they are very relatively difficult for us.

A B C D

Question 67: As the old one, this new copier can perform its functions in half the time.

A B C D

Question 68: After our discussion, we decided to take a later flight and so that we could spend more time

A B C D

with the clients.

Question 69: The assumption that smoking has bad effects on our health have been proved.

A B C D

Question 70: Our astronauts chosen for fly spacecraft were selected from military test pilots.

A B C D

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is CLOSEST in meaning to the sentence given in each of the following questions.

Question 71: It's difficult for me to understand what he implies.

- A. What he implies is not very difficult to understand.
- B. Understanding what he implies is found difficult.
- C. I find it difficult to understand what he really means.
- D. To understand what he really means is difficult to find.

Question 72: There is no question of changing my mind about resigning.

- A. Nobody knows about my decision on resigning.
- B. I certainly won't change my mind about resigning.
- C. They asked me no question about resigning.
- D. I should have changed my mind about resigning.

Question 73: John said, "You'd better not lend them any money, Daisy. "

- A. John ordered Daisy not to lend them any money.
- B. John commanded Daisy not to lend them any money.
- C. John advised Daisy not to lend them any money.
- D. John asked Daisy if she had lent them any money.

Question 74: I had two job offers upon graduation, neither of which was appropriate for my qualifications.

- A. Though I wasn't qualified enough, two jobs were offered to me upon graduation.
- B. The two jobs offered to me after my graduation didn't suit my qualifications.

- C. I was offered two jobs soon after my graduation, both of which were suitable for my qualifications.
- D. Both of the job offers I had prior to my graduation were appropriate for my qualifications.

Question 75: I forgot to lock the door before leaving.

- A. I remembered that I left the door locked before going out.
- B. I didn't remember whether I locked the door before leaving.
- C. I left without remembering to lock the door.
- D. I locked the door before leaving, but I forgot about it.

Question 76: They arrived too late to get good seats.

- A. Although they were late, they found some good seats.
- B. They got good seats some time after they arrived.
- C. As they got there too late, there were no good seats left.
- D. They had to stand for the whole show.

Question 77: It was only when I left home that I realized how much my family meant to me.

- A. Before I left home, I realized how much my family meant to me.
- B. As soon as I left home, I found out what a family could do without.
- C. Not until I left home did I realize how much my family meant to me.
- D. I left home and didn't realize how meaningful my family was.

Question 78: When there is so much traffic on the roads, it is sometimes quicker to walk than to go by car.

- A. It is faster to walk than to drive in the heavy traffic at certain time of the day.
- B. During rush hours, walking gives me much more pleasure than driving in the heavy traffic.
- C. There is so much traffic these days that it is more pleasant to walk than to drive.
- D. The traffic is always so heavy that you'd better walk to work; it's quicker.

Question 79: "Get out of my car or I'll call the police!" Jane shouted to the strange man.

- A. Jane politely told the man she would call the police if he didn't leave her car.
- B. Jane informed the strange man that she would call the police.
- C. Jane threatened to call the police if the man didn't leave her car.
- D. Jane plainly said that she would call the police.

Question 80: This village is inaccessible in winter due to heavy snow.

- A. Nobody likes to come to this village in winter because of heavy snow.
- B. We have no difficulty reaching this village in winter because of heavy snow.

C. We cannot gain permission to this village in winter because of heavy snow.

D. Heavy snow makes it impossible to reach the village in winter.

### KEYS TO PRACTICE TEST 27

1. D 21. A 41. A 61. A

2. B 22. C 42. D 62. C

3. A 23. A 43. C 63. D

4. B 24. B 44. C 64. B

5. B 25. D 45. A 65. C

6. C 26. D 46. D 66. C

7. C 27. B 47. C 67. A

8. B 28. D 48. B 68. C

9. C 29. B 49. D 69. D

10. B 30. B 50. B 70. A

11. B 31. C 51. A 71. C

12. A 32. D 52. A 72. B

13. A 33. A 53. A 73. C

14. A 34. D 54. D 74. B

15. A 35. D 55. D 75. C

16. A 36. C 56. D 76. C

17. D 37. D 57. D 77. C

18. B 38. B 58. C 78. A

19. D 39. A 59. C 79. C

20. D 40. C 60. A 80. D

### PRACTICE TEST 28

Mark A,B,C or D to indicate the word that is pronounced differently from the rest.

1. A. days                      B. says                      C. ways                      D. plays  
 2. A. compared                      B. shared                      C. hatred                      D. repaired  
 3. A. architect                      B. scholarship                      C. character                      D. champagne

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following words

4. A. character                      B. institute                      C. courageous                      D. internet  
 5. A. certificate                      B. compulsory                      C. eradicate                      D. automatic

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions, from 6 to 8

6. She agreed to collaborate with him in writing her biography  
 A. resist                      B. fight                      C. confront                      D. cooperate  
 7. The builder's conservative estimate of the time required to remodel the kitchen was six weeks  
 A. reactionary                      B. cautious                      C. protective                      D. traditional  
 8. The notice was declared such a long time ago that it can't be seen now.  
 A. is blind                      B. is unnoticed                      C. is invisible                      D. is invisible

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions, from 9 to 38

9. I suggest that the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ up his mind without delay.  
 A. makes                      B. make                      C. made                      D. is to make  
 10. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ sense of a word he is saying.  
 A. comprehend                      B. understand                      C. grasp                      D. make sense  
 11. The UN has demanded that all troops\_\_\_\_\_ withdrawn  
 A. be                      B. will be                      C. shall be                      D. were  
 12. I'm feeling sick. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much chocolate last night.  
 A. needn't to eat                      B. did not eat                      C. mustn't eat                      D. shouldn't have eaten  
 13. Young people \_\_\_\_\_ to succeed in life should work hard.  
 A. who wanting                      B. want                      C. wanting                      D. wanted  
 14. One approach to the study of stress is to identify events that cause psychological.....

A. disrupting                      B. disrupts                      C. disrupt                      D. disruption

15. So little\_\_\_\_\_ about mathematics that the lecture was completely beyond me.

A. I have known                      B. I knew                      C. do I know                      D. did I know

16. Mr. Goldsmith \_\_\_\_\_ in his office when somebody threw a stone through the window.

A. worked                      B. is working                      C. has worked                      D was working

17. ....of the students know the answer to that question.

A. Most                      B. Almost                      C. Mostly                      D. The most

18. Only in Japan ...the high levels of western countries.

A. industrialization has reached                      B. industrialization is reached  
C. has industrialization reached                      D. is industrialization reached

19. If the students..... on time, they'd have enjoyed the pictures.

A. had come                      B. came                      C. have come                      D. come

20. \_\_\_\_\_ so aggressive, we'd get on much better.

A. She was not                      B. Had she not                      C. Weren't she                      D. If she weren't

21. It's essential that every student \_\_\_\_\_ the exam before attending the course.

A. pass                      B. passes                      C. would pass                      D. passed

22. \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris before, he didn't know his way around when he took his family there.

A. Not be living                      B.. His not living                      C. Because he has livedD. Never having lived

23. Well, it was nice talking to you, but I have to dash.

- Liz: \_\_\_\_\_

A. OK, see you later.                      B. Yes, I enjoyed talking to you, too  
C. Yes, It was.                      D. Thanks! I will stop now.

24. The factory is said \_\_\_\_\_ in a fire two years ago.

A. being destroyed                      B. to destroy                      C. to have destroyed                      D. to have been destroyed

25. "Would you mind giving me a hand with this bag?"

B - " \_\_\_\_\_."

A. Yes, I'll do it now.                      B. No, not at all.                      C. Yes, I am.                      D. Well, I'd love to

26. Forget all and try your best next time - Lightning never \_\_\_\_\_ twice in the same place.

A. hits                      B. Attacks                      C. Beats                      D. strikes

27. I must go to the dentist and \_\_\_\_\_.

A. have my teeth taken care of                      B. my teeth be taken care of

C. have my teeth to take care of                      D. take care of my teeth

28. -"I'm sorry. I won't be able to come".

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_".

A. Sounds like fun    B. Well, never mind    C. Oh, that's annoying                      D. Great

29. I'm so tired that I can't take \_\_\_\_\_ what you're saying

A. over                                      B. out                                      C. in                                      D. on

30. The greater the demand, \_\_\_\_\_ the price.

A. the higher                      B. the high                      C. Higher                      D. the highest

31. I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ that noise any longer!

A. sit out                      B. stand in for                      C. put up with                      D. stand up for

32. - ..... his dangerous driving, Barry has never been caught by the police.

A. In spite                      B. Although                      C. Despite                      D. However

33. \_\_\_\_\_ seemed a miracle to us.

A. When he had recovered so soon                      B. That he recovered so soon

C. His recover after so soon                      D. His being recovered so soon

34. It is very difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ the exact meaning of an idiom in a foreign language.

A. convert                      B. convey                      C. exchange                      D. transfer

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions or indicate the correct answer to each of them, from 35 to 44

35. I didn't listen to him, and I didn't succeed.

A. If I listened to him, I would succeed.

B. If I had listened to him, I would succeed.

C. If I listened to him, I would have succeed.

D. If I had listened to him, I would have succeeded.

36. Though he tried hard, he didn't succeed

A. However hard he tried, he didn't succeed.

B. However he tried hard, he didn't succeed.



- c. However he didn't succeed, he tried hard
- D. However he tried hard, but he didn't succeed.
37. I like to play tennis in the summer.
- A I am very interested on playing tennis in the summer.
- B. I am very keen in playing tennis in the summer.
- C. I am very interested to playing tennis in the summer.
- D. I am very fond of playing tennis in the summer.
38. They usually have quite a big meal at lunch time.
- A. They are used to having a big meal at lunch time.
- B. They are used to have a big meal at lunch time.
- C. They are used to have a big meal at lunch time.
- D. They used to having a big meal at lunch time.
39. Despite feeling cold we kept walking.
- A. Although we felt cold, but we kept walking.
- B. Cold as we felt, we kept walking.
- C. However cold we felt, but we kept walking.
- D. However we felt cold, we kept walking.
40. "I'm sorry I have to leave so early," he said.
- A. He apologized for having to leave early.
- B. He apologized to have to leave early.
- C. He apologized that he has to leave early.
- D. He apologized to have left early.
41. *He talked about nothing except the weather.*
- A. He talked about everything including the weather.
- B. His sole topic of conversation was the weather.
- C. He said that he had no interest in the weather.
- D. He had nothing to say about the weather.
42. The boy was not allowed to have any friends, so he felt lonely.
- A. Having no friends, the boy felt so lonely.
- B. Not having friends, they made the boy feel lonely.

C. Having a lot of friends, the boy felt lonely.

D. Deprived of friends, the boy felt lonely.

43. Unless someone has a key, we cannot get into the house.

A. We could not get into the house if someone had a key.

B. If someone does not have a key, we can only get into the house.

C. We can only get into the house if someone has a key.

D. If someone did not have a key, we could not get into the house.

44. Conan said to me, "If I were you, I would read different types of books in different ways. "

A. Conan ordered me to read different types of books in different ways.

B. I said to Conan to read different types of books in different ways to me.

C. I read different types of books in different ways to Conan as he told me.

D. Conan advised me to read different types of books in different ways.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions, from 45 to 51

45. There should be new measures to discourage car use in favour of public transport.

A. prevent

B. encourage

C. disapprove

D. disconnect

46. I don't like the way he refers to his problems obliquely.

A. directly

B. indirectly

C. politely

D. impolitely

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction, from 47 to 51

47. The British labor movement developed as a means of improve working conditions through group efforts.

A

B

C

D

48. Poverty in the United States is noticeably different from that in the others countries.

A

B

C

D

49. Five-credits-hour courses are approved for the student's work in the major field of interest.

A

B

C

D

50. The basic law of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division are taught to all elementary

A

B

C

school students

D

51. On April 14, 1865, an actor named John Wilkes Booth, angered by the South's defeat in the

A

B

C

Civil War, shot and had killed President Abraham Lincoln

D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions, from 52 to 60

The Works Progress Administration (WPA) was formed in 1935 during the height of the Great Depression as part of President Franklin Delano Roosevelt's New Deal package to bring the economy around and provide relief for the millions of unemployed throughout the country; the goal of the program was to maintain peoples' skills and respect by providing work to as many as possible during this period of massive unemployment. For the eight years that the WPA was in existence from 1935 to 1943, the WPA was responsible for providing jobs to approximately eight million people at a cost of more than eleven billion dollars.

One of the more controversial programs of the WPA was the Federal Arts Project, a program to employ artists full-time at such tasks as painting murals in libraries, theaters, train stations, and airports; teaching various techniques of art; and preparing a comprehensive study of American crafts. Criticism of the program centered on what was perceived as the frivolity of supporting the arts at a time when millions were starving, industry was sagging, farms were barren, and all that could flourish were bankruptcy courts and soup kitchens.

52. This passage mainly discusses

A. the Great Depression

B. the benefits of Franklin Delano Roosevelt's New Deal

C. the New Deal and one of its controversies

D. bankruptcy courts and soup kitchens

53. The word "package" could best be replaced by

A. carton

B. secret gift

C. box

D. bundle of related items

54. According to the passage, the stated purpose of the WPA was to

A. create new American masterpieces

B. raise the standard of American art

C. introduce new art techniques to the American public

D. improve the economy

55. The word "massive" in line 5 is closest in meaning to

A. tremendous      B. rocky      C. clustered      D. dangerous

56 The word "controversial" is closest in meaning to

A. disputed      B. successful      C. creative      D. comprehensive

57. All the following probably helped to make the Federal Arts Project controversial EXCEPT that

A. the Federal Arts Project employed many who would otherwise have been out of work

B. train stations and airports were decorated with murals

C. the Federal Arts Project commissioned art works

D. a tremendous study of American crafts was produced

58. The expression "centered on" could best be replaced by

A. encircled      B. located on      C. focused on      D. surrounded

59. When the author states that "... all that could flourish were bankruptcy courts and soup

kitchens," he or she probably means that

A. banks and restaurants did well during the Depression

B. the poor could not afford to use banks or eat soup

C. the only organizations to thrive were those that dealt with the poor

D. many restaurants declared bankruptcy during the Depression

60. Where in the passage does the author give examples of artistic jobs?

A. lines 1-6      B. lines 6-8      C. lines 9-12      D. lines 12-15

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 61 to 70.

The invention of the electric telegraph gave birth to the communications industry. Although Samuel B. Morse succeeded in making the invention useful in 1837, It was not until 1843 that the first telegraph line of consequence was contributed. By 1860, more than 50,000 miles of lines had connected people east of the Rockies. The following year, San Francisco was added to the network.

The national telegraph network fortified the ties between East and West and contributed to the rapid expansion of the railroads by providing and efficient means to monitors schedules and routes. Furthermore, the extension of the telegraph, combined with the invention of the steam-driven rotary printing press by Richard M. Hoe in 1846, revolutionized the world of Journalism. Where the business of news gathering had been dependent upon the mail and on hand -operated presses, the telegraph expanded

the amount of information a newspaper could supply and allowed for timelier reporting. The establishment of the Associated Press as a central wire service in 1846 marked the advent of a new era in journalism.

61. The main topic of the passage is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the history of journalism
  - B. the origin of the national telegraph network
  - C. how the telegraph network contributed to the expansion of railroads
  - D. the contributions and development of the telegraph network
62. according to the passage, how did the telegraph enhance the business of news gathering?
- A. By allowing for timelier reporting
  - B. By adding San Francisco to the network
  - C. By expanding the railroads
  - D. By monitoring schedules and routes for the railroads
63. The author's main purpose in this passage is to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. compare the invention of the telegraph with the invention of the steam-driven rotary press
  - B. propose new ways to develop the communications industry
  - C. show how the electric telegraph affected the communications industry
  - D. criticize Samuel B. Morse
64. The phrase "the Rockies" in the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. a telephone company
  - B. the West Coast
  - C. a mountain range
  - D. a railroad company
65. It can be inferred from the passage that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. Samuel Morse did not make a significant contribution to the communications industry
  - B. Morse's invention immediately achieved its full potential
  - C. The extension of the telegraph was more important than its invention
  - D. Journalists have the Associated Press to thank for the birth of the communications industry
66. The word "revolutionized" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. destroyed
  - B. revolved
  - C. gathered
  - D. transformed
67. According to the passage, which of the following is Not true about the growth of the communications industry?
- A. Morse invented the telegraph in 1837.

- B. People could use the telegraph in San Francisco in 1861.
- C. The telegraph led to the invention of the rotary printing press.
- D. The telegraph helped connect the entire nation.

68. The word “gathering” in the second paragraph refers to.

- A). people
- B. information
- C. objects
- D. computer magazine

69. This passage would most likely be found in a\_\_\_\_\_.

- A U. S. history book
- B. book on trains
- C. science textbook
- D. computer magazine

70. How does the author feel about the invention of the electric telegraph?

- A. indifferent
- B. admiring
- C. neutral
- D. uninterested

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word for each of the blanks, from 71 to 80

At 19, Ben Way was already a millionaire, and one of a number of teenagers who\_\_\_\_\_ (71) their fortune through the Internet. \_\_\_\_\_ (72) makes Ben’s story all the more remarkable is that he is dyslexic, and was\_\_\_\_\_ (73) by teachers at his junior school that he would never be able to read or write properly. ” I wanted to prove them\_\_\_\_\_ (74)“, says Ben, creator and director of Waysearch engine which can be used to find goods in online shopping malls.

When he was eight, his local authorities\_\_\_\_\_ (75) him with a PC to help with school work. Although he was\_\_\_\_\_ (76) to read the manuals, he had a natural ability with the computer, and encouraged by his father, he soon began\_\_\_\_\_ (77) people \$ 10 an hour for his knowledge and skills. At the age of 15 he \_\_\_\_\_ (78) up his own computer consultancy, Quad Computer, which he ran from his bedroom, and two years later he left school to\_\_\_\_\_ (79) all his time to business.

“By this time the company had grown and needed to take\_\_\_\_\_ (80) a couple of employees to help me”, says Ben. That enabled me to start doing business with bigger companies. It was his ability to consistently overcome difficult challenges that led him to win the “Young Entrepreneur of the year” award in the same year that he formed Waysearch.

- 71. A. taken                      B. made                      C. put                      D. done
- 72. A. This                      B. That                      C. Something              D. What
- 73. A. said                      B. told                      C. suggested              D. reported
- 74. A. wrong                    B. false                      C. untrue                    D. unfair
- 75. A. provided                B. gave                      C. offered                    D. got
- 76. A. impossible              B. incapable                C. disabled                D. unable
- 77. A. owing                    B. charging                C. lending                    D. borrowing
- 78. A. put                      B. ran                      C. made                      D. set

79. A. pay

B. spend

C. devote

D. invest

80. A. on

B. up

C. out

D. over

KEY TO PRACTICE 28

QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER	QUESTION	ANSWER
1	B	21	A	41	B	61	D
2	C	22	D	42	D	62	A
3	D	23	A	43	C	63	C
4	C	24	D	44	D	64	C
5	D	25	B	45	B	65	B
6	D	26	D	46	A	66	D
7	B	27	A	47	C	67	C
8		28	B	48	D	68	B
9	B	29	C	49	A	69	A
10	D	30	A	50	C	70	B
11	A	31	C	51	D	71	B

12	B	32	B	52	C	72	D
13	C	33	B	53	D	73	B
14	D	34	B	54	D	74	A
15	D	35	D	55	A	75	A
16	D	36	A	56	A	76	D
17	A	37	D	57	A	77	B
18	C	38	A	58	C	78	D
19	A	39	B	59	C	79	C
20	D	40	A	60	C	80	A